

Linux on System z



Device Drivers, Features, and Commands

Development stream (Kernel 2.6.32)

Linux on System z



Device Drivers, Features, and Commands

Development stream (Kernel 2.6.32)

Note

Before using this document, be sure to read the information in “Notices” on page 555.

This edition applies to the Linux on System z Development stream for kernel 2.6.32, s390-tools version 1.8.3, and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2000, 2009.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Summary of changes	vii
About this document	ix
Part 1. General concepts	1
Chapter 1. How devices are accessed by Linux	3
Chapter 2. Devices in sysfs	9
Part 2. Storage	19
Chapter 3. DASD device driver	21
Chapter 4. SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver	47
Chapter 5. Channel-attached tape device driver.	75
Chapter 6. XPRAM device driver.	87
Part 3. Networking	93
Chapter 7. qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets	95
Chapter 8. OSA-Express SNMP subagent support	147
Chapter 9. LAN channel station device driver	157
Chapter 10. CTCM device driver	163
Chapter 11. NETIUCV device driver	173
Chapter 12. CLAW device driver	181
Part 4. z/VM virtual server integration	187
Chapter 13. z/VM concepts	189
Chapter 14. Writing kernel APPLDATA records.	193
Chapter 15. Writing application APPLDATA records.	201
Chapter 16. Reading z/VM monitor records	205
Chapter 17. z/VM recording device driver.	211
Chapter 18. z/VM unit record device driver	219
Chapter 19. z/VM DCSS device driver	221
Chapter 20. Shared kernel support	233

Chapter 21. Watchdog device driver	237
Chapter 22. z/VM CP interface device driver.	243
Chapter 23. AF_IUCV address family support	245
Chapter 24. Cooperative memory management	249
Part 5. System resources	253
Chapter 25. Managing CPUs	255
Chapter 26. Managing hotplug memory	259
Chapter 27. Large page support	263
Chapter 28. S/390 hypervisor file system	265
Chapter 29. CHSC subchannel device driver	271
Chapter 30. ETR and STP based clock synchronization	275
Part 6. Security	279
Chapter 31. Generic cryptographic device driver	281
Chapter 32. Pseudo-random number device driver	295
Chapter 33. Data execution protection for user processes	297
Part 7. Booting and shutdown	301
Chapter 34. Console device drivers	303
Chapter 35. Initial program loader for System z - zipl	327
Chapter 36. Booting Linux	353
Chapter 37. Suspending and resuming Linux	373
Chapter 38. Shutdown actions	379
Part 8. Diagnostics and troubleshooting	381
Chapter 39. Channel measurement facility	383
Chapter 40. Control program identification	387
Chapter 41. Activating automatic problem reporting	391
Chapter 42. Avoiding common pitfalls	393
Chapter 43. Kernel messages	397

Part 9. Reference	399
Chapter 44. Useful Linux commands	401
Chapter 45. Selected kernel parameters	515
Chapter 46. Linux diagnose code use	535
Chapter 47. Kernel configuration menu options	537
Notices	555
Glossary	557
Bibliography	561
Index	563

Summary of changes

This revision reflects changes to the Development stream for kernel 2.6.32.

Updates for kernel 2.6.32

This edition contains changes related to the 2.6.32 kernel release.

New information

- When booting from a SCSI boot device, you can now specify kernel parameters in addition to the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration, see Chapter 36, “Booting Linux,” on page 353.
- You can now have your system report problems automatically to IBM Service, see Chapter 41, “Activating automatic problem reporting,” on page 391.
- How to remove a group device is now described, see “Removing a qeth group device” on page 110, “Removing an LCS group device” on page 159, “Removing a CTCM group device” on page 166

Changed Information

- System z10 now supports Crypto Express 3, see Chapter 31, “Generic cryptographic device driver,” on page 281.

Deleted Information

- None.

Updates for kernel 2.6.31

This edition contains changes related to the 2.6.31 kernel release.

New information

- You can now suspend and resume Linux on System z, see Chapter 37, “Suspending and resuming Linux,” on page 373.
- **zipl** now supports logical DASD and SCSI devices as boot devices, see “Preparing a logical device as a boot device” on page 333.
- There is a new command **cio_ignore** for managing the list of devices that are not to be sensed and analyzed by common I/O, see “cio_ignore - Manage the I/O exclusion list” on page 412.
- There is a new command **znetconf** for managing network devices, see “znetconf - List and configure network devices” on page 512

Changed Information

- You can now set the number of possible SCSI commands using the `queue_depth` parameter, see “Setting the queue depth” on page 70.
- The **dasdview** command has been extended to show whether the disk is a solid state device, see “dasdview - Display DASD structure” on page 422.
- The AF_IUCV address family now also supports connection-oriented datagram sockets, see Chapter 23, “AF_IUCV address family support,” on page 245.

Deleted Information

- The descriptions of the **iucvtty** and **iucvconn** commands have been removed from this book. You can find descriptions of these commands in *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.

About this document

This document describes the device drivers available to Linux® for the control of IBM® System z10™, IBM System z9®, and eServer™ zSeries® devices and attachments with the kernel 2.6.32 (Development stream). It also provides information on commands and parameters relevant to configuring Linux for IBM mainframes.

Unless stated otherwise, the device drivers, features, and commands described in this book are available for the System z® 64-bit and 31-bit architectures with version 2.6.32 of the Linux kernel.

Unless stated otherwise, all z/VM® related information in this book is based on the assumption that z/VM 5.3 or later is used.

In this book, System z is taken to include System z10, System z9, and zSeries in 64- and 31-bit mode.

For more specific information about the device driver structure, see the documents in the kernel source tree at `...linux/Documentation/s390`. On an installed Linux system the absolute path is typically: `/usr/src/linux/Documentation/s390`.

You can find the latest version of this document and other books in the Linux on System z library on the developerWorks® Web site at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

How this document is organized

The first part of this document contains general and overview information for the Linux on System z device drivers.

Part two contains chapters specific to individual storage device drivers.

Part three contains chapters specific to individual network device drivers.

Part four contains chapters that describe device drivers and features in support of z/VM virtual server integration.

Part five contains chapters about device drivers and features that help to manage the resources of the real or virtual hardware.

Part six contains chapters about device drivers and features that support security aspects of Linux on System z.

Part seven contains chapters about device drivers and features that are used in the context of booting and shutting down Linux.

Part eight contains chapters about device drivers and features that are used in the context of diagnostics and problem solving.

Part nine contains chapters with reference information about commands, kernel parameters, kernel options, and Linux use of z/VM DIAG calls.

Who should read this document

Most of the information in this document is intended for system administrators who want to configure a Linux on System z system.



Some sections are of interest primarily to kernel builders who want to build their own Linux kernel. These sections are marked with the same icon on the left margin as this paragraph.



Some sections are of interest primarily to specialists who want to program extensions to the Linux on System z device drivers and features. These sections are marked with the same icon on the left margin as this paragraph.

Assumptions

The following general assumptions are made about your background knowledge:

- You have an understanding of basic computer architecture, operating systems, and programs.
- You have an understanding of Linux, System z terminology.
- You are familiar with Linux device driver software.
- You are familiar with the System z devices attached to your system.

Distribution specific information

This book does not provide information that is specific to a particular Linux distribution. The device drivers, features, options, and commands it describes are either provided with the Linux kernel on www.kernel.org/, on developerWorks, or are commonly available tools.

Your Linux distribution might provide additional utilities for working with System z devices that are not described in this book. For example, the examples in this book use the **ifconfig** command to activate interfaces. If your distribution provides it, you can also use IP tools instead of **ifconfig**. Refer to the documentation that is provided with your distribution to find out what additional utilities you can use.

Conventions used in this book

This section informs you on the styles, highlighting, and assumptions used throughout the book.

Terminology

In this book, the term *booting* is used for running boot loader code that loads the Linux operating system. *IPL* is used for issuing an IPL command, to load boot loader code, a stand-alone dump utility, or a DCSS. See also “IPL and booting” on page 353.

sysfs

Throughout the book, the mount point for the virtual Linux file system sysfs is assumed to be /sys.

Hexadecimal numbers

Mainframe books and Linux books tend to use different styles for writing hexadecimal numbers. Thirty-one, for example, would typically read X'1F' in a mainframe book and 0x1f in a Linux book.

Because the Linux style is required in many commands and is also used in some code samples, the Linux style is used throughout this book.

Highlighting

This book uses the following highlighting styles:

- Paths and URLs are highlighted in monospace.
- Variables are highlighted in *<italics within angled brackets>*.
- Commands in text are highlighted in **bold**.
- Input and output as normally seen on a computer screen is shown

within a screen frame.
Prompts are shown as hash signs:
#

Understanding syntax diagrams

This section describes how to read the syntax diagrams in this manual.

To read a syntax diagram follow the path of the line. Read from left to right and top to bottom.

- The ►— symbol indicates the beginning of a syntax diagram.
- The —► symbol, at the end of a line, indicates that the syntax diagram continues on the next line.
- The ►— symbol, at the beginning of a line, indicates that a syntax diagram continues from the previous line.
- The —►◀ symbol indicates the end of a syntax diagram.

Syntax items (for example, a keyword or variable) may be:

- Directly on the line (required)
- Above the line (default).
- Below the line (optional)

If defaults are determined by your system status or settings, they are not shown in the diagram. Instead the rule is described together with the option, keyword, or variable in the list following the diagram.

Case sensitivity

Unless otherwise noted, entries are case sensitive.

Symbols

You **must** code these symbols exactly as they appear in the syntax diagram

*	Asterisk
:	Colon
,	Comma
=	Equals sign
-	Hyphen
//	Double slash
()	Parentheses
.	Period
+	Add

\$ Dollar sign

For example:

dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7fff

Variables

An *italicized* lowercase word indicates a variable that you must substitute with specific information. For example:

►► — -p <interface> ————— ◄◄

Here you must code -p as shown and supply a value for <interface>. An italicized uppercase word indicates a variable that must appear in uppercase:

►► — vmhalt=<COMMAND> ————— ◄◄

Repetition

An arrow returning to the left means that the item can be repeated.

►► —<repeat> ————— ◄◄

A character within the arrow means you must separate repeated items with that character.

►► —<repeat> ————— ◄◄

Defaults

Defaults are above the line. The system uses the default unless you override it. You can override the default by coding an option from the stack below the line. For example:

►► — A ————— ◄◄

In this example, A is the default. You can override A by choosing B or C.

Required Choices

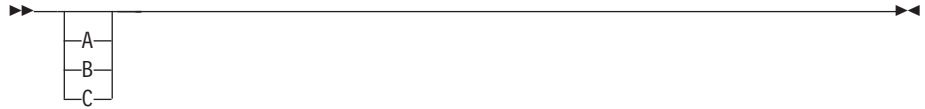
When two or more items are in a stack and one of them is on the line, you **must** specify one item. For example:

►► — A ————— ◄◄

Here you must enter either A or B or C.

Optional Choice

When an item is below the line, the item is optional. Only one item **may** be chosen. For example:



Here you may enter either A or B or C, or you may omit the field.

Other Linux on System z publications

Current versions of the Linux on System z publications can be found at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

- *Device Drivers, Features, and Commands*, SC33-8411
- *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412
- *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413
- *How to Improve Performance with PAV*, SC33-8414
- *How to use Execute-in-Place Technology with Linux on z/VM*, SC34-2594
- *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596
- *Kernel Messages*
- *libica Programmer's Reference*, SC34-2602

Finding IBM books

For some of the referenced IBM books, links have been omitted to avoid pointing to a particular edition of a book. You can locate the latest versions of the referenced IBM books through the IBM Publications Center at:

www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order

Part 1. General concepts

This part provides information at an overview level and describes concepts that apply across different device drivers and kernel features.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Chapter 1. How devices are accessed by Linux	3
Device nodes and major/minor numbers	3
Network interfaces	5
 Chapter 2. Devices in sysfs	9
Device categories	9
Devices and device attributes	11
Device views in sysfs	12
Channel path measurement	15
Channel path ID information	16
CCW hotplug events	17

Chapter 1. How devices are accessed by Linux

User space programs access devices through:

- Device nodes (character and block devices)
- Interfaces (network devices)

Device nodes and major/minor numbers

The Linux kernel represents the character and block devices it knows as a pair of numbers *<major>:<minor>*.

Some major numbers are reserved for particular device drivers, others are dynamically assigned to a device driver when Linux boots. For example, major number 94 is always the major number for DASD devices while the device driver for channel-attached tape devices has no fixed major number. A major number can also be shared by multiple device drivers.

The device driver uses the minor number *<minor>* to distinguish individual physical or logical devices. For example, the DASD device driver assigns four minor numbers to each DASD: one to the DASD as a whole and the other three for up to three partitions.

Device drivers assign device names to their devices, according to a device driver-specific naming scheme (see, for example, “DASD naming scheme” on page 27). Each device name is associated with a minor number (see Figure 1).

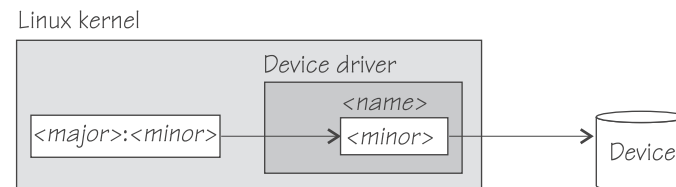


Figure 1. Minor numbers and device names

User space programs access character and block devices through *device nodes* also referred to as *device special files*. When a device node is created, it is associated with a major and minor number.

Your distribution might create these device nodes for you or provide udev to create them (see “Device nodes provided by udev” on page 4). If no devices nodes are provided, you need to create them yourself.

Creating device nodes

You can create a device node with an **mknod** command of the form:

```
# mknod <node> <mode> <major> <minor>
```

where:

<node>

specifies the path to the node. You can use any path. To comply with Linux conventions, the path should begin with */dev/*.

<mode>

is “c” for character devices and “b” for block devices. For each minor number you can define a character device and a block device.

<major>

is the major number that identifies the required device driver to the kernel.

<minor>

is the minor number that maps to a device name used by the device driver.

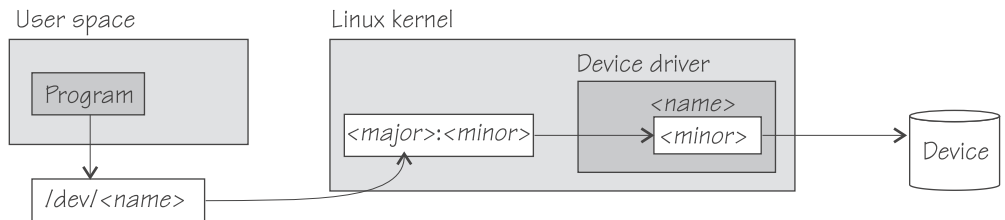


Figure 2. Device nodes

Figure 2 shows a standard device node that matches the device name used by the device driver. You need not use device nodes like this. Which device a device node maps to is determined by the major and minor number associated with it. You can have multiple device nodes that all map to the same device.

For example, the following commands all create device nodes for the same device:

```
# mknod /dev/dasda b 94 0
# mknod /dev/firstdasd b 94 0
# mknod /dev/as/you/please b 94 0
```

For some device drivers, the assignment of minor numbers and names can change between kernel boots, when devices are added or removed in a VM environment, or even if devices are set offline and back online. The same file name, therefore, can lead to a completely different device.

Device nodes provided by udev

If your distribution provides udev, you can use udev to create device nodes for you. udev is a utility program that can use the device information in sysfs (see Chapter 2, “Devices in sysfs,” on page 9) to create device nodes.

Apart from creating device nodes that are based on the device names, udev can create additional device nodes that are based on characteristics of the physical devices, for example, on device bus-IDs or VOLSERS. Unless you change these characteristics of your devices, the device nodes that are based on them remain the same and map to the same device, even if the device name of a device has changed (for example, after rebooting). udev keeps track of the mapping of the device name and the actual devices for you and so helps you ensure that you are addressing the device you intend to.

The format of the nodes that udev creates for you depends on distribution-specific configuration files that reside in `/etc/udev/rules.d/`. If you use udev, be sure that you use the nodes according to your distribution. Refer to your distribution documentation to find out which udev-created device nodes are available.

See “Examples for udev-created DASD device nodes” on page 28 and “Examples for udev-created tape device nodes” on page 78 for examples of what udev created device nodes might look like.

Refer to the udev man page for more details.

Network interfaces

The Linux kernel representation of a network device is an interface.

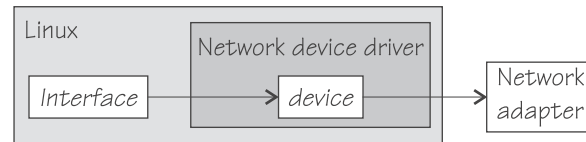


Figure 3. Interfaces

When a network device is defined, it is associated with a real or virtual network adapter (see Figure 3). You can configure the adapter properties for a particular network device through the device representation in sysfs (see “Devices and device attributes” on page 11).

You activate or deactivate a connection by addressing the interface with **ifconfig** or an equivalent command. All interfaces that are provided by the network device drivers described in this book are interfaces for the Internet Protocol (IP).

Interface names

The interface names are assigned by the Linux network stack and are of the form `<base_name><n>` where `<base_name>` is a base name used for a particular interface type and `<n>` is an index number that identifies an individual interface of a given type.

Table 1 summarizes the base names used for the Linux on System z network device drivers for interfaces that are associated with real hardware:

Table 1. Interface base names for real devices

Base name	Interface type	Device driver module	Hardware
eth	Ethernet	qeth, lcs	OSA-Express, OSA-2, OSA-Express2
eth	Ethernet	qeth	OSA-Express3
tr	Token Ring	qeth, lcs	OSA-Express, OSA-2
osn	ESCON/CDLC bridge	qeth	OSA-Express2, OSA-Express3
ctc	Channel-to-Channel	ctcm	ESCON® channel card, FICON® channel card
mpc	Channel-to-Channel	ctcm	ESCON channel card
claw	CLAW	claw	ESCON channel card

Table 2 on page 6 summarizes the base names used for the Linux on System z network device drivers for interfaces that are associated with virtual hardware:

Table 2. Interface base names for virtual devices

Base name	Interface type	Device driver module	Comment
hsi	HiperSockets™, Guest LAN	qeth	Real HiperSockets or HiperSockets guest LAN
eth	Guest LAN	qeth	QDIO guest LAN
ctc	virtual Channel-to-Channel	ctcm	virtual CTCA
mpc	virtual Channel-to-Channel	ctcm	virtual CTCA
iucv	IUCV	netiucv	IUCV must be enabled for the VM guest

Both the qeth device driver and the LCS device driver use the generic base name for Ethernet and Token Ring interfaces.

When the first device for a particular interface name is set online, it is assigned the index number 0, the second is assigned 1, the third 2, and so on. For example, the first HiperSockets interface is named hsi0, the second hsi1, the third hsi2, and so on. As an exception, IUCV devices do not need to be set online and the interface names are assigned when the device is created.

When a network device is set offline, it retains its interface name. When a device is removed, it surrenders its interface name and the name can be reassigned as network devices are defined in the future. When an interface is defined, the Linux kernel always assigns the interface name with the lowest free index number for the particular type. For example, if the network device with an associated interface name hsi1 is removed while the devices for hsi0 and hsi2 are retained, the next HiperSockets interface to be defined becomes hsi1.

Matching devices with the corresponding interfaces

If you define multiple interfaces on a Linux instance, you need to keep track of the interface names assigned to your network devices. Your distribution might provide a way to track the mapping or to assign meaningful names to your interfaces.

How you can keep track of the mapping yourself differs depending on the network device driver.

For qeth, you can use the **lsqeth** command (see “lsqeth - List qeth based network devices” on page 451) to obtain a mapping.

After setting a device online (or creating an IUCV device), read `/var/log/messages` or issue **dmesg** to find the associated interface name in the messages that are issued in response to the device being set online (or created for IUCV).

For each IUCV network device and all other network devices that are online, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface>/device` where `<interface>` is the interface name. This link points to a sysfs directory that represents the corresponding network device. You can read this symbolic link with **readlink** to confirm that an interface name corresponds to a particular network device.

Main steps for setting up a network interface

The following main steps apply to all Linux on System z network devices drivers. How to perform a particular step can be different for the different device drivers. The main steps for setting up a network interface are:

- Define a network device.

This means creating directories that represent the device in sysfs.

- Configure the device through its attributes in sysfs (see “Device views in sysfs” on page 12).

For some devices, there are attributes that can or need to be set later when the device is online or when the connection is active.

- Set the device online (skip this for IUCV network devices)

This makes the device known to the Linux network stack and associates the device with an interface name. For devices that are associated with a physical network adapter it also initializes the adapter for the network interface.

- Activate the interface.

This adds interface properties like IP addresses, MTU, and netmasks to a network interface and makes the network interface available to user space programs.

Chapter 2. Devices in sysfs

Most of the Linux on System z device drivers create structures in sysfs. These structures hold information on individual devices and are also used to configure and control the devices. This section provides an overview of these structures and of two of the categories into which the Linux on System z device drivers and devices are grouped in sysfs.

Device categories

Figure 4 illustrates a part of the Linux on System z sysfs.

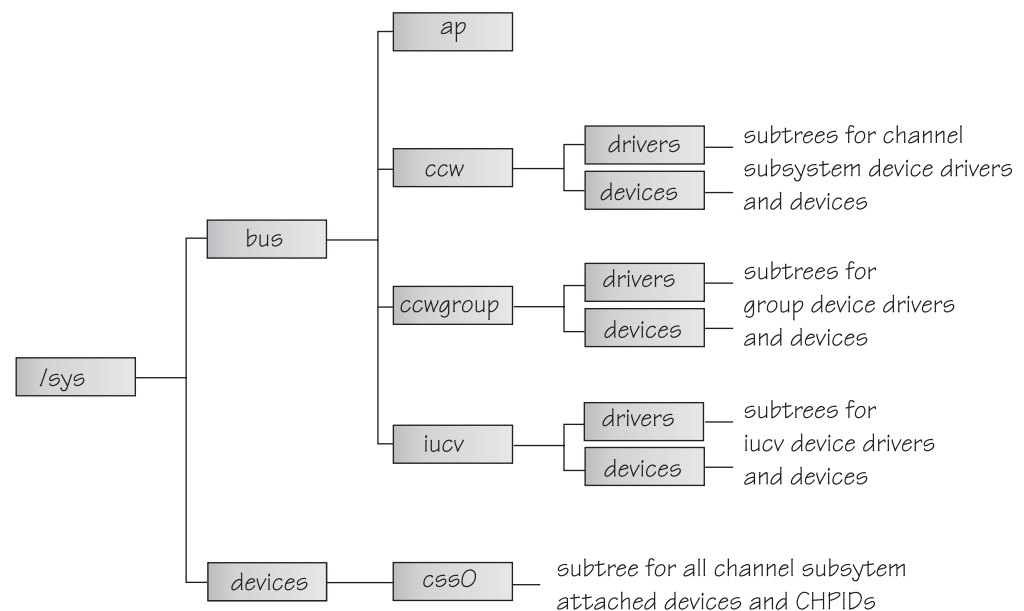


Figure 4. sysfs

`/sys/bus` and `/sys/devices` are common Linux directories. The directories following `/sys/bus` sort the device drivers according to the categories of devices they control. Linux on System z has several categories of devices. The sysfs branch for a particular category might be missing if there is no device for that category.

AP devices

are adjunct processors used for cryptographic operations.

CCW devices

are devices that can be addressed with channel-command words (CCWs). These devices use a single subchannel on the mainframe's channel subsystem.

CCW group devices

are devices that use multiple subchannels on the mainframe's channel subsystem.

IUCV devices

are devices for virtual connections between z/VM guest virtual machines within an IBM mainframe. IUCV devices do not use the channel subsystem.

Table 3 on page 10 lists the Linux on System z device drivers that have representation in sysfs:

Table 3. Linux on System z device drivers with representation in sysfs

Device driver	Category	sysfs directories
3215 console	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3215
3270 console	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270
DASD	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/dasd-eckd /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/dasd-fba
SCSI-over-Fibre Channel	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc
Tape	CCW	/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/tape_34xx /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/tape_3590
Cryptographic	AP	/sys/bus/ap/drivers/cex2a /sys/bus/ap/drivers/cex2c /sys/bus/ap/drivers/pcica /sys/bus/ap/drivers/pcicc /sys/bus/ap/drivers/pcixcc
DCSS	n/a	/sys/devices/dcssblk
XPRAM	n/a	/sys/devices/system/xpram
z/VM recording device driver	IUCV	/sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr
OSA-Express, OSA-Express2, OSA-Express3, HiperSockets (qeth)	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth
LCS	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs
CTCM	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm
NETIUCV	IUCV	/sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv
CLAW	CCW group	/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw

Some device drivers do not relate to physical devices that are connected through the channel subsystem. Their representation in sysfs differs from the CCW and CCW group devices, for example, the IUCV device driver and the IUCV-dependent z/VM recording device driver have their own category, IUCV.

The following sections provide more details about devices and their representation in sysfs.

Devices and device attributes

Each device that is known to Linux is represented by a directory in `sysfs`.

For CCW and CCW group devices the name of the directory is a *bus ID* that identifies the device within the scope of a Linux instance. For a CCW device, the bus ID is the device's device number with a leading "0.n.", where n is the subchannel set ID. For example, 0.1.0ab1.

CCW group devices are associated with multiple device numbers. For CCW group devices, the bus ID is the primary device number with a leading "0.n.", where n is the subchannel set ID.

The device directories contain *attributes*. You control a device by writing values to its attributes.

Some attributes are common to all devices in a device category, other attributes are specific to a particular device driver. The following attributes are common to all CCW devices:

online

You use this attribute to set the device online or offline. To set a device online write the value "1" to its online attribute. To set a device offline write the value "0" to its online attribute.

cotype

specifies the control unit type and model, if applicable. This attribute is read-only.

cmb_enable

enables I/O data collection for the device. See "Enabling, resetting, and switching off data collection" on page 384 for details.

devtype

specifies the device type and model, if applicable. This attribute is read-only.

availability

indicates if the device can be used. Possible values are:

good This is the normal state, the device can be used.

boxed The device has been locked by another operating system instance and cannot be used until the lock is surrendered or forcibly broken (see "Accessing DASD by force" on page 39).

no device

Applies to disconnected devices only. The device is gone after a machine check and the device driver has requested to keep the (online) device anyway. Changes back to "good" when the device returns after another machine check and the device driver has accepted the device back.

no path

Applies to disconnected devices only. The device has no path left after a machine check or a logical vary off and the device driver has requested to keep the (online) device anyway. Changes back to "good" when the path returns after another machine check or logical vary on and the device driver has accepted the device back.

modalias

contains the module alias for the device. It is of the format:

```
ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>
```

or

```
ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>dt<dev_type>dm<dev_model>
```

“Device views in sysfs” tells you where you can find the device directories with their attributes in sysfs.

Device views in sysfs

sysfs provides multiple views of device specific data. The most important views are:

- Device driver view
- Device category view
- Device view
- Channel subsystem view

Many paths in sysfs contain device bus IDs to identify devices. Device bus IDs of subchannel-attached devices are of the form:

```
0.n.dddd
```

where n is the subchannel set ID and dddd is the device ID. For Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems, the subchannel set ID is always 0. Multiple subchannel sets are available on System z9 or later machines.

Device driver view

The device driver view is of the form:

```
/sys/bus/<bus>/drivers/<driver>/<device_bus_id>
```

where:

<bus> is the device category, for example, ccw or ccwgroup.

<driver> is a name that specifies an individual device driver or the device driver component that controls the device (see Table 3 on page 10).

<device_bus_id> identifies an individual device (see “Devices and device attributes” on page 11).

Note: DCSSs and XPRAM are not represented in this view.

Examples:

- This example shows the path for an ECKD™ type DASD device:

```
/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/dasd-eckd/0.0.b100
```

- This example shows the path for a qeth device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100
```

- This example shows the path for a cryptographic device (a CEX2A card):

```
/sys/bus/ap/drivers/cex2a/card3b
```

Device category view

The device category view does not sort the devices according to their device drivers. All devices of the same category are contained in a single directory. The device category view is of the form:

`/sys/bus/<bus>/devices/<device_bus_id>`

where:

`<bus>` is the device category, for example, ccw or ccwgroup.

`<device_bus_id>`

identifies an individual device (see “Devices and device attributes” on page 11).

Note: DCSSs and XPRAM are not represented in this view.

Examples:

- This example shows the path for a CCW device.

`/sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100`

- This example shows the path for a CCW group device.

`/sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.a100`

- This example shows the path for a cryptographic device:

`/sys/bus/ap/devices/card3b`

Device view

The device view sorts devices according to their device drivers, but independent from the device category. It also includes logical devices that are not categorized. The device view is of the form:

`/sys/devices/<driver>/<device>`

where:

`<driver>`

is a name that specifies an individual device driver or the device driver component that controls the device.

`<device>`

identifies an individual device. The name of this directory can be a device bus-ID or the name of a DCSS or IUCV device.

Examples:

- This example shows the path for a qeth device.

`/sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a100`

- This example shows the path for a DCSS block device.

`/sys/devices/dcssblk/mydcss`

Channel subsystem view

The channel subsystem view is of the form:

`/sys/devices/css0/<subchannel>`

where:

`<subchannel>`

is a subchannel number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID.

I/O subchannels show the devices in relation to their respective subchannel sets and subchannels. An I/O subchannel is of the form:

```
/sys/devices/css0/<subchannel>/<device_bus_id>
```

where:

<subchannel>

is a subchannel number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID.

<device_bus_id>

is a device number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID (see “Devices and device attributes” on page 11).

Examples:

- This example shows a CCW device with device number 0xb100 that is associated with a subchannel 0x0001.

```
/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0001/0.0.b100
```

- This example shows a CCW device with device number 0xb200 that is associated with a subchannel 0x0001 in subchannel set 1.

```
/sys/devices/css0/0.1.0001/0.1.b200
```

- The entries for a group device show as separate subchannels. If a CCW group device uses three subchannels 0x0002, 0x0003, and 0x0004 the subchannel information could be:

```
/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0002/0.0.a100
```

```
/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0003/0.0.a101
```

```
/sys/devices/css0/0.0.0004/0.0.a102
```

Each subchannel is associated with a device number. Only the primary device number is used for the bus ID of the device in the device driver view and the device view.

- This example lists the information available for a non-I/O subchannel with which no device is associated:

```
ls /sys/devices/css0/0.0.ff00/  
bus driver modalias subsystem type uevent
```

Subchannel attributes

Subchannels have two common attributes:

type

The subchannel type, which is a numerical value, for example:

- 0 for an I/O subchannel
- 1 for a CHSC subchannel

modalias

The module alias for the device of the form `css:t<n>`, where `<n>` is the subchannel type (for example 0 or 1, see above).

These two attributes are the only ones that are always present. Some subchannels, like I/O subchannels, might contain devices and further attributes.

Apart from the bus ID of the attached device, I/O subchannel directories typically contain these attributes:

chpids

is a list of the channel-path identifiers (CHPIDs) through with the device is connected. See also “Channel path ID information” on page 16

pimpampom

provides the path installed, path available and path operational masks. Refer to *z/Architecture® Principles of Operation, SA22-7832* for details on the masks.

Channel path measurement

In sysfs, an attribute is created for the channel subsystem:

```
/sys/devices/css0/cm_enable
```

With the `cm_enable` attribute you can enable and disable the extended channel-path measurement facility. It can take the following values:

- 0** Deactivates the measurement facility and remove the measurement-related attributes for the channel paths. No action if measurements are not active.
- 1** Attempts to activate the measurement facility and create the measurement-related attributes for the channel paths. No action if measurements are already active.

If a machine does not support extended channel-path measurements the `cm_enable` attribute is not created.

Two sysfs attributes are added for each channel path object:

cmg Specifies the channel measurement group or unknown if no characteristics are available.

shared

Specifies whether the channel path is shared between LPARs or unknown if no characteristics are available.

If measurements are active, two more sysfs attributes are created for each channel path object:

measurement

A binary sysfs attribute that contains the extended channel-path measurement data for the channel path. It consists of eight 32-bit values and must always be read in its entirety, or 0 will be returned.

measurement_chars

A binary sysfs attribute that is either empty, or contains the channel measurement group dependent characteristics for the channel path, if the channel measurement group is 2 or 3. If not empty, it consists of five 32-bit values.

Examples

- To turn measurements on issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/css0/cm_enable
```

- To turn measurements off issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/css0/cm_enable
```

Channel path ID information

All CHPIDs that are known to Linux are shown alongside the subchannels in the `/sys/devices/css0` directory. The directories that represent the CHPIDs have the form:

```
/sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>
```

where `<chpid>` is a two digit hexadecimal CHPID.

Example: `/sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a`

Setting a CHPID logically online or offline

Directories that represent CHPIDs contain a “status” attribute that you can use to set the CHPID logically online or offline.

When a CHPID has been set logically offline from a particular Linux instance, the CHPID is, in effect, offline for this Linux instance. A CHPID that is shared by multiple operating system instances can be logically online to some instances and offline to others. A CHPID can also be logically online to Linux while it has been varied off at the SE.

To set a CHPID logically online, set its status attribute to “online” by writing the value “on” to it. To set a CHPID logically offline, set its status attribute to “offline” by writing “off” to it. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<CHPID>/status
```

where:

`<CHPID>` is a two digit hexadecimal CHPID.

`<value>` is either “on” or “off”.

Examples

- To set a CHPID 0x4a logically offline issue:

```
# echo off > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status
```

- To read the status attribute to confirm that the CHPID has been set logically offline issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status  
offline
```

- To set the same CHPID logically online issue:

```
# echo on > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status
```

- To read the status attribute to confirm that the CHPID has been set logically online issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.4a/status  
online
```


Configuring a CHPID on LPAR

For Linux on LPAR, directories that represent CHPIDs contain a “configure” attribute that you can use to query and change the configuration state of I/O channel-paths. Supported configuration changes are:

- From standby to configured (“configure”).
- From configured to standby (“deconfigure”).

To configure a CHPID, set its configure attribute by writing the value “1” to it. To deconfigure a CHPID, set its configure attribute by writing “0” to it. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<CHPID>/configure
```

where:

<CHPID> is a two digit hexadecimal CHPID.

<value> is either “1” or “0”.

To query and set the configure value using commands, see “chchp - Change channel path status” on page 404 and “lschp - List channel paths” on page 441.

Examples

- To set a channel path with the ID 0x40 to standby issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
```

This operation is equivalent to performing a Configure Channel Path Off operation on the hardware management console.

- To read the configure attribute to confirm that the channel path has been set to standby issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
0
```

- To set the same CHPID to configured issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
```

This operation is equivalent to performing a Configure Channel Path On operation on the hardware management console.

- To read the status attribute to confirm that the CHPID has been set to configured issue:

```
# cat /sys/devices/css0/chp0.40/configure
1
```

CCW hotplug events

A hotplug event is generated when a CCW device appears or disappears with a machine check. The hotplug events provide the following variables:

CU_TYPE for the control unit type of the device that appeared or disappeared.

CU_MODEL for the control unit model of the device that appeared or disappeared.

DEV_TYPE for the type of the device that appeared or disappeared.

DEV_MODEL for the model of the device that appeared or disappeared.

MODALIAS for the module alias of the device that appeared or disappeared. The module alias is the same value that is contained in `/sys/devices/css0/<subchannel_id>/<device_id>/modalias` and is of the format
`ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>` or
`ccw:t<cu_type>m<cu_model>dt<dev_type>dm<dev_model>`

Hotplug events can be used, for example, for:

- Automatically setting devices online as they appear
- Automatically loading driver modules for which devices have appeared

For information on the device driver modules see `/lib/modules/<kernel_version>/modules.ccwmap`. This file is generated when you install the Linux kernel (version `<kernel_version>`).

Part 2. Storage

This part describes the storage device drivers for Linux on System z.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 3. DASD device driver	21
Features	21
What you should know about DASD	22
Building a kernel with the DASD device driver	31
Setting up the DASD device driver.	32
Working with the DASD device driver.	36
 Chapter 4. SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver	 47
Features	47
What you should know about zfc	47
Building a kernel with the zfc device driver	53
Setting up the zfc device driver	54
Working with the zfc device driver	56
Scenario	72
API provided by the zfc HBA API support.	72
 Chapter 5. Channel-attached tape device driver	 75
Features	75
What you should know about channel-attached tape devices	75
Building a kernel with the tape device driver	80
Setting up the tape device driver	81
Working with the tape device driver	81
Scenario: Using a tape block device	85
 Chapter 6. XPRAM device driver	 87
XPRAM features	87
What you should know about XPRAM	87
Building a kernel with the XPRAM device driver.	88
Setting up the XPRAM device driver	89

Chapter 3. DASD device driver

The DASD device driver provides access to all real or emulated Direct Access Storage Devices (DASD) that can be attached to the channel subsystem of an IBM mainframe. DASD devices include a variety of physical media on which data is organized in blocks or records or both. The blocks or records in a DASD can be accessed for read or write in random order.

Traditional DASD devices are attached to a control unit that is connected to a mainframe I/O channel. Today, these real DASD have been largely replaced by emulated DASD, such as the internal disks of the IBM System Storage™ DS8000® Turbo, or the volumes of the IBM System Storage DS6000™. These emulated DASD are completely virtual and the identity of the physical device is hidden.

SCSI disks attached through a System z FCP adapter are not classified as DASD. They are handled by the zfcpx driver (see Chapter 4, “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver,” on page 47).

Features

The DASD device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- The DASD device driver has no dependencies on the adapter that is used to physically connect the DASDs to the System z hardware. You can use any adapter that is supported by the System z hardware.
- The DASD device driver supports ESS virtual ECKD-type disks
- The DASD device driver supports the control unit attached physical devices as summarized in Table 4:

Table 4. Supported control unit attached DASD

Device format	Control unit type	Device type
ECKD (Extended Count Key Data)	1750	3380 and 3390
	2107	3380 and 3390
	2105	3380 and 3390
	3990	3380 and 3390
	9343	9345
	3880	3390
FBA (Fixed Block Access)	6310	9336
	3880	3370

All models of the specified control units and device types can be used with the DASD device driver. This includes large devices with more than 65520 cylinders, for example, 3390 Model A. Check the respective storage support statement to find out what works for a particular distribution.

- The DASD device driver is also known to work with these devices:
 - Multiprise internal disks
 - RAMAC
 - RAMAC RVA
- Linux on System z provides a disk format with up to three partitions per disk. See “System z compatible disk layout” on page 23 for details.

- The DASD device driver provides an option for extended error reporting for ECKD devices. Extended error reporting can support high availability setups.
- The DASD device driver supports parallel access volume (PAV) and HyperPAV on storage devices that provide this feature.
- The DASD device driver supports High Performance FICON on storage devices that provide this feature.

What you should know about DASD

This section describes the available DASD layouts and the naming scheme Linux on System z uses for DASD devices.

The IBM label partitioning scheme

The DASD device driver is embedded into the Linux generic support for partitioned disks. This implies that you can have any kind of partition table known to Linux on your DASD.

Traditional mainframe operating systems (such as, z/OS®, z/VM, and z/VSE™) expect a standard DASD format. In particular, the format of the first two tracks of a DASD is defined by this standard and includes System z IPL, label, and for some layouts VTOC records. Partitioning schemes for platforms other than System z generally do not preserve these mainframe specific records.

Linux on System z includes the IBM label partitioning scheme that preserves the System z IPL, label, and VTOC records. This partitioning scheme allows Linux to share a disk with other mainframe operating systems. For example, a traditional mainframe operating system could handle backup and restore for a partition that is used by Linux.

The following sections describe the layouts that are supported by the IBM label partitioning scheme:

- “System z compatible disk layout” on page 23
- “Linux disk layout” on page 25
- “CMS disk layout” on page 26

DASD partitions

A DASD partition is a contiguous set of DASD blocks that is treated by Linux as an independent disk and by the traditional mainframe operating systems as a data set. The compatible disk layout allows for up to three partitions on a DASD. The Linux disk layout and the CMS disk layout both permit a single partition only.

There are several reasons why you might want to have multiple partitions on a DASD, for example:

- **Limit data growth.** Runaway processes or undisciplined users can consume disk space to an extent that the operating system runs short of space for essential operations. Partitions can help to isolate the space that is available to particular processes.
- **Encapsulate your data.** If a file system gets damaged, this damage is likely to be restricted to a single partition. Partitioning can reduce the scope of data damage.

Recommendations:

- Use **fdasd** to create or alter partitions. If you use another partition editor, it is your responsibility to ensure that partitions do not overlap. If they do, data damage will occur.
- Leave no gaps between adjacent partitions to avoid wasting space. Gaps are not reported as errors, and can only be reclaimed by deleting and recreating one or more of the surrounding partitions and rebuilding the file system on them.

A disk need not be partitioned completely. You may begin by creating only one or two partitions at the start of your disk and convert the remaining space to a partition later (perhaps when performance measurements have given you a better value for the block size).

There is no facility for moving, enlarging or reducing partitions, because **fdasd** has no control over the file system on the partition. You only can delete and recreate them. Changing the partition table results in loss of data in all altered partitions. It is up to you to preserve the data by copying it to another medium.

System z compatible disk layout

You can only format ECKD-type DASD with the compatible disk layout.

Figure 5 illustrates a DASD with the compatible disk layout.



Figure 5. Compatible disk layout

The IPL records, volume label (VOL1), and VTOC of disks with the compatible disk layout are on the first two tracks of the disks. These tracks are not intended for use by Linux applications. Apart from a slight loss in disk capacity this is transparent to the user.

Linux can address the device as a whole as `/dev/dasd<x>`, where `<x>` can be one to four letters that identify the individual DASD (see “DASD naming scheme” on page 27).

Disks with the compatible disk layout can have one to three partitions. Linux can address the partitions as `/dev/dasd<x>1`, `/dev/dasd<x>2`, and `/dev/dasd<x>3`, respectively.

You use the **dasdfmt** command (see “dasdfmt - Format a DASD” on page 418) to format a disk with the compatible disk layout. You use the **fdasd** command (see “fdasd - Partition a DASD” on page 432) to create and modify partitions.

Volume label

The DASD volume label is located in the third block of the first track of the device (cylinder 0, track 0, block 2). This block has a 4-byte key, and an 80-byte data area. The contents are:

key for disks with the compatible disk layout, contains the four EBCDIC characters “VOL1” to identify the block as a volume label.

label identifier

is identical to the key field.

VOLSER

is a name that you can use to identify the DASD device. A volume serial number (VOLSER) can be one to six EBCDIC characters. If you want to use VOLSERS as identifiers for your DASD, be sure to assign unique VOLSERS.

You can assign VOLSERS from Linux by using the **dasdfmt** or **fdasd** command. These commands enforce that VOLSERS:

- Are alphanumeric
- Are uppercase (by uppercase conversion)
- Contain no embedded blanks
- Contain no special characters other than \$, #, @, and %

Recommendation: Avoid special characters altogether.

Note: The VOLSER values SCRTCH, PRIVAT, MIGRAT or *Lnnnnn* (An “L” followed by five digits) are reserved for special purposes by other mainframe operating systems and should not be used by Linux.

These rules are more restrictive than the VOLSERS that are allowed by the traditional mainframe operating systems. For compatibility, Linux tolerates existing VOLSERS with lowercase letters and special characters other than \$, #, @, and %. You might have to enclose a VOLSER with special characters in apostrophes when specifying it, for example, as a command parameter.

VTOC address

contains the address of a standard IBM format 4 data set control block (DSCB). The format is: *cylinder* (2 bytes) *track* (2 bytes) *block* (1 byte).

All other fields of the volume label contain EBCDIC space characters (code 0x40).

VTOC

Linux on System z does not use the normal Linux partition table to keep an index of all partitions on a DASD. Like other System z operating systems, Linux on System z uses a Volume Table Of Contents (VTOC). The VTOC contains pointers to the location of every data set on the volume. In Linux on System z, these data sets form the Linux partitions.

The VTOC is located in the second track (cylinder 0, track 1). It contains a number of records, each written in a separate data set control block (DSCB). The number of records depends on the size of the volume:

- One DSCB that describes the VTOC itself (format 4)
- One DSCB that is required by other operating systems but is not used by Linux. **fdasd** sets it to zeroes (format 5).
- For volumes with more than 65534 cylinders, one DSCB (format 7)
- For each partition:
 - On volumes with 65534 or less cylinders, one DSCB (format 1)
 - On volumes with more than 65534 cylinders, one format 8 and one format 9 DSCB

The key of the format 1 or format 8 DSCB contains the data set name, which identifies the partition to z/OS, z/VM, and z/VSE.

The VTOC can be displayed with standard System z tools such as VM/DITTO. A Linux DASD with physical device number 0x0193, volume label “LNX001”, and three partitions might be displayed like this:

```

VM/DITTO DISPLAY VTOC
LINE 1 OF 5
SCROLL ==> PAGE

CUU,193 ,VOLSER,LNX001  3390, WITH  100 CYLS, 15 TRKS/CYL, 58786 BYTES/TRK

--- FILE NAME --- (SORTED BY =,NAME ,) ---- EXT  BEGIN-END  RELTRK,
1...5...10...15...20...25...30...35...40.... SQ  CYL-HD  CYL-HD  NUMTRKS
*** VTOC EXTENT ***
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0001.NATIVE      0    0  1    0  1    1,1
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0002.NATIVE      0    0  2   46 11   2,700
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0003.NATIVE      0   46 12   66 11  702,300
LINUX.VLNX001.PART0003.NATIVE      0   66 12   99 14 1002,498
*** THIS VOLUME IS CURRENTLY 100 PER CENT FULL WITH    0 TRACKS AVAILABLE

PF 1=HELP      2=TOP      3=END      4=BROWSE  5=BOTTOM  6=LOCATE
PF 7=UP        8=DOWN     9=PRINT    10=RGF/LEFT 11=UPDATE 12=RETRIEVE

```

In Linux, this DASD might appear so:

```

# ls -l /dev/dasda*
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 0 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 1 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda1
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 2 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda2
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 94, 3 Jan 27 09:04 /dev/dasda3

```

where dasda represent the whole DASD and dasda1, dasda2, and dasda3 represent the individual partitions.

Linux disk layout

You can only format ECKD-type DASD with the Linux disk layout. Figure 6 illustrates a disk with the Linux disk layout.



Figure 6. Linux disk layout

DASDs with the Linux disk layout either have an LNX1 label or are not labeled. The IPL records and volume label are not intended for use by Linux applications. Apart from a slight loss in disk capacity this is transparent to the user.

All remaining records are grouped into a single partition. You cannot have more than a single partition on a DASD that is formatted in the Linux disk layout.

Linux can address the device as a whole as /dev/dasd<x>, where <x> can be one to four letters that identify the individual DASD (see “DASD naming scheme” on page 27). Linux can access the partition as /dev/dasd<x>1.

You use the **dasdfmt** command (see “dasdfmt - Format a DASD” on page 418) to format a disk with the Linux disk layout.

CMS disk layout

The CMS disk layout only applies to Linux as a VM guest operating system. The disks are formatted using z/VM tools. Both ECKD- or FBA-type DASD can have the CMS disk layout. Apart from accessing the disks as ECKD or FBA devices, you can also access them using DIAG calls.

Figure 7 illustrates two variants of the CMS disk layout.



Figure 7. CMS disk layout

The variant in the upper part of Figure 7 contains IPL records, a volume label (CMS1), and a CMS data area. Linux treats DASD like this equivalent to a DASD with the Linux disk layout, where the CMS data area serves as the Linux partition.

The lower part of Figure 7 illustrates a CMS reserved volume. DASD like this have been reserved by a CMS RESERVE fn ft fm command. In addition to the IPL records and the volume label, DASD with the CMS disk layout also have CMS metadata. The CMS reserved file serves as the Linux partition.

Both variants of the CMS disk layout only allow a single Linux partition. The IPL record, volume label and (where applicable) the CMS metadata, are not intended for use by Linux applications. Apart from a slight loss in disk capacity this is transparent to the user.

Addressing the device and partition is the same for both variants. Linux can address the device as a whole as `/dev/dasd<x>`, where `<x>` can be one to four letters that identify the individual DASD (see “DASD naming scheme” on page 27). Linux can access the partition as `/dev/dasd<x>1`.

“Enabling DIAG calls to access DASDs” on page 40 describes how you can enable DIAG.

Disk layout summary

Table 5 summarizes how the available disk layouts map to device formats, support DIAG calls as an access method, and the maximum number of partitions they support.

Table 5. Disk layout summary

Disk Layout	Device format		DIAG call support (z/VM only)	Maximum number of partitions
	ECKD	FBA		
CDL	Yes	No	No	3
LDL	Yes	No	Yes	1
CMS (z/VM only)	Yes	Yes	Yes	1

DASD naming scheme

The DASD device driver uses the major number 94. For each configured device it uses 4 minor numbers:

- The first minor number always represents the device as a whole, including IPL, VTOC and label records.
- The remaining three minor numbers represent the up to three partitions.

With 1,048,576 (20-bit) available minor numbers, the DASD device driver can address 262,144 devices.

The DASD device driver uses a device name of the form dasd<x> for each DASD. In the name, <x> is one to four lowercase letters. Table 6 shows how the device names map to the available minor numbers.

Table 6. Mapping of DASD names to minor numbers

Name for device as a whole		Minor number for device as a whole		Number of devices
From	To	From	To	
dasda	dasdz	0	100	26
dasdaa	dasdzz	104	2804	676
dasdaaa	dasdzzz	2808	73108	17,576
dasdaaaa	dasdnwtl	73112	1048572	243,866
Total number of devices:				262,144

The DASD device driver also uses a device name for each partition. The name of the partition is the name of the device as a whole with a 1, 2, or 3 appended to identify the first, second, or third partition. The three minor numbers following the minor number of the device as a whole are the minor number for the first, second, and third partition.

Examples:

- “dasda” refers to the whole of the first disk in the system and “dasda1”, “dasda2”, and “dasda3” to the three partitions. The minor number for the whole device is 0. The minor numbers of the partitions are 1, 2, and 3.
- “dasdz” refers to the whole of the 101st disk in the system and “dasdz1”, “dasdz2”, and “dasdz3” to the three partitions. The minor number for the whole device is 100. The minor numbers of the partitions are 101, 102, and 103.

- “dasdaa” refers to the whole of the 102nd disk in the system and “dasdaa1”, “dasdaa2”, and “dasdaa3” to the three partitions. The minor number for the whole device is 104. The minor numbers of the partitions are 105, 106, and 107.

Creating device nodes

User space programs access DASD by device nodes. Your distribution might create the device nodes for you or provide udev to create them (see “Device nodes provided by udev” on page 4).

If no device nodes are created for you, you need to create them yourself, for example, with the **mknod** command. Refer to the **mknod** man page for further details.

Tip: Use the device names to construct your nodes (see “DASD naming scheme” on page 27).

Example:

The following nodes use the form `/dev/<device_name>` for the device nodes. The assignment of minor numbers is according to Table 6 on page 27.

```
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasda b 94 0
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasda1 b 94 1
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasda2 b 94 2
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasda3 b 94 3
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdb b 94 4
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdb1 b 94 5
...
```

Examples for udev-created DASD device nodes

If your distribution provides udev, you can use udev to create DASD device nodes for you. udev is a utility program that can use the device information in sysfs (see Chapter 2, “Devices in sysfs,” on page 9) to create device nodes.

The DASD device driver assigns standard device names in the sequence in which DASDs are set online. To preserve the mapping between standard device nodes and the associated physical disk space across reboots you must control the sequence in which DASDs are set online, for example, with the `dasd=` kernel or module parameter.

Alternatively, you can use udev to create device nodes that are based on unique properties of a DASD and so identify a particular device. Such device nodes are independent of the sequence in which the devices are set online and can help you to reliably address an intended disk space.

For example, use udev to create devices nodes that are based on the disk’s bus ID, the disk label (VOLSER), and information about the file system on the disk. The file system information can be a universally unique identifier (UUID) and, if available, the file system label.

Note

The format of the nodes that udev creates for you depends on distribution-specific configuration files. The device node descriptions in this section are according to generic rules as found in many distributions and in the 59-dasd.rules file as shipped with the s390-tools package.

Device nodes based on bus IDs

udev creates device nodes of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>
```

for whole DASD and

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>-part<n>
```

for the <n>th partition.

Device nodes based on VOLSERS

udev creates device nodes of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-id/ccw-<volser>
```

for whole DASD and

```
/dev/disk/by-id/ccw-<volser>-part<n>
```

for the <n>th partition.

Device nodes based on file system information

udev creates device nodes of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-uuid/<uuid>
```

where <uuid> is the UUID for the file system in a partition.

If a file system label has been assigned, udev also creates a node of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-label/<label>
```

There are no device nodes for the whole DASD that are based on file system information.

Additional device nodes

/dev/disk/by-id contains additional device nodes for the DASD and partitions, that are all based on a device identifier as contained in the uid attribute of the DASD.

The sections that follow show how such nodes can be used to access a device by VOLSER or device bus-ID, regardless of its device name.

Accessing DASD by bus-ID

You can use device nodes that are based on your DASDs' device bus-IDs to be sure that you access a DASD with a particular bus-ID, regardless of the device name that is assigned to it.

Example

The examples in this section assume that udev provides device nodes as described in “Examples for udev-created DASD device nodes” on page 28. To assure that you are addressing a device with bus-ID 0.0.b100 you could make substitutions like the following.

Instead of issuing:

```
# fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

issue:

```
# fdasd /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100
```

In the file system information in `/etc/fstab` you could replace the following specifications:

```
/dev/dasdzzz1 /temp1 ext2 defaults 0 0  
/dev/dasdzzz2 /temp2 ext2 defaults 0 0
```

with these specifications:

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part1 /temp1 ext2 defaults 0 0  
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.b100-part2 /temp2 ext2 defaults 0 0
```

Accessing DASD by VOLSER

If you want to use device nodes based on VOLSER, be sure that the VOLSERs in your environment are unique (see “Volume label” on page 23).

You can assign VOLSERs to ECKD-type devices with **dasdfmt** when formatting or later with **fdasd** when creating partitions. If you assign the same VOLSER to multiple devices, Linux can access all of them through the device nodes that are based on the respective device names. However, only one of them can be accessed through the VOLSER-based device node. This makes the node ambiguous and should be avoided. Furthermore, if the VOLSER on the device that is addressed by the node is changed, the previously hidden device is not automatically addressed instead. This requires a reboot or the Linux kernel needs to be forced to reread the partition tables from disks, for example, by issuing:

```
# blockdev --rereadpt /dev/dasdzzz
```

Examples

The examples in this section assume that udev provides device nodes as described in “Examples for udev-created DASD device nodes” on page 28. To assure that you are addressing a device with VOLSER LNX001 you could make substitutions like the following.

Instead of issuing:

```
# fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

issue:

```
# fdasd /dev/disk/by-id/ccw-LNX001
```

In the file system information in `/etc/fstab` you could replace the following specifications:

```
/dev/dasdzzz1 /temp1 ext2 defaults 0 0
/dev/dasdzzz2 /temp2 ext2 defaults 0 0
```

with these specifications:

```
/dev/disk/by-id/ccw-LNX001-part1 /temp1 ext2 defaults 0 0
/dev/disk/by-id/ccw-LNX001-part1 /temp2 ext2 defaults 0 0
```

Building a kernel with the DASD device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the DASD device driver.

The DASD device driver is provided as a base component with supplementary components for different device formats and optional functions. The driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a suite of separate modules that can be added and removed at run-time.

Figure 8 gives an overview of the available DASD kernel configuration options and the corresponding modules.

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Block devices --->                                (common code option CONFIG_BLK_DEV)
...
--- S/390 block device drivers (depends on S390 && BLOCK) ---
...
Support for DASD devices                             (CONFIG_DASD)
├─ Profiling support for dasd devices                 (CONFIG_DASD_PROFILE)
├─ Support for ECKD Disks                             (CONFIG_DASD_ECKD)
├─ Support for FBA Disks                             (CONFIG_DASD_FBA)
├─ Support for DIAG access to Disks                  (CONFIG_DASD_DIAG)
└─ Extended error reporting (EER)                    (CONFIG_DASD_EER)
```

Figure 8. DASD kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_DASD

This option is required if you want to work with DASD devices and is a prerequisite for all other DASD options. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `dasd_mod`.

This option depends on `CONFIG_CCW`.

CONFIG_DASD_PROFILE

This option makes the DASD device driver write profiling information to `/proc/dasd/statistics`.

CONFIG_DASD_ECKD

This option can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `dasd_eckd_mod`.

CONFIG_DASD_FBA

This option can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `dasd_fba_mod`.

CONFIG_DASD_DIAG

This option provides support for accessing disks under VM with the

Diagnose250 command. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `dasd_diag_mod`. You must also enable the support for ECKD or FBA disks in order to get the device online.

CONFIG_DASD_EER

This option provides extended error reporting for ECKD disks. It can be compiled into the kernel or included in the separate module `dasd_mod`. Select this option if you want to use applications that require extended error reporting.

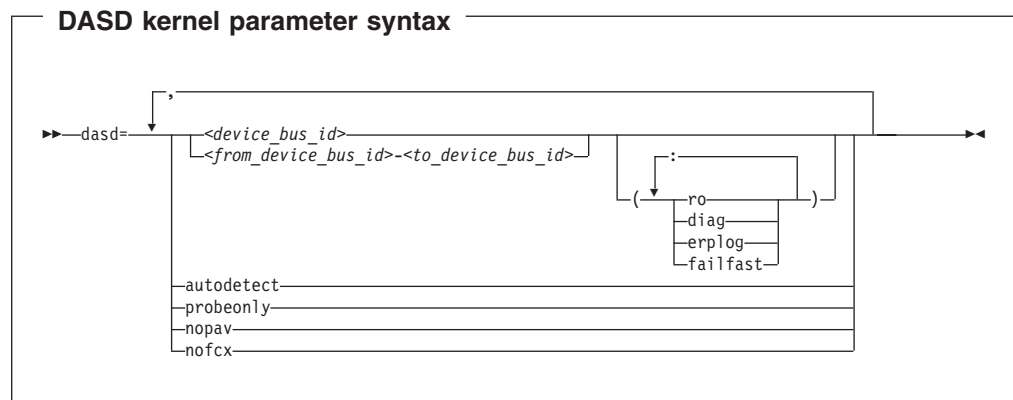
Setting up the DASD device driver

This section describes the parameters that you can use to configure the DASD device driver.

It also describes how to ensure that there is a device node for the extended error reporting facility. For information on other device nodes see “DASD naming scheme” on page 27.

Kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure the DASD device driver if at least the base module has been compiled into the kernel. You configure the device driver by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.



where:

autodetect

causes the DASD device driver to allocate device names and the corresponding minor numbers to all DASD devices and set them online during the boot process. See “DASD naming scheme” on page 27 for the naming scheme.

The device names are assigned in order of ascending subchannel numbers. Auto-detection can yield confusing results if you change your I/O configuration and reboot, or if you are running as a guest operating system in VM because the devices might appear with different names and minor numbers after rebooting.

probeonly

causes the DASD device driver to reject any “open” syscall with EPERM.

autodetect,probeonly

causes the DASD device driver to assign device names and minor numbers

as for auto-detect. All devices regardless of whether or not they are accessible as DASD return EPERM to any “open” requests.

nopav suppresses parallel access volume (PAV) enablement for Linux instances that run in LPAR mode. The **nopav** keyword has no effect on Linux instances that run as VM guest operating systems.

nofcx suppresses accessing the storage server using the I/O subsystem in transport mode (also known as High Performance FICON).

<device_bus_id>
specifies a single DASD.

<from_device_bus_id>-<to_device_bus_id>
specifies the first and last DASD in a range. All DASD devices with bus IDs in the range are selected. The device bus-IDs **<from_device_bus_id>** and **<to_device_bus_id>** need not correspond to actual DASD.

(ro) specifies that the given device or range is to be accessed in read-only mode.

(diag) forces the device driver to access the device (range) using the DIAG access method.

(erplog)
enable enhanced error recovery processing (ERP) related logging through syslogd. If erplog is specified for a range of devices, the logging is switched on during device initialization.

(failfast)
returns “failed” for an I/O operation when the last path to a DASD is lost. Use this option with caution (see “Switching immediate failure of I/O requests on or off” on page 43).

If you supply a DASD kernel parameter with device specifications **dasd=<device-list1>,<device-list2> ...** the device names and minor numbers are assigned in the order in which the devices are specified. The names and corresponding minor numbers are always assigned, even if the device is not present, or not accessible.

If you use **autodetect** in addition to explicit device specifications, device names are assigned to the specified devices first and device-specific parameters, like **ro**, are honored. The remaining devices are handled as described for **autodetect**.

Example

The following kernel parameter specifies a range of DASD devices and two individual DASD devices.

```
dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7002,0.0.7005(ro),0.0.7006
```

Table 7 shows the resulting allocation of device names and minor numbers:

Table 7. Example mapping of device names and minor numbers to devices

Minor	Name	To access
0	dasda	device 0.0.7000 as a whole
1	dasda1	the first partition on 0.0.7000
2	dasda2	the second partition on 0.0.7000
3	dasda3	the third partition on 0.0.7000
4	dasdb	device 0.0.7001 as a whole

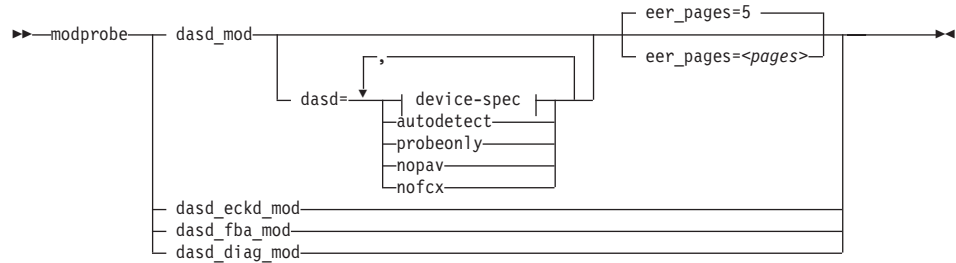
Table 7. Example mapping of device names and minor numbers to devices (continued)

Minor	Name	To access
5	dasdb1	the first partition on 0.0.7001
6	dasdb2	the second partition on 0.0.7001
7	dasdb3	the third partition on 0.0.7001
8	dasdc	device 0.0.7002 as a whole
9	dasdc1	the first partition on 0.0.7002
10	dasdc2	the second partition on 0.0.7002
11	dasdc3	the third partition on 0.0.7002
12	dasdd	device 0.0.7005 as a whole
13	dasdd1	the first partition on 0.0.7005 (read-only)
14	dasdd2	the second partition on 0.0.7005 (read-only)
15	dasdd3	the third partition on 0.0.7005 (read-only)
16	dasde	device 0.0.7006 as a whole
17	dasde1	the first partition on 0.0.7006
18	dasde2	the second partition on 0.0.7006
19	dasde3	the third partition on 0.0.7006

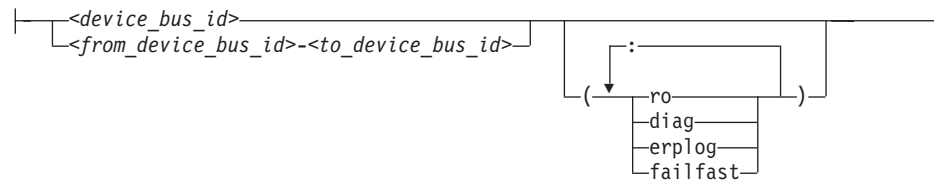
Module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure those components of the DASD device driver that have been compiled as separate modules.

DASD module parameter syntax



device-spec:



Where:

dasd_mod

loads the device driver base module.

When loading the base module you can specify the `dasd=` parameter. The variables and key words have the same meaning as in “Kernel parameters” on page 32.

When the extended error reporting feature is compiled into this module (see page 32), you can use the `eer_pages` parameter to determine the number of pages used for internal buffering of error records.

dasd_eckd_mod

loads the ECKD module.

dasd_fba_mod

loads the FBA module.

dasd_diag_mod

loads the DIAG module.

The DASD base component is required by the other modules. **modprobe** takes care of this dependency for you and ensures that the base module is loaded automatically, if necessary. For command details see the **modprobe** man page.

Examples

The following example specifies a range of DASD devices and two individual DASD devices:

```
modprobe dasd_mod dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7002,0.0.7005(ro),0.0.7006
```

For the same mainframe setup, the resulting allocation of device nodes and minor numbers would be the same as in Table 7 on page 33.

The following example specifies that High Performance FICON should be suppressed for all DASD:

```
modprobe dasd_mod dasd=nofcx,4711-4713
```

Assuring that a device node exists for extended error reporting

Before you start: This section applies only if you want to support applications that use the extended error reporting for ECKD-type DASD. See “Building a kernel with the DASD device driver” on page 31 for information on the kernel configuration option that enables extended error reporting.

Applications that use the extended error reporting facility require a misc character device to access the extended error data. This device node is typically called `/dev/dasd_eer`. If your distribution does not create the device node for you (for example, with `udev`), you need to create a node.

To check if there is already a node issue:

```
# find / -name dasd_eer
```

If there is no device node, you need to create one. To find out the major and minor number for your monitor device read the `dev` attribute of the device’s representation in `sysfs`:

```
# cat /sys/class/misc/dasd_eer/dev
```

The value of the dev attribute is of the form `<major>:<minor>`.

To create the device node issue a command of the form:

```
# mknod <node> c <major> <minor>
```

where `<node>` is your device node.

Example:

To create a device node `/dev/dasd_eer`:

```
# cat /sys/class/misc/dasd_eer/dev
10:61
# mknod /dev/dasd_eer c 10 61
```

In the example, the major number was 10 and the minor 61.

Working with the DASD device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with DASD devices.

- “Preparing an ECKD-type DASD for use”
- “Preparing an FBA-type DASD for use” on page 38
- “Accessing DASD by force” on page 39
- “Enabling DIAG calls to access DASDs” on page 40
- “Working with extended error reporting for ECKD” on page 41
- “Switching extended error reporting on and off” on page 42
- “Setting a DASD online or offline” on page 42
- “Enable and disable logging” on page 43
- “Switching immediate failure of I/O requests on or off” on page 43
- “Displaying DASD information” on page 44

Preparing an ECKD-type DASD for use

This section describes the main steps for enabling an ECKD-type DASD for use by Linux on System z.

Before you can use an ECKD-type DASD as a Linux on System z disk, you must format it with a suitable disk layout. If you format the DASD with the compatible disk layout, you need to create one, two, or three partitions. You can then use your partitions as swap areas or to create a Linux file system.

Before you start:

- The base component and the ECKD component of the DASD device driver must have been compiled into the kernel or have been loaded as modules.
- The DASD device driver must have recognized the device as an ECKD-type device.
- You need to know the device node through which the DASD can be addressed. The DASD device nodes have the form `/dev/dasd<x>`, where `<x>` can be one to four lowercase alphabetic characters.

Perform these steps to prepare the DASD:

1. If your distribution does not create device nodes for you, assure that device nodes exist to address the DASD as a whole and for the partitions you intend to create.

Example: To check if the device nodes for a DASD dasdzzz exist, change to /dev and issue:

```
# ls dasdzzz*
```

If necessary, create the device nodes. For example, issue:

```
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdzzz b 94 73108
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdzzz1 b 94 73109
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdzzz2 b 94 73110
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdzzz3 b 94 73111
```

See Table 6 on page 27 for the mapping of device names and minor numbers.

2. Format the device with the **dasdfmt** command (see “**dasdfmt** - Format a DASD” on page 418 for details). The formatting process can take hours for large DASD.

Recommendations:

- Use the default **-d cdl** option. This option formats the DASD with the IBM compatible disk layout that permits you to create partitions on the disk.
- Use the **-p** option to display a progress bar.

Example:

```
dasdfmt -b 4096 -d cdl -p /dev/dasdzzz
```

3. Proceed according to your chosen disk layout:

- If you have formatted your DASD with the Linux disk layout, skip this step and continue with step 4. You already have one partition and cannot add further partitions on your DASD.
- If you have formatted your DASD with the compatible disk layout use the **fdasd** command to create up to three partitions (see “**fdasd** - Partition a DASD” on page 432 for details).

Example: To start the partitioning tool in interactive mode for partitioning a device /dev/dasdzzz issue:

```
fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

If you create three partitions for a DASD /dev/dasdzzz, the device nodes for the partitions are: /dev/dasdzzz1, /dev/dasdzzz2, and /dev/dasdzzz3.

Result: **fdasd** creates the partitions and updates the partition table (see “VTOC” on page 24).

4. Depending on the intended use of each partition, create a file system on the partition or define it as a swap space.

Either:

Create a file system of your choice. For example, use the Linux **mke2fs** command to create an ext3 file system (refer to the man page for details).

Note: Do not make the block size of the file system lower than that used for formatting the disk with the **dasdfmt** command.

Recommendation: Use the same block size for the file system that has been used for formatting.

Example:

```
# mke2fs -j -b 4096 /dev/dasdzzz1
```

Or: Define the partition as a swap space with the **mkswap** command (refer to the man page for details).

5. Mount each file system to the mount point of your choice in Linux and enable your swap partitions.

Example: To mount a file system in a partition /dev/dasdzzz1 to a mount point /mnt and to enable a swap partition /dev/dasdzzz2 issue:

```
# mount /dev/dasdzzz1 /mnt
# swapon /dev/dasdzzz2
```

If a block device supports barrier requests, journaling file systems like ext3 or reiserfs can make use of this feature to achieve better performance and data integrity. Barrier requests are supported for the DASD device driver and apply to ECKD, FBA, and the DIAG discipline.

Write barriers are used by file systems and are enabled as a file-system specific option. For example, barrier support can be enabled for an ext3 file system by mounting it with the option `-o barrier=1`:

```
mount -o barrier=1 /dev/dasdzzz1 /mnt
```

Preparing an FBA-type DASD for use

This section describes the main steps for enabling an FBA-type DASD for use by Linux on System z.

Note: To access FBA devices, use the DIAG access method (see “Enabling DIAG calls to access DASDs” on page 40 for more information).

Before you start:

- The base component and the FBA component of the DASD device driver must have been compiled into the kernel or have been loaded as modules.
- The DASD device driver must have recognized the device as an FBA device.
- You need to know the device bus-ID or the device node through which the DASD can be addressed. The DASD device nodes have the form /dev/dasd<x>, where <x> can be one to four lowercase alphabetic characters.

Perform these steps to prepare the DASD:

1. Assure that device nodes exist to address the DASD as a whole and the partition.

Example: To check if the device nodes for a DASD dasdzzy exist, change to /dev and issue:

```
# ls dasdzzy*
```

If necessary, create the device nodes. For example, issue:

```
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdzy b 94 73104
# mknod -m 660 /dev/dasdzy1 b 94 73105
```

See Table 6 on page 27 for the mapping of device names and minor numbers.

2. Depending on the intended use of the partition, create a file system on it or define it as a swap space.

Either:

Create a file system of your choice. For example, use the Linux **mke2fs** command to create an ext2 file system (refer to the man page for details).

Example: `mke2fs -b 4096 /dev/dasdzy1`

Or: Define the partition as a swap space with the **mkswap** command (refer to the man page for details).

3. Mount the file system to the mount point of your choice in Linux or enable your swap partition.

Example: To mount a file system in a partition `/dev/dasdzy1` issue:

```
# mount /dev/dasdzy1 /mnt
```

Accessing DASD by force

When a Linux instance boots in a mainframe environment, it can encounter DASD that are locked by another system. Such a DASD is referred to as “externally locked” or “boxed”. The Linux instance cannot analyze a DASD while it is externally locked.

To check if a DASD has been externally locked, read its availability attribute. This attribute should be “good”. If it is “boxed”, the DASD has been externally locked. Because boxed DASD might not be recognized as DASD, it might not show up in the device driver view in `sysfs`. If necessary, use the device category view instead (see “Device views in `sysfs`” on page 12).

Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/availability
```

Example: This example shows that a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.b110 (device number 0xb110) has been externally locked.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b110/availability
boxed
```

If the DASD is an ECKD-type DASD and if you know the device bus-ID, you can break the external lock and set the device online. This means that the lock of the external system is broken with the “unconditional reserve” channel command.

CAUTION:

Breaking an external lock can have unpredictable effects on the system that holds the lock.

To force a boxed DASD online write “force” to the online device attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo force > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/online
```

If the external lock is successfully broken or if the lock has been surrendered by the time the command is processed, the device is analyzed and set online. If it is not possible to break the external lock (for example, because of a timeout, or because it is an FBA-type DASD), the device remains in the boxed state. This command might take some time to complete.

Example: To force a DASD with device number 0xb110 online issue:

```
# echo force > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b110/online
```

For information on how to break the lock of a DASD that has already been analyzed see “tunedasd - Adjust DASD performance” on page 500.

Enabling DIAG calls to access DASDs

Before you start: This section only applies to Linux instances and DASD for which all of the following are true:

- The Linux instance runs as a VM guest.
- The Linux instance has kernel that has been compiled with the CONFIG_DASD_DIAG option (see “Building a kernel with the DASD device driver” on page 31).
- The device can be of type ECKD with either LDL or CMS disk layout, or it can be a device of type FBA.
- The DIAG component (dasd_diag_mod) must be loaded or compiled into the kernel.
- The component that corresponds to the DASD type (dasd_eckd_mod or dasd_fba_mod) must be loaded or compiled into the kernel.
- The DASD is offline.
- The DASD does not represent a parallel access volume alias device.

You can use DIAG calls to access both ECKD- and FBA-type DASD. You use the device’s use_diag sysfs attribute to enable or switch off DIAG calls in a system that is online. Set the use_diag attribute to “1” to enable DIAG calls. Set the use_diag attribute to “0” to switch off DIAG calls (this is the default).

Alternatively, you can specify “diag” on the command line, for example during IPL, to force the device driver to access the device (range) using the DIAG access method.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/use_diag
```

Where:

<device_bus_id>
identifies the DASD.

If DIAG calls are not available and you set the `use_diag` attribute to “1”, you will not be able to set the device online (see “Setting a DASD online or offline” on page 42).

Note: When switching between enabled and disabled DIAG calls on FBA-type DASD, first re-initialize the DASD, for example, with CMS format or by overwriting any previous content. Switching without initialization might cause data-integrity problems.

For more details about DIAG see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084.

Example

In this example, DIAG calls are enabled for a DASD with device number 0xb100.

Note: You can only use the `use_diag` attribute when the device is offline.

1. Ensure that the driver is loaded (only applicable when compiled as module):

```
# modprobe dasd_diag_mod
```

2. Identify the sysfs CCW-device directory for the device in question and change to that directory:

```
# cd /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/
```

3. Ensure that the device is offline:

```
# echo 0 > online
```

4. Enable the DIAG access method for this device by writing ‘1’ to the `use_diag` sysfs attribute:

```
# echo 1 > use_diag
```

5. Use the online attribute to set the device online:

```
# echo 1 > online
```

Working with extended error reporting for ECKD

Before you start: To use the extended error reporting for ECKD-type DASD you need:

- A kernel that includes extended error reporting, either compiled into the kernel or as a separate module (see “Building a kernel with the DASD device driver” on page 31).
- A misc character device (see “Assuring that a device node exists for extended error reporting” on page 35).

You can perform the following file operations on the device node:

open

Multiple processes can open the node concurrently. Each process that opens the node has access to the records that are created from the time the node is opened. A process cannot access records that were created before the process opened the node.

close

You can close the node as usual.

read

Blocking read as well as non-blocking read is supported. When a record is partially read and then purged, the next read returns an I/O error -EIO.

poll

The poll operation is typically used in conjunction with non-blocking read.

Switching extended error reporting on and off

Extended error reporting is turned off by default. To turn extended error reporting on, issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device bus-id>/eer_enabled
```

where `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device bus-id>` represents the device in sysfs.

When it is enabled on a device, a specific set of errors will generate records and may have further side effects. The records are made available via a character device interface.

To switch off extended error reporting issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device bus-id>/eer_enabled
```

Setting a DASD online or offline

When Linux boots, it senses your DASD. Depending on your specification for the “dasd=” parameter, it automatically sets devices online.

Use the **chccwdev** command (“chccwdev - Set a CCW device online” on page 402) to set a DASD online or offline. Alternatively, you can write “1” to the device’s online attribute to set it online or “0” to set it offline.

When you set a DASD offline, the deregistration process is synchronous, unless the device is disconnected. For disconnected devices the deregistration process is asynchronous.

Examples

- To set a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.b100 online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.b100
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/online
```

- To set a DASD with device bus-ID 0.0.b100 offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.b100
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/online
```

Dynamic attach and detach

You can dynamically attach devices to a running Linux on System z instance, for example, from VM.

When a DASD is attached, Linux attempts to initialize it according to the DASD device driver configuration (see “Kernel parameters” on page 32). You can then set the device online. You can automate setting dynamically attached devices online by using CCW hotplug events (see “CCW hotplug events” on page 17).

Note

Detachment in VM of a device still open or mounted in Linux may trigger a limitation in the Linux kernel 2.6 common code and cause the system to hang or crash. Be sure that you unmount a device and set it offline before you detach it.

Enable and disable logging

You can enable and disable error recovery processing (ERP) logging on a running system. There are two methods for doing this:

- Enable logging during module load using the `dasd=` parameter.

For example, to define a device range (0.0.7000-0.0.7005) and switch on logging, change the parameter line to contain:

```
dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7005(erplog)
```

- Use the `sysfs` attribute `erplog` to switch ERP-related logging on or off.

Logging can be enabled for a specific device by writing "1" to the `erplog` attribute, for example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/erplog
```

To disable logging, write "0" to the `erplog` attribute, for example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/erplog
```

Switching immediate failure of I/O requests on or off

By default, if all path have been lost for a DASD, the corresponding device in Linux waits for one of the paths to recover. I/O requests are blocked while the device is waiting.

If the DASD is part of a mirror setup, this blocking might cause the entire virtual device to be blocked. You can use the `failfast` attribute to immediately return I/O requests as failed while no path to the device is available.

Use this attribute with caution and only in setups where a failed I/O request can be recovered outside the scope of a single DASD.

- You can switch on immediate failure of I/O requests when you load the base module of the DASD device driver:

For example, to define a device range (0.0.7000-0.0.7005) and enable immediate failure of I/O requests specify:

```
dasd=0.0.7000-0.0.7005(failfast)
```

- You can use the `sysfs` attribute `failfast` of a DASD to switch immediate failure of I/O requests on or off.

To switch on immediate failure of I/O requests, write "1" to the failfast attribute, for example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/failfast
```

To switch off immediate failure of I/O requests, write "0" to the failfast attribute, for example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/failfast
```

Displaying DASD information

Each DASD is represented in a sysfs directory of the form

`/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>`

where `<device_bus_id>` is the device bus-ID. This sysfs directory contains a number of attributes with information on the DASD.

Table 8. DASD device attributes

Attribute	Explanation
alias	"0" if the DASD is a parallel access volume (PAV) base device or "1" if the DASD is an alias device. For an example of how to use PAV see <i>How to Improve Performance with PAV</i> , SC33-8414 on developerWorks at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html This attribute is read-only.
discipline	Is the base discipline, ECKD or FBA, that is used to access the DASD. This attribute is read-only. If DIAG is enabled, this attribute might read DIAG instead of the base discipline.
eer_enabled	"1" if the DASD is enabled for extended error reporting or "0" if it is not enabled (see "Switching extended error reporting on and off" on page 42).
failfast	"1" if I/O operations are returned as failed immediately when the last path to the DASD is lost. "0" if I/O operations to the DASD are blocked until a path reappears. (see "Switching immediate failure of I/O requests on or off" on page 43).
online	"1" if the DASD is online or "0" if it is offline (see "Setting a DASD online or offline" on page 42).
readonly	"1" if the DASD is read-only "0" if it can be written to. This attribute is a device driver setting and does not reflect any restrictions imposed by the device itself. This attribute is ignored for PAV alias devices.

Table 8. DASD device attributes (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
status	<p>Reflects the internal state of a DASD device. Values can be:</p> <p>unknown Device detection has not started yet.</p> <p>new Detection of basic device attributes is in progress.</p> <p>detected Detection of basic device attributes has finished.</p> <p>basic The device is ready for detecting the disk layout. Low level tools can set a device to this state when making changes to the disk layout, for example, when formatting the device.</p> <p>unformatted The disk layout detection has found no valid disk layout. The device is ready for use with low level tools like dasdfmt.</p> <p>ready The device is in an intermediate state.</p> <p>online The device is ready for use.</p>
uid	<p>A device identifier of the form <code><vendor>.<serial>.<subsystem_id>.<unit_address>.<minidisk_identifier></code> where</p> <p><code><vendor></code> is the specification from the vendor attribute.</p> <p><code><serial></code> is the serial number of the storage system.</p> <p><code><subsystem_id></code> is the ID of the logical subsystem to which the DASD belongs on the storage system.</p> <p><code><unit_address></code> is the address used within the storage system to identify the DASD.</p> <p><code><minidisk_identifier></code> is an identifier that the z/VM system assigns to distinguish between minidisks on the DASD. This part of the uid is only present if the Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest operating system and if the z/VM version and service level supports this identifier.</p> <p>This attribute is read-only.</p>
use_diag	<p>“1” if DIAG calls are enabled “0” if DIAG calls are not enabled (see “Enabling DIAG calls to access DASDs” on page 40). Do not enable DIAG calls for PAV alias devices.</p>
vendor	<p>A specification that identifies the manufacturer of the storage system that contains the DASD. This attribute is read-only.</p>

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/<attribute>
```

where `<attribute>` is one of the attributes of Table 8 on page 44.

Example

The following sequence of commands reads the attributes for a DASD with a device bus-ID 0.0.b100:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/alias
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/discipline
ECKD
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/eer_enabled
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/online
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/readonly
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/uid
IBM.75000000092461.e900.8a
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/use_diag
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/vendor
IBM
```

Chapter 4. SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver

This chapter describes the SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver (zfc device driver) for the QDIO-based System z SCSI-over-Fibre Channel adapter. The zfc device driver provides support for Fibre Channel-attached SCSI devices on Linux on System z.

Throughout this chapter, the term *FCP channel* refers to a single virtual instance of a QDIO-based System z9 or zSeries SCSI-over-Fibre Channel adapter.

Both the Linux on System z 64-bit and 31-bit architectures are supported.

Features

The zfc device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- Linux on System z can make use of SAN-attached SCSI device types including SCSI disks, tapes, CD-ROMs, and DVDs. For a list of supported SCSI devices, see

www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity/

Also see *Linux for IBM System z9 and IBM zSeries* for a chapter about FCP-attached SCSI disks.

- SAN access through the following FCP adapters:
 - FICON
 - FICON Express
 - FICON Express2
 - FICON Express4 (System z9 and later)
 - FICON Express8 (System z10)

See *Linux for zSeries: Fibre Channel Protocol Implementation Guide* for an explanation of how FCP is configured using SUSE SLES9 under kernel 2.6.

- The zfc device driver supports switched fabric and point-to-point topologies.

For information about SCSI-3, the Fibre Channel Protocol, and fiber channel related information, see www.t10.org and www.t11.org

What you should know about zfc

The zfc device driver is a low-level or host-bus adapter driver that supplements the Linux SCSI stack. Figure 9 on page 48 illustrates how the device drivers work together.

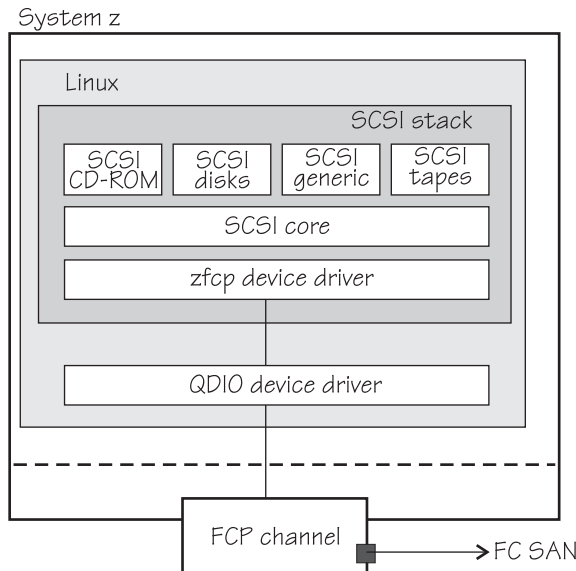


Figure 9. Device drivers supporting the Linux on System z FCP environment

For an introduction to the concepts of Fibre Channel Protocol support, and how various SCSI devices can be configured to build an IBM mainframe FCP environment, see *Fibre Channel Protocol for Linux and z/VM on IBM System z*, SG24-7266.

sysfs structures for FCP channels and SCSI devices

FCP channels are CCW devices.

When Linux is booted, it senses the available FCP channels and creates directories of the form:

```
/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>
```

where *<device_bus_id>* is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel. You use the attributes in this directory to work with the FCP channel.

Example: `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c`

You can extend this structure by adding target ports to the FCP channel (see “Configuring and removing ports” on page 62). For each port you add you get a directory of the form:

```
/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>
```

where *<wwpn>* is the worldwide port name (WWPN) of the target port. You use the attributes of this directory to work with the port.

Example: `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562`

You can further extend this structure by adding logical units (usually SCSI devices) to the ports (see “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 64). For each unit you add you get a directory of the form:

```
/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<fcp_lun>
```

where *<fcp_lun>* is the logical unit number (LUN) of the SCSI device. You use the attributes in this directory to work with an individual SCSI device.

Example: `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000`

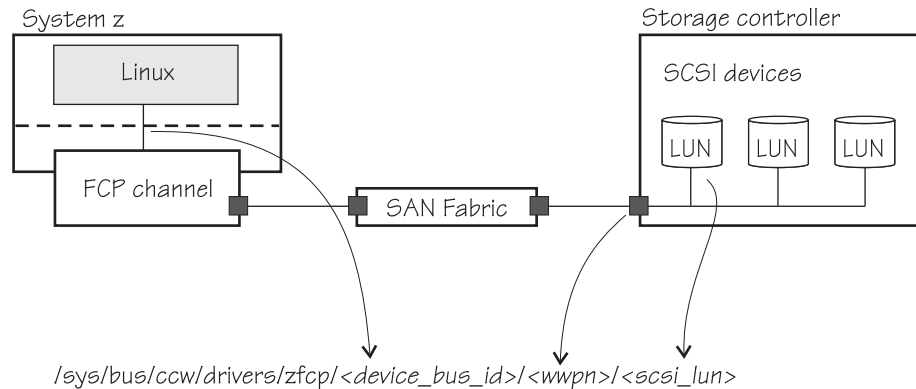


Figure 10. SCSI device in sysfs

Figure 10 illustrates how the path to the sysfs representation of a SCSI device is derived from properties of various components in an IBM mainframe FCP environment.

Information about zfcp objects and their associated objects in the SCSI stack is distributed over the sysfs tree. To ease the burden of collecting information about zfcp adapters, ports, units, and their associated SCSI stack objects, a command called **lszfcp** is provided with s390-tools. See “lszfcp - List zfcp devices” on page 460 for more details about the command.

See also “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 65.

SCSI device nodes

User space programs access SCSI devices through device nodes.

SCSI device names are assigned in the order in which the devices are detected. In a typical SAN environment, this can mean a seemingly arbitrary mapping of names to actual devices that can change between boots. Therefore, using standard device nodes of the form `/dev/<device_name>` where `<device_name>` is the device name that the SCSI stack assigns to a device, can be a challenge.

Alternatively, you can use udev to create device nodes that are based on unique properties of a SCSI device and so identify a particular device. Such device nodes are independent of the sequence in which the devices are set online and can help you to reliably address an intended disk space.

Examples of udev-created SCSI device nodes

Note: The format of the nodes that udev creates for you depends on distribution-specific configuration files. The device node descriptions in this section are according to generic rules as found in many distributions and in the udev rules file as it is shipped with the s390-tools packages.

Device nodes based on device names

udev creates device nodes that match the device names used by the kernel. These standard device nodes have the form `/dev/<name>`.

The examples in this chapter use standard device nodes as assigned by the SCSI stack. These nodes have the form `/dev/sd<x>` for entire disks and `/dev/sd<x><n>` for partitions. In these node names `<x>` represents one or more letters and `<n>` is an integer. Refer to `Documentation/devices.txt` in the Linux source tree for more information on the SCSI device naming scheme.

To help you identify a particular device, udev creates additional device nodes that are based on the device's bus ID, the device label, and information about the file system on the device. The file system information can be a universally unique identifier (UUID) and, if available, the file system label.

Device nodes based on bus IDs

udev creates device nodes of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>-zfc<WWPN>:<LUN>
```

for whole SCSI device and

```
/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-<device_bus_id>-zfc<WWPN>:<LUN>-part<n>
```

for the `<n>`th partition, where WWPN is the world wide port number of the target port and LUN is the logical unit number representing the target SCSI device.

Device nodes based on file system information

udev creates device nodes of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-uuid/<uuid>
```

where `<uuid>` is the UUID for the file system in a partition.

If a file system label has been assigned, udev also creates a node of the form

```
/dev/disk/by-label/<label>
```

There are no device nodes for the whole SCSI device that are based on file system information.

Additional device nodes

`/dev/disk/by-id` contains additional device nodes for the SCSI device and partitions, that are all based on a unique SCSI identifier generated by querying the device.

Example: For a SCSI device that is assigned the device name `sda`, has two partitions, a device bus-ID `0.0.3c1b` (device number `0x3c1b`), and a UUID `7eaf9c95-55ac-4e5e-8f18-065b313e63ca` for the first and `b4a818c8-747c-40a2-bfa2-acaa3ef70ead` for the second partition, udev creates the following device nodes:

For the whole SCSI device:

- `/dev/sda` (standard device node according to the SCSI device naming scheme)
- `/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.3c1b-zfc-0x500507630300c562:0x401040ea00000000`
- `/dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303fffc56200000000000010ea`

For the first partition:

- `/dev/sda1` (standard device node according to the SCSI device naming scheme)
- `/dev/disk/by-label/boot`
- `/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.3c1b-zfc-0x500507630300c562:0x401040ea00000000-part1`

- /dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303ffc56200000000000010ea-part1
- /dev/disk/by-uuid/7eaf9c95-55ac-4e5e-8f18-065b313e63ca

For the second partition:

- /dev/sda2 (standard device node according to the SCSI device naming scheme)
- /dev/disk/by-label/SWAP-sda2
- /dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.3c1b-zfcp-0x500507630300c562:0x401040ea00000000-part2
- /dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076303ffc56200000000000010ea-part2
- /dev/disk/by-uuid/b4a818c8-747c-40a2-bfa2-acaa3ef70ead

Creating SCSI device nodes with mknod

You can create your own device nodes with **mknod** commands of the form:

```
# mknod /dev/<your_name> b <major> <minor>
```

See “Finding the major and minor numbers for a device” on page 69 if you need to create your own nodes.

Partitioning a SCSI device

You can partition SCSI devices that are attached through an FCP channel in the same way that you can partition SCSI attached devices on other platforms. Use the **fdisk** command to partition a SCSI disk not **fdasd**.

If your distribution provides udev, udev might create device nodes for your partitions. Refer to your distribution documentation for details. If you need to create your own nodes for your partitions, see “Finding the major and minor numbers for a device” on page 69.

Example

To partition a SCSI disk with a device node /dev/sda issue:

```
# fdisk /dev/sda
```

zfcp HBA API (FC-HBA) support

The zfcp host bus adapter API (HBA API) provides an interface for SAN management clients that run on System z.

As shown in Figure 11 on page 52, the zfcp HBA API support includes a user space library.

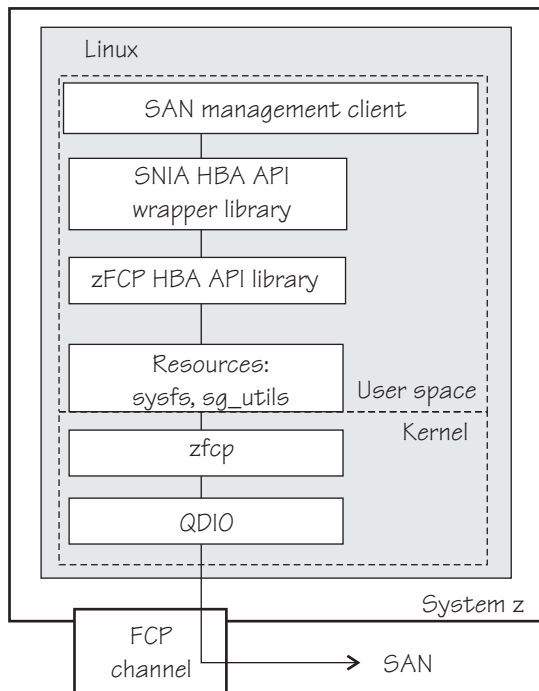


Figure 11. zfc HBA API support modules

The zFCP HBA API support uses the SNIA (Storage Networking Industry Association) library, `hbaapi_src_<x.x>.tgz`, which can be found at: hbaapi.sourceforge.net

The SNIA HBA API library offers a common entry point for applications that manage HBAs. Using the library, an application can talk to any HBA independently of vendor.

Technically it is also possible for applications to use the zFCP HBA API library directly, however, this is not the preferred method.

For information on setting up the HBA API support, see “Installing the zfc HBA API library” on page 55.

FCP LUN access control

IBM System z10 and later

FCP LUN access control is not supported.

Access to devices can be restricted by access control software on the FCP channel. For more information on FCP LUN Access Control, visit the IBM Resource Link™ Web site at:

<https://www.ibm.com/servers/resourceLink/>

The Resource Link page requires registration. If you are not a registered user of Resource Link, you will need to register and then log in. On the left navigation bar, click **Tools**, then in the Servers column on the ACT page, click the link **Configuration Utility for FCP LUN Access Control**.

N_Port ID Virtualization for FCP channels

N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) allows a single FCP port to appear as multiple, distinct ports that provide separate port identification. NPIV support can be configured on the SE per CHPID and LPAR for an FCP adapter. The zfcplib device driver supports NPIV error messages and adapter attributes. See “Displaying adapter information” on page 57 for the adapter attributes.

For more details, refer to the connectivity page at www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity/fcp.html

See also the chapter on NPIV in *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413.

N_Port ID Virtualization is available on IBM System z9 and later.

Building a kernel with the zfcplib device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the zfcplib device driver.

Figure 12 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the zfcplib device driver:

```
Device Drivers --->
...
SCSI Device Support --->
...
SCSI low-level drivers --->
...
FCP host bus adapter driver for IBM eServer zSeries (CONFIG_ZFCPLIB)
```

Figure 12. zfcplib kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_ZFCPLIB

This option is required for zfcplib support. Can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, zfcplib.

In addition, the following common code options are required:

- CONFIG_QDIO
- CONFIG_SCSI

zfcplib needs the CONFIG_SCSI_FC_ATTRS option, which is automatically selected when you select CONFIG_ZFCPLIB.

As for Linux on any platform, you need the common code options for specific devices and file systems you want to support. For example:

- SCSI disks support and PC-BIOS disk layout support
Partitioning is only possible if PC-BIOS disk layout support is compiled into the kernel
- SCSI tapes support

- SCSI CD-ROM and ISO 9660 file system
- SCSI generic support

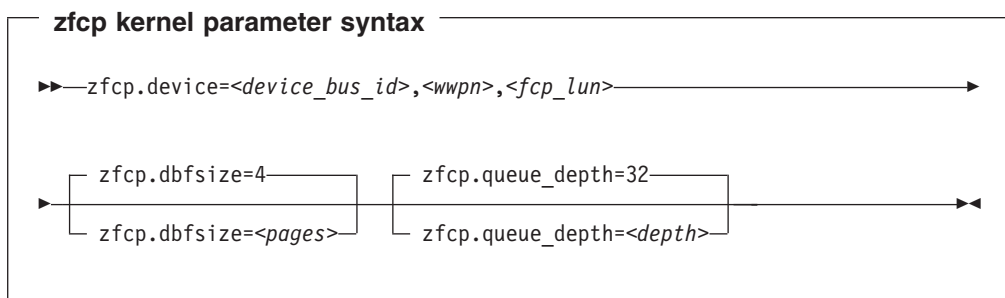
Setting up the zfcplib device driver

This section provides information on how you can specify a SCSI boot device.

zfcplib device driver kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure the zfcplib device driver if it has been compiled into the kernel. You configure the device driver by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.

Use the zfcplib.device kernel parameter to enable a SCSI device to be used as initial device. This parameter only enables a single SCSI LUN. For production systems, consider a multipath setup with two or more redundant paths to each volume.



where:

<device_bus_id>

specifies the device bus-ID of the FCP channel through which the SCSI device is attached.

<wwpn>

specifies the target port through which the SCSI device is accessed.

<fcp_lun>

specifies the LUN of the SCSI device.

dbfsz=<pages>

specifies the number of pages which should be used for the debug feature.

The debug feature is available for each adapter and the following areas:

hba	Host bus adapter
san	Storage Area Network
rec	Error Recovery Process
scsi	SCSI

The value given is used for all areas. The default is 4, that is, four pages are used for each area and adapter. In the following example the dbfsz is increased to 6 pages:

```
zfcplib.dbfsz=6
```

This results in six pages being used for each area and adapter.

queue_depth=<depth>

specifies the number of commands that can be issued simultaneously to a SCSI device. The default is 32. The value you set here will be used as the default queue depth for new SCSI

devices. You can change the queue depth for each SCSI device using the `queue_depth` sysfs attribute, see “Setting the queue depth” on page 70.

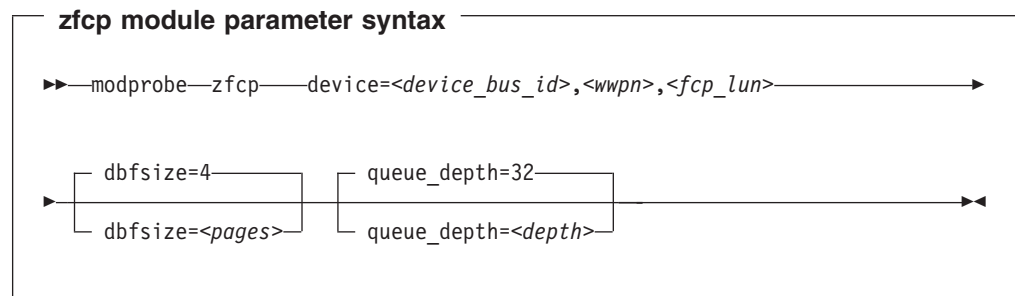
Example

Use the following parameters in the kernel parameter line to boot from a SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000, accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 and connected through an FCP channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c. Assuming that a device node `/dev/sda1` has been created for that SCSI device:

```
zfcplib.device=0.0.3d0c,0x500507630300c562,0x4010403200000000 root=/dev/sda1
```

zfcplib module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure the `zfcplib` device driver if it has been compiled as separate module.



The variables have the same meaning as in “`zfcplib` device driver kernel parameters” on page 54.

Installing the `zfcplib` HBA API library

Before you begin: To use the HBA API support you need the following packages:

- `libzfcphbaapi-2.x.tar.gz`, the `zfcplib` HBA API library.
- The `libsfs-2.1` package, a library interface to `sysfs`.
- The `sg_utils` package, a utility for devices that use SCSI commands.
- The `doxygen` package, optional for documentation.

When installing the library the default is to use the SNIA library. Should you want to build a standalone version you need to set the compile option `--enable-vendor-lib=no` in the configuration file.

You can find the `zfcplib` HBA API library as a source package, `libzfcphbaapi-2.x.tar.gz`, at developerWorks:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/index.shtml

On the left navigation bar, select Useful add-ons to find the HBA API library.

Perform the following steps to install the library:

1. Download the source package `libzfcphbaapi-2.<x>.tar.gz` from developerWorks. In the library name, `<x>` represents the newest available version.
2. Compile and install the package:

```
# tar xzf libzfcphbaapi-2.<x>.tar.gz
# cd libzfcphbaapi-2.<x>
# ./configure
# make
# make install
```

3. Optionally, build and install documentation. For this step you require the package doxygen.

```
# make dox
# make install
```

Result: You have installed:

- Shared and static versions of libzfcphbaapi at `/usr/local/lib`.
- If you built a standalone version, the header file `hbaapi.h` at `/usr/local/include`.
- Optionally, the documentation package at `/usr/local/share/doc/zfcphbaapi-2.<x>`.

If you have built the vendor library with the SNIA library, there are two entry points:

- `HBA_RegisterLibrary`, used if SNIA V1 was installed.
- `HBA_RegisterLibraryV2`, used if SNIA V2 was installed.

The SNIA library expects a configuration file called `/etc/hba.conf` that contains the path to the vendor-specific library with the actual implementation. A client application needs to issue the `HBA_LoadLibrary()` call as the first call to load the vendor-specific library. The vendor-specific library, in turn, must supply the function `HBA_RegisterLibrary` that returns all function pointers to the wrapper library and thus makes them available to the application.

Note: The exact contents of the library depends on the version, see “API provided by the zfc HBA API support” on page 72.

Working with the zfc device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with FCP channels, target ports, and SCSI devices. Set an FCP channel online before you attempt to perform any other tasks.

- Working with FCP channels
 - Setting an FCP channel online or offline
 - Displaying adapter information
 - Recovering a failed FCP channel
 - Configuring and removing ports
 - Finding out if NPIV is in use
 - Setting the queue depth
 - Starting and stopping collection of QDIO performance statistics
- Working with target ports
 - Displaying port information
 - Recovering a failed port
 - Configuring SCSI devices
- Working with SCSI devices
 - Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs
 - Displaying information on SCSI devices

- Finding the major and minor numbers for a device
- Recovering a failed SCSI device
- Removing SCSI devices

For debugging information, see the chapter on debugging using zfc traces in *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413.

Setting an FCP channel online or offline

By default, FCP channels are offline. Set an FCP channel online before you perform any other tasks.

Use the **chccwdev** command (“chccwdev - Set a CCW device online” on page 402) to set an FCP channel online or offline. Alternatively, you can write “1” to an FCP channel’s online attribute to set it online, or “0” to set it offline.

Setting an FCP channel online registers it with the Linux SCSI stack.

When you set an FCP channel offline, the port and LUN subdirectories are preserved. Setting an FCP channel offline in sysfs interrupts the communication between Linux and the FCP channel hardware. After a timeout has expired, the port and LUN attributes indicate that the ports and LUNs are no longer accessible. The transition of the CCW device to the offline state is synchronous, unless the device is disconnected.

For disconnected devices, writing to the offline sysfs attribute triggers an asynchronous deregistration process. When this process is completed, the device with its ports and LUNs is no longer represented in sysfs.

When the FCP channel is set back online, the SCSI device names and minor numbers are freshly assigned. The mapping of devices to names and numbers might be different from what they were before the FCP channel was set offline.

Examples

- To set an FCP channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c online issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.3d0c
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/online
```

- To set an FCP channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c offline issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.3d0c
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/online
```

Displaying adapter information

Before you start: The FCP channel must be online for the adapter information to be valid.

For each online FCP channel, there is a number of read-only attributes in sysfs that provide information on the corresponding adapter card. Table 9 summarizes the relevant attributes.

Table 9. Attributes with adapter information

Attribute	Explanation
hardware_version	Hardware version
card_version	Adapter version
lic_version	Hardware microcode level
in_recovery	Shows if adapter is in recovery (0 or 1)
failed	Shows if adapter is in failed state (0 or 1)
online	Shows if adapter is online (0 or 1)
peer_wwnn	WWNN of peer for a point-to-point connection
peer_wwpn	WWPN of peer for a point-to-point connection
peer_d_id	Destination ID of the peer for a point-to-point connection
port_remove	Write a WWPN to this attribute to remove a port. See Configuring and removing ports.
port_rescan	Triggers a port scan. See Configuring and removing ports

For the attributes availability, cmb_enable, and cutype, see “Devices and device attributes” on page 11. The status attribute is reserved.

Table 10. Relevant transport class attributes, fc_host attributes

Attribute	Explanation
maxframe_size	Maximum frame size of adapter
node_name	Worldwide node name (WWNN) of adapter
permanent_port_name	WWPN associated with the physical port of the FCP channel
port_id	Destination ID of the adapter port.
port_name	WWPN. If N_Port ID Virtualization is not available, this shows the same value as permanent_port_name.
port_type	Port type indicating topology of port.
serial_number	Serial number of adapter.
speed	Speed of FC link.
supported_classes	Supported FC service class.
supported_speeds	Supported speeds.
tgid_bind_type	Target binding type.

Table 11. Relevant transport class attributes, fc_host statistics

Attribute	Explanation
reset_statistics	Writeable attribute to reset statistic counters.
seconds_since_last_reset	Seconds since last reset of statistic counters.
tx_frames	Transmitted FC frames.
tx_words	Transmitted FC words.
rx_frames	Received FC frames.
rx_words	Received FC words.

Table 11. Relevant transport class attributes, fc_host statistics (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
lip_count	Number of LIP sequences.
nos_count	Number of NOS sequences.
error_frames	Number of frames received in error.
dumped_frames	Number of frames lost due to lack of host resources.
link_failure_count	Link failure count.
loss_of_sync_count	Loss of synchronization count.
loss_of_signal_count	Loss of signal count.
prim_seq_protocol_err_count	Primitive sequence protocol error count.
invalid_tx_word_count	Invalid transmission word count.
invalid_crc_count	Invalid CRC count.
fcp_input_requests	Number of FCP operations with data input.
fcp_output_requests	Number of FCP operations with data output.
fcp_control_requests	Number of FCP operations without data movement.
fcp_input_megabytes	Megabytes of FCP data input.
fcp_output_megabytes	Megabytes of FCP data output.

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_bus_id>

is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel.

<attribute>

is one of the attributes in Table 9 on page 58.

To read attributes of the associated fc_host use:

```
# cat /sys/class/fc_host/<host_name>/<attribute>
```

where:

<host_name> is the ID of the host.

<attribute> is one of the attributes in Table 10 on page 58.

Examples

- In this example, information is displayed on an adapter card for an FCP channel that corresponds to a device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/hardware_version
0x00000000
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/lic_version
0x00009111
```

- Alternatively you can use **lszfcp** (see “lszfcp - List zfcp devices” on page 460) to display all attributes of an adapter:

```
# lszfcp -b 0.0.3d0c -a
0.0.3d0c host0
Bus = "ccw"
  availability      = "good"
  card_version      = "0x0003"
  cmb_enable        = "0"
  cutype            = "1731/03"
  devtype           = "1732/03"
  failed            = "0"
  hardware_version  = "0x00000000"
  in_recovery       = "0"
  lic_version       = "0x00000600"
  modalias          = "ccw:t1731m03dt1732dm03"
  online            = "1"
  peer_d_id         = "0x000000"
  peer_wwnn         = "0x0000000000000000"
  peer_wwpn         = "0x0000000000000000"
  status            = "0x5400082e"
Class = "fc_host"
  maxframe_size     = "2112 bytes"
  node_name         = "0x5005076400cd6aad"
  permanent_port_name = "0x5005076401c08f98"
  port_id           = "0x650f13"
  port_name         = "0x5005076401c08f98"
  port_type         = "NPort (fabric via point-to-point)"
  serial_number     = "IBM020000000D6AAD"
  speed             = "2 Gbit"
  supported_classes  = "Class 2, Class 3"
  supported_speeds   = "1 Gbit, 2 Gbit"
  tgtid_bind_type    = "wwpn (World Wide Port Name)"
Class = "scsi_host"
  cmd_per_lun       = "1"
  host_busy         = "0"
  proc_name         = "zfcp"
  sg_tablesize      = "538"
  state             = "running"
  unchecked_isa_dma = "0"
  unique_id         = "0"
```

Finding out if NPIV is in use

If the adapter attributes `permanent_port_name` and `port_name` are not NULL and are different from each other, the subchannel is operating in NPIV mode.

Example

You can examine whether the adapter attributes `port_name` and `permanent_port_name` are the same:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.1940/host0/fc_host/host0/port_name
0xc05076ffef805388

# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.1940/host0/fc_host/host0/permanent_port_name
0x50050764016219a0
```

Alternatively you can use **lszfcp** (see “lszfcp - List zfcp devices” on page 460) to display the above attributes:

```
# lszfcp -b 0.0.1940 -a
0.0.3d0c host0
Bus = "ccw"
    availability      = "good"
    ...
Class = "fc_host"
    maxframe_size    = "2112 bytes"
    node_name        = "0x5005076400c1ebae"
    permanent_port_name = "0x50050764016219a0"
    port_id          = "0x65ee01"
    port_name        = "0xc05076ffef805388"
    port_state       = "Online"
    port_type        = "NPIV VPORT"
    serial_number    = "IBM0200000001EBAE"
    ...
```

The example shows that `permanent_port_name` is the same as `port_name`, and the subchannel does not operate in NPIV mode. Additionally, the `port_type` attribute indicates NPIV.

Recovering a failed FCP channel

Before you start: The FCP channel must be online.

Failed FCP channels are automatically recovered by the `zfc` device driver. You can read the `in_recovery` attribute to check if recovery is under way. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/<device_bus_id>/in_recovery
```

The value is “1” if recovery is under way and “0” otherwise. If the value is “0” for a non-operational FCP channel, recovery might have failed or the device driver might have failed to detect that the FCP channel is malfunctioning.

To find out if recovery has failed read the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/<device_bus_id>/failed
```

The value is “1” if recovery has failed and “0” otherwise.

You can start or restart the recovery process for the FCP channel by writing “0” to the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/<device_bus_id>/failed
```

Example

In the following example, an FCP channel with a device bus ID `0.0.3d0c` is malfunctioning. The first command reveals that recovery is not already under way. The second command manually starts recovery for the FCP channel:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/0.0.3d0c/in_recovery
0
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/0.0.3d0c/failed
```

Configuring and removing ports

Before you start: The FCP channel must be online.

The zFCP device driver automatically attaches remote storage ports to the adapter configuration at adapter activation as well as when remote storage ports are added. Scanning for ports might take some time to complete. Commands that you issue against ports or LUNs while scanning is in progress are delayed and processed when port scanning is completed.

Use the `port_rescan` attribute if a remote storage port was accidentally deleted from the adapter configuration or if you are unsure whether all ports are attached.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/port_rescan
```

where:

`<device_bus_id>`

is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel.

List the contents of `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>` to find out which ports are currently configured for the FCP channel.

To remove a port from an FCP channel write the port's WWPN to the FCP channel's `port_remove` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <wwpn> > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/port_remove
```

where:

`<device_bus_id>`

is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel.

`<wwpn>`

is the WWPN of the port to be removed.

You cannot remove a port while SCSI devices are configured for it (see “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 64) or if the port is in use, for example, by error recovery. Note that the next port scan will attach a removed port again if the port is available. If you do not want this, consider zoning.

Example

In this example, a port with WWPN 0x500507630303c562 has already been configured for an FCP Channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c. An additional target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 is automatically configured by triggering a port scan, and then the port with WWPN 0x500507630303c562 is removed.

```
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x*
0x500507630303c562
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/port_rescan
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x*
0x500507630303c562
0x500507630300c562
# echo 0x500507630303c562 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/port_remove
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x*
0x500507630300c562
```

Displaying port information

For each target port, there is a number of read-only attributes in sysfs that provide port information. Table 12 summarizes the relevant attributes.

Table 12. Attributes with port information

Attribute	Explanation
access_denied	Flag that indicates if the port access is restricted by access control software on the FCP channel (see “FCP LUN access control” on page 52). The value is “1” if access is denied and “0” if access is permitted.
in_recovery	Shows if port is in recovery (0 or 1)
failed	Shows if port is in failed state (0 or 1)

Table 13. Transport class attributes with port information

Attribute	Explanation
node_name	WWNN of the remote port.
port_name	WWPN of remote port.
port_id	Destination ID of remote port
port_state	State of remote port.
roles	Role of remote port (usually FCP target).
scsi_target_id	Linux SCSI ID of remote port.
supported_classes	Supported classes of service.

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_bus_id>

is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel.

<wwpn>

is the WWPN of the target port.

<attribute>

is one of the attributes in Table 12.

To read attributes of the associated fc_host use a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/class/fc_remote_port/<rport_name>/<attribute>
```

where:

<rport_name> is the name of the remote port.

<attribute> is one of the attributes in Table 13.

Examples

- In this example, information is displayed for a target port 0x500507630300c562 that is attached through an FCP channel that corresponds to a device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/access_denied
0
```

- To display transport class attributes of a target port you can use **lszfc**:

```
# lszfc -p 0x500507630300c562 -a
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562 rport-0:0-0
Class = "fc_remote_ports"
  node_name      = "0x5005076303ffc562"
  port_id        = "0x652113"
  port_name      = "0x500507630300c562"
  port_state     = "Online"
  roles          = "FCP Target"
  scsi_target_id = "0"
```

Recovering a failed port

Before you start: The FCP channel must be online.

Failed target ports are automatically recovered by the zfc device driver. You can read the `in_recovery` attribute to check if recovery is under way. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/in_recovery
```

where the variables are the same as in “Configuring and removing ports” on page 62.

The value is “1” if recovery is under way and “0” otherwise. If the value is “0” for a non-operational port, recovery might have failed or the device driver might have failed to detect that the port is malfunctioning.

To find out if recovery has failed read the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/failed
```

The value is “1” if recovery has failed and “0” otherwise.

You can start or restart the recovery process for the port by writing “0” to the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/failed
```

Example

In the following example, a port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 that is connected through an FCP channel with a device bus ID 0.0.3d0c is malfunctioning. The first command reveals that recovery is not already under way. The second command manually starts recovery for the port:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/in_recovery
0
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfc/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/failed
```

Configuring SCSI devices

To configure a SCSI device for a target port write the device’s LUN to the port’s `unit_add` attribute. Issue a command of this form:


```
# echo <fcp_lun> > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/unit_add
```

where:

<fcp_lun> is the LUN of the SCSI device to be configured. The LUN is a 16 digit hexadecimal value padded with zeroes, for example 0x4010403300000000.

<device_bus_id>

is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel.

<wwpn>

is the WWPN of the target port.

Adding a SCSI device creates a directory in /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn> with the LUN as the directory name.

You cannot read from the unit_add attribute. List the contents of /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn> to find out which SCSI devices are currently configured for the port.

Adding a SCSI device also registers the device with the SCSI stack and creates a sysfs entry in the SCSI branch (see “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs”).

Example

In this example, a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 is connected through an FCP channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c. A SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000 is already configured for the port. An additional SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403300000000 is added to the port.

```
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x*
0x4010403200000000
# echo 0x4010403300000000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/unit_add
# ls /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x*
0x4010403200000000
0x4010403300000000
```

Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs

Each SCSI device that is configured is represented by multiple directories in sysfs. In particular:

- A directory in the zfcp branch (see “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 64)
- A directory in the SCSI branch

The directory in the sysfs SCSI branch has the following form:

/sys/bus/scsi/devices/<scsi_host_no>:0:<scsi_id>:<scsi_lun>

where:

<scsi_host_no>

This is the scsi_host_number for the corresponding FCP channel.

<scsi_id>

This is the scsi_id for the target port.

<scsi_lun>

This is the scsi_lun for the SCSI device.

The values for scsi_id and scsi_lun depend on the storage device. Often, they are single-digit numbers but for some storage devices they have numerous digits.

Figure 13 on page 66 shows how the directory name is composed of attributes of consecutive directories in the sysfs zfcp branch. You can find the name of the

directory in the sysfs SCSI branch by reading the corresponding attributes in the zfcplib branch.

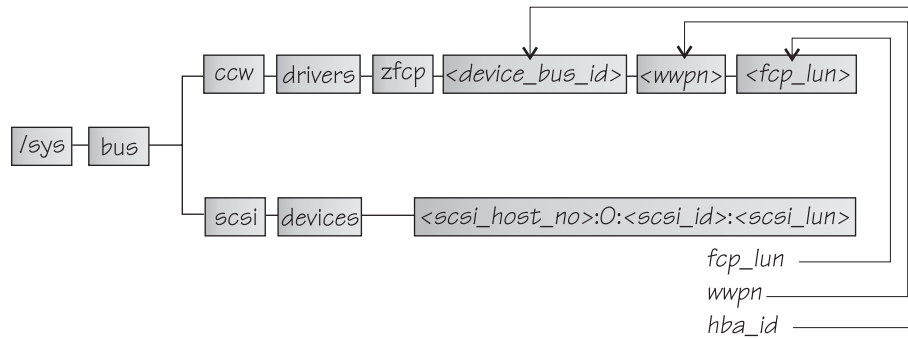


Figure 13. SCSI devices in sysfs

To find the SCSI device for a zfcplib unit you must compare the SCSI device attributes `hba_id`, `wwpn`, and `fcp_lun` of all available SCSI devices with the triple consisting of `<device_bus_id>`, `<wwpn>` and `<fcp_lun>` of your zfcplib unit.

To simplify this task, you can use **lszfcplib** (see “lszfcplib - List zfcplib devices” on page 460).

Example

This example shows how you can use **lszfcplib** to display the name of the SCSI device that corresponds to a zfcplib unit, for example:

```
# lszfcplib -l 0x4010403200000000
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
```

In the example, the output informs you that the unit with the LUN 0x4010403200000000, which is configured on a port with the WWPN 0x500507630300c562 on an adapter with the device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c, maps to SCSI device “0:0:0:0”.

To confirm that the SCSI device belongs to the zfcplib unit:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/hba_id
0.0.3d0c
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/wwpn
0x500507630300c562
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/fcp_lun
0x4010403200000000
```

Displaying information on SCSI devices

For each SCSI device, there is a number of read-only attributes in sysfs that provide access information for the device. These attributes indicate if the device access is restricted by access control software on the FCP channel. Table 14 on page 67 summarizes the relevant attributes.

Table 14. Attributes with device access information

Attribute	Explanation
access_denied	Flag that indicates if access to the device is restricted by access control software on the FCP channel. The value is “1” if access is denied and “0” if access is permitted. (See “FCP LUN access control” on page 52).
access_shared	Flag that indicates if access to the device is shared or exclusive. The value is “1” if access is shared and “0” if access is exclusive. (See “FCP LUN access control” on page 52).
access_readonly	Flag that indicates if write access to the device is permitted or if access is restricted to read-only. The value is “1” if access is restricted read-only and “0” if write access is permitted. (See “FCP LUN access control” on page 52).
in_recovery	Shows if unit is in recovery (0 or 1)
failed	Shows if unit is in failed state (0 or 1)

Additionally, for each SCSI device, there is a number of attributes in sysfs. Some provide information for the device. Others are read-write attributes or write-only attributes used to change a setting or trigger an action.

Table 15. SCSI device class attributes

Attribute	Explanation
device_blocked	Flag that indicates if device is in blocked state (1) or not (0), (read-only).
iocounterbits	The number of bits used for I/O counters (read-only).
iodone_cnt	The number of completed or rejected scsi commands (read-only).
ioerr_cnt	The number of SCSI commands that completed with an error (read-only).
iorequest_cnt	The number of issued SCSI commands (read-only).
queue_depth	The maximum possible number of pending SCSI commands for this SCSI device (read-write). See “Setting the queue depth” on page 70.
queue_type	The type of queue for the SCSI device (read-only). The value can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none • simple • ordered
model	The model of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data (read-only).
rev	The revision of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data (read-only).
scsi_level	The SCSI revision level, received from inquiry data (read-only).
type	The type of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data (read-only).
vendor	The vendor of the SCSI device, received from inquiry data (read-only).
fcp_lun	The LUN of the SCSI device in 64-bit format (read-only).
hba_id	The bus ID of the SCSI device (read-only).
wwpn	The WWPN of the remote port (read-only).

Table 15. SCSI device class attributes (continued)

Attribute	Explanation
state	Shows the state of SCSI devices (read-write). The value is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • created • running • cancel • quiesce • offline • blocked
timeout	Shows the timeout for SCSI commands sent on this device (read-write).
delete	Triggers deletion of a SCSI device (write-only).
rescan	Triggers a re-scan of a SCSI device (write-only).

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<fcp_lun>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_bus_id> is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the FCP channel.
 <wwpn> is the WWPN of the target port.
 <fcp_lun> is the FCP LUN of the SCSI device.
 <attribute> is one of the attributes in Table 14 on page 67.

To read attributes of the associated SCSI device use a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/class/scsi_device/<device_name>/<attribute>
```

where:

<device_name> is the name of the associated SCSI device.
 <attribute> is one of the attributes in Table 15 on page 67.

Tip: For SCSI tape devices you can display a summary of this information by using the **lstape** command (see “lstape - List tape devices” on page 455).

Examples

- In this example, information is displayed for a SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000 that is accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 and is connected through an FCP channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c. For the device, shared read-only access is permitted.

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/access_denied
0
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/access_shared
1
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/access_readonly
1
```

For the device to be accessible, the access_denied attribute of the target port, 0x500507630300c562, must also be “0” (see “Displaying port information” on page 63).

- You can use **lszfcp** to display attributes of a SCSI device:

```
# lszfcp -l 0x4010403200000000 -a
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
Class = "scsi_device"
    device_blocked = "0"
    fcp_lun         = "0x4010403200000000"
    hba_id          = "0.0.3d0c"
    iocounterbits   = "32"
    iodone_cnt      = "0x111"
    ioerr_cnt       = "0x1"
    iorequest_cnt   = "0x111"
    model           = "2107900"
    queue_depth     = "32"
    queue_type      = "simple"
    rev             = ".203"
    scsi_level       = "6"
    state           = "running"
    timeout         = "30"
    type            = "0"
    vendor          = "IBM"
    wwpn           = "0x500507630300c562"
```

Finding the major and minor numbers for a device

You can find the major and minor numbers of a SCSI device and of SCSI partitions from the device representation in the sysfs SCSI branch (see “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in sysfs” on page 65).

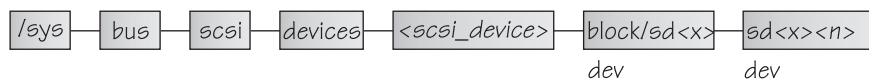


Figure 14. Major and minor numbers for SCSI devices in sysfs

In Figure 14, `<scsi_device>` is the directory that represents a SCSI device (compare Figure 13 on page 66). If the disk is partitioned, the block directory that follows contains directories of the form `sd<x><n>` that represent the partitions. `sd<x>` is a standard name that the SCSI stack has assigned to the SCSI device and `<n>` is a positive integer that identifies the partition.

Both the block directory and the directories that represent the partitions contain an attribute `dev`. Read the `dev` attribute to find out the major and minor numbers for the entire device or for an individual partition. The value of the `dev` attributes is of the form `<major>:<minor>`.

Example

The following command shows a major of 8 and a minor of 0 for the SCSI device 0:0:1:1:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1/block/sda/dev
8:0
```

Assuming that the device has three partitions `sda1`, `sda2`, and `sda3`, the following commands show the respective major and minor numbers:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1/block/sda/sda1/dev
8:1
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1/block/sda/sda2/dev
8:2
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1/block/sda/sda3/dev
8:3
```

Setting the queue depth

Changing the queue depth is usually a storage server requirement. Check the documentation of the storage server used or contact your storage server support group to establish if there is a need to change this setting.

The value of the `queue_depth` kernel parameter (see “zfcplib device driver kernel parameters” on page 54) is used as the default queue depth of new SCSI devices. You can query the queue depth by issuing a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<SCSI device>/queue_depth
```

Example:

```
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:19:1086537744/queue_depth
16
```

You can change the queue depth of each SCSI device by writing to the `queue_depth` attribute, for example:

```
# echo 8 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:19:1086537744/queue_depth
# cat /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:19:1086537744/queue_depth
8
```

This is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. If you want to make the changes persistent across IPLs you can:

- Use the kernel or module parameter.
- Write a udev rule to change the setting for each new SCSI device.
- Use the appropriate tool or configuration file provided by your distribution.

Starting and stopping collection of QDIO performance statistics

QDIO serves as base support for the qeth device driver (QETH subchannel triplets are CCW devices) and for the zfcplib device driver (FCP channels are CCW devices) that supports SCSI devices.

For QDIO performance statistics in general there is a device group attribute called `/sys/bus/ccw/qdio_performance_stats`.

This attribute is initially set to 0, that is, QDIO performance data is not collected. To start collection for QDIO, write 1 to the attribute, for example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/qdio_performance_stats
```

To stop collection write 0 to the attribute, for example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/qdio_performance_stats
```

Stopping QDIO performance data collection resets the current statistic values to zero.

To display QDIO performance statistics issue:

```
cat /proc/qdio_perf
```

Recovering a failed SCSI device

Before you start: The FCP channel must be online.

Failed SCSI devices are automatically recovered by the zfcplib device driver. You can read the `in_recovery` attribute to check if recovery is under way. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcplib/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<scsi_lun>/in_recovery
```

where the variables have the same meaning as in “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 64.

The value is “1” if recovery is under way and “0” otherwise. If the value is “0” for a non-operational SCSI device, recovery might have failed or the device driver might have failed to detect that the SCSI device is malfunctioning.

To find out if recovery has failed read the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcplib/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<scsi_lun>/failed
```

The value is “1” if recovery has failed and “0” otherwise.

You can start or restart the recovery process for the SCSI device by writing “0” to the `failed` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcplib/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/<scsi_lun>/failed
```

Example

In the following example, SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000 is malfunctioning. The SCSI device is accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 that is connected through an FCP channel with a device bus ID 0.0.3d0c. The first command reveals that recovery is not already under way. The second command manually starts recovery for the SCSI device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcplib/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/in_recovery
0
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcplib/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000/failed
```

Removing SCSI devices

To remove a SCSI device from a target port you need to first unregister the device from the SCSI stack and then remove it from the target port.

You unregister the device by writing “1” to the `delete` attribute of the directory that represents the device in the `sysfs` SCSI branch. See “Mapping the representations of a SCSI device in `sysfs`” on page 65 for information on how to find this directory. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/<device>/delete
```

You can then remove the device from the port by writing the device’s LUN to the port’s `unit_remove` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <fcplun> > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/<device_bus_id>/<wwpn>/unit_remove
```

where the variables have the same meaning as in “Configuring SCSI devices” on page 64.

Example

The following example removes a SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000, accessed through a target port with WWPN 0x500507630300c562 and an FCP channel with a device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c. The corresponding directory in the sysfs SCSI branch is assumed to be `/sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1`.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:1:1/delete
# echo 0x4010403200000000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/unit_remove
```

Scenario

The following scenario describes the life-cycle of a SCSI device with LUN 0x4010403200000000. The device is attached through an FCP channel with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c and accessed through a target port 0x500507630300c562.

The FCP channel is set online, then port and device are configured.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/online
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/port_rescan
# echo 0x4010403200000000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/unit_add
```

SCSI device and port are now to be removed. First the SCSI device must be unregistered from the SCSI stack. Find out the SCSI device for the zfcp unit as follows:

```
# lszfcp -l 0x4010403200000000
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
```

Delete SCSI device 0:0:0:0 and then remove the zfcp unit and port.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/scsi/devices/0:0:0:0/delete
# echo 0x4010403200000000 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/unit_remove
# echo 0x500507630300c562 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/zfcp/0.0.3d0c/port_remove
```

API provided by the zfcp HBA API support



This section provides information for those who want to program SAN management clients that run on Linux on System z.

Table 16 gives an overview of available packages of zfcp HBA API and the binaries that are installed with those versions.

Table 16. *zfcp HBA API library versions*

Package	Installed binaries
zfcp HBA API library 2.1	libzfcpbhaapi.so

Table 16. zfc HBA API library versions (continued)

Package	Installed binaries
zfc HBA API library 2.0	libzfcphbaapi.so
zfc HBA API library 1.4	san_disc command
zfc HBA API library 1.3	libzfcphbaapi.so, san_disc command
zfc HBA API library 1.2 and earlier	libzfcphbaapi.so

Functions provided

The zfc HBA API (see “zfc HBA API (FC-HBA) support” on page 51) is defined in the Fibre Channel - HBA API (FC-HBA) specification (see www.t11.org).

The zfc HBA API implements the following FC-HBA functions:

- HBA_GetVersion()
- HBA_LoadLibrary()
- HBA_FreeLibrary()
- HBA_RegisterLibrary()
- HBA_RegisterLibraryV2()
- HBA_GetNumberOfAdapters()
- HBA_GetAdapterName()
- HBA_OpenAdapter()
- HBA_CloseAdapter()
- HBA_RefreshInformation()
- HBA_RefreshAdapterConfiguration()
- HBA_GetAdapterAttributes()
- HBA_GetAdapterPortAttributes()
- HBA_GetDiscoveredPortAttributes()
- HBA_GetFcpTargetMapping()
- HBA_GetFcpTargetMappingV2()
- HBA_SendScsiInquiry()
- HBA_SendReadCapacity()
- HBA_SendReportLUNs()
- HBA_SendReportLUNsV2()
- HBA_SendCTPassThru
- HBA_SendCTPassThruV2
- HBA_SetRNIDMgmtInfo
- HBA_GetRNIDMgmtInfo
- HBA_SendRNID
- HBA_SendRNIDV
- HBA_SendRPL
- HBA_SendRPS
- HBA_SendSRL
- HBA_SendLIRR
- HBA_GetEventBuffer
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterAddEvents
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterEvents
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterPortEvents
- HBA_RegisterForAdapterPortStatEvents
- HBA_RegisterForTargetEvents
- HBA_RegisterForLinkEvents
- HBA_RemoveCallback

All other FC-HBA functions return status code HBA_STATUS_ERROR_NOT_SUPPORTED where possible.

Note: ZFCP HBA API for Linux 2.6 can access only adapters, ports and units that are configured in the operating system.

Environment variables

The zfc HBA API support uses the following environment variables for logging errors in the zfc HBA API library:

LIB_ZFCP_HBAAPI_LOG_LEVEL

to specify the log level. If not set or set to zero there is no logging (default). If set to an integer value greater than 1, logging is enabled.

LIB_ZFCP_HBAAPI_LOG_FILE

specifies a file for the logging output. If not specified stderr is used.

Chapter 5. Channel-attached tape device driver

The Linux on System z tape device driver supports channel-attached tape devices.

SCSI tape devices attached through a System z9 or zSeries FCP adapter are handled by the zfcpl device driver (see Chapter 4, “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver,” on page 47).

Features

The tape device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- The tape device driver supports channel-attached tape drives that are compatible with IBM 3480, 3490, 3590, and 3592 magnetic tape subsystems. Various models of these device types are handled (for example, the 3490/10).
3592 devices that emulate 3590 devices are recognized and treated as 3590 devices.
- Character and block devices (see “Tape device modes and logical devices”).
- Control operations through **mt** (see “Using the mt command” on page 79).
- Message display support (see “tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes” on page 498).
- Encryption support (see “tape390_crypt - Manage tape encryption” on page 494).
- Up to 128 physical tape devices.

What you should know about channel-attached tape devices

This section provides information about the available operation modes, about devices names, and about device nodes for your channel-attached tape devices.

Tape device modes and logical devices

The tape device driver supports up to 128 physical tape devices. Each physical tape device can be used in three different modes. The tape device driver treats each mode as a separate logical device:

Non-rewinding character device

Provides sequential (traditional) tape access without any caching done in the kernel.

You can use the character device in the same way as any other Linux tape device. You can write to it and read from it using normal Linux facilities such as GNU **tar**. You can perform control operations (such as rewinding the tape or skipping a file) with the standard tool **mt**. Most Linux tape software should work with the character device.

When the device is closed, the tape is left at the current position.

Rewinding character device

Provides tape access like the non-rewinding device, except that the tape is rewound when the device is closed.

Block device

Provides a read-only tape block device.

This device could be used for the installation of software in the same way as tapes are used under other operating systems on the System z platforms. (This is similar to the way most Linux software distributions are shipped on CD using the ISO9660 file system.)

It is advisable to use only the ISO9660 file system on Linux on System z tapes, because this file system is optimized for CD-ROM devices, which – just like 3480, 3490, or 3590 tape devices – cannot perform fast seeks.

The ISO9660 file system image file need not be the first file on the tape but can start at any position. The tape must be positioned at the start of the image file before the mount command is issued to the tape block device.

The file system image must reside on a single tape. Tape block devices cannot span multiple tape volumes.

Tape naming scheme

The tape device driver assigns minor numbers along with an index number when a physical tape device comes online. The naming scheme for tape devices is summarized in Table 17:

Table 17. Tape device names and minor numbers

Device	Names	Minor numbers
Non-rewinding character devices	ntibm<n>	2x<n>
Rewinding character devices	rtibm<n>	2x<n>+1
Block devices	btibm<n>	2x<n>

where <n> is the index number assigned by the device driver. The index starts from 0 for the first physical tape device, 1 for the second, and so on. The name space is restricted to 128 physical tape devices, so the maximum index number is 127 for the 128th physical tape device.

The index number and corresponding minor numbers and device names are not permanently associated with a specific physical tape device. When a tape device goes offline it surrenders its index number. The device driver assigns the lowest free index number when a physical tape device comes online. An index number with its corresponding device names and minor numbers can be reassigned to different physical tape devices as devices go offline and come online.

Tip: Use the **lstape** command (see “lstape - List tape devices” on page 455) to determine the current mapping of index numbers to physical tape devices.

When the tape device driver is loaded, it dynamically allocates a major number to channel-attached character tape devices and a major number to channel-attached block tape devices. The major numbers can but need not be the same. Different major number might be used when the device driver is reloaded, for example when Linux is rebooted.

For online tape devices directories provide information on the major/minor assignments. The directories have the form:

- /sys/class/tape390/ntibm<n>
- /sys/class/tape390/rtibm<n>
- /sys/block/btibm<n>

Each of these directories has a dev attribute. The value of the dev attribute has the form <major>:<minor>, where <major> is the major number for the character or block tape devices and <minor> is the minor number specific to the logical device.

Example

In this example, four physical tape devices are present, with three of them online. The TapeNo column shows the index number and the BusID indicates the

associated physical tape device. In the example, no index number has been allocated to the tape device in the first row. This means that the device is offline and, currently, no names and minor numbers are assigned to it.

```
# lstape --ccw-only
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model DevType/DevMod BlkSize State  Op      MedState
0        0.0.01a1    3490/10      3490/40        auto  UNUSED ---  UNLOADED
1        0.0.01a0    3480/01      3480/04        auto  UNUSED ---  UNLOADED
2        0.0.0172    3590/50      3590/11        auto  IN_USE ---  LOADED
N/A      0.0.01ac     3490/10      3490/40        N/A   OFFLINE ---  N/A
```

The resulting names and minor numbers for the online devices are:

Bus ID	Index (TapeNo)	Device	Device name	Minor number
0.0.01ac	not assigned	not assigned		not assigned
0.0.01a1	0	non-rewind	ntibm0	0
		rewind	rtibm0	1
		block	btibm0	0
0.0.01a0	1	non-rewind	ntibm1	2
		rewind	rtibm1	3
		block	btibm1	2
0.0.0172	2	non-rewind	ntibm2	4
		rewind	rtibm2	5
		block	btibm2	4

For the online character devices, the major/minor assignments can be read from their respective representations in `/sys/class`:

```
# cat /sys/class/tape390/ntibm0/dev
254:0
# cat /sys/class/tape390/rtibm0/dev
254:1
# cat /sys/class/tape390/ntibm1/dev
254:2
# cat /sys/class/tape390/rtibm1/dev
254:3
# cat /sys/class/tape390/ntibm2/dev
254:4
# cat /sys/class/tape390/rtibm2/dev
254:5
```

In the example, the major number used for character devices is 254 the minor numbers are as expected for the respective device names.

Similarly, the major/minor assignments for the online block devices can be read from their respective representations in `/sys/block`:

```
# cat /sys/block/btibm0/dev
254:0
# cat /sys/block/btibm1/dev
254:2
# cat /sys/block/btibm2/dev
254:4
```

The minor numbers are as expected for the respective device names. In the example, the major number used for block devices is also 254.

Creating device nodes

User space programs access tape devices by *device nodes*. Your distribution might create these device nodes for you or provide udev to create them (see “Device nodes provided by udev” on page 4).

If no device nodes are created for you, you need to create them yourself, for example, with the **mknod** command. Refer to the **mknod** man page for further details.

Tip: Use the device names to construct your nodes (see “Tape naming scheme” on page 76).

Example: Defining standard tape nodes

In this example, the tape major number is assumed to be 254 for both the character and block devices. The nodes use the standard form `/dev/<device_name>` for the device nodes and the assignment of minor numbers is according to Table 17 on page 76.

```
# mknod /dev/ntibm0 c 254 0
# mknod /dev/rtibm0 c 254 1
# mknod /dev/btibm0 b 254 0
# mknod /dev/ntibm1 c 254 2
# mknod /dev/rtibm1 c 254 3
# mknod /dev/btibm1 b 254 2
# mknod /dev/ntibm2 c 254 4
# mknod /dev/rtibm2 c 254 5
# mknod /dev/btibm2 b 254 4
...
```

Examples for udev-created tape device nodes

Note

The format of the nodes that udev creates for you depends on distribution-specific configuration files that reside in `/etc/udev/rules.d`. If you use udev, be sure that you use the nodes according to your distribution. The following examples use hypothetical nodes that are provided for illustration purposes only.

If your distribution provides udev, you can use udev to create tape device nodes for you. udev is a utility program that can use the device information in sysfs (see Chapter 2, “Devices in sysfs,” on page 9) to create device nodes.

Apart from creating device nodes that are based on the device names, udev can create additional device nodes that are based on, for example, on device bus-IDs. Unless you change the device bus-IDs of your devices, device nodes that are based on a device bus-ID remain the same and map to the same device, even if the device name of a tape device has changed (for example, after rebooting). udev keeps track of the mapping of the device name and the actual devices for you and so helps you ensure that you are addressing the device you intend to.

For example, the configuration file might instruct udev to create two nodes for each logical device, the standard node and a node that is based on the device bus-ID. For a tape device with a device bus-ID 0.0.01ac it might create:

For the non-rewinding character device:

- `/dev/ntibm0` (standard device node according to the tape naming scheme)
- `/dev/tape/0.0.01ac/non-rewinding`

For the rewinding character device:

- `/dev/rtibm0` (standard device node according to the tape naming scheme)
- `/dev/tape/0.0.01ac/rewinding`

For the block device:

- `/dev/btibm0` (standard device node according to the tape naming scheme)
- `/dev/tape/0.0.01ac/block`

The next section shows how such nodes can be used to access a tape device by device bus-ID, regardless of its device name.

Accessing tapes by bus-ID

You can use device nodes that are based on your tape devices' device bus-IDs to be sure that you access a tape device with a particular bus-ID, regardless of the device name that is assigned to it.

Example

The examples in this section assume that udev provides device nodes as described in “Examples for udev-created tape device nodes” on page 78. To assure that you are addressing a device with bus-ID 0.0.01ac you could make substitutions like the following:

Instead of issuing:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm0 unload
```

issue:

```
# mt -f /dev/tape/0.0.01ac/non-rewinding unload
```

Using the **mt** command

Basic Linux tape control is handled by the **mt** utility. Refer to the man page for general information on **mt**.

Be aware that for channel-attached tape hardware there are some differences in the MTIO interface with corresponding differences for some operations of the **mt** command:

setdensity

has no effect because the recording density is automatically detected on channel-attached tape hardware.

drvbuffer

has no effect because channel-attached tape hardware automatically switches to unbuffered mode if buffering is unavailable.

lock / unlock

have no effect because channel-attached tape hardware does not support media locking.

setpartition / mkpartition

have no effect because channel-attached tape hardware does not support partitioning.

status returns a structure that, aside from the block number, contains mostly SCSI-related data that does not apply to the tape device driver.

load does not automatically load a tape but waits for a tape to be loaded manually.

offline or rewoffl or eject

all include expelling the currently loaded tape. Depending on the stacker mode, it might attempt to load the next tape (see “Loading and unloading tapes” on page 85 for details).

Building a kernel with the tape device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the tape device driver.

The tape device driver is available as a base component with supplementary components for particular hardware and for the block device mode.

Figure 15 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the tape device driver:

Device Drivers --->

...

Character devices --->

...

S/390 tape device support	(CONFIG_S390_TAPE)
└Support for tape block devices	(CONFIG_S390_TAPE_BLOCK)
└Support for 3480/3490 tape hardware	(CONFIG_S390_TAPE_34XX)
└Support for 3590 tape hardware	(CONFIG_S390_TAPE_3590)

Figure 15. Tape kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_S390_TAPE

This option is required if you want to work with channel-attached tape devices. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, tape.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE_BLOCK

This base component option allows you to use channel-attached tapes as block devices.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE_34XX

This option can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, tape_34xx.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE_3590

This option can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, tape_3590.

Setting up the tape device driver

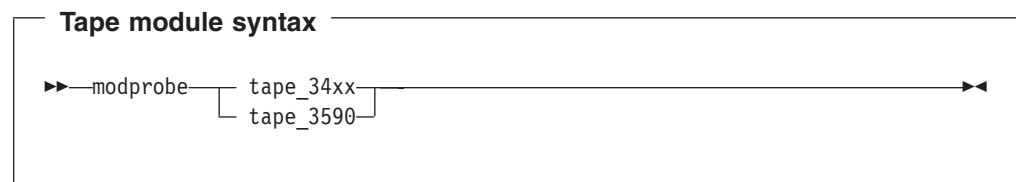
No kernel or module parameters exist for the tape device driver. This section describes how to load the tape modules, where applicable.

For information on device nodes see “Tape naming scheme” on page 76.

Loading the tape device driver

If the `tape_34xx` or `tape_3590` device drivers have not been built into the kernel, you must load the kernel modules before you can work with the tape devices.

Use the **modprobe** command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order.



Refer to the **modprobe** man page for details on **modprobe**.

Working with the tape device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with tape devices:

- Setting a tape device online or offline
- Displaying tape information
- Enabling compression
- Loading and unloading tapes

For information on working with the channel measurement facility, see Chapter 39, “Channel measurement facility,” on page 383.

For information on how to display messages on a tape device’s display unit, see “tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes” on page 498.

Setting a tape device online or offline

Setting a physical tape device online makes all corresponding logical devices accessible:

- The non-rewind character device
- The rewind character device
- The block device (if supported)

At any time, the device can be online to a single Linux instance only. You must set the tape device offline to make it accessible to other Linux instances in a shared environment.

Use the **chccwdev** command (see “chccwdev - Set a CCW device online” on page 402) to set a tape online or offline. Alternatively, you can write “1” to the device’s online attribute to set it online or “0” to set it offline.

When a physical tape device is set online, the device driver assigns an index number to it. This index number is used in the standard device nodes (see “Creating device nodes” on page 78) to identify the corresponding logical devices. The index number is in the range 0 to 127. A maximum of 128 physical tape devices can be online concurrently.

If you are using the standard device nodes, you need to find out which index number the tape device driver has assigned to your tape device. This index number, and consequently the associated standard device node, can change after a tape device has been set offline and back online.

Your distribution might use udev to create alternative device nodes that distinguish devices by the physical device’s bus ID instead of the index number. If you are using such device nodes you do not need to know the index number (see “Examples for udev-created tape device nodes” on page 78).

If you need to know the index number, issue a command of this form:

```
# ltape --ccw-only <device_bus_id>
```

where *<device_bus_id>* is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the physical tape device. The index number is the value in the TapeNo column of the command output.

Examples

- To set a physical tape device with device bus-ID 0.0.015f online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.015f
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/online
```

To find the index number the tape device driver has assigned, issue:

```
# ltape 0.0.015f --ccw-only
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/Model  BlkSize  State   Op      MedState
2        0.0.015f    3480/01       3480/04        auto    UNUSED  ---    LOADED
```

In the example, the assigned index number is “2”. The standard device nodes for working with the device until it is set offline are then:

- /dev/ntibm2 for the non-rewinding device
- /dev/rtibm2 for the rewinding device
- /dev/btibm2 for the block device

- To set a physical tape device with device bus-ID 0.0.015f offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.015f
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/online
```

Displaying tape information

Each physical tape device is represented in a sysfs directory of the form
`/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>`

where `<device_bus_id>` is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the physical tape device. This directory contains a number of attributes with information on the physical device. The attributes: `blocksize`, `state`, `operation`, and `medium_state`, might not show the current values if the device is offline.

Table 18. Tape device attributes

Attribute	Explanation
online	“1” if the device is online or “0” if it is offline (see “Setting a tape device online or offline” on page 81)
cmb_enable	“1” if channel measurement block is enabled for the physical device or “0” if it is not enabled (see Chapter 39, “Channel measurement facility,” on page 383)
cutype	Type and model of the control unit
devtype	Type and model of the physical tape device
blocksize	Currently used block size in bytes or “0” for auto
state	State of the physical tape device, either of: UNUSED Device is not in use and is currently available to any operating system image in a shared environment IN_USE Device is being used as a character device by a process on this Linux image BLKUSE Device is being used as a block device by a process on this Linux image OFFLINE The device is offline. NOT_OP Device is not operational
operation	The current tape operation, for example: --- No operation WRI Write operation RFO Read operation Several other operation codes exist, for example, for rewind and seek.
medium_state	Current state of the tape cartridge: 1 Cartridge is loaded into the tape device 2 No cartridge is loaded 0 The tape device driver does not have information about the current cartridge state

Issue a command of this form to read an attribute:

```
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/<attribute>
```

where `<attribute>` is one of the attributes of Table 18.

Tip: You can display a summary of this information by using the **lstape** command (see “lstape - List tape devices” on page 455).

Example

The following sequence of commands reads the attributes for a physical tape device with a device bus-ID 0.0.015f:

```
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/online
1
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/cmb_enable
0
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/cutype
3480/01
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/devtype
3480/04
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/blocksize
0
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/state
UNUSED
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/operation
---
# cat /bus/ccw/devices/0.0.015f/medium_state
1
```

Issuing an **lstape** command for the same device yields:

```
# lstape 0.0.015f --ccw-only
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/Model  BlkSize  State   Op      MedState
2        0.0.015f    3480/01      3480/04       auto    UNUSED  ---     LOADED
```

Enabling compression

To control Improved Data Recording Capability (IDRC) compression, use the **mt** command provided by the RPM **mt-st**.

Compression is off after the tape device driver has loaded. To switch compression on, issue:

```
# mt -f <node> compression
```

or

```
# mt -f <node> compression 1
```

where **<node>** is the device node for a character device, for example, **/dev/ntibm0**.

To switch compression off, issue:

```
# mt -f <tape> compression 0
```

Any other numeric value has no effect, and any other argument switches compression off.

Example

To switch on compression for a tape device with a device node **/dev/ntibm0** issue:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm0 compression 1
```

Loading and unloading tapes

You can unload tapes by issuing a command of this form:

```
# mt -f <node> unload
```

where *<node>* is one of the character device nodes.

Whether or not you can load tapes from your Linux instance depends on the stacker mode of your tape hardware. There are three possible modes:

manual

Tapes must always be loaded manually by an operator. You can use the **tape390_display** command (see “tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes” on page 498) to display a short message on the tape device’s display unit when a new tape is required.

automatic

If there is another tape present in the stacker, the tape device automatically loads a new tape when the current tape is expelled. You can load a new tape from Linux by expelling the current tape with the **mt** command.

system

The tape device loads a tape when instructed from the operating system. From Linux, you can load a tape with the **tape390_display** command (see “tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes” on page 498). You cannot use the **mt** command to load a tape.

Example

To expel a tape from a tape device that can be accessed through a device node `/dev/ntibm0`, issue:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm0 unload
```

Assuming that the stacker mode of the tape device is “system” and that a tape is present in the stacker, you can load a new tape by issuing:

```
# tape390_display -l "NEW TAPE" /dev/ntibm0
```

“NEW TAPE” is a message that is displayed on the tape devices display unit until the tape device receives the next tape movement command.

Scenario: Using a tape block device

In this scenario, an ISO9660 file system is to be created as the second file on a tape. The scenario uses the **mt** and **mkisofs** commands. Refer to the respective man pages for details.

Assumptions: The following assumptions are made:

- The required tape device driver modules have either been compiled into the kernel or have already been loaded.
- Device nodes are available as defined in “Example: Defining standard tape nodes” on page 78.
- The ISO9660 file system support has been compiled into the kernel.
- A tape device is attached through a device bus-ID 0.0.015f.

1. Create a Linux directory, `somedir`, and fill it with the contents of the file system:

```
# mkdir somedir
# cp <contents> somedir
```

2. Set the tape online:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.015f
```

3. If you are using standard device nodes, find out which index number the tape device driver has assigned to it. You can skip this step if you are using udev-created device nodes that distinguish devices by device bus-ID rather than the index number.

```
# lstape 0.0.015f --ccw-only
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model DevType/Model BlkSize State  Op      MedState
1        0.0.015f    3480/01      3480/04      auto   UNUSED ---      LOADED
```

The index number is shown in the `TapeNo` column of the command output, “1” in the example. The standard device nodes are therefore `/dev/ntibm1`, `/dev/rtibm1`, and `/dev/btibm1`.

4. Insert a tape.
5. Ensure the tape is positioned at the correct position on the tape. For example, to set it to the beginning of the second file, issue:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm1 rewind
# mt -f /dev/ntibm1 fsf 1
```

`fsf` skips a specified number of files, one in the example.

6. Set the block size of the character driver. (The block size 2048 bytes is commonly used on ISO9660 CD-ROMs.)

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm1 setblk 2048
```

7. Write the file system to the character device driver:

```
# mkisofs -l -f -o file.iso somedir
# dd if=file.iso of=/dev/ntibm1 bs=2048
```

8. Set the tape to the beginning of the file:

```
# mt -f /dev/ntibm1 rewind
# mt -f /dev/ntibm1 fsf 1
```

9. Now you can mount your new file system as a block device:

```
# mount -t iso9660 -o ro,block=2048 /dev/btibm1 /mnt
```

Chapter 6. XPRAM device driver

The zSeries architecture in 31-bit mode and the S/390® architecture support only 2 GB (gigabytes) of main storage (main memory). To overcome this limitation additional storage can be declared and accessed as expanded storage. For compatibility reasons, expanded storage can also be declared in the 64-bit mode of zSeries.

The XPRAM device driver is a block device driver that enables Linux on System z to access expanded storage. Thus XPRAM can be used as a basis for fast swap devices and/or fast file systems. Expanded storage range can be swapped in or out of the main storage in 4 KB blocks. All XPRAM devices do always provide a block size of 4096 bytes.

XPRAM features

The XPRAM device driver provides the following features:

- Automatic detection of expanded storage.
If expanded storage is not available, XPRAM fails gracefully with a log message reporting the absence of expanded storage.
- The expanded storage can be divided into up to 32 partitions.

What you should know about XPRAM

This section provides information on XPRAM partitions and the device nodes that make them accessible.

XPRAM partitions and device nodes

The XPRAM device driver uses major number 35. The standard device names are of the form `slram<n>`, where `<n>` is the corresponding minor number.

You can use the entire available expanded storage as a single XPRAM device or divide it into up to 32 partitions. Each partition is treated as a separate XPRAM device.

If the entire expanded storage is used a single device, the device name is `slram0`. For partitioned expanded storage, the `<n>` in the device name denotes the `(n+1)`th partition. For example, the first partition is called `slram0`, the second `slram1`, and the 32nd partition is called `slram31`.

Table 19. XPRAM device names, minor numbers, and partitions

Minor	Name	To access
0	slram0	the first partition or the entire expanded storage if there are no partitions
1	slram1	the second partition
2	slram2	the third partition
...
<n>	slram<n>	the (<n>+1)th partition
...
31	slram31	the 32nd partition

Creating device nodes

User space programs access XPRAM devices by *device nodes*. Your distribution might create these device nodes for you or provide udev to create them (see “Device nodes provided by udev” on page 4).

If no device nodes are created for you, you need to create them yourself, for example, with the **mknod** command. Refer to the **mknod** man page for further details.

Tip: Use the device names to construct your nodes (see “XPRAM partitions and device nodes” on page 87).

Example: Defining standard XPRAM nodes

The nodes use the standard form `/dev/<device_name>` for the device nodes and the assignment of minor numbers is according to Table 19 on page 87.

```
# mknod /dev/slram0 b 35 0
# mknod /dev/slram1 b 35 1
# mknod /dev/slram2 b 35 2
...
# mknod /dev/slram30 b 35 30
# mknod /dev/slram31 b 35 31
```

XPRAM use for diagnosis

Issuing an IPL command to reboot Linux on System z does not reset expanded storage, so it is persistent across IPLs and could be used, for example, to store diagnostic information. The expanded storage is reset by an IML (power off/on).

Reusing XPRAM partitions

You might be able to reuse existing file systems or swap devices on an XPRAM device or partition after reloading the XPRAM device driver (for example, after rebooting Linux). For file systems or swap devices to be reusable, the XPRAM kernel or module parameters for the new device or partition must match the parameters of the previous use of XPRAM.

If you change the XPRAM parameters, you must create a new file system (for example with **mke2fs**) or a new swap device for each partition that has changed. A device or partition is considered changed if its size has changed. All partitions following a changed partition are also considered changed even if their sizes are unchanged.

Building a kernel with the XPRAM device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

To build a kernel with XPRAM support you need to select option `CONFIG_BLK_DEV_XPRAM` in the configuration menu (see Figure 16 on page 89).


```
Device Drivers --->
...
Block devices --->
...
XPRAM disk support (CONFIG_BLK_DEV_XPRAM)
```

Figure 16. XPRAM kernel configuration menu option

The XPRAM support is available as a module, `xpram`, or built-in.

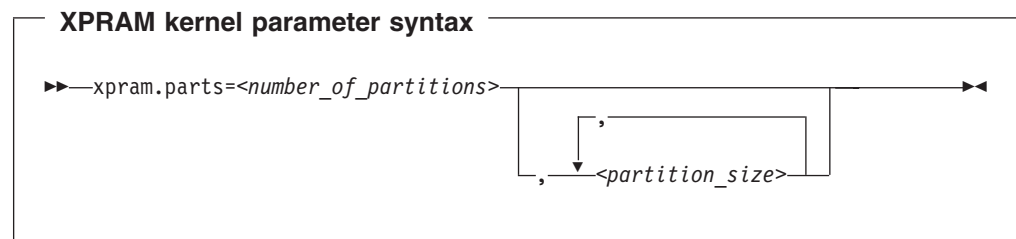
Setting up the XPRAM device driver

This section describes the parameters that you can optionally use to split the available expanded storage into partitions. The syntax is different for the kernel parameters and the corresponding module parameters. By default the entire expanded storage is treated as a single partition.

See “Creating device nodes” on page 88 for information on the device nodes that you need to access the partitions.

Kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure the XPRAM device driver if it has been compiled into the kernel. You can optionally partition the available expanded storage by adding the `xpram.parts` kernel parameter to the kernel parameter line.



where:

<number_of_partitions>

is an integer in the range 1 to 32 that defines how many partitions the expanded storage is split into.

<partition_size>

specifies the size of a partition. The i-th value defines the size of the i-th partition.

Each size may be blank, specified as a decimal value, or a hexadecimal value preceded by 0x, and may be qualified by a magnitude:

- k or K for Kilo (1024) is the default
- m or M for Mega (1024×1024)
- g or G for Giga (1024×1024×1024)

You can specify up to `<number_of_partitions>` values. If you specify less values than `<number_of_partitions>`, the missing values are interpreted as blanks. Blanks are treated like zeros.

Any partition defined with a non-zero size is allocated the amount of memory specified by its size parameter.

Any remaining memory is divided as equally as possible among any partitions with a zero or blank size parameter, subject to the two constraints that blocks must be allocated in multiples of 4K and addressing constraints may leave un-allocated areas of memory between partitions.

Examples

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into four partitions. Partition 1 has 2 GB (hex 800M), partition 4 has 4 GB, and partitions 2 and 3 use equal parts of the remaining storage. If the total amount of extended storage was 16 GB, then partitions 3 and 4 would each have approximately 5 GB.

```
xpram.parts=4,0x800M,0,0,4g
```

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into three partitions. The partition 2 has 512 KB and the partitions 1 and 3 use equal parts of the remaining storage.

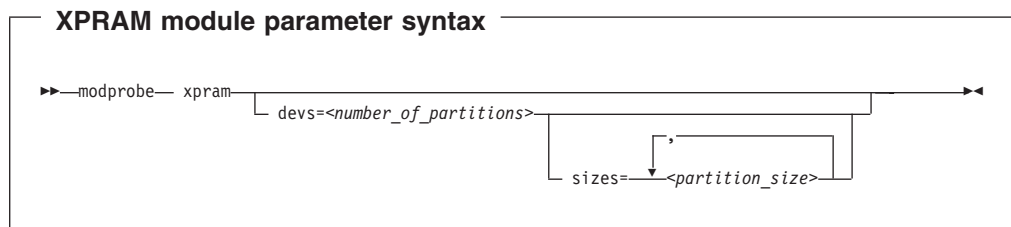
```
xpram.parts=3,,512
```

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into two partitions of equal size.

```
xpram.parts=2
```

Module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure the XPRAM device driver if it has been compiled as a separate module. You can optionally partition the available expanded storage by using the `devs` and `sizes` module parameters when you load the `xpram` module.



where:

<number_of_partitions>

is an integer in the range 1 to 32 that defines how many partitions the expanded storage is split into.

<partition_size>

specifies the size of a partition. The i-th value defines the size of the i-th partition.

Each size is a non-negative integer that defines the size of the partition in KB or a blank. Only decimal values are allowed and no magnitudes are accepted.

You can specify up to **<number_of_partitions>** values. If you specify less values than **<number_of_partitions>**, the missing values are interpreted as blanks. Blanks are treated like zeros.

Any partition defined with a non-zero size is allocated the amount of memory specified by its size parameter.

Any remaining memory is divided as equally as possible among any partitions with a zero or blank size parameter, subject to the two constraints that blocks must be allocated in multiples of 4K and addressing constraints may leave un-allocated areas of memory between partitions.

Examples

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into four partitions. Partition 1 has 2 GB (2097152 KB), partition 4 has 4 GB (4194304 KB), and partitions 2 and 3 use equal parts of the remaining storage. If the total amount of extended storage was 16 GB, then partitions 3 and 4 would each have approximately 5 GB.

```
# modprobe xpram devs=4 sizes=2097152,0,0,4194304
```

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into three partitions. The partition 2 has 512 KB and the partitions 1 and 3 use equal parts of the remaining extended storage.

```
# modprobe xpram devs=3 sizes=,512
```

- The following specification allocates the extended storage into two partitions of equal size.

```
# modprobe xpram devs=2
```


Part 3. Networking

This part describes the network device drivers for Linux on System z.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 7. qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets	95
Device driver functions	97
What you should know about the qeth device driver	99
Building a kernel with the qeth device driver.	105
Setting up the qeth device driver	106
Working with the qeth device driver	107
Working with the qeth device driver in layer 3 mode.	121
Scenario: VIPA – minimize outage due to adapter failure	130
Scenario: Virtual LAN (VLAN) support	135
HiperSockets Network Concentrator.	138
Setting up for DHCP with IPv4.	144
Setting up a Linux guest as a z/VM guest LAN sniffer	145
 Chapter 8. OSA-Express SNMP subagent support	 147
What you need to know about osasnmppd.	147
Setting up osasnmppd	149
Working with the osasnmppd subagent	152
 Chapter 9. LAN channel station device driver	 157
Features.	157
What you should know about LCS	157
Building a kernel with the LCS device driver.	158
Setting up the LCS device driver	158
Working with the LCS device driver	159
 Chapter 10. CTCM device driver	 163
Features.	163
What you should know about CTCM	163
Building a kernel with the CTCM device driver	164
Setting up the CTCM device driver	165
Working with the CTCM device driver	165
Scenarios	169
 Chapter 11. NETIUCV device driver	 173
Features.	173
What you should know about IUCV	173
Building a kernel with the NETIUCV device driver	174
Setting up the NETIUCV device driver	175
Working with the NETIUCV device driver	175
Scenario: Setting up an IUCV connection to a TCP/IP service machine.	178
 Chapter 12. CLAW device driver	 181

Features	181
What you should know about the CLAW device driver	181
Building a kernel with the CLAW device driver	182
Setting up the CLAW device driver	182
Working with the CLAW device driver	182

An example network setup that uses some available network setup types is shown in Figure 17.

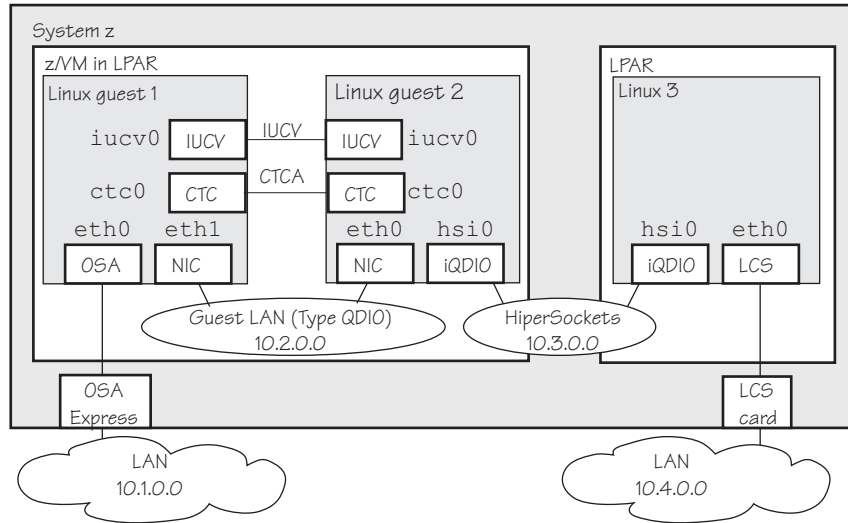


Figure 17. Networking example

In the example there are three Linux instances; two of them run as z/VM guest operating systems in one LPAR and a third Linux instance runs in another LPAR. Within z/VM, Linux instances can be connected directly by IUCV, virtual-CTC, or through a guest LAN. Within and between LPARs, you can connect Linux instances through HiperSockets. Connections outside of a System z complex are possible by OSA-Express cards running either in non-QDIO mode (called LCS here) or in QDIO mode.

Chapter 7. qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets

The qeth device driver supports a number of networking possibilities, among them:

Real connections using OSA-Express

A System z mainframe offers OSA-Express adapters, which are real LAN-adapter hardware, see Figure 18. These adapters provide connections to the outside world, but can also connect virtual systems (between LPARs or between z/VM-guests) within the mainframe. The qeth driver supports these adapters if they are defined to run in queued direct I/O (QDIO) mode (defined as OSD or OSN in the hardware configuration). OSD-devices are the standard System z LAN-adapters, while OSN-devices serve as NCP-adapters. For details on OSA-Express in QDIO mode, see *OSA-Express Customer's Guide and Reference*, SA22-7935.

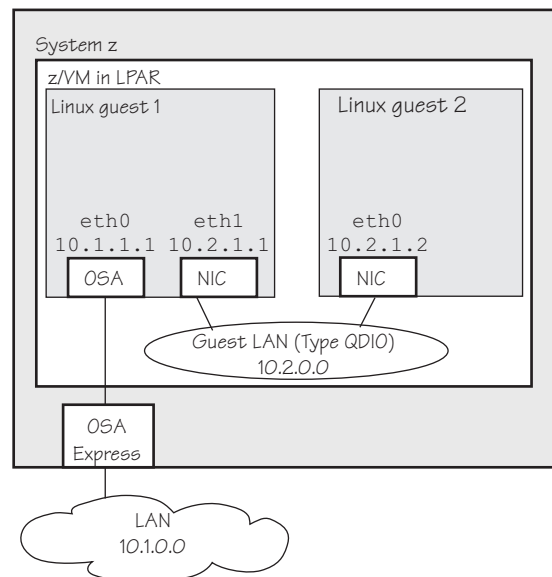


Figure 18. OSA-Express adapters are real LAN-adapter hardware

The OSA-Express LAN adapter may serve as a Network Control Program (NCP) adapter for an internal ESCON/CDLC interface to another mainframe operating system. This feature is exploited by the IBM Communication Controller for Linux (CCL) introduced with System z9. Note that the OSA CHPID type does not support any additional network functions and its only purpose is to provide a bridge between the CDLC and QDIO interfaces to connect to the Linux NCP. For more details see the *IBM Communication Controller Migration Guide*, SG24-6298.

HiperSockets

A System z mainframe offers internal connections called *HiperSockets*. These simulate QDIO network adapters and provide high-speed TCP/IP communication for operating system instances within and across LPARs. For details on HiperSockets, see *HiperSockets Implementation Guide*, SG24-6816.

Virtual connections when running Linux as a z/VM guest

z/VM offers virtualized LAN-adapters that enable connections between z/VM guests and the outside world. It allows definitions of simulated network

interface cards (NICs) attached to certain z/VM guests. The NICs can be connected to a simulated LAN segment called *guest LAN* for z/VM internal communication between z/VM guests, or they can be connected to a virtual switch called *VSWITCH* for external LAN connectivity.

Guest LAN

Guest LANs represent a simulated LAN segment that can be connected to simulated network interface cards. There are three types of guest LANs:

- Simulated OSA-Express mode
- Simulated HiperSockets mode
- Simulated Ethernet mode

Each guest LAN is isolated from other guest LANs on the same system (unless some member of one LAN group acts as a router to other groups).

For information on guest LANs and virtual HiperSockets, refer to *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6080.

Virtual switch

A virtual switch (VSWITCH) is a special-purpose guest LAN that provides external LAN connectivity through an additional OSA-Express device served by z/VM without the need for a routing virtual machine, see Figure 19.

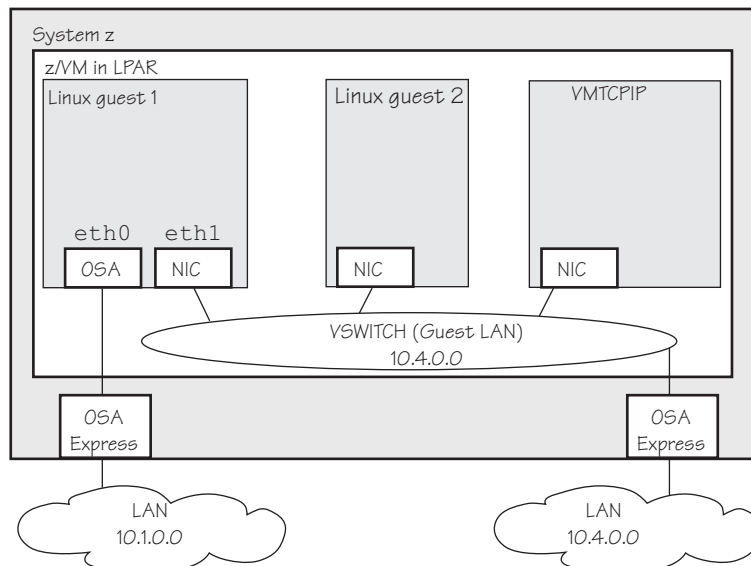


Figure 19. Virtual switch

A dedicated OSA adapter can be an option, but is not required for a VSWITCH.

From a Linux point of view there is no difference between guest LAN- and VSWITCH-devices; thus Linux talks about guest LAN-devices independently of their z/VM-attachment to a guest LAN or VSWITCH.

The qeth network device driver supports System z OSA-Express3, OSA-Express2, and OSA-Express features in QDIO mode, HiperSockets, z/VM guest LAN, and z/VM VSWITCH as follows:

Table 20. The qeth device driver supported OSA-Express features

Feature	System z10	System z9	eServer zSeries
Hipersockets	Yes	Yes (layer 3 only)	Yes (layer 3 only)
OSA-Express3	Yes	No	No
Gigabit Ethernet	Yes	No	No
10 Gigabit Ethernet	Yes	No	No
1000Base-T Ethernet	Yes	No	No
OSA-Express2	Yes	Yes	No
Gigabit Ethernet	Yes	Yes	No
10 Gigabit Ethernet	Yes	Yes	No
1000Base-T Ethernet	Yes	Yes	No
OSA-Express	No	Partly	Yes
Fast Ethernet	No	Yes	Yes
1000Base-T Ethernet	No	Yes	Yes
Gigabit Ethernet	No	Yes	Yes
Token Ring	No	No	Yes (TR is available on z900 and z990)
ATM	No	No	Yes (ATM is available on z900 but requires an RPQ.)

Note: Unless otherwise indicated, OSA-Express refers to OSA-Express, OSA-Express2, and OSA-Express3.

Device driver functions

The qeth device driver supports functions listed in Table 21 and Table 22 on page 98.

Table 21. Real connections

Function	OSA Layer 2	OSA Layer 3	HiperSockets Layer 2 Ethernet	HiperSockets Layer 3 Ethernet
Basic device or protocol functions				
IPv4/multicast/broadcast	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes
IPv6/multicast/broadcast	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes
Non-IP traffic	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
VLAN IPv4/IPv6/non IP	sw/sw/sw	hw/sw/sw	sw/sw/sw	hw/No/No
Linux ARP	Yes	No (hw ARP)	Yes	No
Linux neighbor solicitation	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Unique MAC address	Yes (random)	No	Yes	Yes
Change MAC address	Yes	No	Yes	No
Promiscuous mode	No	No	No	No
MAC headers send/receive	Yes/Yes	faked/faked	Yes/Yes	faked/faked
ethtool support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes


Table 21. Real connections (continued)

Function	OSA Layer 2	OSA Layer 3	HiperSockets Layer 2 Ethernet	HiperSockets Layer 3 Ethernet
Bonding	Yes	No	Yes	No
Priority queueing	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Offload features				
TCP segmentation offload (TSO)	No	Yes	No	No
rx HW checksum	No	Yes	No	No
OSA/QETH specific features				
Special device driver setup for VIPA	No	required	No	Yes
Special device driver setup for proxy ARP	No	required	No	Yes
Special device driver setup for IP takeover	No	required	No	Yes
Special device driver setup for routing IPv4/IPv6	No/No	required/required	No/No	Yes/Yes
Receive buffer count	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Direct connectivity to z/OS	Yes by HW	Yes	no	Yes
SNMP support	Yes	Yes	No	No
Multiport support	Yes	Yes	No	No
Legend: No Function not supported or not required hw Function performed by hardware sw Function performed by software Yes Function supported				

Table 22. Guest LAN connections

Function	OSA Layer 2	OSA Layer 3	HiperSockets
Basic device or protocol features			
IPv4/multicast/broadcast	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes
IPv6/multicast/broadcast	Yes/Yes/Yes	Yes/Yes/Yes	No/No/No
Non-IP traffic	Yes	No	No
VLAN IPv4/IPv6/non IP	sw/sw/sw	hw/sw/No	hw/No/No
Linux ARP	Yes	No (hw ARP)	No
Linux neighbor solicitation	Yes	Yes	No
Unique MAC address	Yes	No	Yes
Change MAC address	Yes	No	No
Promiscuous mode	Yes	Yes	No
MAC headers send/receive	Yes/Yes	faked/faked	faked/faked
ethtool support	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bonding	Yes	No	No

Table 22. Guest LAN connections (continued)

Function	OSA Layer 2	OSA Layer 3	HiperSockets
Priority queueing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Offload features			
TSO	No	No	No
rx HW checksum	No	No	No
OSA/QETH specific features			
Special device driver setup for VIPA	No	required	required
Special device driver setup for proxy ARP	No	required	required
Special device driver setup for IP takeover	No	required	required
Special device driver setup for routing IPv4/IPv6	No/No	required/required	required/required
Receive buffer count	Yes	Yes	Yes
Direct connectivity to z/OS	No	Yes	Yes
SNMP support	No	No	No
Multiport support	No	No	No
Legend: No Function not supported or not required hw Function performed by hardware sw Function performed by software  Function supported			

What you should know about the qeth device driver

This section describes qeth group devices in relation to subchannels and their corresponding device numbers and device bus-IDs. It also describes the interface names that are assigned to qeth group devices and how an OSA-Express adapter handles IPv4 and IPv6 packets.

Layer 2 and layer 3

The qeth device driver consists of a common core and two device disciplines:

The layer 2 discipline (qeth_I2)

The layer 2 discipline supports:

- OSA and OSA guest LAN devices
- OSA for NCP devices
- HiperSockets devices (as of System z10)

The layer 2 discipline is the default setup for OSA. On HiperSockets the default continues to be layer 3. OSA guest LANs are layer 2 by default, while HiperSockets guest LANs are layer 3 by default.

The layer 3 discipline (qeth_I3)

The layer 3 discipline supports:

- OSA and OSA guest LAN devices running in layer 3 mode (with faked link layer headers)

- HiperSockets and HiperSockets guest LAN devices running in layer 3 mode (with faked link layer headers)

This discipline supports those devices that are not capable of running in layer 2 mode. Not all Linux networking features are supported and others need special setup or configuration. See Table 27 on page 108. Some performance-critical applications might benefit from being layer 3.

Keep layer 2 and layer 3 guest LANs separate and keep layer 2 and layer 3 HiperSockets LANs separate. Layer 2 and layer 3 interfaces cannot communicate within a HiperSockets LAN or within a guest LAN. A shared OSA adapter can convert traffic between layer 2 and layer 3 networks.

qeth group devices

The qeth device driver requires three I/O subchannels for each HiperSockets CHPID or OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode. One subchannel is for control reads, one for control writes, and the third is for data. The qeth device driver uses the QDIO protocol to communicate with the HiperSockets and OSA-Express adapter (see Figure 20).

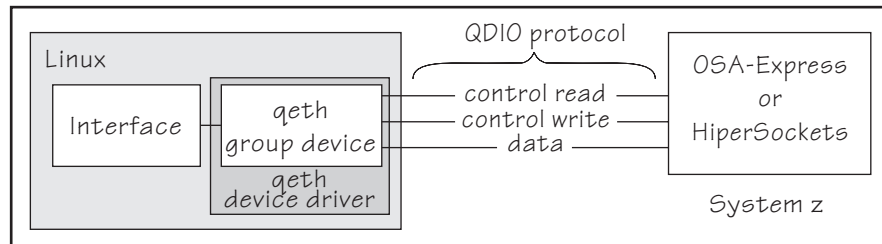


Figure 20. I/O subchannel interface

The three device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel triplet are grouped as one qeth group device. The following rules apply for the device bus-IDs:

- read** no specific rules.
- write** must be the device bus-ID of the read subchannel plus one.
- data** can be any free device bus-ID on the same CHPID.

You can configure different triplets of device bus-IDs on the same CHPID differently. For example, if you have two triplets on the same CHPID they can have different attribute values for priority queueing.

Overview of the steps for setting up a qeth group device

Before you start: Find out how the hardware is configured and which qeth device bus-IDs are on which CHPID, for example by looking at the IOCDS. Identify the device bus-IDs that you want to group into a qeth group device. The three device bus-IDs must be on the same CHPID.

You need to perform several steps before user-space applications on your Linux instance can use a qeth group device:

1. Create the qeth group device.

After booting Linux, each qeth device bus-ID is represented by a subdirectory in `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/`. These subdirectories are then named with the bus IDs

of the devices. For example, a qeth device with bus-IDs 0.0.fc00, 0.0.fc01, and 0.0.fc02 is represented as `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/qeth/0.0.fc00`

2. Configure the device.
3. Set the device online.
4. Activate the device and assign an IP address to it.

These tasks and the configuration options are described in detail in “Working with the qeth device driver” on page 107.

qeth interface names and device directories

The qeth device driver automatically assigns interface names to the qeth group devices and creates the corresponding sysfs structures. According to the type of CHPID and feature used, the naming scheme uses the following base names:

eth <i><n></i>	for Ethernet features (including the OSA-Express ATM device when emulating Ethernet in QDIO mode).
hsi <i><n></i>	for HiperSockets devices.
tr <i><n></i>	for Token Ring features.
osn <i><n></i>	for ESCON/CDLC bridge (OSA NCP).

where *<n>* is an integer that uniquely identifies the device. When the first device for a base name is set online it is assigned 0, the second is assigned 1, the third 2, and so on. Each base name is counted separately.

For example, the interface name of the first Ethernet feature that is set online is “eth0”, the second “eth1”, and so on. When the first HiperSockets device is set online, it is assigned the interface name “hsi0”.

While an interface is online, it is represented in sysfs as:

```
/sys/class/net/<interface>
```

The qeth device driver shares the name space for Ethernet and Token Ring interfaces with the LCS device driver. Each driver uses the name with the lowest free identifier *<n>*, regardless of which device driver occupies the other names. For example, if the first qeth Token Ring feature is set online and there is already one LCS Token Ring feature online, the LCS feature is named “tr0” and the qeth feature is named “tr1”. See also “LCS interface names” on page 157.

The mapping between interface names and the device bus-ID that represents the qeth group device in sysfs is preserved when a device is set offline and back online. However, it can change when rebooting, when devices are ungrouped, or when devices appear or disappear with a machine check.

“Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device” on page 117 and “Finding out the bus ID of a qeth interface” on page 117 provide information on how to map device bus-IDs and interface names.

Support for IP Version 6 (IPv6)

IPv6 is supported on:

- Ethernet interfaces of the OSA-Express adapter running in QDIO mode.
- HiperSockets layer 2 and layer 3 interfaces.
- z/VM guest LAN interfaces running in QDIO or HiperSockets layer 3 mode.
- z/VM guest LAN and VSWITCH interfaces in layer 2.

IPv6 is not supported on the OSA-Express Token Ring and ATM features.

There are noticeable differences between the IP stacks for versions 4 and 6. Some concepts in IPv6 are different from IPv4, such as neighbor discovery, broadcast, and IPSec. IPv6 uses a 16-byte address field, while the addresses under IPv4 are 4 bytes in length.

Stateless autoconfiguration generates unique IP addresses for all Linux instances, even if they share an OSA-Express adapter with other operating systems.

Using IPv6 is largely transparent to users. You must be aware of the IP version when specifying IP addresses and when using commands that return IP version specific output (for example, `qetharp`).

MAC headers in layer 2 mode

In LAN environments, data packets find their destination through Media Access Control (MAC) addresses in their MAC header (see Figure 21).

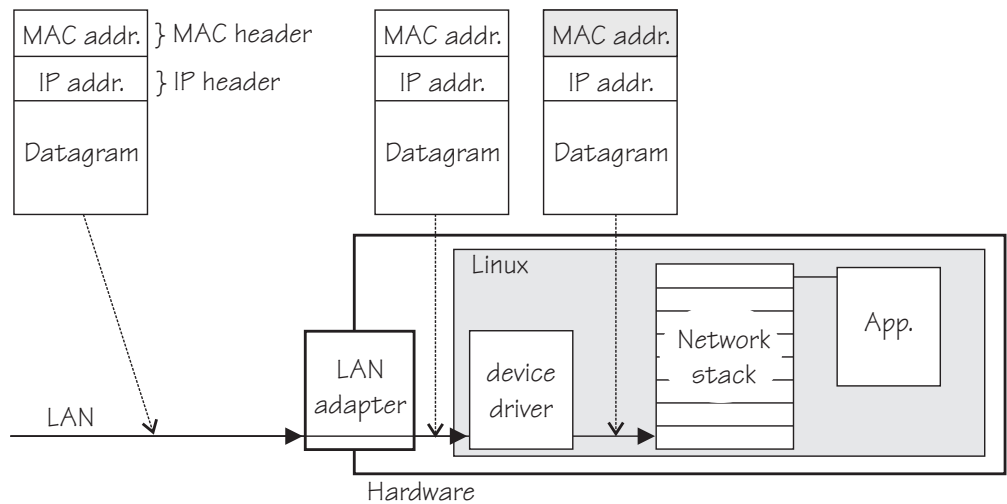


Figure 21. Standard IPv4 processing

MAC address handling as shown in Figure 21) applies to non-mainframe environments and a mainframe environment with an OSA-Express adapter where the layer2 option is enabled.

The layer2 option keeps the MAC addresses on incoming packets. Incoming and outgoing packets are complete with a MAC header at all stages between the Linux network stack and the LAN as shown in Figure 21. This layer2-based forwarding requires unique MAC addresses for all concerned Linux instances.

In layer 2 mode, the Linux TCP/IP stack has full control over the MAC headers and the neighbor lookup. The Linux TCP/IP stack does not configure IPv4 or IPv6 addresses into the hardware, but requires a unique MAC address for the card and the functionality to configure additional Ethernet multicast addresses on the card.

For HyperSockets connections, a MAC address is generated.

For connections within a QDIO based z/VM guest LAN environment, z/VM assigns the necessary MAC addresses to its guests.

For Linux instances that are directly attached to an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode, you should assign the MAC addresses yourself. Consult your distribution documentation on how to assign a MAC address. Alternatively, you can change it by issuing the command:

```
ifconfig <interface> hw ether <MAC address>
```

Note: Be sure not to assign the MAC address of the OSA-Express adapter to your Linux instance.

MAC headers in layer 3 mode

Since a qeth layer 3 mode device driver is an Ethernet offload engine for IPv4 and a partial Ethernet offload engine for IPv6 there are some special things to understand about the layer 3 mode.

To support IPv6 and protocols other than IPv4 the device driver registers a layer 3 card as an Ethernet device to the Linux TCP/IP stack.

In layer 3 mode, the OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode removes the MAC header with the MAC address from incoming IPv4 packets and uses the registered IP addresses to forward a packet to the recipient TCP/IP stack. Thus the OSA-Express adapter is able to deliver IPv4 packets to the correct Linux images. Apart from broadcast packets, a Linux image can only get packets for IP addresses it has configured in the stack and registered with the OSA-Express adapter.

Because the OSA-Express QDIO microcode builds MAC headers for outgoing IPv4 packets and removes them from incoming IPv4 packets, the operating systems' network stacks only send and receive IPv4 packets without MAC headers.

This can be a problem for applications that expect MAC headers. For examples of how such problems can be resolved see "Setting up for DHCP with IPv4" on page 144.

Outgoing frames

The qeth device driver registers the layer 3 card as an Ethernet device. Therefore, the Linux TCP/IP stack will provide complete Ethernet frames to the device driver. If the hardware does not require the Ethernet frame (for example, for IPv4) the driver removes the Ethernet header prior to sending the frame to the hardware. If necessary information like the Ethernet target address is not available (because of the offload functionality) the value is filled with the hardcoded address FAKELL.

Table 23. Ethernet addresses of outgoing frames

Frame	Destination address	Source address
IPv4	FAKELL	Real device address
IPv6	Real destination address	Real device address
Other packets	Real destination address	Real device address

Incoming frames

The device driver provides Ethernet headers for all incoming frames. If necessary information like the Ethernet source address is not available (because of the offload functionality) the value is filled with the hardcoded address FAKELL.

Table 24. Ethernet addresses of incoming frames

Frame	Destination address	Source address
IPv4	Real device address	FAKELL
IPv6	Real device address	FAKELL
Other packets	Real device address	Real source address

Note that if a source or destination address is a multicast or broadcast address the device driver can provide the corresponding (real) Ethernet multicast or broadcast address even when the packet was delivered or sent through the offload engine. Always providing the link layer headers enables packet socket applications like tcpdump to work properly on a qeth layer 3 device without any changes in the application itself (the patch for libpcap is no longer required).

While the faked headers are syntactically correct, the addresses are not authentic, and hence applications requiring authentic addresses will not work. Some examples are given in Table 25.

Table 25. Applications that react differently to faked headers

Application	Support	Reason
tcpdump	Yes	Displays only frames, fake Ethernet information is displayed.
iptables	Partially	As long as the rule does not deal with Ethernet information of an IPv4 frame.
dhcpc	Yes	Is non-IPv4 traffic.

IP addresses

The network stack of each operating system that shares an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode registers all its IP addresses with the adapter. Whenever IP addresses are deleted from or added to a network stack, the device drivers download the resulting IP address list changes to the OSA-Express adapter.

For the registered IP addresses, the OSA-Express adapter off-loads various functions, in particular also:

- Handling MAC addresses and MAC headers
- ARP processing

ARP: The OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode responds to Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) requests for all registered IPv4 addresses.

ARP is a TCP/IP protocol that translates 32-bit IPv4 addresses into the corresponding hardware addresses. For example, for an Ethernet device, the hardware addresses are 48-bit Ethernet Media Access Control (MAC) addresses. The mapping of IPv4 addresses to the corresponding hardware addresses is defined in the ARP cache. When it needs to send a packet, a host consults the ARP cache of its network adapter to find the MAC address of the target host.

If there is an entry for the destination IPv4 address, the corresponding MAC address is copied into the MAC header and the packet is added to the appropriate interface's output queue. If the entry is not found, the ARP functions retain the IPv4 packet, and broadcast an ARP request asking the destination host for its MAC address. When a reply is received, the packet is sent to its destination.

Notes:

1. On an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode, do not set the NO_ARP flag on the Linux Ethernet device. The device driver disables the ARP resolution for IPv4. Since the hardware requires no neighbor lookup for IPv4, but neighbor solicitation for IPv6, the NO_ARP flag is not allowed on the Linux Ethernet device.
2. On HiperSockets, which is a full Ethernet offload engine for IPv4 and IPv6 and supports no other traffic, the device driver sets the NO_ARP flag on the Linux Ethernet interface. Do not remove this flag from the interface.

Building a kernel with the qeth device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the qeth device driver.

Figure 22 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the qeth device driver:

```

Base setup --->

    --- I/O subsystem configuration ---
    ...
    QDIO support                                     (CONFIG_QDIO)
    ...
Device Drivers --->
    ...
    Network device support --->
        ...
        S/390 network device drivers --->
            ...
            Gigabit Ethernet device support          (CONFIG_QETH)
            └─ qeth layer2                            (CONFIG_QETH_L2)
            └─ qeth layer3                            (CONFIG_QETH_L3)
  
```

Figure 22. qeth kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_QDIO

This option provides the Queued Direct I/O base support for IBM System z.

It is required if you want to work with qeth devices. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, qdio.

CONFIG_QETH

This option is required if you want to work with qeth devices. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, qeth. This option depends on CCW, the common code option NETDEVICES, “IP: multicasting”(CONFIG_IP_MULTICAST), and “Networking support”(CONFIG_QDIO).

CONFIG_QETH_L2

Select this option to be able to run qeth devices in layer 2 mode. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `qeth_l2`. This option depends on “Gigabit Ethernet device support” (`CONFIG_QETH`).

CONFIG_QETH_L3

Select this option to be able to run qeth devices in layer 3 mode. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `qeth_l3`.

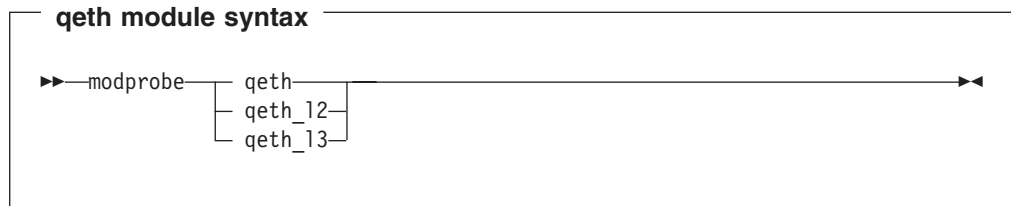
This option depends on “Gigabit Ethernet device support” (`CONFIG_QETH`).

Setting up the qeth device driver

No kernel or module parameters exist for the qeth device driver. qeth devices are set up using `sysfs`.

Loading the qeth device driver modules

If the qeth device driver has not been built into the kernel, you have to load it before you can work with qeth devices. Use the **`modprobe`** command to load the qeth device driver to automatically load all required additional modules in the correct order:



where:

qeth is the core module that contains common functions used for both layer 2 and layer 3 disciplines.

qeth_l2 is the module that contains layer 2 discipline-specific code.

qeth_l3 is the module that contains layer 3 discipline-specific code.

When a qeth device is configured for a particular discipline the driver tries to automatically load the corresponding discipline module, if automatic kernel module loading is enabled in the distribution.

Switching the discipline of a qeth device

To switch the discipline of a device the device must be offline. If the new discipline is accepted by the device driver the old network interface will be deleted. When the new discipline is set online the first time the new network interface is created.

Removing the modules

Removing a module is not possible if there are cross dependencies between the discipline modules and the core module. To release the dependencies from the core module to the discipline module all devices of this discipline must be ungrouped. Now the discipline module can be removed. If all discipline modules are removed the core module can be removed.

Working with the qeth device driver

This section provides an overview of the typical tasks that you need to perform when working with qeth group devices.

Most of these tasks involve writing to and reading from attributes of qeth group devices in sysfs. This is useful on a running system where you want to make dynamic changes. If you want to make the changes persistent across IPLs, your distribution might provide a configuration tool for this.

Table 26 and Table 27 on page 108 serve as both a task overview and a summary of the attributes and the possible values you can write to them. Underlined values are defaults.

Not all attributes are applicable to each device. Some attributes apply only to HiperSockets or only to OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode, other attributes are applicable to IPv4 interfaces only. Refer to the respective task descriptions to see the applicability of each attribute.

OSA for NCP handles NCP-related packets. Most of the attributes do not apply to OSA for NCP devices. The attributes that apply are:

- if_name
- card_type
- buffer_count
- recover

Table 26. qeth tasks and attributes common to layer2 and layer3.

Task	Corresponding attributes	Possible attribute values
"Creating a qeth group device" on page 109	group	n/a, see "Devices and device attributes" on page 11
I "Removing a qeth group device" on page 110	ungroup	0 or 1
"Setting the layer2 attribute" on page 110	layer2	0 or 1, see "Layer 2 and layer 3" on page 99
"Assigning a port name" on page 111	portname	any valid port name
"Providing Large Send - TCP segmentation offload" on page 112	large_send	no TSO
"Using priority queueing" on page 113	priority_queueing	prio_queueing_prec prio_queueing_tos no_prio_queueing no_prio_queueing:0 no_prio_queueing:1 no_prio_queueing:2 no_prio_queueing:3
"Specifying the number of inbound buffers" on page 114	buffer_count	integer in the range 8 to 128, the default is <u>16</u>
"Specifying the relative port number" on page 115	portno	integer, either 0 or 1, the default is <u>0</u>
"Finding out the type of your network adapter" on page 115	card_type	n/a, read-only
"Setting a device online or offline" on page 116	online	<u>0</u> or 1

Table 26. *qeth tasks and attributes common to layer2 and layer3 (continued).*

Task	Corresponding attributes	Possible attribute values
"Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device" on page 117	if_name	n/a, read-only
"Finding out the bus ID of a qeth interface" on page 117	none	n/a
"Activating an interface" on page 117	none	n/a
"Deactivating an interface" on page 119	none	n/a
"Recovering a device" on page 119	recover	1

Table 27. *qeth tasks and attributes in layer 3 mode.*

Task	Corresponding attributes	Possible attribute values
"Setting up a Linux router" on page 121	route4 route6	primary_router secondary_router primary_connector secondary_connector multicast_router no_router
"Setting the checksumming method" on page 124	checksumming	hw_checksumming sw_checksumming no_checksumming
"Setting the Token Ring MAC address format" on page 125	canonical_macaddr ¹	<u>0</u> or 1
"Setting the scope of Token Ring broadcasts" on page 125	broadcast_mode ¹	local all_rings
"Faking broadcast capability" on page 126	fake_broadcast ¹	<u>0</u> or 1
"Starting and stopping collection of QETH performance statistics" on page 120	performance_stats	<u>0</u> or 1
"Taking over IP addresses" on page 126	ipa_takeover/enable	<u>0</u> or 1 or toggle
	ipa_takeover/add4 ipa_takeover/add6 ipa_takeover/del4 ipa_takeover/del6	IPv4 or IPv6 IP address and mask bits
	ipa_takeover/invert4 ipa_takeover/invert6	<u>0</u> or 1 or toggle
"Configuring a device for proxy ARP" on page 128	rxip/add4 rxip/add6 rxip/del4 rxip/del6	IPv4 or IPv6 IP address
"Configuring a device for virtual IP address (VIPA)" on page 130	vipa/add4 vipa/add6 vipa/del4 vipa/del6	IPv4 or IPv6 IP address

¹ not valid for HiperSockets

Tips:

- Instead of using the attributes for IPA, proxy ARP and VIPA directly, use the **qethconf** command.
- Your distribution might also provide a distribution-specific configuration tool. Refer to your distribution documentation for distribution-specific alternatives.

sysfs provides multiple paths through which you can access the qeth group device attributes. For example, if a device with bus-ID 0.0.a100 corresponds to interface eth0:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.a100
/sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a100
/sys/class/net/eth0/device
```

all lead to the attributes for the same device. For example, the following commands are all equivalent and return the same value:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/if_name
eth0
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.a100/if_name
eth0
# cat /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.a100/if_name
eth0
# cat /sys/class/net/eth0/device/if_name
eth0
```

However, the path through the `/sys/class/net` branch is available only while the device is online. Furthermore, it might lead to a different device if the assignment of interface names changes after rebooting or when devices are ungrouped and new group devices created.

Tips:

- Work through one of the paths that are based on the device bus-ID.
- Your distribution might provide a distribution-specific configuration file through which you can set the attributes. Refer to your distribution documentation for distribution-specific information.

The following sections describe the tasks in detail.

Creating a qeth group device

Before you start: You need to know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the read, write, and data subchannel of your OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode or HiperSockets CHPID as defined in the IOCDS of your mainframe.

To define a qeth group device, write the device numbers of the subchannel triplet to `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group`. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id>,<data_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

Result: The qeth device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the qeth group device. The following sections describe how to use these attributes to configure a qeth group device.

Note: If you have defined an OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode for a mainframe earlier than z990 you might need to set the portname attribute (see “Assigning a port name” on page 111).

Example

In this example (see Figure 23), a single OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode is used to connect a Linux instance to a network.

Mainframe configuration:

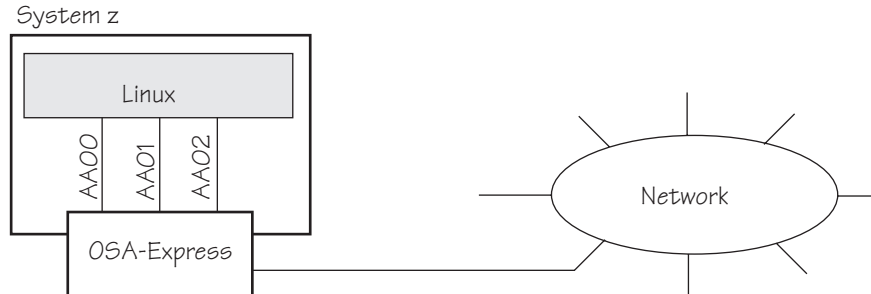


Figure 23. Mainframe configuration

Linux configuration:

Assuming that 0xaa00 is the device number that corresponds to the read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.aa00,0.0.aa01,0.0.aa02 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.aa00
- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.aa00
- /sys/devices/qeth/0.0.aa00

Both the command and the resulting directories would be the same for a HiperSockets CHPID.

Removing a qeth group device

Before you start: The device must be set offline before you can remove it.

To remove a qeth group device, write "1" to the ungroup attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/ungroup
```

Example

This command removes device 0.0.aa00:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.aa00/ungroup
```

Setting the layer2 attribute

If the detected hardware is known to be exclusively run in a discipline (for example, OSN needs the layer 2 discipline) the corresponding discipline module is automatically requested.

The qeth device driver attempts to load the layer3 discipline for HiperSockets devices and layer2 for non-HiperSockets devices.

You can make use of the layer2-mode for almost all device types, however, note the following about layer 2-to-layer 3 conversion:

real OSA-Express

Hardware is able to convert layer 2-to-layer 3 traffic and vice versa and thus there are no restrictions.

HiperSockets

HiperSockets on layer 2 are supported as of System z10. There is no support for layer 2-to-layer 3-conversion and, thus, no communication is possible between HiperSockets layer 2 interfaces and HiperSockets layer 3 interfaces. Do not include HiperSockets layer 2 interfaces and HiperSockets layer 3 interfaces in the same LAN.

z/VM guest LAN

Linux has to configure the same mode as the underlying z/VM virtual LAN definition. The z/VM definition "Ethernet mode" is available for VSWITCHes and for guest LANs of type QDIO.

Before you start: If you are using the layer2 option within a QDIO based guest LAN environment, you cannot define a VLAN with ID "1", because ID "1" is reserved for z/VM use.

The qeth device driver separates the configuration options in sysfs regarding to the device discipline. Hence the first configuration action after grouping the device must be the configuration of the discipline. To set the discipline, issue a command of the form:

```
echo <integer> > /sys/devices/qeth/<first_subchannel>/layer2
```

where <integer> is

- 0 to turn the layer2 attribute off; this results in the layer 3 discipline.
- 1 to turn the layer2 attribute on; this results in the layer 2 discipline (default).

If you configured the discipline successfully, additional configuration attributes are displayed (for example route4 for the layer 3 discipline) and can be configured. If an OSA device is not configured for a discipline but is set online, the device driver assumes it is a layer 2 device and tries to load the layer 2 discipline.

For information on layer2, refer to:

- *OSA-Express Customer's Guide and Reference*, SA22-7935
- *OSA-Express Implementation Guide*, SG25-5848
- *Networking Overview for Linux on zSeries*, REDP-3901
- *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6080

Assigning a port name

Before you start:

- This section does not apply to:
 - HiperSockets and OSN CHPIDs
 - z9 and z10 mainframes
 - z890 and z990 mainframes

- z900 and z800 mainframes with a microcode level of at least Driver 3G - EC stream J11204, MCL032 (OSA level 3.33).
- The device must be offline while you assign the port name.

For S/390 mainframes and z900 or z800 mainframes that are not exempted by the conditions listed under “Before you start” on page 111, you must associate each OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode with a port name. The port name identifies the port for sharing by other operating system instances. The port name can be 1 to 8 characters long and must be uppercase. All operating system instances that share the port must use the same port name.

To assign a port name set the portname device group attribute to the name of the port. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <PORTNAME> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/portname
```

Example

In this example (see Figure 24), two other mainframe operating systems share the OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode and use the port name “NETWORK1”.

Mainframe configuration:

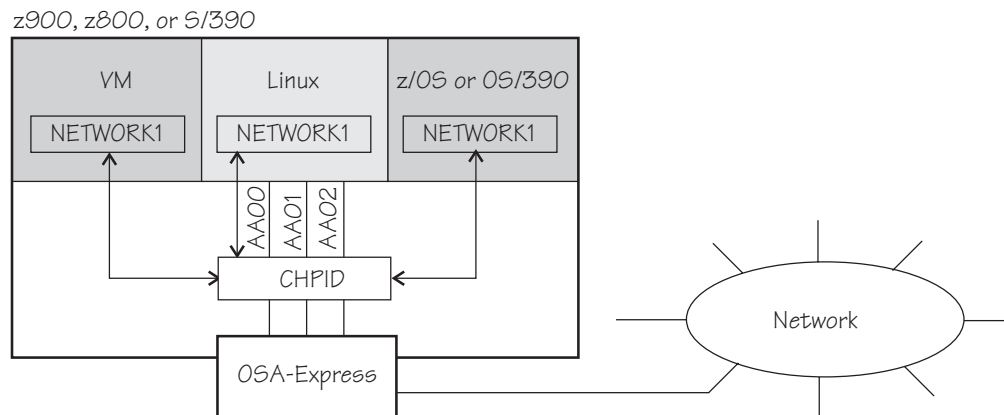


Figure 24. Mainframe configuration

Linux configuration:

```
# echo NETWORK1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.aa00/portname
```

Providing Large Send - TCP segmentation offload

Large Send enables you to offload the TCP segmentation operation (TSO) from the Linux network stack to the OSA-Express2 or OSA-Express3 features. Large Send can lead to enhanced performance and latency for interfaces with predominately large outgoing packets. Large Send availability depends on the layer2 attribute, see Table 28 on page 113.

Table 28. Large Send support

TSO support	Real OSA	Guest LAN OSA	Real HiperSockets	Guest LAN HiperSockets	OSN
layer 2 mode (layer2=1)	No	No	No	No	No ¹
layer 3 mode (layer2=0)	Yes	No	No	No	n/a
¹ If TSO is not supported the large_send sysfs attribute is not displayed.					

To set Large Send, issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/large_send
```

where <value> can be any one of:

no No Large Send is provided. The Linux network stack performs the segmentation. This is the default.

TSO

The network adapter provides hardware Large Send. You can use hardware Large Send for an OSA-Express2 or OSA-Express3 that connects to an interface though a real LAN.

The qeth device driver does not check if the destination IP address is able to receive TCP segmentation offloaded packets. Thus it will send out the packet, which, if systems share an OSA-Express2 or OSA-Express3 CHPID, will lead to unpredictable results for the receiving system.

Examples

- To enable hardware Large Send for a device 0x1a10 issue:

```
# echo TSO > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.1a10/large_send
```

Using priority queueing

Before you start:

- This section applies to OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode only.
- The device must be offline while you set the queueing options.

An OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode has four output queues (queues 0 to 3) in central storage. The priority queueing feature gives these queues different priorities (queue 0 having the highest priority). Queueing is relevant mainly to high traffic situations. When there is little traffic, queueing has no impact on processing. The qeth device driver can put data on one or more of the queues. By default, the driver uses queue 2 for all data.

You can determine how outgoing IP packages are assigned to queues by setting a value for the priority_queueing attribute of your qeth device. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <method> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/priority_queueing
```

where *<method>* can be any of these values:

prio_queueing_prec

to base the queue assignment on the two most significant bits of each packet's IP header precedence field.

prio_queueing_tos

to select a queue according to the IP type of service that is assigned to packets by some applications. The service type is a field in the IP datagram header that can be set with a **setsockopt** call. Table 29 shows how the qeth device driver maps service types to the available queues:

Table 29. IP service types and queue assignment for type of service queueing

Service type	Queue
Low latency	0
High throughput	1
High reliability	2
Not important	3

no_prio_queueing

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 2 for all packets. This is the default.

no_prio_queueing:0

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 0 for all packets.

no_prio_queueing:1

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 1 for all packets.

no_prio_queueing:2

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 2 for all packets. This is equivalent to the default.

no_prio_queueing:3

causes the qeth device driver to use queue 3 for all packets.

Example

To make a device 0xa110 use queueing by type of service issue:

```
# echo prio_queueing_tos > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/a110/priority_queueing
```

Specifying the number of inbound buffers

Before you start: The device must be offline while you specify the number of inbound buffers.

By default, the qeth device driver assigns 16 buffers for inbound traffic to each qeth group device. Depending on the amount of available storage and the amount of traffic, you can assign from 8 to 128 buffers.

Note: For Linux 2.4, this parameter was fixed at 128 buffers. With Linux 2.6, you only get 128 buffers if you set the `buffer_count` attribute to 128.

The Linux memory usage for inbound data buffers for the devices is: (number of buffers) × (buffer size).

The buffer size is equivalent to the frame size which is:

- For an OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode or an OSA-Express CHPID in OSN mode: 64 KB
- For HiperSockets: depending on the HiperSockets CHPID definition, 16 KB, 24 KB, 40 KB, or 64 KB

Set the `buffer_count` attribute to the number of inbound buffers you want to assign. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <number> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/buffer_count
```

Example

In this example, 64 inbound buffers are assigned to device 0.0.a000.

```
# echo 64 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a000/buffer_count
```

Specifying the relative port number

Before you start:

- This section applies to adapters that show more than one port to Linux, physical or logical. These adapters are:
 - OSA-Express3 Gigabit Ethernet on z10 systems.
 - OSA-Express3 1000Base-T Ethernet on z10 systems.
 - OSA-Express ATM on zSeries 800 and 900 systems.

In all other cases only a single port is available.

- The device must be offline while you specify the relative port number.

The OSA-Express3 Gigabit Ethernet adapter and 1000Base-T Ethernet adapter introduced with z10 both provide two physical ports for a single CHPID. On zSeries, ATM adapters provide one physical port (port 0) and two logical ports (0 and 1) for a single CHPID. By default, the qeth group device uses port 0. To use a different port, issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <integer> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/portno
```

Where *<integer>* is either 0 or 1.

Example

In this example, port 1 is assigned to the qeth group device.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a000/portno
```

Finding out the type of your network adapter

You can find out the type of the network adapter through which your device is connected. To find out the type read the device's `card_type` attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/card_type
```

The `card_type` attribute gives information about both the type of network adaptor and also about the type of network link (if applicable) available at the card's ports. See Table 30 on page 116 for details.

Table 30. Possible values of card_type and what they mean

Value of card_type	Adapter type	Link type
OSD_10GIG	OSA card in OSD mode	10 Gigabit Ethernet
OSD_1000		Gigabit Ethernet
OSD_100		Fast Ethernet
OSD_GbE_LANE		Gigabit Ethernet, LAN Emulation
OSD_FE_LANE		Fast Ethernet, LAN Emulation
OSD_TR_LANE		Token Ring, LAN Emulation
OSD_ATM_LANE		ATM, LAN Emulation
OSD_Express		Unknown
HSTR		High Speed Token Ring
OSN	OSA for NCP	ESCON/CDLC bridge or N/A
HiperSockets	HiperSockets, CHPID type IQD	N/A
GuestLAN QDIO	Guest LAN based on OSA	N/A
GuestLAN Hiper	Guest LAN based on HiperSockets	N/A
Unknown	Other	

Example

To find the card_type of a device 0.0.a100 issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/card_type
OSD_100
```

Setting a device online or offline

To set a qeth group device online set the online device group attribute to “1”. To set a qeth group device offline set the online device group attribute to “0”. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Setting a device online associates it with an interface name (see “Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device” on page 117).

Setting a device offline closes this network device. If IPv6 is active, you will lose any IPv6 addresses set for this device. After setting the device online, you can restore lost IPv6 addresses only by issuing the “ifconfig” or “ip” commands again.

Example

To set a qeth device with bus ID 0.0.a100 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/online
```

To set the same device offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/online
```

Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device

When a qeth group device is set online an interface name is assigned to it. To find out the interface name of a qeth group device for which you know the device bus-ID read the group device's `if_name` attribute.

Issue a command of the form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/if_name
```

Tip: you can also use the **lsqeth -p** command (see “lsqeth - List qeth based network devices” on page 451) to obtain a mapping for all qeth interfaces and devices. The `/proc/qeth` file is no longer maintained.

Example

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/if_name
eth0
```

Finding out the bus ID of a qeth interface

For each network interface, there is a directory in `sysfs` under `/sys/class/net/`, for example, `/sys/class/net/eth0` for interface `eth0`. This directory contains a symbolic link “device” to the corresponding device in `/sys/devices`.

Read this link to find the device bus-ID of the device that corresponds to the interface.

Tip: you can also use the **lsqeth -p** command (see “lsqeth - List qeth based network devices” on page 451) to obtain a mapping for all qeth interfaces and devices.

Example

To find out which device bus-ID corresponds to an interface `eth0` issue, for example:

```
# readlink /sys/class/net/eth0/device
../../../../devices/qeth/0.0.a100
```

In this example, `eth0` corresponds to the device bus-ID `0.0.a100`.

Activating an interface

Before you start:

- You need to know the interface name of the qeth group device (see “Finding out the interface name of a qeth group device”).
- You need to know the IP address you want to assign to the device.

The MTU range for OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode is 576 – 61440. However, depending on your medium and networking hardware settings, it might be restricted to 1492, 1500, 8992 or 9000. The recommended MTU size for OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode is 1492 (for Gigabit Ethernet and OSA-Express2 OSD 1000Base-T Ethernet: 8992 for jumbo frames). Choosing 1500 (or 9000 for Gigabit Ethernet or OSA-Express2 OSD 1000Base-T Ethernet jumbo frames) can cause performance degradation.

On HiperSockets, the maximum MTU size is restricted by the maximum frame size as announced by the licensed internal code (LIC). The maximum MTU is equal to the frame size minus 8 KB. Hence, the possible frame sizes of 16 KB, 24 KB, 40 KB or 64 KB result in maximum MTU sizes of 8 KB, 16 KB, 32 KB or 56 KB, respectively.

The MTU size defaults to the correct settings for both HiperSockets and OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode. As a result, you need not specify the MTU size when activating the interface.

Note that, on heavily loaded systems, MTU sizes exceeding 8 KB can lead to memory allocation failures for packets due to memory fragmentation. A symptom of this problem are messages of the form "order-N allocation failed" in the system log; in addition, network connections will drop packets, in extreme cases to the extent that the network is no longer usable.

As a workaround, use MTU sizes at most of 8 KB (minus header size), even if the network hardware allows larger sizes (for example, HiperSockets or 10 Gigabit Ethernet).

You activate or deactivate network devices with **ifconfig** or an equivalent command. For details of the **ifconfig** command refer to the **ifconfig** man page.

Examples

- This example activates a HiperSockets CHPID:

```
# ifconfig hsi0 192.168.100.10 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

- This example activates an OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode:

```
# ifconfig eth0 192.168.100.11 netmask 255.255.255.0 broadcast 192.168.100.255
```

Or, using the default netmask and its corresponding broadcast address:

```
# ifconfig eth0 192.168.100.11
```

- This example reactivates an interface that had already been activated and subsequently deactivated:

```
# ifconfig eth0 up
```

- This example activates an OSA-Express2 CHPID defined as an OSN type CHPID for OSA NCP:

```
# ifconfig osn0 up
```

Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3

The Linux network stack design does not allow feedback about IP address changes. If **ifconfig** or an equivalent command fails to set an IP address on an OSA-Express network CHPID, a query with **ifconfig** shows the address as being set on the interface although the address is not actually set on the CHPID.

There are usually failure messages about not being able to set the IP address or duplicate IP addresses in the kernel messages. You can display these messages with **dmesg**. For most distributions you can also find the messages in `/var/log/messages`.

There may be circumstances that prevent an IP address from being set, most commonly if another system in the network has set that IP address already.

If you are not sure whether an IP address was set properly or experience a networking problem, check the messages or logs to see if an error was encountered when setting the address. This also applies in the context of HiperSockets and to both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. It also applies to whether an IP address has been set for IP takeover, for VIPA, or for proxy ARP.

Duplicate IP addresses

The OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode recognizes duplicate IP addresses on the same OSA-Express adapter or in the network using ARP and prevents duplicates.

Several setups require duplicate addresses:

- To perform IP takeover you need to be able to set the IP address to be taken over. This address exists prior to the takeover. See “Taking over IP addresses” on page 126 for details.
- For proxy ARP you need to register an IP address for ARP that belongs to another Linux instance. See “Configuring a device for proxy ARP” on page 128 for details.
- For VIPA you need to assign the same virtual IP address to multiple devices. See “Configuring a device for virtual IP address (VIPA)” on page 130 for details.

You can use the **qethconf** command (see “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 479) to maintain a list of IP addresses that your device can take over, a list of IP addresses for which your device can handle ARP, and a list of IP addresses that can be used as virtual IP addresses, regardless of any duplicates on the same OSA-Express adapter or in the LAN.

Deactivating an interface

You can deactivate an interface with **ifconfig** or an equivalent command or by setting the network device offline. While setting a device offline involves actions on the attached device, deactivating only stops the interface logically within Linux.

To deactivate an interface with **ifconfig**, Issue a command of the form:

```
# ifconfig <interface_name> down
```

Example

To deactivate eth0 issue:

```
# ifconfig eth0 down
```

Recovering a device

You can use the recover attribute of a qeth group device to recover it in case of failure. For example, error messages in /var/log/messages might inform you of a malfunctioning device. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/recover
```

Example

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/recover
```

Starting and stopping collection of QETH performance statistics

For QETH performance statistics there is a device group attribute called `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/performance_stats`.

This attribute is initially set to 0, that is QETH performance data is not collected. To start collection for a specific QETH device, write 1 to the attribute, for example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/performance_stats
```

To stop collection write 0 to the attribute, for example:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/performance_stats
```

Stopping QETH performance data collection for a specific QETH device is accompanied by a reset of current statistic values to zero.

To display QETH performance statistics, use the **ethtool** command. Refer to the **ethtool** man page for details. The following example shows statistic and device driver information:


```

# ethtool -S eth0
NIC statistics:
  rx skbs: 86
  rx buffers: 85
  tx skbs: 86
  tx buffers: 86
  tx skbs no packing: 86
  tx buffers no packing: 86
  tx skbs packing: 0
  tx buffers packing: 0
  tx sg skbs: 0
  tx sg frags: 0
  rx sg skbs: 0
  rx sg frags: 0
  rx sg page allocs: 0
  tx large kbytes: 0
  tx large count: 0
  tx pk state ch n->p: 0
  tx pk state ch p->n: 0
  tx pk watermark low: 2
  tx pk watermark high: 5
  queue 0 buffer usage: 0
  queue 1 buffer usage: 0
  queue 2 buffer usage: 0
  queue 3 buffer usage: 0
  rx handler time: 856
  rx handler count: 84
  rx do_QDIO time: 16
  rx do_QDIO count: 11
  tx handler time: 330
  tx handler count: 87
  tx time: 1236
  tx count: 86
  tx do_QDIO time: 997
  tx do_QDIO count: 86

# ethtool -i eth0
driver: qeth_l3
version: 1.0
firmware-version: 087a
bus-info: 0.0.f5f0/0.0.f5f1/0.0.f5f2

```

To control QDIO performance statistics as well, see “Starting and stopping collection of QDIO performance statistics” on page 70.

Tip: use the **ethtool** command to display performance statistics for qeth devices instead of the `/proc/qeth_perf` file which is no longer maintained.

Working with the qeth device driver in layer 3 mode

Setting up a Linux router

Before you start:

- A suitable hardware setup is in place that permits your Linux instance to act as a router.
- The Linux instance is set up as a router.

By default, your Linux instance is not a router. Depending on your IP version, IPv4 or IPv6 you can use the `route4` or `route6` attribute of your qeth device to define it as a router. You can set the `route4` or `route6` attribute dynamically, while the qeth device is online.

The same values are possible for `route4` and `route6` but depend on the type of CHPID:

Table 31. Summary of router setup values

Router specification	OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode	HiperSockets CHPID
primary_router	Yes	No
secondary_router	Yes	No
primary_connector	No	Yes
secondary_connector	No	Yes
multicast_router	Yes	Yes
no_router	Yes	Yes

The values are explained in detail below.

An OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode honors the following values:

primary_router

to make your Linux instance the principal connection between two networks.

secondary_router

to make your Linux instance a backup connection between two networks.

A HiperSockets CHPID honors the following values, provided the microcode level supports the feature:

primary_connector

to make your Linux instance the principal connection between a HiperSockets network and an external network (see “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 138).

secondary_connector

to make your Linux instance a backup connection between a HiperSockets network and an external network (see “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 138).

Both types of CHPIDs honor:

multicast_router

causes the qeth driver to receive all multicast packets of the CHPID. For a unicast function for HiperSockets see “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 138.

no_router

is the default. You can use this value to reset a router setting to the default.

Note: To configure Linux running as a VM guest or in an LPAR as a router, IP forwarding must be enabled in addition to setting the route4 or route6 attribute.

For IPv4, this can be done by issuing:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv4.conf.all.forwarding=1
```

For IPv6, this can be done by issuing:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv6.conf.all.forwarding=1
```

Depending on your distribution, you might be able to use distribution-specific configuration files. Refer to your distribution documentation for distribution-specific procedures.

Example

In this example (see Figure 25), two Linux instances, “Linux P” and “Linux S”, running on an IBM mainframe use OSA-Express to act as primary and secondary routers between two networks. IP forwarding needs to be enabled for Linux in an LPAR or as a VM guest to act as a router. This is usually done in procs or in a configuration file; refer to your distribution manual for details.

Mainframe configuration:

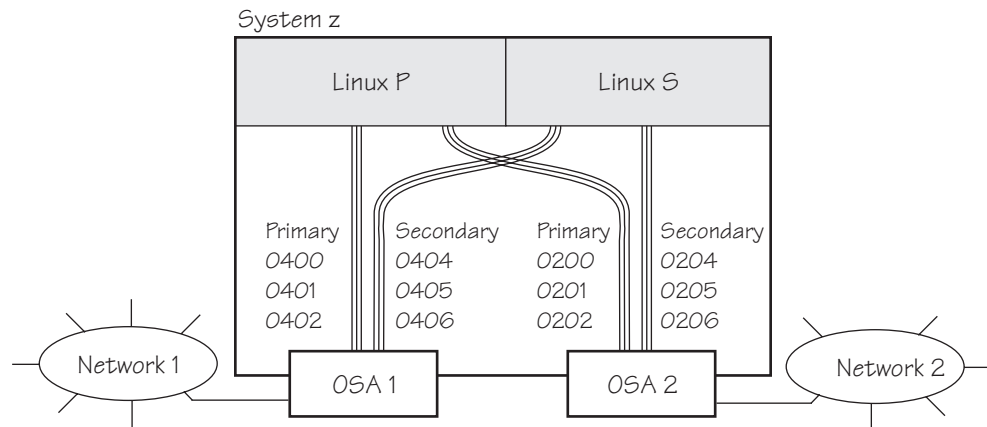


Figure 25. Mainframe configuration

It is assumed that both Linux instances are configured as routers in their respective LPARs or in VM.

Linux P configuration:

To create the qeth group devices:

```
# echo 0.0.0400,0.0.0401,0.0.0402 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
# echo 0.0.0200,0.0.0201,0.0.0202 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

To assign port names to the CHPIDs (For S/390 and certain microcode levels of z900 and z800 mainframes only, see “Assigning a port name” on page 111):

```
# echo NETWORK1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0400/portname
# echo NETWORK2 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0200/portname
```

To make Linux P a primary router for IPv4:

```
# echo primary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0400/route4
# echo primary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0200/route4
```

Linux S configuration:

To create the qeth group devices:

```
# echo 0.0.0404,0.0.0405,0.0.0406 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
# echo 0.0.0204,0.0.0205,0.0.0206 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/group
```

To assign port names to the CHPIDs (For S/390 and certain microcode levels of z900 and z800 mainframes only, see “Assigning a port name” on page 111):

```
# echo NETWORK1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0404/portname
# echo NETWORK2 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0204/portname
```

To make Linux S a secondary router for IPv4:

```
# echo secondary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0404/route4
# echo secondary_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.0204/route4
```

In this example, qeth device 0.01510 is defined as a primary router for IPv6:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth # cd 0.0.1510
# echo 1 > online
# echo primary_router > route6
# cat route6
primary router
```

See “HiperSockets Network Concentrator” on page 138 for further examples.

Setting the checksumming method

A checksum is a form of redundancy check to protect the integrity of data. In general, checksumming is used for network data.

Before you start: The device must be offline while you set the checksumming method.

You can determine how checksumming is performed for incoming IP packages by setting a value for the checksumming attribute of your qeth device. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <method> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/checksumming
```

where *<method>* can be any of these values:

hw_checksumming

performs the checksumming in hardware if the CHPID is an OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode and your OSA adapter hardware supports checksumming.

If you set “hw_checksumming” for an adapter that does not support it or for a HiperSockets CHPID, the TCP/IP stack performs the checksumming instead of the adapter.

sw_checksumming

performs the checksumming in the TCP/IP stack. This is the default.

no_checksumming

suppresses checksumming.

Attention: Suppressing checksumming might jeopardize data integrity.

Examples

- To find out the checksumming setting for a device 0x1a10 read the checksumming attribute:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.1a10/checksumming
sw_checksumming
```

- To enable hardware checksumming for a device 0x1a10 issue:

```
# echo hw_checksumming > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.1a10/checksumming
```

Setting the Token Ring MAC address format

Before you start:

- This section applies to OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode with the Token Ring feature only.
- The device must be offline while you set the Token Ring MAC address format.

The qeth group device can interpret MAC addresses in canonical or non-canonical form in a Token Ring. The default interpretation is the non-canonical form.

To set the MAC address format to canonical set the `canonical_macaddr` device group attribute to “1”. To reset the MAC address format to non-canonical set the `canonical_macaddr` device group attribute to “0”. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/canonical_macaddr
```

Example

In this example, a device 0.0.a000 is instructed to interpret the Token Ring MAC addresses as canonical.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a000/canonical_macaddr
```

Setting the scope of Token Ring broadcasts

Before you start:

- This section applies to OSA-Express CHPIDs in QDIO mode with the Token Ring feature only.
- The device must be offline while you set the scope of Token Ring broadcasts.

To control the scope of Token Ring broadcasts set the `broadcast_mode` attribute to one of the following values:

local

to restrict Token Ring broadcasts to the local LAN segment.

all_rings

to allow Token Ring broadcasts to propagate to all rings that are connected via bridges. This is the default.

Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/broadcast_mode
```

Example

In this example, the scope of broadcasts for a device 0.0.a000 is limited to the local LAN segment.

```
# echo local > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a000/broadcast_mode
```

Faking broadcast capability

Before you start:

- This section applies to devices that do not support broadcast only.
- The device must be offline while you enable faking broadcasts.

For devices that support broadcast, the broadcast capability is enabled automatically.

To find out if a device supports broadcasting, use `ifconfig`. If the resulting list shows the `BROADCAST` flag the device supports broadcast. This example shows that the device `eth0` supports broadcast:

```
# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:09:6B:1A:9A:B7
          inet addr:9.152.25.187  Bcast:9.152.27.255  Mask:255.255.252.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::9:6b00:af1a:9ab7/64  Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1492  Metric:1
          RX packets:107792 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:12176 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:29753474 (28.3 MiB)  TX bytes:1979603 (1.8 MiB)
```

Some processes, for example, the *gated* routing daemon, require the devices' broadcast capable flag to be set in the Linux network stack. To set this flag for devices that do not support broadcast set the `fake_broadcast` attribute of the `qeth` group device to "1". To reset the flag set it to "0".

Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/fake_broadcast
```

Example

In this example, a device `0.0.a100` is instructed to pretend that it has broadcast capability.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a100/fake_broadcast
```

Taking over IP addresses

This section describes how to configure for IP takeover if the `layer2` option (see "MAC headers in layer 2 mode" on page 102) is not enabled. If you have enabled the `layer2` option, you can configure for IP takeover as you would in a distributed server environment.

Taking over an IP address overrides any previous allocation of this address to another LPAR. If another LPAR on the same CHPID has already registered for that IP address, this association is removed.

An OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode can take over IP addresses from any zSeries operating system. IP takeover for HiperSockets CHPIDs is restricted to taking over addresses from other Linux instances in the same Central Electronics Complex (CEC).

There are three stages to taking over an IP address:

Stage 1: Ensure that your qeth group device is enabled for IP takeover

Stage 2: Activate the address to be taken over for IP takeover

Stage 3: Issue a command to take over the address

Stage 1: Enabling a qeth group device for IP takeover

The qeth group device that is to take over an IP address must be enabled for IP takeover. For HiperSockets, both the device that takes over the address and the device that surrenders the address must be enabled. By default, qeth devices are not enabled for IP takeover.

To enable a qeth group device for IP address takeover set the enable device group attribute to “1”. To switch off the takeover capability set the enable device group attribute to “0”. In sysfs, the enable attribute is located in a subdirectory `ipa_takeover`. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/<device_bus_id>/ipa_takeover/enable
```

Example: In this example, a device 0.0.a500 is enabled for IP takeover:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a500/ipa_takeover/enable
```

Stage 2: Activating and deactivating IP addresses for takeover

The qeth device driver maintains a list of IP addresses that each qeth group device can take over. You use the **qethconf** command to display or change this list.

To display the list of IP addresses that are activated for IP takeover issue:

```
# qethconf ipa list
```

To activate an IP address for IP takeover, add it to the list. Issue a command of the form:

```
# qethconf ipa add <ip_address>/<mask_bits> <interface_name>
```

To deactivate an IP address delete it from the list. Issue a command of the form:

```
# qethconf ipa del <ip_address>/<mask_bits> <interface_name>
```

In these commands, `<ip_address>/<mask_bits>` is the range of IP addresses to be activated or deactivated. See “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 479 for more details on the **qethconf** command.

Example: In this example, there is only one range of IP addresses (192.168.10.0 to 192.168.10.255) that can be taken over by device hsi0.

```
# qethconf ipa list
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 hsi0
```

The following command adds a range of IP addresses that can be taken over by device eth0.

```
# qethconf ipa add 192.168.11.0/24 eth0
qethconf: Added 192.168.11.0/24 to /sys/class/net/eth0/device/ipa_takeover/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf ipa list" to check for the result
```

Listing the activated IP addresses now shows both ranges of addresses.

```
# qethconf ipa list
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 hsi0
ipa add 192.168.11.0/24 eth0
```

The following command deletes the range of IP addresses that can be taken over by device eth0.

```
# qethconf ipa del 192.168.11.0/24 eth0
qethconf: Deleted 192.168.11.0/24 from /sys/class/net/eth0/device/ipa_takeover/del4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf ipa list" to check for the result
```

Stage 3: Issuing a command to take over the address

Before you start:

- Both the device that is to take over the IP address and the device that is to surrender the IP address must be enabled for IP takeover. This rule applies to the devices on both OSA-Express and HiperSockets CHPIDs. (See “Stage 1: Enabling a qeth group device for IP takeover” on page 127).
- The IP address to be taken over must have been activated for IP takeover (see “Stage 2: Activating and deactivating IP addresses for takeover” on page 127).

To complete taking over a specific IP address and remove it from the CHPID or LPAR that previously held it, issue an **ifconfig** or equivalent command.

Example: To make a device hsi0 take over IP address 192.168.10.22 issue:

```
# ifconfig hsi0 192.168.10.22
```

The IP address you are taking over must be different from the one that is already set for your device. If your device already has the IP address it is to take over you must issue two commands: First to set it to any free IP address and then to set it to the address to be taken over.

Example: To make a device hsi0 take over IP address 192.168.10.22 if hsi0 is already configured to have IP address 192.168.10.22 issue:

```
# ifconfig hsi0 0.0.0.0
# ifconfig hsi0 192.168.10.22
```

Be aware of the information in “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 118 when using IP takeover.

Configuring a device for proxy ARP

This section describes how to configure for proxy ARP if the layer2 option (see “MAC headers in layer 2 mode” on page 102) is not enabled. If you have enabled the layer2 option, you can configure for proxy ARP as you would in a distributed server environment.

Before you start: This section applies to qeth group devices that have been set up as routers only.

The qeth device driver maintains a list of IP addresses for which a qeth group device handles ARP and issues gratuitous ARP packets. For more information about proxy ARP, see

www.sjdjweis.com/linux/proxyarp/

Use the **qethconf** command to display this list or to change the list by adding and removing IP addresses (see “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 479).

Be aware of the information in “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 118 when working with proxy ARP.

Example

Figure 26 shows an environment where proxy ARP is used.

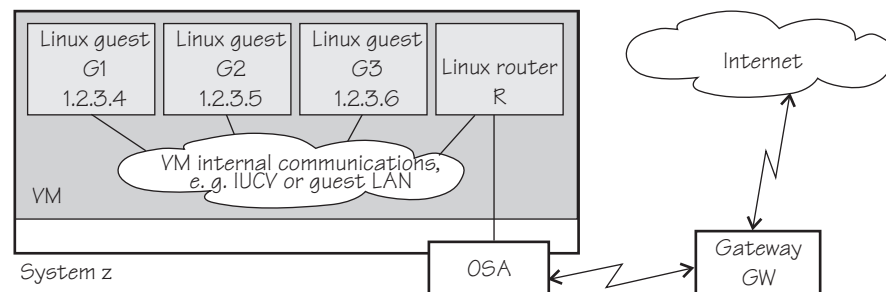


Figure 26. Example of proxy ARP usage

G1, G2, and G3 are Linux guests (connected, for example, through a guest LAN to a Linux router R), reached from GW (or the outside world) via R. R is the ARP proxy for G1, G2, and G3. That is, R agrees to take care of packets destined for G1, G2, and G3. The advantage of using proxy ARP is that GW does not need to know that G1, G2, and G3 are behind a router.

To receive packets for 1.2.3.4, so that it can forward them to G1 1.2.3.4, R would add 1.2.3.4 to its list of IP addresses for proxy ARP for the interface that connects it to the OSA adapter.

```
# qethconf parp add 1.2.3.4 eth0
qethconf: Added 1.2.3.4 to /sys/class/net/eth0/device/rxip/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf parp list" to check for the result
```

After issuing similar commands for the IP addresses 1.2.3.5 and 1.2.3.6 the proxy ARP configuration of R would be:

```
# qethconf parp list
parp add 1.2.3.4 eth0
parp add 1.2.3.5 eth0
parp add 1.2.3.6 eth0
```

Configuring a device for virtual IP address (VIPA)

This section describes how to configure for VIPA if the layer2 option (see “MAC headers in layer 2 mode” on page 102) is not enabled. If you have enabled the layer2 option, you can configure for VIPA as you would in a distributed server environment.

Before you start:

- This section does not apply to HiperSockets.
- Virtual IP address (VIPA) can only be configured if the kernel has been compiled with the common code configuration option `CONFIG_DUMMY`.

System z use VIPAs to protect against certain types of hardware connection failure. You can assign VIPAs that are independent from particular adapter. VIPAs can be built under Linux using *dummy* devices (for example, “dummy0” or “dummy1”).

The qeth device driver maintains a list of VIPAs that the OSA-Express adapter accepts for each qeth group device. Use the **qethconf** utility to add or remove VIPAs (see “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 479).

For an example of how to use VIPA, see “Scenario: VIPA – minimize outage due to adapter failure.”

Be aware of “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 118 when working with VIPAs.

Scenario: VIPA – minimize outage due to adapter failure

This chapter describes how to use:

- Standard VIPA
- Source VIPA (version 2.0.0 and later)

Using VIPA you can assign IP addresses that are not associated with a particular adapter. This minimizes outage caused by adapter failure. Standard VIPA is usually sufficient for applications, such as Web Server, that do *not* open connections to other nodes. Source VIPA is used for applications that open connections to other nodes. Source VIPA Extensions enable you to work with multiple VIPAs per destination in order to achieve multipath load balancing.

Notes:

1. The VIPA functionality requires a kernel built with the `CONFIG_DUMMY` option.
2. See the information in “Confirming that an IP address has been set under layer 3” on page 118 concerning possible failure when setting IP addresses for OSA-Express features in QDIO mode (qeth driver).
3. The configuration file layout for Source VIPA has changed since the 1.x versions. In the 2.0.0 version a *policy* is included. For details see the README and the man pages provided with the package.

Standard VIPA

Purpose

VIPA is a facility for assigning an IP address to a system, instead of to individual adapters. It is supported by the Linux kernel. The addresses can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.

Usage

These are the main steps you must follow to set up VIPA in Linux:

1. Create a dummy device with a *virtual IP address*.
2. Ensure that your service (for example, the Apache Web server) listens to the virtual IP address assigned above.
3. Set up *routes* to the virtual IP address, on clients or gateways. To do so, you can use either:
 - Static routing (shown in the example of Figure 27).
 - Dynamic routing. For details of how to configure routes, you must refer to the documentation delivered with your *routing daemon* (for example, zebra or gated).

If outage of an adapter occurs, you must *switch adapters*.

- To do so under static routing, you should:
 1. Delete the route that was set previously.
 2. Create an alternative route to the virtual IP address.
- To do so under dynamic routing, you should refer to the documentation delivered with your *routing daemon* for details.

Example

This example assumes static routing is being used, and shows you how to:

1. Configure VIPA under static routing.
2. Switch adapters when an adapter outage occurs.

Figure 27 shows the network adapter configuration used in the example.

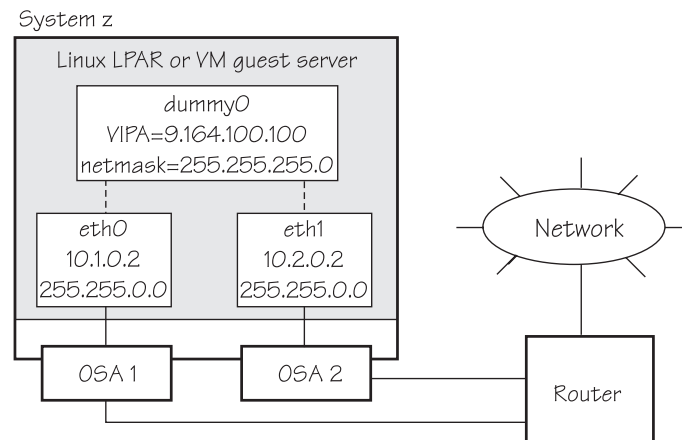


Figure 27. Example of using Virtual IP Address (VIPA)

1. Define the real interfaces

```
[server]# ifconfig eth0 10.1.0.2 netmask 255.255.0.0
[server]# ifconfig eth1 10.2.0.2 netmask 255.255.0.0
```

2. If the dummy component has not been compiled into the kernel, ensure that the dummy module has been loaded. If necessary, load it by issuing:

```
[server]# modprobe dummy
```

3. Create a dummy interface with a virtual IP address 9.164.100.100 and a netmask 255.255.255.0:

```
[server]# ifconfig dummy0 9.164.100.100 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

4. Enable the network devices for this VIPA so that it accepts packets for this IP address.

```
[server]# qethconf vipa add 9.164.100.100 eth0
qethconf: Added 9.164.100.100 to /sys/class/net/eth0/device/vipa/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf vipa list" to check for the result
[server]# qethconf vipa add 9.164.100.100 eth1
qethconf: Added 9.164.100.100 to /sys/class/net/eth1/device/vipa/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf vipa list" to check for the result
```

For IPv6, the address is specified in IPv6 format:

```
[server]# qethconf vipa add 2002000000000000000000000012345678 eth0
qethconf: Added 2002000000000000000000000012345678 to /sys/class/net/eth0/device/vipa/add6.
qethconf: Use "qethconf vipa list" to check for the result
[server]# qethconf vipa add 2002000000000000000000000012345678 eth1
qethconf: Added 2002000000000000000000000012345678 to /sys/class/net/eth1/device/vipa/add6.
qethconf: Use "qethconf vipa list" to check for the result
```

5. Ensure that the addresses have been set:

```
[server]# qethconf vipa list
vipa add 9.164.100.100 eth0
vipa add 9.164.100.100 eth1
```

6. Ensure that your service (such as the Apache Web server) listens to the virtual IP address.
7. Set up a route to the virtual IP address (static routing), so that VIPA can be reached via the gateway with address 10.1.0.2.

```
[router]# route add -host 9.164.100.100 gw 10.1.0.2
```

Now we assume an *adapter outage* occurs. We must therefore:

1. Delete the previously-created route.

```
[router]# route delete -host 9.164.100.100
```

2. Create the alternative route to the virtual IP address.

```
[router]# route add -host 9.164.100.100 gw 10.2.0.2
```

Source VIPA

Purpose

Source VIPA is particularly suitable for high-performance environments. It selects one source address out of a range of source addresses when it replaces the source address of a socket. The reason for using several source addresses lies in the inability of some operating system kernels to do load balancing among several connections with the same source and destination address over several interfaces.

To achieve load balancing, a *policy* has to be selected in the *policy* section of the configuration file of Source VIPA (`/etc/src_vipa.conf`). This policy section also allows

to specify several source addresses used for one destination. Source VIPA then applies the source address selection according to the rules of the policy selected in the configuration file.

This Source VIPA solution does not affect kernel stability. Source VIPA is controlled by a configuration file containing flexible rules for when to use Source VIPA based on destination IP address ranges.

Note: This implementation of Source VIPA applies to IPv4 only.

Usage

Installation:

```
make
make starter
make install
```

Paths can be changed in the Makefile. Defaults are:

```
SRC_VIPA_PATH=/lib
SRC_VIPA_STARTER_PATH=/usr/local/bin
```

The starter script should be in the execution path when you start the application.

Migration: If you migrate from an earlier version of Source VIPA and do not need multiple VIPAs, the *onevipa policy* followed by your VIPA is the recommended change (see “Policies” on page 134). Please check your syslog (usually in /var/log/messages) for problems the first time you use the new version.

Configuration: With Source VIPA version 2.0.0 the configuration file has changed: the *policy* section was added. The default configuration file is /etc/src_vipa.conf.

/etc/src_vipa.conf or the file pointed to by the environment variable SRC_VIPA_CONFIG_FILE, contains lines such as the following:

```
# comment
D1.D2.D3.D4/MASK POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 [T1.T2.T3.T4 [...]]
.INADDR_ANY P1-P2 POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 [T1.T2.T3.T4 [...]]
.INADDR_ANY P POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 [T1.T2.T3.T4 [...]]
```

D1.D2.D3.D4/MASK specifies a range of destination addresses and the number of bits set in the subnet mask (MASK). As soon as a socket is opened and connected to these destination addresses and the application does not do an explicit bind to a source address, Source VIPA does a bind to one of the source addresses specified (S, T, [...]) using the policy selected in the configuration file to distribute the source addresses. See the policy section below for available load distribution policies. Instead of IP addresses in dotted notation, hostnames can also be used and will be resolved using DNS.

.INADDR_ANY P1-P2 POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 or .INADDR_ANY P POLICY S1.S2.S3.S4 causes bind calls with .INADDR_ANY as a local address to be intercepted if the port the socket is bound to is between P1 and P2 (inclusive). In this case, .INADDR_ANY will be replaced by one of the source addresses specified (S, T, [...]), which can be 0.0.0.0.

All .INADDR_ANY statements will be read and evaluated in order of appearance. This means that multiple .INADDR_ANY statements can be used to have bind calls intercepted for every port outside a certain range. This is useful, for example, for rlogin, which uses the bind command to bind to a local port but with .INADDR_ANY

as a source address to use automatic source address selection. See “Policies” below for available load distribution policies.

The default behavior for all ports is that the kind of bind calls will not be modified.

Policies: With Source VIPA Extensions you provide a range of dummy source addresses for replacing the source addresses of a socket. The policy selected determines which method is used for selecting the source addresses from the range of dummy addresses..

onevipa

Only the first address of all source addresses specified is used as source address.

random

The source address used is selected randomly from all the specified source addresses.

llr (local round robin)

The source address used is selected in a round robin manner from all the specified source addresses. The round robin takes place on a per-invocation base: each process is assigned the source addresses round robin independently from other processes.

rr:ABC

Stands for round robin and implements a global round robin over all Source VIPA instances sharing the same configuration file. All processes using Source VIPA access an IPC shared memory segment to fulfil a global round robin algorithm. This shared memory segment is destroyed when the last running Source VIPA ends. However, if this process does not end gracefully (for example, is ended by a `kill` command), the shared memory segment (size: 4 bytes) can stay in the memory until it is removed by `ipcrm`. The tool `ipcs` can be used to display all IPC resources and to get the key or id used for `ipcrm`. ABC are UNIX[®] permissions in octal writing (for example, 700) that are used to create the shared memory segment. This permission mask should be as restrictive as possible. A process having access to this mask can cause an imbalance of the round robin distribution in the worst case.

lc

Attempts to balance the number of connections per source address. This policy always associates the socket with the VIPA that is least in use. If the policy cannot be parsed correctly, the policy is set to round robin per default.

Enabling an application: The command:

```
src_vipa.sh <application and parameters>
```

enables the Source VIPA functionality for the application. The configuration file is read once the application is started. It is also possible to change the starter script and run multiple applications using different Source VIPA settings in separate files. For this, a `SRC_VIPA_CONFIG_FILE` environment variable pointing to the separate files has to be defined and exported prior to invoking the respective application.

Notes:

1. `LD_PRELOAD` security prevents `setuid` executables to be run under Source VIPA; programs of this kind can only be run when the real UID is 0. The ping utility is usually installed with `setuid` permissions.
2. The maximum number of VIPAs per destination is currently defined as 8.

Example

Figure 28 shows a configuration where two applications with VIPA 9.164.100.100 and 9.164.100.200 are to be set up for Source VIPA with a local round robin policy.

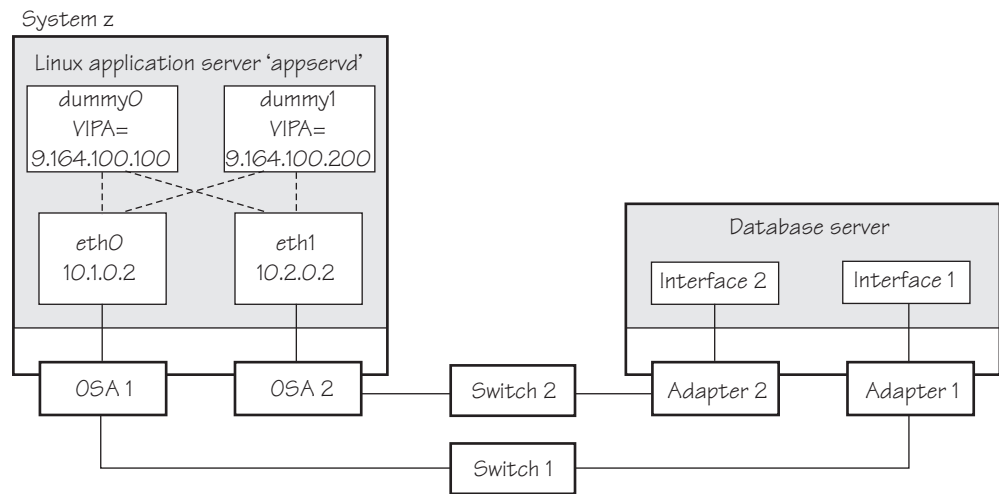


Figure 28. Example of using source VIPA

The required entry in the Source VIPA configuration file is:

```
9.0.0.0/8 lrr 9.164.100.100 9.164.100.200
```

Scenario: Virtual LAN (VLAN) support

VLAN technology works according to IEEE Standard 802.1Q by logically segmenting the network into different broadcast domains so that packets are switched only between ports designated for the same VLAN. By containing traffic originating on a particular LAN to other LANs within the same VLAN, switched virtual networks avoid wasting bandwidth, a drawback inherent in traditional bridged/switched networks where packets are often forwarded to LANs that do not require them.

Building a Linux kernel with VLAN and OSA-Express support is a prerequisite for using VLAN under Linux.

VLAN is not supported on Token Ring Interfaces of the OSA-Express adapter running in QDIO mode.

Introduction to VLANs

VLANs increase traffic flow and reduce overhead by allowing you to organize your network by traffic patterns rather than by physical location. In a conventional network topology, such as that shown in Figure 29 on page 136, devices communicate across LAN segments in different broadcast domains using routers. Although routers add latency by delaying transmission of data while using more of the data packet to determine destinations, they are preferable to building a single broadcast domain, which could easily be flooded with traffic.

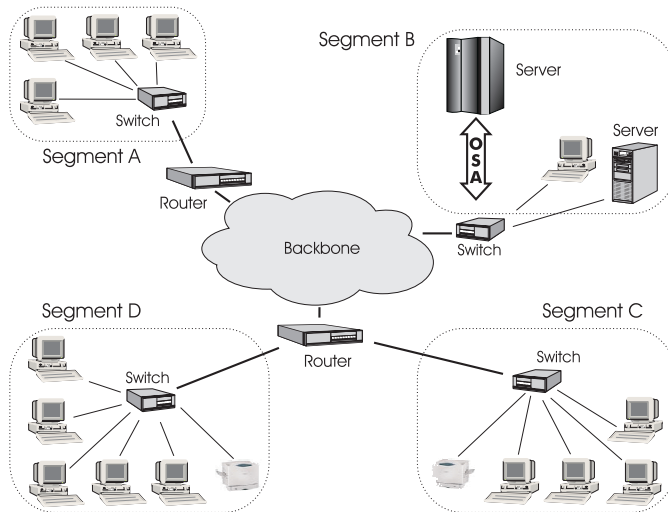


Figure 29. Conventional routed network

By organizing the network into VLANs through the use of Ethernet switches, distinct broadcast domains can be maintained without the latency introduced by multiple routers. As Figure 30 shows, a single router can provide the interfaces for all VLANs that appeared as separate LAN segments in the previous figure.

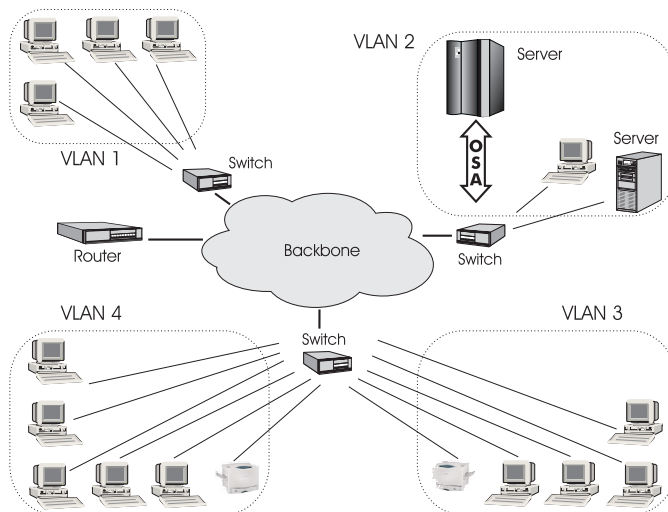


Figure 30. Switched VLAN network

Figure 31 on page 137 shows how VLANs can be organized logically, according to traffic flow, rather than being restricted by physical location. If workstations 1-3 communicate mainly with the small server, VLANs can be used to organize only these devices in a single broadcast domain that keeps broadcast traffic within the group. This reduces traffic both inside the domain and outside, on the rest of the network.

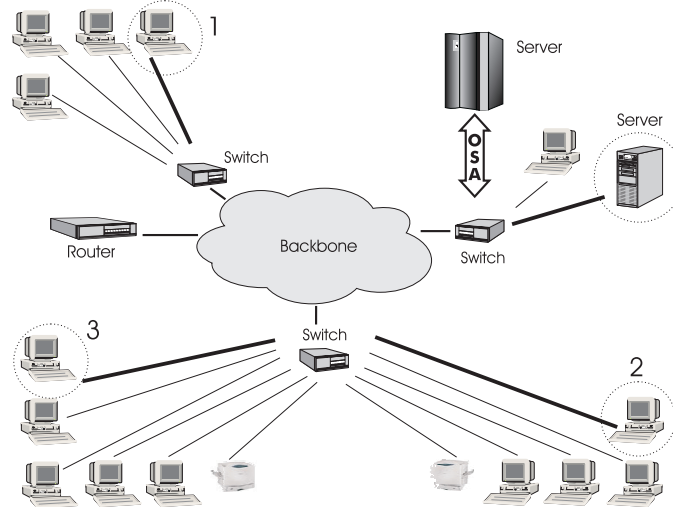


Figure 31. VLAN network organized for traffic flow

Configuring VLAN devices

VLANs are configured using the **vconfig** command. Refer to the **vconfig** man page for details.

Information on the current VLAN configuration is available by listing the files in `/proc/net/vlan/*`

with `cat` or `more`. For example:

```
bash-2.04# cat /proc/net/vlan/config
VLAN Dev name | VLAN ID
Name-Type: VLAN_NAME_TYPE_RAW_PLUS_VID_NO_PAD bad_proto_recvd: 0
eth2.100 | 100 | eth2
eth2.200 | 200 | eth2
eth2.300 | 300 | eth2
bash-2.04# cat /proc/net/vlan/eth2.300
eth2.300 VID: 300 REORDER_HDR: 1 dev->priv_flags: 1
          total frames received: 10914061
          total bytes received: 1291041929
          Broadcast/Multicast Rcvd: 6

          total frames transmitted: 10471684
          total bytes transmitted: 4170258240
          total headroom inc: 0
          total encap on xmit: 10471684
Device: eth2
INGRESS priority mappings: 0:0 1:0 2:0 3:0 4:0 5:0 6:0 7:0
EGRESS priority Mappings:
bash-2.04#
```

Examples

VLANs are allocated in an existing interface representing a physical Ethernet LAN. The following example creates two VLANs, one with ID 3 and one with ID 5.

```
ifconfig eth1 9.164.160.23 netmask 255.255.224.0 up
vconfig add eth1 3
vconfig add eth1 5
```

The vconfig commands have added interfaces "eth1.3" and "eth1.5", which you can then configure:

```
ifconfig eth1.3 1.2.3.4 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
ifconfig eth1.5 10.100.2.3 netmask 255.255.0.0 up
```

The traffic that flows out of eth1.3 will be in the VLAN with ID=3 (and will not be received by other stacks that listen to VLANs with ID=4).

The internal routing table will ensure that every packet to 1.2.3.x goes out via eth1.3 and everything to 10.100.x.x via eth1.5. Traffic to 9.164.1xx.x will flow through eth1 (without a VLAN tag).

To remove one of the VLAN interfaces:

```
ifconfig eth1.3 down
vconfig rem eth1.3
```

The following example illustrates the definition and connectivity test for a VLAN comprising five different Linux systems (two LPARs, two VM guests, and one Intel® system), each connected to a physical Ethernet LAN through eth1:

```
(LINUX1: LPAR 64bit)
vconfig add eth1 5
ifconfig eth1.5 10.100.100.1 broadcast 10.100.100.255 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
```

```
(LINUX2: LPAR 31bit)
vconfig add eth1 5
ifconfig eth1.5 10.100.100.2 broadcast 10.100.100.255 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
```

```
(LINUX3: VM Guest 64bit)
vconfig add eth1 5
ifconfig eth1.5 10.100.100.3 broadcast 10.100.100.255 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
```

```
(LINUX4: VM Guest 31bit)
vconfig add eth1 5
ifconfig eth1.5 10.100.100.4 broadcast 10.100.100.255 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
```

```
(LINUX5: Intel)
vconfig add eth1 5
ifconfig eth1.5 10.100.100.5 broadcast 10.100.100.255 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
```

Test the connections:

```
ping 10.100.100.[1 - 5]           // Unicast-PING
ping -I eth1.5 224.0.0.1          // Multicast-PING
ping -b 10.100.100.255            // Broadcast-PING
```

HiperSockets Network Concentrator

This section describes how to configure a HiperSockets Network Concentrator on a QETH device in layer 3 mode.

Before you start: This section applies to IPv4 only. The HiperSockets Network Concentrator connector settings are available in layer 3 mode only.

The HiperSockets Network Concentrator connects systems to an external LAN within one IP subnet using HiperSockets. HiperSockets Network Concentrator connected systems appear as if they were directly connected to the LAN. This

helps to reduce the complexity of network topologies resulting from server consolidation. HiperSockets Network Concentrator allows to migrate systems from the LAN into a zSeries Server environment, or systems connected by a different HiperSockets Network Concentrator into a zSeries Server environment, without changing the network setup. Thus, HiperSockets Network Concentrator helps to simplify network configuration and administration.

Design

A connector Linux system forwards traffic between the external OSA interface and one or more internal HiperSockets interfaces. This is done via IPv4 forwarding for unicast traffic and via a particular bridging code (xcec_bridge) for multicast traffic.

A script named `ip_watcher.pl` observes all IP addresses registered in the HiperSockets network and sets them as Proxy ARP entries (see “Configuring a device for proxy ARP” on page 128) on the OSA interfaces. The script also establishes routes for all internal systems to enable IP forwarding between the interfaces.

All unicast packets that cannot be delivered in the HiperSockets network are handed over to the connector by HiperSockets. The connector also receives all multicast packets to bridge them.

Setup

The setup principles for configuring the HiperSockets Network Concentrator on a mainframe Linux system are as follows:

leaf nodes

The leaf nodes do not require a special setup. To attach them to the HiperSockets network, their setup should be as if they were directly attached to the LAN. They do not have to be Linux systems.

connector systems

In the following, HiperSockets Network Concentrator IP refers to the subnet of the LAN that is extended into the HiperSockets net.

- If you want to support forwarding of all packet types, define the OSA interface for traffic into the LAN as a multicast router (see “Setting up a Linux router” on page 121).

If only unicast packages are to be forwarded, there is also the possibility not to identify the OSA interface as multicast router: add the interface name to the `start_hsync` script and only unicast packets will be forwarded.

- All HiperSockets interfaces involved must be set up as connectors: set the `route4` attributes of the corresponding devices to “primary_connector” or to “secondary_connector”. Alternatively, you can add the OSA interface name to the `start` script as a parameter. This option results in HiperSockets Network Concentrator ignoring multicast packets, which are then not forwarded to the HiperSockets interfaces.
- IP forwarding must be enabled for the connector partition. This can be achieved either manually with the command

```
sysctl -w net.ipv4.ip_forward=1
```

Alternatively, distribution-dependent configuration files can be used to activate IP forwarding for the connector partition automatically after booting.

- The network routes for the HiperSockets interface must be removed, a network route for the HiperSockets Network Concentrator IP subnet has to be established via the OSA interface. To achieve this, the IP address 0.0.0.0 can be assigned to the HiperSockets interface while an address used in the HiperSockets Network Concentrator IP subnet is to be assigned to the OSA interface. This sets the network routes up correctly for HiperSockets Network Concentrator.
- To *start* HiperSockets Network Concentrator, run the script `start_hsync.sh`. You can specify an interface name as optional parameter. This makes HiperSockets Network Concentrator use the specified interface to access the LAN. There is no multicast forwarding in that case.
- To *stop* HiperSockets Network Concentrator, use the command `killall ip_watcher.pl` to remove changes caused by running HiperSockets Network Concentrator.

Availability setups

If a connector system fails during operation, it can simply be restarted. If all the startup commands are executed automatically, it will instantaneously be operational again after booting. Two common availability setups are mentioned here:

One connector partition and one monitoring system

As soon as the monitoring system cannot reach the connector for a specific timeout (for example, 5 seconds), it restarts the connector. The connector itself monitors the monitoring system. If it detects (with a longer timeout than the monitoring system, for example, 15 seconds) a monitor system failure, it restarts the monitoring system.

Two connector systems monitoring each other

In this setup, there is an active and a passive system. As soon as the passive system detects a failure of the active connector, it takes over operation. In order to do this it needs to reset the other system to release all OSA resources for the `multicast_router` operation. The failed system can then be restarted manually or automatically, depending on the configuration. The passive backup HiperSockets interface can either switch into `primary_connector` mode during the failover, or it can be setup as `secondary_connector`. A `secondary_connector` takes over the connecting functionality, as soon as there is no active `primary_connector`. This setup has a faster failover time than the first one.

For further information about availability consult the general documentation of Linux on System z on availability.

Hints

- The MTU of the OSA and HiperSockets link should be of the same size. Otherwise multicast packets not fitting in the link's MTU are discarded as there is no IP fragmentation for multicast bridging. Warnings are printed to `/var/log/messages` or a corresponding syslog destination.
- The script `ip_watcher.pl` prints error messages to the standard error descriptor of the process.
- `xcec-bridge` logs messages and errors to syslog. On most distributions this creates entries in `/var/log/messages`.
- Registering all internal addresses with the OSA adapter can take several seconds for each address.

- To shut down the HiperSockets Network Concentrator functionality, simply issue `killall ip_watcher.pl`. This removes all routing table and Proxy ARP entries added while using HiperSockets Network Concentrator.

Notes

- With the current OSA and HiperSockets hardware design, broadcast packets that are sent out of an interface are echoed back by the hardware of the originating system. This makes it impossible to bridge broadcast traffic without causing bridging loops. Therefore, broadcast bridging is currently disabled.
- Unicast packets are routed by the common Linux IPv4 forwarding mechanisms. As bridging and forwarding are done at the IP Level, the IEEE 802.1q VLAN and the IPv6 protocol are not supported.
- For restrictions regarding multicast and broadcast forwarding, visit the IBM developerWorks Web site at:
www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/perf/tuning_rec_networking.shtml.
- To use HiperSockets Network Concentrator the `s390-tools` package from developerWorks is required.

Examples

Figure 32 shows a network environment where a Linux instance C acts as a network concentrator that connects other operating system instances on a HiperSockets LAN to an external LAN.

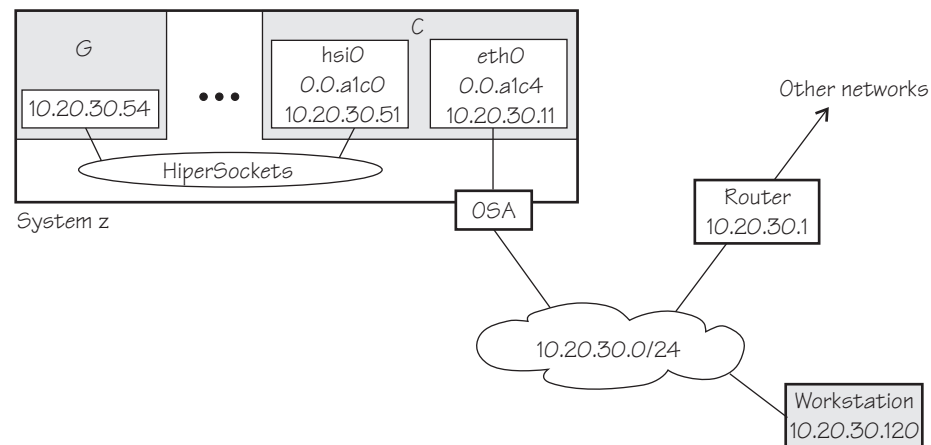


Figure 32. HiperSockets network concentrator setup

Setup for the network concentrator C:

The HiperSockets interface `hsi0` (device bus-ID `0.0.a1c0`) has IP address `10.20.30.51`, and the netmask is `255.255.255.0`. The default gateway is `10.20.30.1`.

Issue:

```
# echo primary_connector > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a1c0/route4
```

The OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode interface `eth0` (with device bus-ID `0.0.a1c4`) has IP address `10.20.30.11`, and the netmask is `255.255.255.0`. The default gateway is `10.20.30.1`.

Issue:

```
# echo multicast_router > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a1c4/route4
```

To enable IP forwarding issue:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv4.ip_forward=1
```

Tip: Refer to your distribution information on how to use configuration files to automatically enable IP forwarding when booting.

To remove the network routes for the HiperSockets interface issue:

```
# route del -net 10.20.30.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 dev hsi0
```

To start the HiperSockets network concentrator run the script start_hsync.sh. Issue:

```
# start_hsync.sh &
```

Setup for G:

No special setup required. The HiperSockets interface has IP address 10.20.30.54, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Setup for workstation:

No special setup required. The network interface IP address is 10.20.30.120, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Figure 33 shows the example of Figure 32 on page 141 with an additional mainframe. On the second mainframe a Linux instance D acts as a HiperSockets network concentrator.

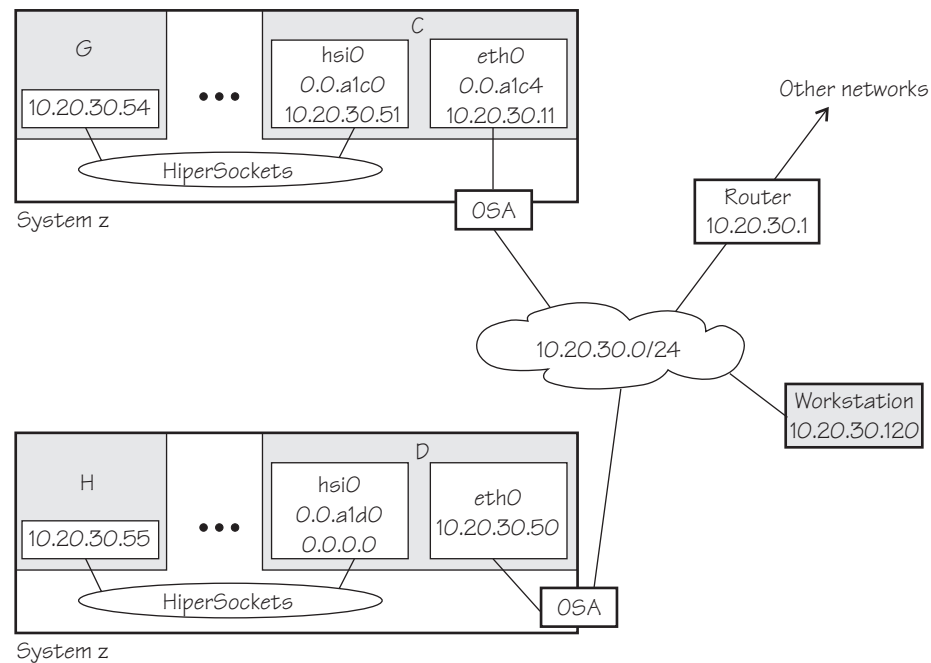


Figure 33. Expanded HiperSockets network concentrator setup

The configuration of C, G, and the workstation remain the same as for Figure 32 on page 141.

Setup for the network concentrator D:

The HiperSockets interface hsi0 has IP address 0.0.0.0.

Assuming that the device bus-ID of the HiperSockets interface is 0.0.a1d0, issue:

```
# echo primary_connector > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/qeth/0.0.a1d0/route4
```

The OSA-Express CHPID in QDIO mode interface eth0 has IP address 10.20.30.50, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

D is not configured as a multicast router, it therefore only forwards unicast packets.

To enable IP forwarding issue:

```
# sysctl -w net.ipv4.ip_forward=1
```

Tip: Refer to your distribution information on how to use configuration files to automatically enable IP forwarding when booting.

To start the HiperSockets network concentrator run the script `start_hsync.sh`. Issue:

```
# start_hsync.sh &
```

Setup for H:

No special setup required. The HiperSockets interface has IP address 10.20.30.55, and the netmask is 255.255.255.0. The default gateway is 10.20.30.1.

Setting up for DHCP with IPv4

For connections through an OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode, the OSA-Express adapter offloads ARP, MAC header, and MAC address handling (see “MAC headers in layer 3 mode” on page 103). Because a HiperSockets connection does not go out on a physical network, there are no ARP, MAC headers, and MAC addresses for packets in a HiperSockets LAN. The resulting problems for DHCP are the same in both cases and the fixes for connections through the OSA-Express adapter also apply to HiperSockets.

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a TCP/IP protocol that allows clients to obtain IP network configuration information (including an IP address) from a central DHCP server. The DHCP server controls whether the address it provides to a client is allocated permanently or is leased temporarily. DHCP specifications are described by RFC 2131 “Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol” and RFC 2132 “DHCP options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions”, which are available on the Internet at

www.ietf.org/

Two types of DHCP environments have to be taken into account:

- DHCP via OSA-Express adapters in QDIO mode
- DHCP in a z/VM guest LAN

For information on setting up DHCP for Linux on System z in a z/VM guest LAN environment, refer to Redpaper *Linux on IBM eServer zSeries and S/390: TCP/IP Broadcast on z/VM Guest LAN*, REDP-3596 at

www.ibm.com/redbooks/

This book discusses *dhclient* and *dhcp* as examples of a DHCP client and a DHCP server you can use. The distribution you use might provide different DHCP client and server programs. For example, some distributions use the *dhcpcd* client program.

Required options for using DHCP on Linux on System z

The following options are required if you are using *dhclient* on Linux on System z with layer3:

- You need to run *dhclient* with option **-B**.

This option instructs the DHCP server to broadcast its response to the DHCP client. Because the OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode forwards packets to Linux based on IP addresses, a DHCP client that requests an IP address could not receive the response from the DHCP server without this option.

- You need to run *dhclient* with option **-I**.

Specifies the client identifier string. On default *dhclient* uses the MAC address of the network interface as default. Hence, without this option, all Linux guests that share the same OSA-Express adapter in QDIO mode would also have the same client identifier.

You need no special options for using *dhcp* on Linux for System z.

Setting up a Linux guest as a z/VM guest LAN sniffer

This topic describes how you can set up a Linux instance to act as a guest LAN sniffer, for example, to make data on guest LAN traffic available to tools like TCPDUMP or ETHEREAL. The guest LAN sniffer can also be used on a guest that is defined through a z/VM virtual switch. If the switch connects to a VLAN that includes nodes outside z/VM, these external nodes are beyond the scope of the sniffer.

For general information on VLAN and z/VM virtual switches, refer to Redpaper *Linux on IBM eServer zSeries and S/390: VSWITCH and VLAN Features of z/VM 4.4*, REDP-3719 at

www.ibm.com/redbooks/

Before you start:

- You need class B authorization on z/VM.
- The Linux guest to be set up as a guest LAN sniffer must run as a guest of the same z/VM as the guest LAN you want to investigate.

Linux setup:

Ensure that the qeth device driver has been compiled into the Linux kernel or that the qeth device driver has been loaded as a module.

z/VM setup:

Ensure that the Linux guest is authorized for the switch and for promiscuous mode.

Perform the following steps from a CMS session on your z/VM:

1. Check if the Linux guest already has the required authorizations; issue the following CP command:

```
q vswitch <switchname> promisc
```

where <switchname> is the name of the virtual switch. If the output lists the Linux guest as authorized for promiscuous mode, no further setup is required.

2. If the output from step 1 does not list the Linux guest, check if the guest is authorized for the virtual switch; issue the following CP command:

```
q vswitch <switchname> acc
```

where <switchname> is the name of the virtual switch.

If the output lists the Linux guest as authorized, you must temporarily revoke the authorization for the switch before you can grant authorization for promiscuous mode. Issue a CP command of this form:

```
set vswitch <switchname> revoke <userid>
```

where <switchname> is the name of the virtual switch and <userid> is the z/VM user ID of the Linux guest.

3. Authorize the Linux guest for the switch and for promiscuous mode; issue a CP command of this form:

```
set vswitch <switchname> grant <userid> promisc
```

where *<switchname>* is the name of the virtual switch and *<userid>* is the z/VM user ID of the Linux guest.

For details on the CP commands used in this section, refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

Chapter 8. OSA-Express SNMP subagent support

The OSA-Express Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) subagent (osasnmpd) supports management information bases (MIBs) for the following OSA-Express features in QDIO mode only:

- OSA-Express
 - Fast Ethernet
 - 1000Base-T Ethernet
 - Gigabit Ethernet
 - Token Ring
 - ATM (running Ethernet LAN emulation)
- OSA-Express2
 - Gigabit Ethernet
 - 10 Gigabit Ethernet
 - 1000Base-T Ethernet (System z9 and System z10)
- OSA-Express3
 - Gigabit Ethernet
 - 10 Gigabit Ethernet
 - 1000Base-T Ethernet

This subagent capability through the OSA-Express features is also called *Direct SNMP* to distinguish it from another method of accessing OSA SNMP data through OSA/SF, a package for monitoring and managing OSA features that does not run on Linux.

See “osasnmpd – Start OSA-Express SNMP subagent” on page 475 for information on the **osasnmpd** command itself.

To use the osasnmpd subagent you need:

- An OSA-Express feature running in QDIO mode with the latest textual MIB file for the appropriate LIC level (recommended)
- The qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets
- The osasnmpd subagent from s390-tools
- One of:
 - net-snmp package 5.1.x or higher
 - ucd-snmp package 4.2.x (recommended 4.2.3 or higher)

What you need to know about osasnmpd

The osasnmpd subagent requires a master agent to be installed on a Linux system. You get the master agent from either the net-snmp or the ucd-snmp package. The subagent uses the Agent eXtensibility (AgentX) protocol to communicate with the master agent.

net-snmp/ucd-snmp is an Open Source project that is owned by the Open Source Development Network, Inc. (OSDN). For more information on net-snmp/ucd-snmp visit

net-snmp.sourceforge.net/

When the master agent (snmpd) is started on a Linux system, it binds to a port (default 161) and awaits requests from SNMP management software. Subagents can connect to the master agent to support MIBs of special interest (for example, OSA-Express MIB). When the osasnmppd subagent is started, it retrieves the MIB objects of the OSA-Express features currently present on the Linux system. It then registers with the master agent the object IDs (OIDs) for which it can provide information.

An OID is a unique sequence of dot-separated numbers (for example, .1.3.6.1.4.1.2) that represents a particular information. OIDs form a hierarchical structure. The longer the OID, that is the more numbers it is made up of, the more specific is the information that is represented by the OID. For example, .1.3.6.1.4.1.2 represents all IBM-related network information while ..1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188 represents all OSA-Express-related information.

A MIB corresponds to a number of OIDs. MIBs provide information on their OIDs including textual representations the OIDs. For example, the textual representation of .1.3.6.1.4.1.2 is .iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.ibm.

The structure of the MIBs might change when updating the OSA-Express licensed internal code (LIC) to a newer level. If MIB changes are introduced by a new LIC level, you need to download the appropriate MIB file for the LIC level (see “Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB” on page 149), but you do not need to update the subagent. Place the updated MIB file in a directory that is searched by the master agent.

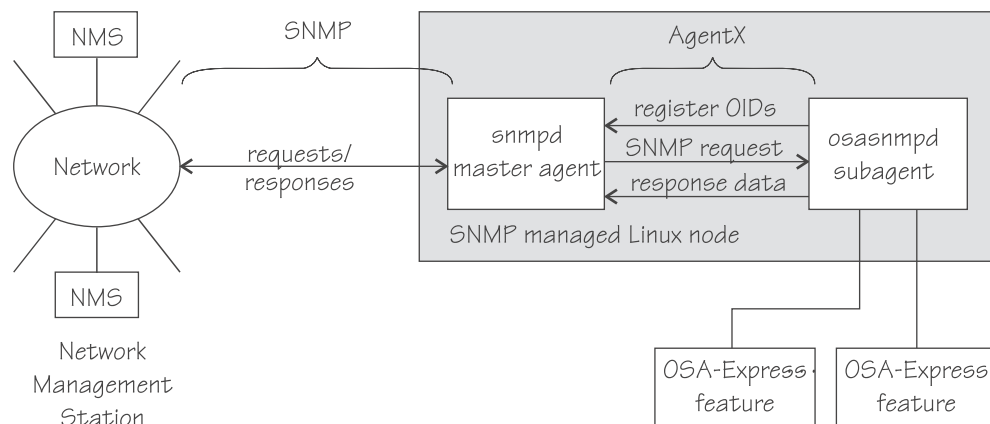


Figure 34. OSA-Express SNMP agent flow

Figure 34 illustrates the interaction between the snmpd master agent and the osasnmppd subagent.

Example: This example shows the processes running after the snmpd master agent and the osasnmppd subagent have been started. When you start osasnmppd, a daemon called osasnmppd starts. In the example, PID 687 is the SNMP master agent and PID 729 is the OSA-Express SNMP subagent process:

```

ps -ef | grep snmp
USER      PID      PPID  ST  TTIME PTY  TTY      USER
root      687      1    0  11:57 pts/1    00:00:00 snmpd
root      729     659    0  13:22 pts/1    00:00:00 osasnmppd

```

When the master agent receives an SNMP request for an OID that has been registered by a subagent, the master agent uses the subagent to collect any requested information and to perform any requested operations. The subagent returns any requested information to the master agent. Finally, the master agent returns the information to the originator of the request.

Setting up osasnmppd

This section describes the following setup tasks you need to perform if you want to use the osasnmppd subagent:

- Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB
- Configuring access control

Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB

Perform the following steps to download the IBM OSA-Express MIB. The MIB file is valid only for hardware that supports the OSA-Express adapter.

1. Go to www.ibm.com/servers/resourceLink/
A user ID and password are required. You can apply for a user ID if you do not yet have one.
2. Sign in.
3. Select “Library” from the left-hand navigation area.
4. Under “Library shortcuts”, select “Open Systems Adapter (OSA) Library”.
5. Follow the link for “OSA-Express Direct SNMP MIB module”.
6. Select and download the MIB for your LIC level.
7. Rename the MIB file to the name specified in the MIBs definition line and use the extension .txt.

Example: If the definition line in the MIB looks like this:

```
==>IBM-OSA-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN
```

Rename the MIB to IBM-OSA-MIB.txt.

8. Place the MIB into /usr/share/snmp/mibs.

If you want to use a different directory, be sure to specify the directory in the snmp.conf configuration file (see step 10 on page 151).

Result: You can now make the OID information from the MIB file available to the master agent. This allows you to use textual OIDs instead of numeric OIDs when using master agent commands.

See also the FAQ (How do I add a MIB to the tools?) for the master agent package at

net-snmp.sourceforge.net/FAQ.html

Configuring access control

During subagent startup or when network interfaces are added or removed, the subagent has to query OIDs from the interfaces group of the standard MIB-II. To start successfully, the subagent requires at least read access to the standard MIB-II on the local node.

This section gives an example of how you can use the snmpd.conf and snmp.conf configuration files to assign access rights using the View-Based Access Control Mechanism (VACM). The following access rights are assigned on the local node:

- General read access for the scope of the standard MIB-II
- Write access for the scope of the OSA-Express MIB
- Public local read access for the scope of the interfaces MIB

The example is intended for illustration purposes only. Depending on the security requirements of your installation, you might need to define your access differently. Refer to the `snmpd` man page for a more information on how you can assign access rights to `snmpd`.

1. Refer to your distribution documentation to find out where you can find a template for `snmpd.conf` and where you need to place it. Some of the possible locations are:

- `/usr/local/share/snmp`
- `/etc/snmp`
- `/usr/share/snmp`

2. Open `snmpd.conf` with your preferred text editor.

3. Find the security name section and include a line of this form to map a community name to a security name:

```
com2sec <security-name> <source> <community-name>
```

where:

`<security-name>`

is given access rights through further specifications within `snmpd.conf`.

`<source>`

is the IP-address or DNS-name of the accessing system, typically a Network Management Station.

`<community-name>`

is the community string used for basic SNMP password protection.

Example:

```
#      sec.name      source      community
com2sec osasec      default    osacom
com2sec pubsec      localhost  public
```

4. Find the group section. Use the security name to define a group with different versions of the master agent for which you want to grant access rights. Include a line of this form for each master agent version:

```
group <group-name> <security-model> <security-name>
```

where:

`<group-name>`

is a group name of your choice.

`<security-model>`

is the security model of the SNMP version.

`<security-name>`

is the same as in step 3.

Example:

```
#      groupName      securityModel  securityName
group  osagroup        v1            osasec
group  osagroup        v2c          osasec
group  osagroup        usm          osasec
group  osasnmppd       v2c          pubsec
```

Group “`osasnmppd`” with community “`public`” is required by `osasnmppd` to determine the number of network interfaces.

- Find the view section and define your views. A view is a subset of all OIDs. Include lines of this form:

```
view <view-name> <included|excluded> <scope>
```

where:

<view-name>

is a view name of your choice.

<included|excluded>

indicates whether the following scope is an inclusion or an exclusion statement.

<scope>

specifies a subtree in the OID tree.

Example:

#	name	incl/excl	subtree	mask(optional)
view	allview	included	.1	
view	osaview	included	.1.3.6.1.4.1.2	
view	ifmibview	included	interfaces	
view	ifmibview	included	system	

View “allview” encompasses all OIDs while “osaview” is limited to IBM OIDs. The numeric OID provided for the subtree is equivalent to the textual OID “.iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.ibm”. View “ifmibview” is required by osasnmppd to determine the number of network interfaces.

Tip: Specifying the subtree with a numeric OID leads to better performance than using the corresponding textual OID.

- Find the access section and define access rights. Include lines of this form:

```
access <group-name> "" any noauth exact <read-view> <write-view> none
```

where:

<group-name>

is the group you defined in step 4 on page 150.

<read-view>

is a view for which you want to assign read-only rights.

<write-view>

is a view for which you want to assign read-write rights.

Example:

#	group	context	sec.model	sec.level	prefix	read	write	notif
access	osagroup	""	any	noauth	exact	allview	osaview	none
access	osasnmppd	""	v2c	noauth	exact	ifmibview	none	none

The access line of the example gives read access to the “allview” view and write access to the “osaview”. The second access line gives read access to the “ifmibview”.

- Also include the following line to enable the AgentX support:

```
master agentx
```

By default, AgentX support is compiled into the net-snmp master agent 5.1.x and, as of version 4.2.2, also into the ucd-snmp master agent.

- Save and close snmpd.conf.

- Open snmp.conf with your preferred text editor.

- Include a line of this form to specify the directory to be searched for MIBs:

```
mibdirs +<mib-path>
```

Example:

```
mibdirs +/usr/share/snmp/mibs
```

11. Include a line of this form to make the OSA-Express MIB available to the master agent:

```
mibs +<mib-name>
```

where *<mib-name>* is the stem of the MIB file name you assigned in “Downloading the IBM OSA-Express MIB” on page 149.

Example:

```
mibs +IBM-OSA-MIB
```

12. Define defaults for the version and community to be used by the snmp commands. Add lines of this form:

```
defVersion <version>  
defCommunity <community-name>
```

where *<version>* is the SNMP protocol version and *<community-name>* is the community you defined in step 3 on page 150.

Example:

```
defVersion 2c  
defCommunity osacom
```

These default specifications simplify issuing master agent commands.

13. Save and close snmp.conf.

Working with the osasnmppd subagent

This section describes the following tasks:

- Starting the osasnmppd subagent
- Checking the log file
- Issuing queries
- Stopping osasnmppd

Starting the osasnmppd subagent

You start the osasnmppd subagent using the **osasnmppd** command:

```
# osasnmppd
```

The osasnmppd subagent starts a daemon called osasnmppd.

For command options see “osasnmppd – Start OSA-Express SNMP subagent” on page 475.

If you restart the master agent, you must also restart the subagent. When the master agent is started, it does not look for already running subagents. Any running subagents must also be restarted to be register with the master agent.

Checking the log file

Warnings and messages are written to the log file of either the master agent or the OSA-Express subagent. It is good practise to check these files at regular intervals.

Example: This example assumes that the default subagent log file is used. The lines in the log file show the messages after a successful OSA-Express subagent initialization.

```
# cat /var/log/osasmpd.log
IBM OSA-E NET-SNMP 5.1.x subagent version 1.3.0
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.2.1.10.7.2.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.3.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.4.
Jul 14 09:28:41 registered Toplevel OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.8.
OSA-E microcode level is 611 for interface eth0
Initialization of OSA-E subagent successful...
```

Issuing queries

This section provides some examples of what SNMP queries might look like. For more comprehensive information on the master agent commands refer to the `snmpcmd` man page.

The commands can use either numeric or textual OIDs. While the numeric OIDs might provide better performance, the textual OIDs are more meaningful and give a hint on which information is requested.

The query examples in this section gather information on an interface, `eth0`, for which the **lsqeth** (see “`lsqeth` - List qeth based network devices” on page 451) output looks like this:

```
# lsqeth eth0
Device name           : eth0
-----
card_type             : OSD_100
cdev0                 : 0.0.f200
cdev1                 : 0.0.f201
cdev2                 : 0.0.f202
chpid                 : 6B
online                : 1
portname              : OSAPORT
portno                : 0
route4                : no
route6                : no
checksumming          : sw checksumming
state                 : UP (LAN ONLINE)
priority_queueing      : always queue 0
detach_state          : 0
fake_11               : 0
fake_broadcast        : 0
buffer_count          : 16
add_hhlen             : 0
layer2                : 0
```

The CHPID for the `eth0` of our example is `0x6B`.

- To list the `ifIndex` and interface description relation (on one line):

```
# snmpget -v 2c -c osacom localhost interfaces.ifTable.ifEntry.ifDescr.6
interfaces.ifTable.ifEntry.ifDescr.6 = eth0
```

Using this GET request you can see that `eth0` has the `ifIndex` 6 assigned.

- To find the CHPID numbers for your OSA devices:

```
# snmpwalk -OS -v 2c -c osacom localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.1.1
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.6 = Hex-STRING: 00 6B
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.7 = Hex-STRING: 00 7A
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.8 = Hex-STRING: 00 7D
```

The first line of the command output, with index number 6, corresponds to CHPID 0x6B of our eth0 example. The example assumes that the community osacom has been authorized as described in “Configuring access control” on page 149.

If you have provided defaults for the SNMP version and the community (see step 12 on page 152), you can omit the -v and -c options:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.1.1
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.6 = Hex-STRING: 00 6B
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.7 = Hex-STRING: 00 7A
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.8 = Hex-STRING: 00 7D
```

You can obtain the same output by substituting the numeric OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.1.1.1 with its textual equivalent:

.iso.org.dod.internet.private.enterprises.ibm.ibmProd.ibmOSAMib.ibmOSAMibObjects.ibmOSAExpChannelTable.ibmOSAExpChannelEntry.ibmOSAExpChannelNumber

You can shorten this somewhat unwieldy OID to the last element, ibmOsaExpChannelNumber:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost ibmOsaExpChannelNumber
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.6 = Hex-STRING: 00 6B
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.7 = Hex-STRING: 00 7A
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOSAExpChannelNumber.8 = Hex-STRING: 00 7D
```

- To find the port type for the interface with index number 6:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2.6.188.1.4.1.2.6
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOsaExpEthPortType.6 = INTEGER: fastEthernet(81)
```

fastEthernet(81) corresponds to card type OSD_100.

Using the short form of the textual OID:

```
# snmpwalk -OS localhost ibmOsaExpEthPortType.6
IBM-OSA-MIB::ibmOsaExpEthPortType.6 = INTEGER: fastEthernet(81)
```

Specifying the index, 6 in the example, limits the output to the interface of interest.

Stopping osasnmppd

The subagent can be stopped by sending either a SIGINT or SIGTERM signal to the thread. Avoid stopping the subagent with **kill -9** or with **kill -SIGKILL**. These commands do not allow the subagent to unregister the OSA-Express MIB objects from the SNMP master agent. This can cause problems when restarting the subagent.

If you have saved the subagent PID to a file when you started it, you can consult this file for the PID (see 475). Otherwise you can issue a **ps** command to find it out.

Example: The osasnmppd subagent starts a daemon called osasnmppd. To stop osasnmppd, issue the kill command for either the daemon or its PID:

```
# ps -ef | grep snmp
```

```
USER      PID      1  0 11:57 pts/1    00:00:00 snmpd
root      687
root      729    659  0 13:22 pts/1    00:00:00 osasnmpr
# killall osasnmpr
# kill 729
```

Chapter 9. LAN channel station device driver

The LAN channel station device driver (LCS device driver) supports these Open Systems Adapters (OSA) features in non-QDIO mode:

- OSA-2 Ethernet/Token Ring
- OSA-Express
 - Fast Ethernet
 - 1000Base-T Ethernet (z890 and z990)
 - Token Ring
- OSA-Express2
 - 1000Base-T Ethernet (System z9 and System z10)
- OSA-Express3
 - 1000Base-T Ethernet (System z10 only)

Features

The LCS device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- Auto detects whether the CHPID is connected to Token Ring or Ethernet
- Internet Protocol, version 4 (IPv4) only

What you should know about LCS

This section provides information about LCS group devices and interfaces.

LCS group devices

The LCS device driver requires two I/O subchannels for each LCS interface, a read subchannel and a write subchannel (see Figure 35). The corresponding bus-IDs must be configured for control unit type 3088.

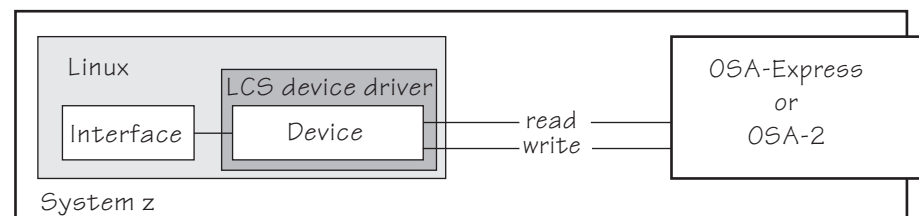


Figure 35. I/O subchannel interface

The device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel pair are grouped as one LCS group device. The following rules apply for the device bus-IDs:

read must be even.

write must be the device bus-ID of the read subchannel plus one.

LCS interface names

When an LCS group device is set online, the LCS device driver automatically assigns an interface name to it. According to the feature used, the naming scheme uses two base names:

eth<n> for Ethernet features

tr<*n*> for Token Ring features

where <*n*> is an integer that uniquely identifies the device. When the first device for a base name is set online it is assigned 0, the second is assigned 1, the third 2, and so on. Each base name is counted separately.

For example, the interface name of the first Ethernet feature that is set online is “eth0”, the second “eth1”, and so on. When the first Token Ring feature is set online, it is assigned the interface name “tr0”.

The LCS device driver shares the name space for Ethernet and Token Ring interfaces with the qeth device driver. Each driver uses the name with the lowest free identifier <*n*>, regardless of which device driver occupies the other names. For example, if at the time the first LCS Ethernet feature is set online, there is already one qeth Ethernet feature online, the qeth feature is named “eth0” and the LCS feature is named “eth1”. See also “qeth interface names and device directories” on page 101.

Building a kernel with the LCS device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the LCS device driver.

You need to select the option CONFIG_LCS if you want to work with LCS devices (see Figure 36).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Network device support -->
...
S/390 network device drivers -->
    Lan Channel Station Interface          (CONFIG_LCS)
```

Figure 36. LCS kernel configuration menu option

The CONFIG_LCS option can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, lcs.

Depending on the features you intend to support, you need to include at least one the common code options CONFIG_TR and CONFIG_NET_ETHERNET. For multicast support you also require the common code option CONFIG_IP_MULTICAST.

Setting up the LCS device driver

There are no kernel or module parameters for the LCS device driver.

If you have compiled the LCS component as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with LCS devices. Load the lcs module with the modprobe command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
# modprobe lcs
```

Working with the LCS device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with LCS devices.

- Creating an LCS group device
- “Removing an LCS group device”
- Specifying a timeout for LCS LAN commands
- Setting a device online or offline
- Activating and deactivating an interface

Creating an LCS group device

Before you start: You need to know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the read and write subchannel of your OSA card as defined in the IOCDS of your mainframe.

To define an LCS group device, write the device bus-IDs of the subchannel pair to `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/group`. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/group
```

Result: The lcs device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the LCS group device. The following sections describe how to use these attributes to configure an LCS group device.

Example

Assuming that 0.0.d000 is the device bus-ID that corresponds to a read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.d000,0.0.d001 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000`
- `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.d000`
- `/sys/devices/cu3088/0.0.d000`

Removing an LCS group device

Before you start: The device must be set offline before you can remove it.

To remove an LCS group device, write "1" to the ungroup attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/ungroup
```

Example

This command removes device 0.0.d000:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/ungroup
```

Specifying a timeout for LCS LAN commands

You can specify a timeout for the interval that the LCS device driver waits for a reply after issuing a LAN command to the LAN adapter. For older hardware the replies may take a longer time. The default is 5 s.

To set a timeout issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <timeout> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/lancmd_timeout
```

where *<timeout>* is the timeout interval in seconds in the range from 1 to 60.

Example

In this example, the timeout for a device 0.0.d000 is set to 10 s.

```
# echo 10 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/lancmd_timeout
```

Setting a device online or offline

To set an LCS group device online, set the online device group attribute to “1”. To set a LCS group device offline, set the online device group attribute to “0”. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Setting a device online associates it with an interface name. Setting the device offline preserves the interface name.

Read `/var/log/messages` or issue **dmesg** to find out which interface name has been assigned. You will need to know the interface name to activate the network interface.

For each online interface, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface_name>/device` in `sysfs`. You can confirm that you have found the correct interface name by reading the link.

Example

To set an LCS device with bus ID 0.0.d000 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/online
# dmesg
...
lcs: LCS device tr0 without IPv6 support
lcs: LCS device tr0 with Multicast support
...
```

The interface name that has been assigned to the LCS group device in the example is `tr0`. To confirm that this is the correct name for our group device issue:


```
# readlink /sys/class/net/tr0/device
../../../../devices/lcs/0.0.d000
```

To set the device offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d000/online
```

Activating and deactivating an interface

Before you can activate an interface you need to have set the group device online and found out the interface name assigned by the LCS device driver (see “Setting a device online or offline” on page 160).

You activate or deactivate network devices with **ifconfig** or an equivalent command. For details of the **ifconfig** command refer to the **ifconfig** man page.

Examples

- This example activates an Ethernet interface:

```
# ifconfig eth0 192.168.100.10 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

- This example deactivates the Ethernet interface:

```
# ifconfig eth0 down
```

- This example reactivates an interface that had already been activated and subsequently deactivated:

```
# ifconfig eth0 up
```

Recovering a device

You can use the recover attribute of an LCS group device to recover it in case of failure. For example, error messages in `/var/log/messages` might inform you of a malfunctioning device. Issue a command of the form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/<device_bus_id>/recover
```

Example

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/lcs/0.0.d100/recover
```


Chapter 10. CTCM device driver

The CTCM device driver provides Channel-to-Channel (CTC) connections and CTC-based Multi-Path Channel (MPC) connections. The CTCM device driver is required by Communications Server for Linux.

CTC connections are high-speed point-to-point connections between two operating system instances on System z.

Communications Server for Linux uses MPC connections to connect Linux on System z to VTAM® on traditional mainframe operating systems.

Features

The CTCM device driver provides:

- MPC connections to VTAM on traditional mainframe operating systems.
- ESCON or FICON CTC connections (standard CTC and basic CTC) between mainframes in basic mode, LPARs or z/VM guests.
- Virtual CTCA connections between guests of the same z/VM system.
- CTC connections to other Linux instances or other mainframe operating systems.

What you should know about CTCM

This section provides information about CTCM group devices and the network interfaces that are created by the CTCM device driver.

CTCM group devices

The CTCM device driver requires two I/O subchannels for each interface, a read subchannel and a write subchannel (see Figure 37). The device bus-IDs that correspond to the two subchannels must be configured for control unit type 3088.

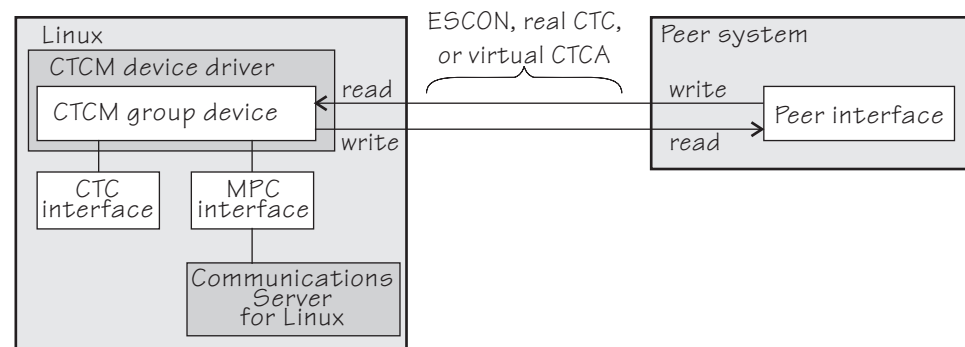


Figure 37. I/O subchannel interface

The device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel pair are grouped as one CTCM group device. There are no constraints on the device bus-IDs of read subchannel and write subchannel, in particular, it is possible to group non-consecutive device bus-IDs.

On the communication peer operating system instance, read and write subchannels are reversed. That is, the write subchannel of the local interface is connected to the read subchannel of the remote interface and vice-versa.

Depending on the protocol, the interfaces can be CTC interfaces or MPC interfaces. MPC interfaces are used by Communications Server for Linux and connect to peer interfaces that run under VTAM.

Interface names assigned by the CTCM device driver

When a CTCM group device is set online, the CTCM device driver automatically assigns an interface name to it. The interface name depends on the protocol.

If the protocol is set to 4, you get an MPC connection and the interface names are of the form `mpc<n>`.

If the protocol is set to 0, 1, or 3, you get a CTC connection and the interface name is of the form `ctc<n>`.

`<n>` is an integer that identifies the device. When the first device is set online it is assigned 0, the second is assigned 1, the third 2, and so on. The devices are counted separately for CTC and MPC.

Network connections

This section applies to CTC interfaces only.

If your CTC connection is to a router or z/VM TCP/IP service machine, you can connect to an external network, see Figure 38.

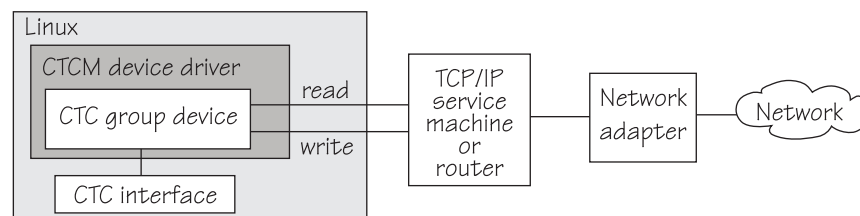


Figure 38. Network connection

Further information

For more information about Communications Server for Linux and on using MPC connections, go to

www.ibm.com/software/network/commsserver/linux/

For more information about FICON, see Redpaper *FICON CTC Implementation*, REDP-0158.

Building a kernel with the CTCM device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_CTCM` to be able to use CTCM connections (see Figure 39 on page 165).

```

Device Drivers --->
...
Network device support -->
...
S/390 network device drivers -->
...
CTC and MPC SNA device support      (CONFIG_CTCM)

```

Figure 39. CTCM kernel configuration menu option

The CTCM device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `ctcm`.

Setting up the CTCM device driver

You do not need to specify kernel or module parameters for the CTCM device driver. If the CTCM device driver has been compiled as a separate module, load it with the **modprobe** command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded:

```
# modprobe ctcn
```

Working with the CTCM device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with CTCM devices.

- Creating a CTCM group device
- “Removing a CTCM group device” on page 166
- Displaying the channel type
- Setting the protocol
- Setting a device online or offline
- Setting the maximum buffer size (CTC only)
- Activating and deactivating a CTC interface (CTC only)
- Recovering a lost CTC connection (CTC only)

See the Communications Server for Linux documentation for information on how to configure and activate MPC interfaces.

Creating a CTCM group device

Before you start: You need to know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the local read and write subchannel of your CTCM connection as defined in your IOCDs.

To define a CTCM group device, write the device bus-IDs of the subchannel pair to `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group`. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

Result: The CTCM device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the CTCM group device.

Example

Assuming that device bus-ID 0.0.2000 corresponds to a read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.2000,0.0.2001 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000
- /sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.2000
- /sys/devices/cu3088/0.0.2000

Removing a CTCM group device

Before you start: The device must be set offline before you can remove it.

To remove a CTCM group device, write "1" to the ungroup attribute. Issue a command of the form:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/ungroup
```

Example

This command removes device 0.0.2000:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/ungroup
```

Displaying the channel type

Issue a command of this form to display the channel type of a CTCM group device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/type
```

where <device_bus_id> is the device bus-ID that corresponds to the CTCM read channel. Possible values are: CTC/A, ESCON, and FICON.

Example

In this example, the channel type is displayed for a CTCM group device with device bus-ID 0.0.f000:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f000/type
ESCON
```

Setting the protocol

Before you start: The device must be offline while you set the protocol.

The type of interface depends on the protocol. Protocol 4 results in MPC interfaces with interface names mpc<n>. Protocols 0, 1, or 3 result in CTC interfaces with interface names of the form ctc<n>.

To choose a protocol set the protocol attribute to one of the following values:

- 0 This protocol provides compatibility with peers other than OS/390®, or z/OS, for example, a z/VM TCP service machine. This is the default.
- 1 This protocol provides enhanced package checking for Linux peers.
- 3 This protocol provides for compatibility with OS/390 or z/OS peers.
- 4 This protocol provides for MPC connections to VTAM on traditional mainframe operating systems.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/protocol
```

Example

In this example, the protocol is set for a CTCM group device 0.0.2000:

```
# echo 4 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/protocol
```

Setting a device online or offline

To set a CTCM group device online, set the online device group attribute to “1”. To set a CTCM group device offline, set the online device group attribute to “0”. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Setting a group device online associates it with an interface name. Setting the group device offline and back online with the same protocol preserves the association with the interface name. If you change the protocol before setting the group device back online, the interface name can change as described in “Interface names assigned by the CTCM device driver” on page 164.

Read `/var/log/messages` or issue **dmesg** to find out which interface name has been assigned to the group device. You will need to know the interface name to access the CTCM group device.

For each online interface, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface_name>/device` in `sysfs`. You can confirm that you have found the correct interface name by reading the link.

Example

To set a CTCM device with bus ID 0.0.2000 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/online
# dmesg | fgrep "ch-0.0.2000"
mpc0: read: ch-0.0.2000, write: ch-0.0.2001, proto: 4
```

The interface name that has been assigned to the CTCM group device in the example is `mpc0`. To confirm that this is the correct name for our group device issue:

```
# readlink /sys/class/net/mpc0/device
../../../../devices/cu3088/0.0.2000
```

To set group device 0.0.2000 offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.2000/online
```

Setting the maximum buffer size

Before you start:

- This section applies to CTC interfaces only. MPC interfaces automatically use the highest possible maximum buffer size.
- The device must be online when setting the buffer size.

You can set the maximum buffer size for a CTC interface. The permissible range of values depends on the MTU settings. It must be in the range *<minimum MTU + header size>* to *<maximum MTU + header size>*. The header space is typically 8 byte. The default for the maximum buffer size is 32768 byte (32 KB).

Changing the buffer size is accompanied by an MTU size change to the value *<buffer size - header size>*.

To set the maximum buffer size issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/<device_bus_id>/buffer
```

where *<value>* is the number of bytes you want to set. If you specify a value outside the valid range, the command is ignored.

Example

In this example, the maximum buffer size of a CTCM group device 0.0.f000 is set to 16384 byte.

```
# echo 16384 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f000/buffer
```

Activating and deactivating a CTC interface

Before you start activating a CTC interface:

- This section applies to CTC interfaces only. For information about how to activate MPC interfaces see the Communications Server for Linux documentation.
- You need to know the interface name (see “Setting a device online or offline” on page 167).

Use **ifconfig** or an equivalent command to activate the interface:

Syntax for activating a CTC interface with the ifconfig command

```
➤—ifconfig— <interface>— <ip_address>— pointopoint— <peer_ip_address>—➤  
  
➤— [ mtu 32760 ] [ up ] —➤  
➤— [ mtu <max_transfer_unit> ] —➤
```

Where:

<interface>

is the interface name that was assigned when the CTCM group device was set online.

<ip_address>

is the IP address you want to assign to the interface.

<peer_ip_address>

is the IP address of the remote side.

<max_transfer_unit>

is the size of the largest IP packet which may be transmitted. Be sure to use the same MTU size on both sides of the connection. The MTU must be in the range of 576 byte to 65,536 byte (64 KB).

To deactivate an interface issue a command of this form:

```
# ifconfig <interface> down
```

Examples

- This example activates a CTC interface ctc0 with an IP address 10.0.51.3 for a peer with address 10.0.50.1 and an MTU of 32760.

```
# ifconfig ctc0 10.0.51.3 pointopoint 10.0.50.1 mtu 32760
```

- This example deactivates ctc0:

```
# ifconfig ctc0 down
```

Recovering a lost CTC connection

This section applies to CTC interfaces only.

If one side of a CTC connection crashes, you cannot simply reconnect after a reboot. You also need to deactivate the interface on the crashed side's peer. Proceed like this:

1. Reboot the crashed side.
2. Deactivate the interface on the peer (see "Activating and deactivating a CTC interface" on page 168).
3. Activate the interface on the crashed side and on the peer (see "Activating and deactivating a CTC interface" on page 168).

If the connection is between a Linux instance and a non-Linux instance, activate the interface on the Linux instance first. Otherwise you can activate the interfaces in any order.

If the CTC connection is uncoupled, you must couple it again and re-configure the interface of both peers using **ifconfig** (see "Activating and deactivating a CTC interface" on page 168).

Scenarios

This section provides some typical scenarios for CTC connections:

- Connecting to a peer in a different LPAR
- Connecting a Linux guest to a peer guest in the same z/VM

Connecting to a peer in a different LPAR

A Linux instance and a peer run in LPAR mode on the same or on different mainframes and are to be connected with a CTC FICON or CTC ESCON network interface (see Figure 40).

Assumptions:

- Locally, the read and write channels have been configured for type 3088 and use device bus-IDs 0.0.f008 and 0.0.f009.
- IP address 10.0.50.4 is to be used locally and 10.0.50.5 for the peer.

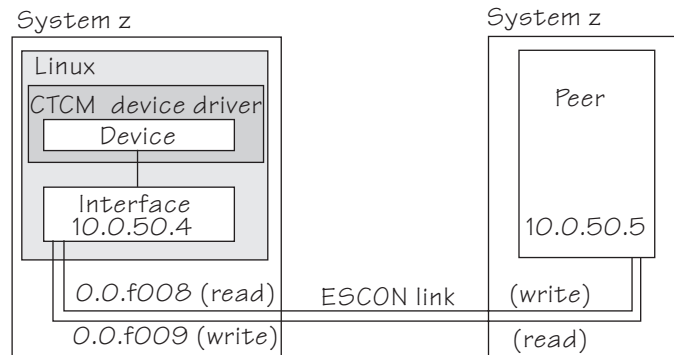


Figure 40. CTC scenario with peer in a different LPAR

1. Create a CTCM group device. Issue:

```
# echo 0.0.f008,0.0.f009 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

2. Confirm that the device uses CTC FICON or CTC ESCON:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f008/type
ESCON
```

In this example, ESCON is used. You would proceed the same for FICON.

3. Select a protocol. The choice depends on the peer.

If the peer is ...	Choose ...
Linux	1
z/OS or OS/390	3
Any other operating system	0

Assuming that the peer is Linux:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f008/protocol
```

4. Set the CTCM group device online and find out the assigned interface name:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f008/online
# dmesg | fgrep "ch-0.0.f008"
ctc0: read: ch-0.0.f008, write: ch-0.0.f009, proto: 1
```

In the example, the interface name is ctc0.

5. Assure that the peer interface is configured.

6. Activate the interface locally and on the peer. If you are connecting two Linux instances, either instance can be activated first. If the peer is not Linux, activate the interface on Linux first. To activate the local interface:

```
# ifconfig ctc0 10.0.50.4 pointopoint 10.0.50.5
```

Connecting a Linux guest to a peer guest in the same z/VM

A Linux instance is running as a z/VM guest and to be connected to another guest of the same z/VM using a virtual CTCA connection (see Figure 41).

Assumptions:

- The guest ID of the peer is “guestp”.
- A separate subnet has been obtained from the TCP/IP network administrator. IP addresses 10.0.100.100 and 10.0.100.101 are to be used by the Linux guest and the peer, respectively.

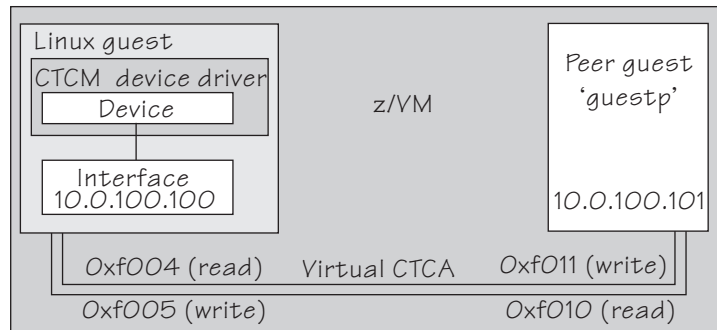


Figure 41. CTC scenario with peer in the same z/VM

1. Define two virtual channels to your user ID. The channels can be defined in the VM User Directory using directory control SPECIAL statements, for example:

```
special f004 ctca
special f005 ctca
```

Alternatively, you can use the CP commands:

```
# define ctca as f004
# define ctca as f005
```

from the console of the running CMS machine (preceded by #CP if necessary), or from an EXEC file (such as PROFILE EXEC A).

2. Assure that the peer interface is configured.
3. Connect the virtual channels. Assuming that the read channel on the peer corresponds to device number 0xf010 and the write channel to 0xf011 issue:

```
# couple f004 to guestp f011
# couple f005 to guestp f010
```

Be sure that you couple the read channel to the peers write channel and vice-versa.

4. From your booted Linux instance, create a CTCM group device. Issue:

```
# echo 0.0.f004,0.0.f005 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/group
```

5. Confirm that the group device is a virtual CTCA device:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f004/type
CTC/A
```

6. Select a protocol. The choice depends on the peer.

If the peer is ...	Choose ...
Linux	1
z/OS or OS/390	3
Any other operating system	0

Assuming that the peer is Linux:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f004/protocol
```

7. Set the CTCM group device online and find out the assigned interface name:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/ctcm/0.0.f004/online
# dmesg | fgrep "ch-0.0.f004"
ctc1: read: ch-0.0.f004, write: ch-0.0.f005, proto: 1
```

In the example, the interface name is ctc1.

8. Activate the interface locally and on the peer. If you are connecting two Linux instances, either can be activated first. If the peer is not Linux, activate the local interface first. To activate the local interface:

```
# ifconfig ctc1 10.0.100.100 pointopoint 10.0.100.101
```

Be sure that the MTU on both sides of the connection is the same. If necessary change the default MTU (see “Activating and deactivating a CTC interface” on page 168).

9. Ensure that the buffer size on both sides of the connection is the same. For the Linux side see “Setting the maximum buffer size” on page 168 if the peer is not Linux, refer to the respective operating system documentation.

Chapter 11. NETIUCV device driver

The Inter-User Communication Vehicle (IUCV) is a VM communication facility that enables a program running in one z/VM guest to communicate with another z/VM guest, or with a control program, or even with itself.

The Linux on System z NETIUCV device driver is a network device driver, that uses IUCV to connect Linux guests running on different z/VM user IDs, or to connect a Linux guest to another z/VM guest such as a TCP/IP service machine.

Features

The NETIUCV device driver supports the following functions:

- Multiple output paths from a Linux guest
- Multiple input paths to a Linux guest
- Simultaneous transmission and reception of multiple messages on the same or different paths
- Network connections via a TCP/IP service machine gateway
- Internet Protocol, version 4 (IPv4) only

What you should know about IUCV

This section provides information on IUCV devices and interfaces.

IUCV direct and routed connections

The NETIUCV device driver uses TCP/IP over z/VM virtual communications. The communication peer is a guest of the same z/VM or the z/VM control program. No subchannels are involved, see Figure 42.

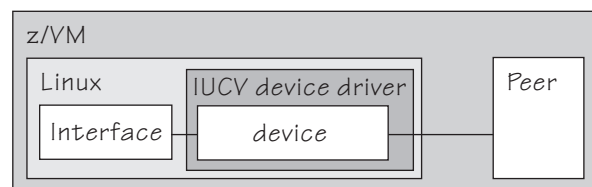


Figure 42. Direct IUCV connection

If your IUCV connection is to a router, the peer can be remote and connected through an external network, see Figure 43.

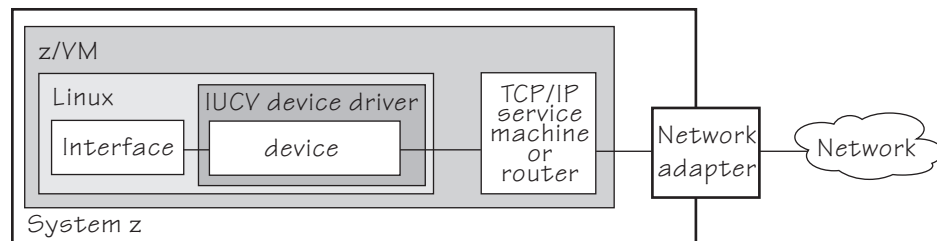


Figure 43. Routed IUCV connection

IUCV interfaces and devices

The NETIUCV device driver uses the base name `iucv<n>` for its interfaces. When the first IUCV interface is created (see “Creating an IUCV device” on page 175) it is assigned the name `iucv0`, the second is assigned `iucv1`, the third `iucv2`, and so on.

For each interface, a corresponding IUCV device is created in sysfs at `/sys/bus/iucv/devices/netiucv<n>` where `<n>` is the same index number that also identifies the corresponding interface.

For example, interface `iucv0` corresponds to device name `netiucv0`, `iucv1` corresponds to `netiucv1`, `iucv2` corresponds to `netiucv2`, and so on.

Further information

The standard definitions in the z/VM TCP/IP configuration files apply.

For more information of the z/VM TCP/IP configuration see: *z/VM TCP/IP Planning and Customization*, SC24-6125.

Building a kernel with the NETIUCV device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the NETIUCV device driver.

Figure 44 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the NETIUCV device driver:

```
Networking support --->
...
Networking options --->
...
IUCV support (S390 - z/VM only)          (CONFIG_IUCV)
...
Device Drivers --->
...
Network device support -->
...
S/390 network device drivers -->
...
IUCV network device support (VM only)    (CONFIG_NETIUCV)
...
```

Figure 44. IUCV kernel configuration menu option

CONFIG_IUCV

This option is required if you want to use IUCV to connect to other z/VM guests. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `iucv`.

CONFIG_NETIUCV

This option is required if you want to use NETIUCV device driver to connect to other z/VM guests. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `netiucv`.

Setting up the NETIUCV device driver

There are no kernel or module parameters for the NETIUCV device driver. This section describes how to load those components that have been compiled as separate modules.

This section also explains how to set up a TCP/IP service machine as a peer for IUCV connections from Linux.

Loading the IUCV modules

If netiucv has been compiled as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with IUCV devices. Use **modprobe** to load the module to ensure that any other required modules are also loaded.

```
# modprobe netiucv
```

Enabling your z/VM guest for IUCV

To enable your z/VM guest for IUCV add the following statements to your z/VM USER DIRECT entry:

```
IUCV ALLOW  
IUCV ANY
```

Working with the NETIUCV device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with IUCV devices.

- Creating an IUCV device
- Changing the peer
- Setting the maximum buffer size
- Activating an interface
- Deactivating and removing an interface

Creating an IUCV device

To define an IUCV device write the user ID of the peer z/VM guest to `/sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/connection`.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <peer_id> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/connection
```

where `<peer_id>` is the guest ID of the z/VM guest you want to connect to. The NETIUCV device driver interprets the ID as uppercase.

Result: An interface `iucv<n>` is created and the following corresponding sysfs directories:

- `/sys/bus/iucv/devices/netiucv<n>`
- `/sys/devices/iucv/netiucv<n>`
- `/sys/class/net/iucv<n>`

`<n>` is an index number that identifies an individual IUCV device and its corresponding interface. You can use the attributes of the sysfs entry to configure the device.

To verify that an index number corresponds to a given guest ID read the name attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/netiucv<n>/user
```

Example

To create an IUCV device to connect to a z/VM guest with a guest user ID “LINUXP” issue:

```
# echo linuxp > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/connection
```

If this is the first IUCV device to be created, the corresponding interface name is iucv0. To confirm that this is the interface that connects to “LINUXP”:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/netiucv0/user  
linuxp
```

Changing the peer

Before you start: The interface must not be active when changing the name of the peer z/VM guest.

You can change the z/VM guest that an interface connects to. To change the peer z/VM guest issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <peer_ID> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/netiucv<n>/user
```

where:

<peer_ID>

is the z/VM guest ID of the new communication peer. The value must be a valid guest ID. The NETIUCV device driver interprets the ID as uppercase.

<n>

is an index that identifies the IUCV device and the corresponding interface.

Example

In this example, “LINUX22” is set as the new peer z/VM guest.

```
# echo linux22 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/netiucv0/user
```

Setting the maximum buffer size

The upper limit for the maximum buffer size is 32768 bytes (32 KB). The lower limit is 580 bytes in general and in addition, if the interface is up and running <current MTU + header size>. The header space is typically 4 bytes.

Changing the buffer size is accompanied by an mtu size change to the value <buffer size - header size>.

To set the maximum buffer size issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <value> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/netiucv<n>/buffer
```

where:

<value>

is the number of bytes you want to set. If you specify a value outside the valid range, the command is ignored.

<n>

is an index that identifies the IUCV device and the corresponding interface.

Note: If IUCV performance deteriorates and IUCV issues “out of memory” messages on the console, consider using a buffer size less than 4K.

Example

In this example, the maximum buffer size of an IUCV device netiucv0 is set to 16384 byte.

```
# echo 16384 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/netiucv0/buffer
```

Activating an interface

Use **ifconfig** or an equivalent command to activate an interface.

ifconfig syntax for an IUCV connection

```
ifconfig <interface> <ip_address> pointopoint <peer_ip_address>
[
  [ mtu 9216
    [ mtu <max_transfer_unit> ]
  ]
  netmask <mask_value>
  up
]
```

where:

<interface>

is the interface name.

<ip_address>

is the IP address of your Linux guest.

<peer_ip_address>

for direct connections this is the IP address of the communication peer; for routed connections this is the IP address of the TCP/IP service machine or Linux router to connect to.

<max_transfer_unit>

is the size in byte of the largest IP packets which may be transmitted. The default is 9216. The valid range is 576 through 32764.

Note: An increase in buffer size is accompanied by an increased risk of running into memory problems. Thus a large buffer size increases speed of data transfer only if no “out of memory”-conditions occur.

<mask_value>

is a mask to identify the addresses served by this connection. Applies to routed connections only.

For more details, refer to the **ifconfig** man page.

For routed connections, you need to set up a route. Issue commands of this form:

```
# route add -net default <interface>
# inetd
```

Example

This example activates a connection to a TCP/IP service machine with IP address 1.2.3.200 using a maximum transfer unit of 32764 bytes.

```
# ifconfig iucv1 1.2.3.100 pointopoint 1.2.3.200 mtu 32764 netmask 255.255.255.0
# route add -net default iucv1
# inetd
```

Deactivating and removing an interface

You deactivate an interface with **ifconfig** or an equivalent command. Issue a command of this form:

```
# ifconfig <interface> down
```

where *<interface>* is the name of the interface to be deactivated.

You can remove the interface and its corresponding IUCV device by writing the interface name to the NETIUCV device driver's remove attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <interface> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/remove
```

where *<interface>* is the name of the interface to be removed. The interface name is of the form iucv<n>.

After the interface has been removed the interface name can be assigned again as interfaces are activated.

Example

This Example deactivates and removes an interface iucv0 and its corresponding IUCV device:

```
# ifconfig iucv0 down
# echo iucv0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/remove
```

Scenario: Setting up an IUCV connection to a TCP/IP service machine

Two Linux guests with guest IDs "LNX1" and "LNX2" are to be connected through a TCP/IP service machine with guest ID "VMTCP/IP". Both Linux guests and the service machine all run in the same z/VM. A separate IP subnet (different from the subnet used on the LAN) has been obtained from the network administrator. IP address 1.2.3.4 is assigned to guest "LNX1", 1.2.3.5 is assigned to guest "LNX2", and 1.2.3.10 is assigned to the service machine, see Figure 45 on page 179.

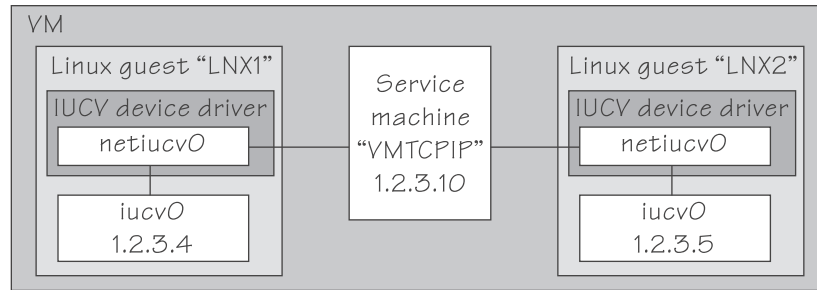


Figure 45. IUCV connection scenario

Setting up the service machine

Proceed like this to set up the service machine:

1. For each guest that is to have an IUCV connection to the service machine add a home entry, device, link, and start statement to the service machine's PROFILE TCPIP file. The statements have the form:

```
Home
  <ip_address1> <link_name1>
  <ip_address2> <link_name2>
  ...

Device <device_name1> IUCV 0 0 <guest_ID1> A
Link <link_name1> IUCV 0 <device_name1>

Device <device_name2> IUCV 0 0 <guest_ID2> A
Link <link_name2> IUCV 0 <device_name2>

...

Start <device_name1>
Start <device_name2>
...
```

where

<ip_address1>, <ip_address2>
is the IP address of a Linux guest.

<link_name1>, <link_name2>, ...
are variables that associate the link statements with the respective home statements.

<device_name1>, <device_name2>, ...
are variables that associate the device statements with the respective link statements and start commands.

<guest_ID1>, <guest_ID2>, ...
are the guest IDs of the connected Linux guests.

In our example, the PROFILE TCPIP entries for our example might look of this form:

```
Home
  1.2.3.4 LNK1
  1.2.3.5 LNK2

Device DEV1 IUCV 0 0 LNX1 A
Link LNK1 IUCV 0 DEV1
```

```
Device DEV2 IUCV 0 0 LNX2 A
Link LNK2 IUCV 0 DEV2
```

```
Start DEV1
Start DEV2
...
```

2. Add the necessary z/VM TCP/IP routing statements (BsdRoutingParms or Gateway). Use an MTU size of 9216 and a point-to-point host route (subnet mask 255.255.255.255). If you use dynamic routing, but do not wish to run routed or gated on Linux, update the z/VM ETC GATEWAYS file to include "permanent" host entries for each Linux guest.
3. Bring these updates online by using OBEYFILE or by recycling TCPIP and/or ROUTED as needed.

Setting up the Linux guest LNX1

Proceed like this to set up the IUCV connection on the Linux guest:

1. Set up the NETIUCV device driver as described in "Setting up the NETIUCV device driver" on page 175.
2. Create an IUCV interface for connecting to the service machine:

```
# echo VMTCP/IP /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/netiucv/connection
```

This creates an interface, for example, iucv0, with a corresponding IUCV device and a device entry in sysfs /sys/bus/iucv/devices/netiucv0.

3. The peer, LNX2 is set up accordingly. When both interfaces are ready to be connected to, activate the connection.

```
# ifconfig iucv0 1.2.3.4 pointopoint 1.2.3.10 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

The peer, LNX2, is set up accordingly.

Chapter 12. CLAW device driver

Common Link Access to Workstation (CLAW) is a point-to-point protocol. A CLAW device is a channel connected device that supports the CLAW protocol. CLAW devices can connect your Linux on System z instance to a communication peer, for example, on a RISC System/6000 (RS/6000®) or on a Cisco Channel Interface Processor (CIP).

Features

The CLAW device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- The CLAW driver supports up to 256 devices.

What you should know about the CLAW device driver

This section provides information about CLAW group devices and interfaces.

CLAW group devices

The CLAW device driver requires two I/O subchannels for each CLAW interface, a read subchannel and a write subchannel (see Figure 46). The corresponding bus-IDs must be configured for control unit type 3088.

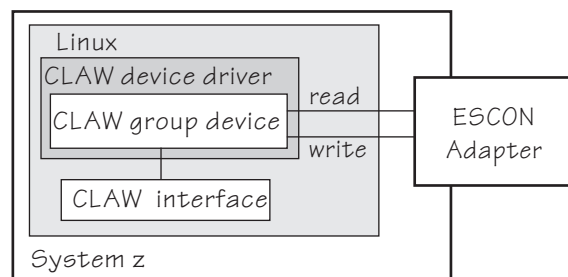


Figure 46. I/O subchannel interface

The device bus-IDs that correspond to the subchannel pair are grouped as one CLAW group device. The device bus-IDs can be any consecutive device bus-IDs where the read subchannel is the lower of the two IDs.

The read subchannel is linked to the write subchannel on the connected RS/6000 or CIP and vice versa.

CLAW interface names

When a CLAW group device is set online, the CLAW device driver automatically assigns an interface name to it. The interface names are of the form `claw<n>` where `<n>` is an integer that identifies the device. When the first device is set online, it is assigned 0, the second is assigned 1, the third 2, and so on.

MTU size

You can set the MTU when you activate your CLAW group device (see “Activating a CLAW group device” on page 185).

The following apply to setting the MTU:

- The default MTU is 4096 byte.

- If the MTU of the attached CLAW interface on the RS/6000 or CIP is less than 4096 byte, it can be advantageous to match the MTU of the CLAW device to this lower value.
- You cannot set an MTU that is greater than the buffer size. The buffer size is 32 kilobyte for connection type PACKED (see “Setting the connection type” on page 184) and 4 kilobyte otherwise.
- The maximum MTU you can set is 4096 byte.



If you are a kernel builder, you can increase the maximum MTU above 4096 byte by changing the CLAW device driver code and recompiling. Be aware that recompiling the kernel is likely to affect any existing service contracts you may have for your kernel.

Building a kernel with the CLAW device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the CLAW device driver.

You need to select the CONFIG_CLAW option if you want to use CLAW connections (see Figure 47).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Network device support -->
...
S/390 network device drivers -->
...
CLAW device support                                (CONFIG_CLAW)
```

Figure 47. CLAW kernel configuration menu option

The CLAW device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, claw.

Setting up the CLAW device driver

There are no kernel or module parameters for the CLAW device driver.

If you have compiled the CLAW component as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with CLAW group devices. Load the claw module with the modprobe command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded:

```
# modprobe claw
```

Working with the CLAW device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with CLAW devices.

- Creating a CLAW group device
- Setting the host and adapter name

- Setting the connection type
- Setting the number of read and write buffers
- Setting a CLAW group device online or offline
- Activating a CLAW group device

Creating a CLAW group device

Before you start: You need to know the device bus-IDs that correspond to the local read and write subchannel of your CLAW connection as defined in your IOCDS.

To define a CLAW group device, write the device bus-IDs of the subchannel pair to `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/group`. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <read_device_bus_id>,<write_device_bus_id> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/group
```

Result: The CLAW device driver uses the device bus-ID of the read subchannel to create a directory for a group device:

```
/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<read_device_bus_id>
```

This directory contains a number of attributes that determine the settings of the CLAW group device.

Example

Assuming that device bus-ID 0.0.2d00 corresponds to a read subchannel:

```
# echo 0.0.2d00,0.0.2d01 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/group
```

This command results in the creation of the following directories in sysfs:

- `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.2d00`
- `/sys/bus/ccwgroup/devices/0.0.2d00`
- `/sys/devices/cu3088/0.0.2d00`

Setting the host and adapter name

Host and adapter names identify the communication peers to one another. The local host name must match the remote adapter name and vice versa.

Set the host and adapter name before you set the CLAW group device online. Changing a name for an online device does not take effect until the device is set offline and back online.

To set the host name issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <host> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<device_bus_id>/host_name
```

To set the adapter name issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <adapter> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<device_bus_id>/adapter_name
```

where `<host>` is the host name and `<adapter>` the adapter name. The names can be from 1 to 8 characters and are case sensitive.

Example

In this example, the host name for a claw group device with device bus-ID 0.0.d200 is set to “LNX1” and the adapter name to “RS1”.

```
# echo LNX1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/host_name
# echo RS1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/adapter_name
```

To make this connection work, the adapter name on the communication peer must be set to “LNX1” and the host name to “RS1”.

Setting the connection type

The connection type determines the packing method used for outgoing packets. The connection type must match the connection type on the connected RS/6000 or CIP.

Set the connection type before you set the CLAW group device online. Changing the connection type for an online device does not take effect until the device is set offline and back online.

To set the connection type issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <type> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<device_bus_id>/api_type
```

where <type> can be either of:

IP to use the IP protocol for CLAW.

PACKED

to use enhanced packing with TCP/IP for better performance.

TCPIP to use the TCP/IP protocol for CLAW.

Example

In this example, the connection type “PACKED” is set for a CLAW group device with device bus-ID 0.0.d200.

```
# echo PACKED > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/api_type
```

Setting the number of read and write buffers

You can allocate the number of read buffers and the number of write buffers for your CLAW group device separately. Set the number of buffers before you set the CLAW group device online. You can change the number of buffers at any time, but new values for an online device do not take effect until the device is set offline and back online.

To set the number of read buffers issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <number> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<device_bus_id>/read_buffer
```

To set the number of write buffers issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <number> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<device_bus_id>/write_buffer
```


where *<number>* is the number of buffers you want to allocate. The valid range of numbers you can specify is the same for read and write buffers. The range depends on your connection type (see “Setting the connection type” on page 184):

- For connection type PACKED you can allocate 2 to 64 buffers of 32 KB.
- For the other connection types you can allocate 2 to 512 buffers of 4 KB.

Example

In this example, 4 read buffers and 5 write buffers are allocated to a claw group device with device bus-ID 0.0.d200.

```
# echo 4 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/read_buffer
# echo 5 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/write_buffer
```

Setting a CLAW group device online or offline

To set a CLAW group device online set the online device group attribute to “1”. To set a CLAW group device offline set the online device group attribute to “0”. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/<device_bus_id>/online
```

Setting a device online for the first time associates it with an interface name. Setting the device offline preserves the association with the interface name.

Read `/var/log/messages` or issue **dmesg** to find out which interface name has been assigned. You will need to know the interface name to access the CLAW group device.

For each online interface, there is a symbolic link of the form `/sys/class/net/<interface_name>/device` in `sysfs`. You can confirm that you have found the correct interface name by reading the link.

Example

To set a CLAW device with bus ID 0.0.d200 online issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/online
# dmesg
claw0:readsize=4096 writesize=4096 readbuffer=4 writebuffer=5 read=0xd200 write=0xd201
claw0:host_name:LNx1 , adapter_name :RS1      api_type: PACKED
```

The interface name that has been assigned to the CLAW group device in the example is `claw0`. To confirm that this is the correct name for our group device issue:

```
# readlink /sys/class/net/claw0/device
../../../../devices/cu3088/0.0.d200
```

To set the same device offline issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccwgroup/drivers/claw/0.0.d200/online
```

Activating a CLAW group device

You can activate a CLAW group device with **ifconfig** or an equivalent command. See “MTU size” on page 181 for information on possible MTU settings.

Example

```
ifconfig claw0 10.22.34.5 netmask 255.255.255.248 dstaddr 10.22.34.6
```

Part 4. z/VM virtual server integration

This part describes device drivers and features that help to effectively run and manage a z/VM-based virtual Linux server farm.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 13. z/VM concepts	189
Performance monitoring for z/VM guests	189
Cooperative memory management background	191
 Chapter 14. Writing kernel APPLDATA records	 193
Building a kernel that is enabled for monitoring	193
Setting up the APPLDATA record support.	194
Working with the APPLDATA record support.	194
APPLDATA monitor record layout.	196
Programming interfaces	199
 Chapter 15. Writing application APPLDATA records	 201
Features.	201
What you should know about the monitor stream application device driver	201
Building a kernel with the monitor stream application device driver	201
Setting up the monitor stream application device driver.	202
Working with the monitor stream application device driver.	203
 Chapter 16. Reading z/VM monitor records	 205
Features.	205
What you should know about the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver	205
Building a kernel with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver	206
Setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver.	206
Working with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver.	208
 Chapter 17. z/VM recording device driver	 211
Features.	211
What you should know about the z/VM recording device driver.	211
Building a kernel with the z/VM recording device driver.	213
Setting up the z/VM recording device driver.	213
Working with z/VM recording devices	214
Scenario: Connecting to the *ACCOUNT service..	216
 Chapter 18. z/VM unit record device driver	 219
What you should know about the z/VM unit record device driver	219
Building a kernel with the z/VM unit record device driver	219
Setting up the z/VM unit record device driver	219
Working with the vmur device driver.	220
 Chapter 19. z/VM DCSS device driver	 221
Features.	221

What you should know about DCSS	221
Building a kernel with the DCSS device driver	223
Setting up the DCSS device driver	223
Avoiding overlaps with your Linux guest storage	225
Working with the DCSS device driver	226
Changing the contents of a DCSS	231
 Chapter 20. Shared kernel support	 233
What you should know about NSS	233
Building a kernel with NSS support	233
Kernel parameter for creating an NSS	233
Working with a Linux NSS	234
 Chapter 21. Watchdog device driver	 237
Features	237
What you should know about the watchdog device driver	237
Building a kernel with the watchdog device driver	238
Setting up the watchdog device driver	238
External programming interfaces	241
 Chapter 22. z/VM CP interface device driver	 243
What you should know about the z/VM CP interface	243
Building a kernel with the z/VM CP interface	244
Setting up the z/VM CP interface	244
 Chapter 23. AF_IUCV address family support	 245
Features	245
Building a kernel with AF_IUCV support	245
Setting up the AF_IUCV address family support	246
Working with the AF_IUCV address family support	247
 Chapter 24. Cooperative memory management	 249
Building a kernel with cooperative memory management	249
Setting up cooperative memory management	250
Working with cooperative memory management	251

Chapter 13. z/VM concepts

This chapter contains information that is not strictly needed to run the functionality in question, however, it might help you understand some of the background.

Performance monitoring for z/VM guests

You can monitor the performance of Linux instances or other VM guests with performance monitoring tools on z/VM or on Linux. These tools can be your own, IBM tools such as the Performance Toolkit for VM, or third party tools. The guests being monitored require agents that write monitor data.

Monitoring on z/VM

z/VM monitoring tools need to read performance data. In the case of monitoring Linux guests, this data is APPLDATA monitor records. Linux instances need to write these records for the tool to read, as shown in Figure 48.

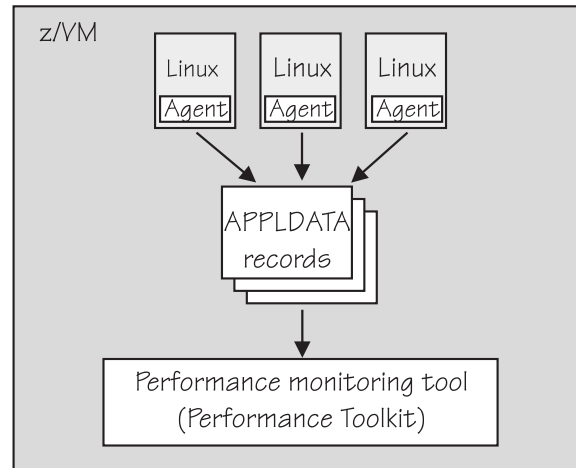


Figure 48. Linux instances write APPLDATA records for performance monitoring tools

Both user space applications and the Linux kernel can write performance data to APPLDATA records. Applications use the monwriter device driver to write APPLDATA records. The Linux kernel can be configured to collect system level data such as memory, CPU usage, and network related data, and write it to data records.

For file system size data there is a command, `mon_fsstatd`, a user space tool that uses the monwriter device driver to write file system size information as defined records.

For process data there is a command, `mon_procd`, a user space tool that uses the monwriter device driver to write system information as defined records.

In summary, Linux on System z supports writing and collecting performance data as follows:

- The Linux kernel can write z/VM monitor data for Linux instances, see Chapter 14, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 193.

- Applications running on Linux guests can write z/VM monitor data, see Chapter 15, “Writing application APPLDATA records,” on page 201.
- You can collect monitor file system size information, see “mon_fsstatd – Monitor z/VM guest file system size” on page 462.
- You can collect system information on up to 100 concurrent running processes. see “mon_procd – Monitor Linux guest” on page 467.

Monitoring on Linux

For performance monitoring on Linux, you can use a tool such as Tivoli® OMEGAMON®, or write your own software, and set up a Linux instance to read the monitor data as shown in Figure 49. A Linux instance can read the monitor data using the monreader device driver.

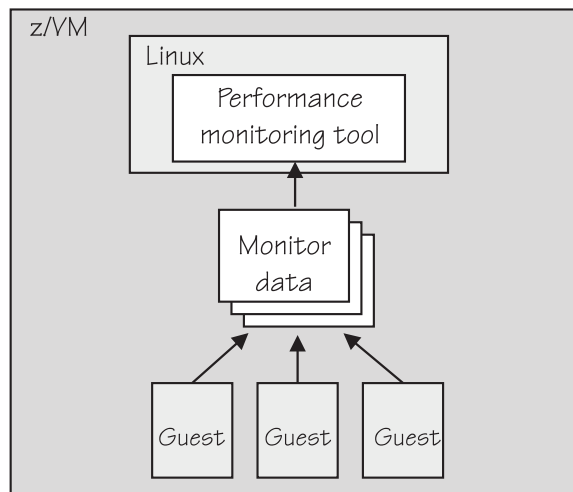


Figure 49. Performance monitoring using monitor DCSS data

In summary, Linux on System z supports reading performance data as follows:

- Read access to z/VM monitor data for Linux guests, see Chapter 16, “Reading z/VM monitor records,” on page 205.

Further information

- Refer to *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6096, the chapter on monitoring performance for information on using the CP Monitor and the Performance Toolkit for VM.
- Refer to *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116 for general information on DCSSs (z/VM keeps monitor records in a DCSS).
- Refer to *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for information on how to create a monitor DCSS.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information on the CP commands used in the context of DCSSs and for controlling the z/VM monitor system service.
- For the layout of the monitor records visit www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/mon520/index.html and refer to Chapter 14, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 193.

For more information about performance monitoring on z/VM, visit

www.ibm.com/vm/perf

Cooperative memory management background

This section gives some background information about cooperative memory management (CMM, or "cmm1"). For information about setting it up, see Chapter 24, "Cooperative memory management," on page 249.

In a virtualized environment it is common practise to give the virtual machines more memory than is actually available to the hypervisor. Linux has the tendency to use all of its available memory. As a result, the hypervisor (z/VM) might start swapping.

To avoid excessive z/VM swapping the available Linux guest memory can be reduced. To reduce Linux guest memory size CMM allocates pages to page pools that make the pages unusable to Linux. Two such page pools exist for a Linux guest, as shown in Figure 50.

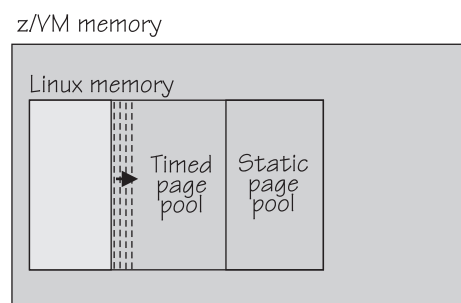


Figure 50. Page pools

The two page pools are:

A static page pool

The page pool is controlled by a resource manager that changes the pool size at intervals according to guest activity as well as overall memory usage on z/VM (see Figure 51).

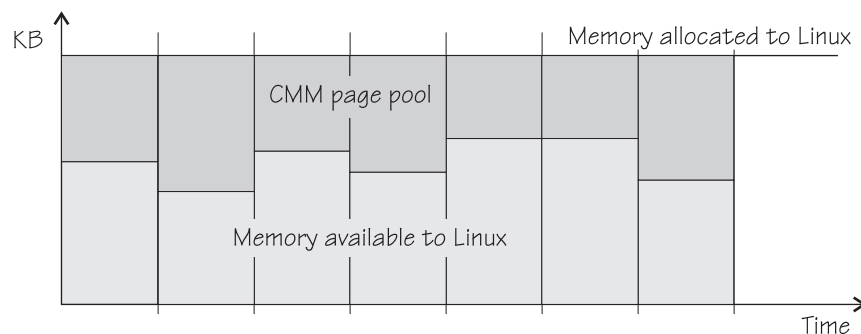


Figure 51. Static page pool. The size of the pool is static for the duration of an interval.

A timed page pool

Pages are released from this pool at a speed set in the *release rate* (see Figure 52 on page 192). According to guest activity and overall memory usage on z/VM, a resource manager adds pages at intervals. If no pages are added and the release rate is not zero, the pool will empty.

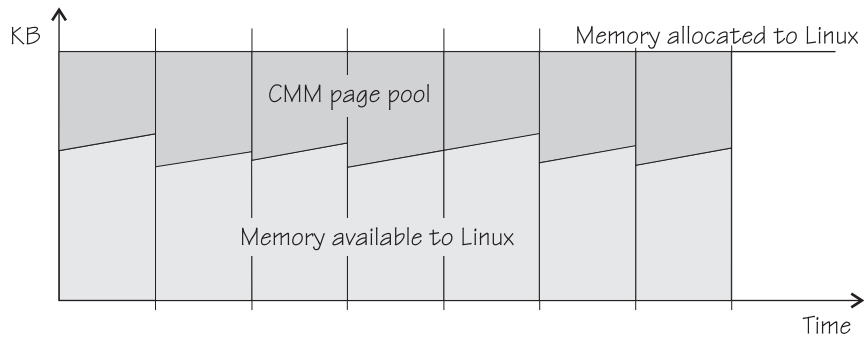


Figure 52. Timed page pool. Pages are freed at a set release rate.

The external resource manager that controls the pools can be the z/VM resource monitor (VMRM) or a third party systems management tool.

VMRM controls the pools over a message interface. Setting up the external resource manager is beyond the scope of this book. For more information, see the chapter on VMRM in *z/VM V5R1.0 Performance*, SC24-6109.

Third party tools can use a Linux daemon that receives commands for the memory allocation through TCP/IP. The daemon, in turn, uses the a /proc-based interface. You can use the /proc interface to read the pool sizes. This is useful for diagnostics.

Chapter 14. Writing kernel APPLDATA records

z/VM is a convenient point for collecting VM guest performance data and statistics for an entire server farm. Linux instances can export such data to z/VM by means of APPLDATA monitor records. z/VM regularly collects these records. The records are then available to z/VM performance monitoring tools.

A virtual CPU timer on the Linux guest to be monitored controls when data is collected. The timer only accounts for busy time to avoid unnecessarily waking up an idle guest. The APPLDATA record support comprises several modules. A base module provides an intra-kernel interface and the timer function. The intra-kernel interface is used by *data gathering modules* that collect actual data and determine the layout of a corresponding APPLDATA monitor record (see “APPLDATA monitor record layout” on page 196).

For an overview of performance monitoring support, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guests” on page 189.

Building a kernel that is enabled for monitoring



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

Figure 53 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the APPLDATA record support:

Base setup --->

...	
Virtual CPU timer support	(CONFIG_VIRT_TIMER)
└Linux - VM Monitor Stream, base infrastructure	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_BASE)
└Monitor memory management statistics	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_MEM)
└Monitor OS statistics	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_OS)
└Monitor overall network statistics	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_NET_SUM)

Figure 53. Linux monitor stream kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_VIRT_TIMER

This option is a prerequisite for the APPLDATA record support.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_BASE

This option provides the base component for the APPLDATA record support.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_MEM

This option provides monitoring for memory related data. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `appldata_mem`.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_OS

This option provides monitoring for operating system related data, for example, CPU usage. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `appldata_os`.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_NET_SUM

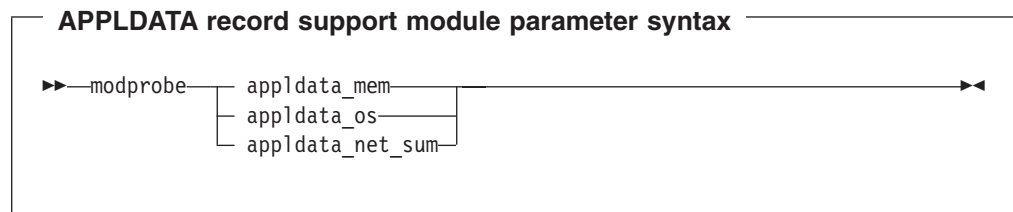
This option provides monitoring for network related data. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `appldata_net_sum`.

Setting up the APPLDATA record support

There are no module parameters for the monitor stream support. This section describes how to load those components of the support that have been compiled as separate modules and how to set up your VM guest for the APPLDATA record support.

Loading data gathering modules

One or more of the data gathering components might have been compiled as separate modules. Use the **modprobe** command to load any required modules. See the **modprobe** man page for command details.



where `appldata_mem`, `appldata_os`, and `appldata_net_sum` are the modules for gathering memory related data, operating system related data, and network related data.

Enabling your VM guest for data gathering

To enable your Linux guest for data gathering ensure that the Linux guest directory includes the option `APPLMON`.

Working with the APPLDATA record support

You control the monitor stream support through the `procfs`. You can set the timer interval and switch on or off data collection. APPLDATA monitor records are produced if both a particular data gathering module and the monitoring support in general are switched on.

Switching the support on or off

You switch on or off the monitoring support by writing “1” (on) or “0” (off) to `/proc/sys/appldata/timer`.

To read the current setting issue:

```
# cat /proc/sys/appldata/timer
```

To switch on the monitoring support issue:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sys/appldata/timer
```

To switch off the monitoring support issue:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/appldata/timer
```

Activating or deactivating individual data gathering modules

You can activate or deactivate the data gathering modules individually. Each data gathering module has a procfs entry that contains a value “1” if the module is active and “0” if the module is inactive. The entries are:

- `/proc/sys/appldata/mem` for the memory data gathering module
- `/proc/sys/appldata/os` for the CPU data gathering module
- `/proc/sys/appldata/net_sum` for the net data gathering module

To check if a module is active look at the content of the corresponding procfs entry.

To activate a data gathering module write “1” to the corresponding procfs entry. To deactivate a data gathering module write “0” to the corresponding procfs entry. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /proc/sys/appldata/<data_type>
```

where `<data_type>` is one of `mem`, `os`, or `net_sum`.

Note: An active data gathering module produces APPLDATA monitor records only if the monitoring support is switched on (see “Switching the support on or off” on page 194).

Example

To find out if memory data gathering is active issue:

```
# cat /proc/sys/appldata/mem
0
```

In the example, memory data gathering is off. To activate memory data gathering issue:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sys/appldata/mem
```

To deactivate the memory data gathering module issue:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/appldata/mem
```

Setting the sampling interval

You can set the time that lapses between consecutive data samples. The time you set is measured by the virtual CPU timer. Because the virtual timer slows down as the guest idles, the time sampling interval in real time can be considerably longer than the value you set.

The value in `/proc/sys/appldata/interval` is the sample interval in milliseconds. The default sample interval is 10 000 ms. To read the current value issue:

```
# cat /proc/sys/appldata/interval
```

To set the sample interval to a different value write the new value (in milliseconds) to `/proc/sys/appldata/interval`. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <interval> > /proc/sys/appldata/interval
```

where *<interval>* is the new sample interval in milliseconds. Valid input must be greater than 0 and less than $2^{31} - 1$. Input values greater than $2^{31} - 1$ produce unpredictable results.

Example

To set the sampling interval to 20 s (20000 ms) issue:

```
# echo 20000 > /proc/sys/appldata/interval
```

APPLDATA monitor record layout

This section describes the layout of the APPLDATA monitor records that can be provided to z/VM. Each of the modules that can be installed with the base module corresponds to a type of record:

- Memory data (see Table 32 on page 197)
- Processor data (see Table 33 on page 198)
- Networking (see Table 34 on page 199)

z/VM can identify the records by their unique product ID. The product ID is an EBCDIC string of this form: "LINUXKRNL<record ID>260100". The *<record ID>* is treated as a byte value, not a string.

The records contain data of the following types:

u32 unsigned 4 byte integer

u64 unsigned 8 byte integer

Important

On 31-bit Linux systems, the u64 values are actually only 32-bit values. That is, the lower 32 bit wrap around like 32-bit counters and the upper 32 bit are always zero.

Table 32. APPLDATA_MEM_DATA record (Record ID 0x01)

Offset		Type	Name	Description
Decimal	Hex			
0	0x0	u64	timestamp	TOD timestamp generated on the Linux side after record update
8	0x8	u32	sync_count_1	After VM collected the record data, sync_count_1 and sync_count_2 should be the same. Otherwise, the record has been updated on the Linux side while VM was collecting the data. As a result, the data might be inconsistent.
12	0xC	u32	sync_count_2	
16	0x10	u64	pgpgin	Data read from disk (in KB)
24	0x18	u64	pgpgout	Data written to disk (in KB)
32	0x20	u64	pswpin	Pages swapped in
40	0x28	u64	pswpout	Pages swapped out
48	0x30	u64	sharedram	Shared RAM in KB, currently set to 0 by Linux kernel (2.4 and 2.6)
56	0x38	u64	totalram	Total usable main memory size in KB
64	0x40	u64	freeram	Available memory size in KB
72	0x48	u64	totalhigh	Total high memory size in KB
80	0x50	u64	freehigh	Available high memory size in KB
88	0x58	u64	bufferram	Memory reserved for buffers, free cache in KB
96	0x60	u64	cached	Size of used cache, without buffers in KB
104	0x68	u64	totalswap	Total swap space size in KB
112	0x70	u64	freeswap	Free swap space in KB
120	0x78	u64	pgalloc	Page allocations
128	0x80	u64	pgfault	Page faults (major+minor)
136	0x88	u64	pgmajfault	Page faults (major only)

Table 33. APPLDATA_OS_DATA record (Record ID 0x02)

Offset		Type (size)	Name	Description
Decimal	Hex			
0	0x0	u64	timestamp	TOD timestamp generated on the Linux side after record update.
8	0x8	u32	sync_count_1	After VM collected the record data, sync_count_1 and sync_count_2 should be the same. Otherwise, the record has been updated on the Linux side while VM was collecting the data. As a result, the data might be inconsistent.
12	0xC	u32	sync_count_2	
16	0x10	u32	nr_cpus	Number of virtual CPUs.
20	0x14	u32	per_cpu_size	Size of the per_cpu_data for each CPU (= 36).
24	0x18	u32	cpu_offset	Offset of the first per_cpu_data (= 52).
28	0x1C	u32	nr_running	Number of runnable threads.
32	0x20	u32	nr_threads	Number of threads.
36	0x24	3 × u32	avenrun[3]	Average number of running processes during the last 1 (1st value), 5 (2nd value) and 15 (3rd value) minutes. These values are "fake fix-point", each composed of 10 bits integer and 11 bits fractional part. See note 1 at the end of this table.
48	0x30	u32	nr_iowait	Number of blocked threads (waiting for I/O).
52	0x34	See note 2.	per_cpu_data	Time spent in user, kernel, idle, nice, etc for every CPU. See note 3 at the end of this table.
52	0x34	u32	per_cpu_user	Timer ticks spent in user mode.
56	0x38	u32	per_cpu_nice	Timer ticks spent with modified priority.
60	0x3C	u32	per_cpu_system	Timer ticks spent in kernel mode.
64	0x40	u32	per_cpu_idle	Timer ticks spent in idle mode.
68	0x44	u32	per_cpu_irq	Timer ticks spent in interrupts.
72	0x48	u32	per_cpu_softirq	Timer ticks spent in softirqs.
76	0x4C	u32	per_cpu_iowait	Timer ticks spent while waiting for I/O.
80	0x50	u32	per_cpu_steal	Timer ticks "stolen" by hypervisor.
84	0x54	u32	cpu_id	The number of this CPU.
Notes: 1. The following C-Macros are used inside Linux to transform these into values with two decimal places: <pre>#define LOAD_INT(x) ((x) >> 11) #define LOAD_FRAC(x) LOAD_INT(((x) & ((1 << 11) - 1)) * 100)</pre> 2. nr_cpus * per_cpu_size 3. per_cpu_user through cpu_id are repeated for each CPU				

Table 34. APPLDATA_NET_SUM_DATA record (Record ID 0x03)

Offset		Type	Name	Description
Decimal	Hex			
0	0x0	u64	timestamp	TOD timestamp generated on the Linux side after record update
8	0x8	u32	sync_count_1	After VM collected the record data, sync_count_1 and sync_count_2 should be the same. Otherwise, the record has been updated on the Linux side while VM was collecting the data. As a result, the data might be inconsistent.
12	0xC	u32	sync_count_2	
16	0x10	u32	nr_interfaces	Number of interfaces being monitored
20	0x14	u32	padding	Unused. The next value is 64-bit aligned, so these 4 byte would be padded out by compiler
24	0x18	u64	rx_packets	Total packets received
32	0x20	u64	tx_packets	Total packets transmitted
40	0x28	u64	rx_bytes	Total bytes received
48	0x30	u64	tx_bytes	Total bytes transmitted
56	0x38	u64	rx_errors	Number of bad packets received
64	0x40	u64	tx_errors	Number of packet transmit problems
72	0x48	u64	rx_dropped	Number of incoming packets dropped because of insufficient space in Linux buffers
80	0x50	u64	tx_dropped	Number of outgoing packets dropped because of insufficient space in Linux buffers
88	0x58	u64	collisions	Number of collisions while transmitting

Programming interfaces

The monitor stream support base module exports two functions:

- `appldata _register_ops()` to register data gathering modules
- `appldata_unregister_ops()` to undo the registration of data gathering modules

Both functions receive a pointer to a struct `appldata_ops` as parameter. Additional data gathering modules that want to plug into the base module must provide this data structure. You can find the definition of the structure and the functions in `arch/s390/appldata/appldata.h` in the Linux source tree.

See “APPLDATA monitor record layout” on page 196 for an example of APPLDATA data records that are to be sent to z/VM.

Tip: include the `timestamp`, `sync_count_1`, and `sync_count_2` fields at the beginning of the record as shown for the existing APPLDATA record formats.

Chapter 15. Writing application APPLDATA records

Applications can easily write monitor data in the form of APPLDATA records to the z/VM monitor stream by using the monitor stream application device driver. This character device enables writing of z/VM monitor APPLDATA records.

For an overview of performance monitoring support, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guests” on page 189.

Features

The monitor stream application device driver provides the following functions:

- An interface to the z/VM monitor stream.
- A means of writing z/VM monitor APPLDATA records.

What you should know about the monitor stream application device driver

The monitor stream application device driver interacts with the z/VM monitor APPLDATA facilities for performance monitoring. A better understanding of these z/VM facilities might help when using this device driver.

Further information

- Refer to *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116 for general information on DCSSs.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084 for information on the DIAG x'DC' instruction.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information on the CP commands.
- Refer to *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for information on monitor APPLDATA.

Building a kernel with the monitor stream application device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

To build a kernel with the monitor stream application device driver you need to select option CONFIG_MONWRITER in the configuration menu:

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices --->
...
API for writing z/VM monitor service records (CONFIG_MONWRITER)
```

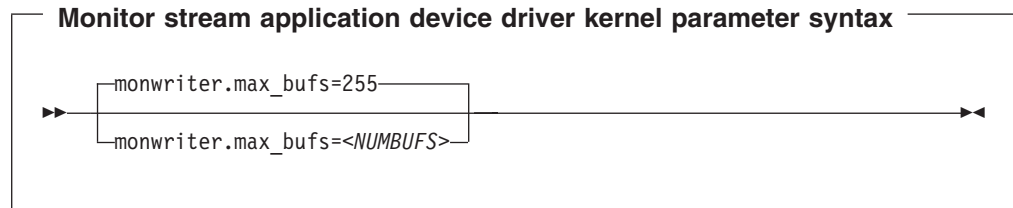
The monitor stream write support can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, MONWRITER.

Setting up the monitor stream application device driver

This section describes the parameters that you can use to configure the monitor stream write support.

Kernel parameters

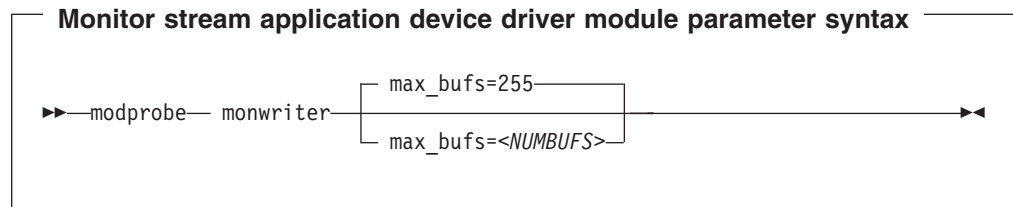
This section describes how to configure the monitor stream application device driver if it has been compiled into the kernel. You configure the device driver by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.



where *NUMBUFS* is the maximum number of monitor sample and configuration data buffers that can exist in the Linux guest at one time. The default is 255.

Module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure those components that have been compiled as separate modules.



where *NUMBUFS* is the maximum number of monitor sample and configuration data buffers that can exist in the Linux guest at one time. The default is 255.

Example

If you have compiled the monitor stream application device driver as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with it. To load the monwriter module and set the maximum number of buffers to NUMBUFS, use the following command:

```
# modprobe monwriter max_bufs=NUMBUFS
```

Setting up the user

Before you begin:

- z/VM version 4.4 or later is required.

Set these options in the CP directory entry of the virtual machine in which the application using this device driver will run:

- OPTION APPLMON

Issue the following CP commands in order to have CP collect the respective types of monitor data:

- MONITOR SAMPLE ENABLE APPLDATA ALL
- MONITOR EVENT ENABLE APPLDATA ALL

You can either log in to the VM console in order to issue the CP commands (in which case the commands would have to be preceded by #CP), or use the **vmcp** command for issuing CP commands from your Linux guest.

Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information on the CP MONITOR command.

Working with the monitor stream application device driver

This device driver writes to the z/VM monitor stream through the z/VM CP instruction DIAG X'DC'. See *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084 for more information on the DIAG X'DC' instruction and the different monitor record types (sample, config, event).

The application writes monitor data by passing a `monwrite_hdr` followed by monitor data (except in the case of the STOP function, which requires no monitor data). The `monwrite_hdr`, as described in `monwriter.h`, is filled in by the application and includes the DIAG X'DC' function to be performed, the product identifier, the header length, and the data length.

All records written to the z/VM monitor stream begin with a product identifier. This device driver will use the product ID. The product ID is a 16-byte structure of the form `pppppppffnnvrrmm`, where:

ppppppp

is a fixed ASCII string, for example, LNXAPPL.

ff is the application number (hexadecimal number). This number can be chosen by the application, but to reduce the possibility of conflicts with other applications, a request for an application number should be submitted to the IBM z/VM Performance team at

www.ibm.com/vm/perf

n is the record number as specified by the application

vv, rr, and mm

can also be specified by the application. A possible use could be for specifying version, release, and modification level information, allowing changes to a certain record number when the layout has been changed, without changing the record number itself.

The first seven bytes of the structure (LNXAPPL) will be filled in by the device driver when it writes the monitor data record to the CP buffer. The last nine bytes contain information that is supplied by the application on the `write()` call when writing the data.

The `monwrite_hdr` structure that must be written before any monitor record data is defined as follows:

```
/* the header the app uses in its write() data */
struct monwrite_hdr {
    unsigned char mon_function;
    unsigned short applid;
    unsigned char record_num;
```

```

unsigned short version;
unsigned short release;
unsigned short mod_level;
unsigned short datalen;
unsigned char hdrlen;
}__attribute__((packed));

```

The following function code values are defined:

```

/* mon_function values */
#define MONWRITE_START_INTERVAL 0x00 /* start interval recording */
#define MONWRITE_STOP_INTERVAL 0x01 /* stop interval or config recording */
#define MONWRITE_GEN_EVENT      0x02 /* generate event record */
#define MONWRITE_START_CONFIG   0x03 /* start configuration recording */

```

Writing data

An application wishing to write APPLDATA must first issue `open()` to open the device driver. The application then needs to issue `write()` calls to start or stop the collection of monitor data and to write any monitor records to buffers that CP will have access to.

Using the `monwrite_hdr` structure

The structure `monwrite_hdr` is used to pass DIAG x'DC' functions and the application-defined product information to the device driver on `write()` calls. When the application calls `write()`, the data it is writing consists of one or more `monwrite_hdr` structures, each followed by monitor data (except if it is a STOP function, which is followed by no data).

The application can write to one or more monitor buffers. A new buffer is created by the device driver for each record with a unique product identifier. To write new data to an existing buffer, an identical `monwrite_hdr` should precede the new data on the `write()` call.

The `monwrite_hdr` also includes fields for the header length (useful for calculating the data offset from the beginning of the `hdr`) and the data length (length of the following monitor data, if any.) See `/include/asm-s390/monwriter.h` for the definition of `monwrite_hdr`.

Stopping data writing

When the application has finished writing monitor data, it needs to issue `close()` to close the device driver.

Chapter 16. Reading z/VM monitor records

Monitoring software on Linux can access z/VM guest data through the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver.

z/VM uses the z/VM monitor system service (*MONITOR) to collect monitor records from agents on its guests. z/VM writes the records to a discontinuous saved segment (DCSS). The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver uses IUCV to connect to *MONITOR and accesses the DCSS as a character device.

For an overview of performance monitoring support, see “Performance monitoring for z/VM guests” on page 189.

Features

The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- Read access to the z/VM *MONITOR DCSS.
- Reading *MONITOR records for z/VM 4.4 and later.
- Access to *MONITOR records as described on www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html
- Access to the records provided by the Linux monitor stream (see Chapter 14, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 193).

What you should know about the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver

The data that is collected by *MONITOR depends on how you have set up the service. The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver only reads data from the monitor DCSS; it does not control the system service.

z/VM only supports a single monitor DCSS. All monitoring software that requires monitor records from z/VM uses the same DCSS to read *MONITOR data. Usually, a DCSS called “MONDCSS” is already defined and used by existing monitoring software. If this is the case, you must also use MONDCSS. See “Assuring that the DCSS is addressable for your Linux guest” on page 206 for information on how to check if MONDCSS exists.

Further information

- Refer to *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116 for general information on DCSSs.
- Refer to *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for information on how to create a monitor DCSS.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information on the CP commands used in the context of DCSSs and for controlling the z/VM monitor system service.
- For the layout of the monitor records visit www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/mon440/index.html and refer to Chapter 14, “Writing kernel APPLDATA records,” on page 193.

Building a kernel with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_MONREADER` to be able to access the z/VM monitor DCSS (see Figure 54).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices --->
...
API for reading z/VM monitor service records (CONFIG_MONREADER)
```

*Figure 54. z/VM *MONITOR record kernel configuration menu options*

The z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `monreader`.

You also need IUCV support.

Setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver

This section describes how to set up a Linux guest for accessing an existing monitor DCSS with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver.

Set up the monitor system service and the monitor DCSS on z/VM is beyond the scope of this book. See “Further information” on page 205 for documentation on the monitor system service, DCSS, and related CP commands.

Before you start: Some of the CP commands you need to use for setting up the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver require class E authorization.

Providing the required USER DIRECT entries for your z/VM guest

The z/VM guest where your Linux instance is to run must be permitted to establish an IUCV connection to the z/VM *MONITOR system service. Ensure that the guest’s entry in the USER DIRECT file includes the statement:

```
IUCV *MONITOR
```

If the DCSS is restricted you also need the statement:

```
NAMESAVE <dcss>
```

where `<dcss>` is the name of the DCSS that is used for the monitor records. You can find out the name of an existing monitor DCSS by issuing the following command from a CMS session with privilege class E:

```
#cp q monitor
```

Assuring that the DCSS is addressable for your Linux guest

The DCSS address range must not overlap with the storage of your z/VM guest virtual machine. To find out the start and end address of the DCSS by issuing the following CP command from a CMS session with privilege class E:

```
#cp q nss map
```

the output gives you the start and end addresses of all defined DCSSs in units of 4 kilobyte pages:

```
00: FILE FILENAME FILETYPE MINSIZE BEGPAG ENDPAG TYPE CL #USERS PARMREGS VMGROUP
...
00: 0011 MONDCSS CPDCSS N/A 09000 097FF SC R 00003 N/A N/A
...
```

If the DCSS overlaps with the guest storage follow the procedure in “Avoiding overlaps with your Linux guest storage” on page 225.

Specifying the monitor DCSS name

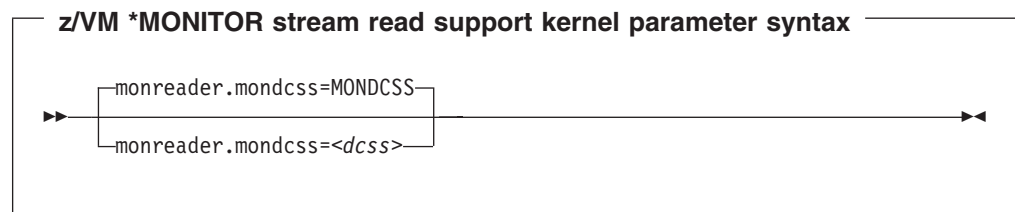
By default, the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver assumes that the monitor DCSS on z/VM is called MONDCSS. If you want to use a different DCSS name you need to specify it. Proceed according to your distribution:

- If your device driver has been compiled into the kernel, specify the DCSS name as a kernel parameter.
- If your device driver has been compiled as a separate module, specify the DCSS name as a module parameter when you load the module.

Kernel parameter

This section describes how you can specify a DCSS name if the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver has been compiled into the kernel.

You can specify a DCSS name by adding the `mondcss` parameter to the kernel parameter line.



where `<dcss>` is the name of the DCSS that z/VM uses for the monitor records.

Example: To specify MYDCSS as the DCSS name add the following parameter to the kernel parameter line:

```
mondcss=MYDCSS
```

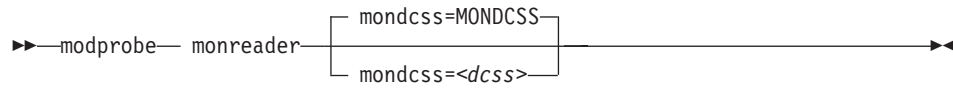
The value is automatically converted to upper case.

Module parameter

This section describes how to load the monitor read support if it has been compiled as separate module. It also tells you how to specify a DCSS name, if applicable.

Load the monitor read support module with **modprobe** to assure that any other required modules are also loaded. You need IUCV support if you want to use the monitor read support.

monitor stream support module parameter syntax



where *<dcss>* is the name of the DCSS that z/VM uses for the monitor records.

Example: To load the monitor read support module and specify MYDCSS as the DCSS issue:

```
modprobe monreader mondcss=mydcss
```

Assuring that the required device node exists

You need a device node for a miscellaneous character device to access the monitor DCSS. Your distribution might create this device node for you (for example, by using udev). To find out if there is already a device node issue:

```
# find / -name monreader
```

If there is no device node, you need to create one. To find out the major and minor number for your monitor device read the dev attribute of the device's representation in sysfs:

```
# cat /sys/class/misc/monreader/dev
```

The value of the dev attribute is of the form *<major>:<minor>*.

To create issue a command of the form:

```
# mknod <node> c <major> <minor>
```

where *<node>* is your device node.

Example:

To create a device node */dev/monreader*:

```
# cat /sys/class/misc/monreader/dev  
10:63  
# mknod /dev/monreader c 10 63
```

In the example, the major number was 10 and the minor 63.

Working with the z/VM *MONITOR record reader device driver

This section describes how to work with the monitor read support.

- Opening and closing the character device
- Reading monitor records

Opening and closing the character device

Only one user can open the character device at any one time. Once you have opened the device you need to close it to make it accessible to other users.

The open function can fail (return a negative value) with one of the following values for errno:

EBUSY

The device has already been opened by another user.

EIO

No IUCV connection to the z/VM MONITOR system service could be established. An error message with an IPUSER SEVER code is printed into syslog. Refer to *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for details on the codes.

Once the device is opened, incoming messages are accepted and account for the message limit. If you keep the device open indefinitely, expect to eventually reach the message limit (with error code EOVERFLOW).

Reading monitor records

There are two alternative methods for reading:

- Non-blocking read in conjunction with polling
- Blocking read without polling

Reading from the device provides a 12-byte monitor control element (MCE), followed by a set of one or more contiguous monitor records (similar to the output of the CMS utility MONWRITE without the 4K control blocks). The MCE contains information on:

- The type of the following record set (sample/event data)
- The monitor domains contained within it
- The start and end address of the record set in the monitor DCSS

The start and end address can be used to determine the size of the record set, the end address is the address of the last byte of data. The start address is needed to handle "end-of-frame" records correctly (domain 1, record 13), that is, it can be used to determine the record start offset relative to a 4K page (frame) boundary.

See "Appendix A: *MONITOR" in *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for a description of the monitor control element layout. The layout of the monitor records can be found on

www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ct1blk.html

The layout of the data stream provided by the monreader device is as follows:

```
...
<0 byte read>
<first MCE>          \
<first set of records> |...   | - data set
...                  |
<last MCE>           /
<last set of records> /
<0 byte read>
...
```

There may be more than one combination of MCE and a corresponding record set within one data set. The end of each data set is indicated by a successful read with a return value of 0 (0 byte read). Received data is not to be considered valid unless

a complete record set is read successfully, including the closing 0-Byte read. You are advised to always read the complete set into a user space buffer before processing the data.

When designing a buffer, allow for record sizes up to the size of the entire monitor DCSS, or use dynamic memory allocation. The size of the monitor DCSS will be printed into syslog after loading the module. You can also use the (Class E privileged) CP command Q NSS MAP to list all available segments and information about them (see “Assuring that the DCSS is addressable for your Linux guest” on page 206).

Error conditions are indicated by returning a negative value for the number of bytes read. In case of an error condition, the errno variable can be:

EIO Reply failed. All data read since the last successful read with 0 size is not valid. Data will be missing. The application must decide whether to continue reading subsequent data or to exit.

EFAULT

Copy to user failed. All data read since the last successful read with 0 size is not valid. Data will be missing. The application must decide whether to continue reading subsequent data or to exit.

EAGAIN

Occurs on a non-blocking read if there is no data available at the moment. There is no data missing or damaged, retry or use polling for non-blocking reads.

EOVERFLOW

Message limit reached. The data read since the last successful read with 0 size is valid but subsequent records might be missing. The application must decide whether to continue reading subsequent data or to exit.

Chapter 17. z/VM recording device driver

The z/VM recording device driver can be used by Linux systems that run as z/VM guests. The device driver enables the Linux guest to read from the CP recording services and, thus, act as a z/VM wide control point.

The z/VM recording device driver uses the z/VM RECORDING command to collect records and IUCV to transmit them to the Linux guest.

Features

The z/VM recording device driver supports the following devices and functions:

- Reading records from the CP error logging service, *LOGREC.
- Reading records from the CP accounting service, *ACCOUNT.
- Reading records from the CP diagnostic service, *SYMPTOM.
- Automatic and explicit record collection (see “Starting and stopping record collection” on page 214).

What you should know about the z/VM recording device driver

The z/VM recording device driver is a character device driver that is grouped under the IUCV category of device drivers (see “Device categories” on page 9). There is one device for each recording service. The devices are created for you if the z/VM recording device driver is included in the kernel or they are created when the z/VM recording device driver is loaded as a module.

z/VM recording device nodes

Each recording service has a fixed minor number and a name that corresponds to the name of the service as shown in Table 35:

Table 35. Device names and minor numbers

z/VM recording service	Standard device name	Minor number
*LOGREC	logrec	0
*ACCOUNT	account	1
*SYMPTOM	symptom	2

The major device number for the z/VM recording device driver is assigned dynamically. Read the dev attribute of any one of the z/VM recording devices to find out the major number. The dev attribute is of the form `<major>:<minor>`.

Example:

To read the dev attribute of the logrec device:

```
# cat /sys/class/vmlogdr/logrec/dev
254:0
```

While vmlogdr registers its driver and device structures with the iucv bus, it also needs to register a class and a class device under /sys/class. The dev attribute is member of that class device. In the example, the major number 254 has been assigned and the minor number is 0 as expected.

Creating device nodes for the z/VM recording devices

You access z/VM recording data through device nodes. The required device nodes might be provided for you by udev or by your distribution.

If there are no device nodes, use a command of this form to create a node:

```
mknod -m 440 /dev/<file> c <major> <minor>
```

where:

<file>

is the file name that you assign to the device node.

<major>

is the major number that has been dynamically assigned to the z/VM recording device driver (see “z/VM recording device nodes” on page 211).

<minor>

is the minor number of the recording service for which you are creating the device node.

Example: Using the standard device names (see Table 35 on page 211) and assuming that the major number 254 has been assigned to the z/VM recording device driver you could create the device nodes like this:

```
# mknod -m 440 /dev/logrec c 254 0
# mknod -m 440 /dev/account c 254 1
# mknod -m 440 /dev/symptom c 254 2
```

Reading records

The read function returns one record at a time. If there is no record, the read function waits until a record becomes available.

Each record begins with a 4 byte field containing the length of the remaining record. The remaining record contains the binary z/VM data followed by the four bytes X'454f5200' to mark the end of the record. These bytes build the zero terminated ASCII string “EOR”, which is useful as an eye catcher.

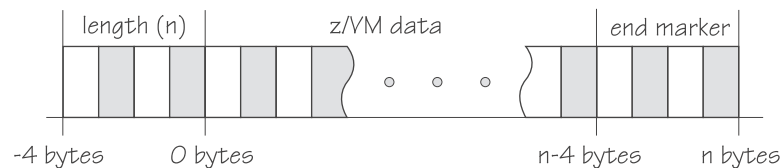


Figure 55. Record structure

Figure 55 illustrates the structure of a complete record as returned by the device. If the buffer assigned to the read function is smaller than the overall record size, multiple reads are required to obtain the complete record.

The format of the z/VM data (*LOGREC) depends on the record type described in the common header for error records HDRREC.

For more information on the z/VM record layout, refer to the *CMS and CP Data Areas and Control Blocks* documentation at www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html.

Further information

For general information about CP recording system services refer to *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084.

Building a kernel with the z/VM recording device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

To build a Linux kernel that supports the z/VM recording device driver you need a kernel that includes the IUCV device driver. You also need to select the CONFIG_VMLOGRDR configuration menu option (see Figure 56).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices --->
...
Support for the z/VM recording system services (CONFIG_VMLOGRDR)
```

Figure 56. z/VM recording kernel configuration menu option

The z/VM recording device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, vmlogdr.

Setting up the z/VM recording device driver

This section provides information on the guest authorization you need to be able to collect records and on how to load the device driver if it has been compiled as a module.

Authorizing the Linux guest

The Linux guest must be authorized to use the z/VM RECORDING command. Depending on the z/VM environment, this could be either of the following authorization classes: A, B, C, E, or F.

The guest must also be authorized to connect to those IUCV services it needs to use.

Loading the z/VM recording device driver

There are no module parameters for the z/VM recording device driver.

If you have compiled the z/VM recording device driver as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with z/VM recording devices. Load the vmlogdr module with the modprobe command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
# modprobe vmlogdr
```

Working with z/VM recording devices

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with z/VM recording devices.

- Starting and stopping record collection
- Purging existing records
- Querying the VM recording status
- Opening and closing devices
- Reading records

Starting and stopping record collection

By default, record collection for a particular z/VM recording service begins when the corresponding device is opened and stops when the device is closed.

You can use a device's autorecording attribute to be able to open and close a device without also starting or stopping record collection. You can use a device's recording attribute to start and stop record collection regardless of whether the device is opened or not.

Be aware that you cannot start record collection if a device is open and there are already existing records. Before you can start record collection for an open device you must read or purge any existing records for this device (see “Purging existing records” on page 215).

To be able to open a device without starting record collection and to close a device without stopping record collection write “0” to the devices autorecording attribute. To restore the automatic starting and stopping of record collection write “1” to the devices autorecording attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/autorecording
```

where <flag> is either 0 or 1, and <device> is one of: logrec, symptom, or account.

To explicitly switch on record collection write “1” to the devices recording attribute. To explicitly switch off record collection write “0” to the devices recording attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/recording
```

where <flag> is either 0 or 1, and <device> is one of: logrec, symptom, or account.

You can read the both the autorecording and the recording attribute to find the current settings.

Examples

- In this example, first the current setting of the autorecording attribute of the logrec device is checked, then automatic recording is switched off:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autorecording
1
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autorecording
```

- In this example record collection is started explicitly and later stopped for the account device:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
...
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

To confirm whether recording is on or off, use the `record_status` attribute as described in “Querying the VM recording status.”

Purging existing records

By default, existing records for a particular z/VM recording service are purged automatically when the corresponding device is opened or closed.

You can use a device’s `autopurge` attribute to prevent records from being purged when a device is opened or closed. You can use a device’s `purge` attribute to purge records for a particular device at any time without having to open or close the device.

To be able to open or close a device without purging existing records write “0” to the device’s `autopurge` attribute. To restore automatic purging of existing records write “1” to the device’s `autopurge` attribute. You can read the `autopurge` attribute to find the current setting. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/autopurge
```

where `<flag>` is either 0 or 1, and `<device>` is one of: `logrec`, `symptom`, or `account`.

To purge existing records for a particular device without opening or closing the device write “1” to the device’s `purge` attribute. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/<device>/purge
```

where `<device>` is one of: `logrec`, `symptom`, or `account`.

Examples

- In this example, the setting of the `autopurge` attribute for the `logrec` device is checked first, then automatic purging is switched off:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autopurge
1
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/logrec/autopurge
```

- In this example, the existing records for the `symptom` device are purged:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/symptom/purge
```

Querying the VM recording status

You can use the `record_status` attribute of the z/VM recording device driver representation in `sysfs` to query the VM recording status.

Example

This example runs the `vm cp` command `QUERY RECORDING` and returns the complete output of that command. This list will not necessarily have an entry for all three services and there might be additional entries for other guests.

```
$ cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

This will result in output similar to the following:

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001774	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF	00000000	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

where the lines represent:

- The service
- The recording status
- The number of queued records
- The number of records that will result in a message to the operator
- The guest that is or was connected to that service and the current status of that connection

A detailed description of the QUERY RECORDING command can be found in the *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

Opening and closing devices

You can open, read, and release the device. You cannot open the device multiple times. Each time the device is opened it must be released before it can be opened again.

You can use a device's autorecord attribute (see "Starting and stopping record collection" on page 214) to enable automatic record collection while a device is open.

You can use a device's autopurge attribute (see "Purging existing records" on page 215) to enable automatic purging of existing records when a device is opened and closed.

Scenario: Connecting to the *ACCOUNT service.

This scenario demonstrates autorecording, turning autorecording off, purging records, and starting recording.

1. Query the status of VM recording. As root, issue the following command:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

The results depend on the system, but should be similar to the following:

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001812	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF	00000000	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

2. Open /dev/account with an appropriate application. This will connect the guest to the *ACCOUNT service and start recording. The entry for *ACCOUNT on guest LINUX31 will change to ACTIVE and ON:


```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001812	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00000000	020	LINUX31	ACTIVE

3. Switch autopurge and autorecord off:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/autopurge
```

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/autorecording
```

4. Close the device by ending the application that reads from it and check the recording status. Note that while the connection is INACTIVE, RECORDING is still ON:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001812	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00000000	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

5. The next status check shows that some event created records on the *ACCOUNT queue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001821	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00000009	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

6. Switch recording off:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001821	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF	00000009	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

7. Try to switch it on again, and check whether it worked by checking the recording status:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
```

RECORDING	COUNT	LMT	USERID	COMMUNICATION
EREP ON	00000000	002	EREP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON	00001821	020	DISKACNT	INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON	00000000	002	OPERSYMP	ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF	00000009	020	LINUX31	INACTIVE

Recording did not start, in the message logs you may find a message:

vmlogrdr: recording response: HPCRC8087I Records are queued for user LINUX31 on the *ACCOUNT recording queue and must be purged or retrieved before recording can be turned on.

Note that this kernel message has priority 'debug' so it might not be written to any of your log files.

8. Now remove all the records on your *ACCOUNT queue either by starting an application that reads them from /dev/account or by explicitly purging them:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/purge
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING    COUNT    LMT    USERID    COMMUNICATION
EREK ON      00000000  002    EREP      ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON   00001821  020    DISKACNT  INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON   00000000  002    OPERSYMP  ACTIVE
ACCOUNT OFF  00000000  020    LINUX31   INACTIVE
```

9. Now we can start recording, check status again:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/account/recording
```

```
# cat /sys/bus/iucv/drivers/vmlogrdr/recording_status
RECORDING    COUNT    LMT    USERID    COMMUNICATION
EREK ON      00000000  002    EREP      ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON   00001821  020    DISKACNT  INACTIVE
SYMPTOM ON   00000000  002    OPERSYMP  ACTIVE
ACCOUNT ON   00000000  020    LINUX31   INACTIVE
```

Chapter 18. z/VM unit record device driver

The z/VM unit record device driver provides Linux access to virtual unit record devices. Unit record devices comprise punch card readers, card punches, and line printers. Linux access is limited to virtual unit record devices with default device types (2540 for reader and punch, 1403 for printer).

To write Linux files to the virtual punch or printer (that is, to the corresponding spool file queues) or to receive VM reader files (for example CONSOLE files) to Linux files, use the **vmur** command that is part of the s390-tools package (see “vmur - Work with z/VM spool file queues” on page 505).

What you should know about the z/VM unit record device driver

Creating device nodes

When the vmur module is loaded, it registers a character device with dynamic major number and a minor number region from 0x0 to 0xffff. The minor number corresponds to the virtual device number of the virtual unit record device. A mechanism like udev is needed to automatically generate the respective device nodes. The default udev rules will create the following device nodes:

- Reader: /dev/vmrdr-0.0.<device_number>
- Punch: /dev/vmpun-0.0.<device_number>
- Printer: /dev/vmprt-0.0.<device_number>

Building a kernel with the z/VM unit record device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the z/VM unit record device driver.

You need to select the kernel configuration option CONFIG_S390_VMUR to be able to work with unit record devices (see Figure 57).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices --->
...
z/VM unit record device driver                (CONFIG_S390_VMUR)
```

Figure 57. Kernel configuration menu option for the z/VM unit record device driver

The z/VM unit record device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, vmur.

Setting up the z/VM unit record device driver

There are no kernel or module parameters for the vmur device driver.

Working with the vmur device driver

After loading the vmur module, the required virtual unit record devices need to be set online, for example:

```
chccwdev -e c /* set online attribute in /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.000c */
chccwdev -e d /* set online attribute in /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.000d */
chccwdev -e e /* set online attribute in /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.000e */
```

When unloading vmur (with `rmmod`) the respective unit record device nodes must not be open, otherwise the error message "Module vmur is in use" is displayed.

Serialization is implemented per device; only one process can open a given device node at a given time.

Chapter 19. z/VM DCSS device driver

The z/VM discontinuous saved segments (DCSS) device driver provides disk-like fixed block access to z/VM discontinuous saved segments.

Features

The DCSS device driver facilitates:

- Initializing and updating ext2 compatible file system images in z/VM saved segments for use with the xip option of the ext2 file system.
- Implementing a shared read-write RAM disk for Linux guests, for example, for a file system that can be shared among multiple Linux images that run as guest systems under the same z/VM.

Starting with z/VM 5.4, you can:

- Locate a DCSS above 2047 MB
- Set up DCSS devices with a size above 2047 MB by mapping multiple DCSSs to a single DCSS block device

What you should know about DCSS

This section provides information about the DCSS device names and nodes.

Important

DCSSs occupy pool space. Be sure that you have enough pool space available (multiple times the DCSS size).

DCSS naming scheme

When the DCSS device driver is loaded, it dynamically allocates a major number to DCSS devices. A different major number might be used when the device driver is reloaded, for example when Linux is rebooted. Check the entry for “dcssblk” in `/proc/devices` to find out which major number is used for your DCSSs.

The standard device names are of the form `dcssblk<n>`, where `<n>` is the corresponding minor number. The first DCSS device that is added is assigned the name `dcssblk0`, the second `dcssblk1`, and so on. When a DCSS device is removed, its device name and corresponding minor number are free and can be reassigned. A DCSS device that is added always receives the lowest free minor number.

Creating device nodes

User space programs access DCSS devices by *device nodes*. Your distribution might create these device nodes for you or provide `udev` to create them (see “Device nodes provided by `udev`” on page 4).

If no device nodes are created for you, you need to create them yourself, for example, with the **mknod** command. Refer to the **mknod** man page for further details.

Tip: Use the device names to construct your nodes (see “DCSS naming scheme”).

Example: Defining standard DCSS nodes

To create standard DCSS device nodes of the form `/dev/<device_name>` issue commands of this form:

```
# mknod /dev/dcsslk0 b <major> 0
# mknod /dev/dcsslk1 b <major> 1
# mknod /dev/dcsslk2 b <major> 2
...
```

Accessing a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode

You need to access a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode, for example, when creating or updating the DCSS.

To access a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode at least one of the following conditions must apply:

- The DCSS fits below the maximum definable address space size of the z/VM guest virtual machine.
For large read-only DCSS, you can use suitable guest sizes to restrict exclusive-writable access to a specific z/VM guest virtual machine with a sufficient maximum definable address space size.
- The z/VM user directory entry for the z/VM guest virtual machine includes a NAMESAVE statement for the DCSS. See *z/VM CP Planning and Administration*, SC24-6083 for more information about the NAMESAVE statement.
- The DCSS has been defined with the LOADNSHR operand. See “DCSS options” about how to save DCSSs with optional properties.
See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information about the LOADNSHR operand.

DCSS options

The z/VM DCSS device driver always saves DCSSs with default properties. Any options that have previously been defined are removed. For example, a DCSS that has been defined with the LOADNSHR operand no longer has this property after being saved through the z/VM DCSS device driver.

To save a DCSS with optional properties, you must unmount the DCSS device, then use the CP DEFSEG and SAVESEG commands to save the DCSS. See “Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties” on page 229 for an example.

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information about DCSS options.

Further information

- For information on DCSS see *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116
- For an example of how the xip option for the ext2 file system and DCSS can be used see *How to use Execute-in-Place Technology with Linux on z/VM*, SC34-2594 on developerWorks at:
www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Building a kernel with the DCSS device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

To build a kernel with DCSS support you need to select option CONFIG_DCSSBLK in the configuration menu (see Figure 58).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Block devices --->
...
DCSSBLK support                                     (CONFIG_DCSSBLK)
```

Figure 58. DCSS kernel configuration menu option

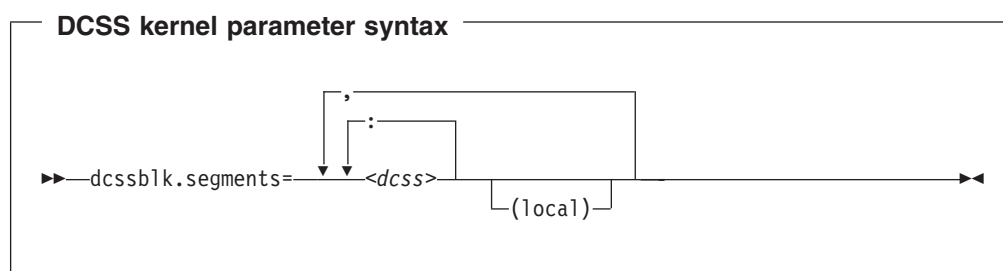
The DCSS support is available as a module, dcssblk, or built-in.

Setting up the DCSS device driver

Kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure the DCSS device driver if the DCSS block device support has been compiled into the kernel. You configure the device driver by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.

Use the dcssblk.segments kernel parameter to load one or more DCSSs during the boot process (for example, for use as swap devices).



<dcss>

specifies the name of a DCSS as defined on the z/VM hypervisor. The specification for `<dcss>` is converted from ASCII to uppercase EBCDIC.

- :** the colon (`:`) separates DCSSs within a set of DCSSs to be mapped to a single DCSS device. You can map a set of DCSSs to a single DCSS device if the DCSSs in the set form a contiguous memory space.

You can specify the DCSSs in any order. The name of the first DCSS you specify is used to represent the device under `/sys/devices/dcssblk`.

(local)

sets the access mode to exclusive-writable after the DCSS or set of DCSSs have been loaded.

- ,** the comma (`,`) separates DCSS devices.

Examples

The following parameter in the kernel parameter line loads three DCSSs during the boot process: DCSS1, DCSS2, and DCSS3. DCSS2 is accessed in exclusive-writable mode and can be included in `/etc/fstab` and used as a swap device.

```
dcssblk.segments="dcss1,dcss2(local),dcss3"
```

The following parameter in the kernel parameter line loads four DCSSs during the boot process: DCSS4, DCSS5, DCSS6, and DCSS7. The device driver creates two DCSS devices, one maps to DCSS4 and the other maps to the combined storage space of DCSS5, DCSS6, and DCSS7 as a single device.

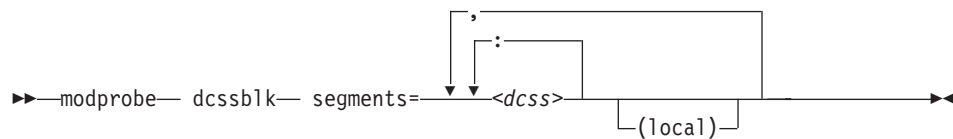
```
dcssblk.segments="dcss4,dcss5:dcss6:dcss7"
```

Module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure the DCSS device driver if the DCSS block device support has been compiled as a separate module.

Load the DCSS block device driver with **modprobe**. Use the `segments` module parameter to load one or more DCSSs when the DCSS device driver is loaded.

DCSS module parameter syntax



<dcss>

specifies the name of a DCSS as defined on the z/VM hypervisor. The specification for `<dcss>` is converted from ASCII to uppercase EBCDIC.

: the colon (:) separates DCSSs within a set of DCSSs to be mapped to a single DCSS device. You can map a set of DCSSs to a single DCSS device if the DCSSs in the set form a contiguous memory space.

You can specify the DCSSs in any order. The name of the first DCSS you specify is used to represent the device under `/sys/devices/dcssblk`.

(local)

sets the access mode to exclusive-writable after the DCSS or set of DCSSs have been loaded.

, the comma (,) separates DCSS devices.

Examples

The following command loads the DCSS device driver and three DCSSs: DCSS1, DCSS2, and DCSS3. DCSS2 is accessed in exclusive-writable mode.

```
# modprobe dcssblk segments="dcss1,dcss2(local),dcss3"
```

The following command loads the DCSS device driver and four DCSSs: DCSS4, DCSS5, DCSS6, and DCSS7. The device driver creates two DCSS devices. One

device maps to DCSS4 and the other maps to the combined storage space of DCSS5, DCSS6, and DCSS7 as a single device.

```
# modprobe dcssblk segments="dcss4,dcss5:dcss6:dcss7"
```

Avoiding overlaps with your Linux guest storage

Ensure that your DCSSs do not overlap with the memory of your z/VM guest virtual machine (guest storage). To find the start and end addresses of the DCSSs, enter the following CP command from a CMS session with privilege class E:

```
#cp q nss map
```

the output gives you the start and end addresses of all defined DCSSs in units of 4 kilobyte pages:

```
00: FILE FILENAME FILETYPE MINSIZE BEGPAG ENDPAG TYPE CL #USERS PARMREGS VMGROUP
...
00: 0011 MONDCSS CPDCSS N/A 09000 097FF SC R 00003 N/A N/A
...
```

If all DCSSs that you intend to access are located above the guest storage, you do not need to take any action.

If any DCSS that you intend to access with your guest machine overlaps with the guest storage, redefine the guest storage as two or more discontinuous storage extents such that the storage gap with the lowest address range covers all your DCSSs' address ranges.

Notes:

1. You cannot place a DCSS into a storage gap other than the storage gap with the lowest address range.
2. A z/VM guest that has been defined with one or more storage gaps cannot access a DCSS above the guest storage.

From a CMS session, use the DEF STORE command to define your guest storage as discontinuous storage extents. Ensure that the storage gap between the extents covers all your DCSSs' address ranges. Issue a command of this form:

```
DEF STOR CONFIG 0.<storage_gap_begin> <storage_gap_end>.<storage above gap>
```

where:

<storage_gap_begin>

is the lower limit of the storage gap. This limit must be at or below the lowest address of the DCSS with the lowest address range.

Because the lower address ranges are required for memory management functions make the lower limit at least 128 MB. The lower limit for the DCSS increases with the total memory size and 128 MB is not an exact value but it is an approximation that is sufficient for most cases.

<storage_gap_end>

is the upper limit of the storage gap. The upper limit must be above the upper limit of the DCSS with the highest address range.

<storage above gap>

is the amount of storage above the storage gap. The total guest storage is *<storage_gap_begin> + <storage above gap>*.

All values can be suffixed with M to provide the values in megabyte. Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for more information on the DEF STORE command.

Example

To make a DCSS that starts at 144 MB and ends at 152 MB accessible to a z/VM guest with 256 MB guest storage:

```
DEF STORE CONFIG 0.140M 160M.116M
```

The storage gap in the example ranges from 140 MB to 160 MB and thus covers the entire DCSS range. The total guest storage is 140 MB + 116 MB = 256 MB.

Working with the DCSS device driver

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with DCSS devices:

- Adding a DCSS device
- Listing the DCSSs that map to a particular device
- Finding the minor number for a DCSS device
- Setting the access mode
- Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs
- Removing a DCSS device

Adding a DCSS device

Before you start:

- You need to have set up one or more DCSSs on z/VM and know the names assigned to the DCSSs on z/VM.
- If you use the watchdog device driver, turn off the watchdog before adding a DCSS device. Adding a DCSS device can result in a watchdog timeout if the watchdog is active.
- You cannot concurrently access overlapping DCSSs.
- You cannot access a DCSS that overlaps with your z/VM guest virtual storage (see “Avoiding overlaps with your Linux guest storage” on page 225).
- If a z/VM guest has been defined with multiple storage gaps, you can only add DCSSs that are located in the storage gap with the lowest address range.
- If a z/VM guest has been defined with one or more storage gaps, you cannot add a DCSS that is located above the guest storage.

To add a DCSS device enter a command of this form:

```
# echo <dcss-list> > /sys/devices/dcsslk/add
```

<dcss-list>

the name, as defined on z/VM, of a single DCSS or a colon (:) separated list of names of DCSSs to be mapped to a single DCSS device. You can map a set of DCSSs to a single DCSS device if the DCSSs in the set form a contiguous memory space. You can specify the DCSSs in any order. The name of the first DCSS you specify is used to represent the device under /sys/devices/dcsslk.

Examples

To add a DCSS called “MYDCSS” enter:

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcsslk/add
```

To add three DCSSs “MYDCSS1”, “MYDCSS2”, and “MYDCSS3” as a single device enter:

```
# echo MYDCSS2:MYDCSS1:MYDCSS3 > /sys/devices/dcsslk/add
```

In sysfs, the resulting device is represented as /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS2.

Listing the DCSSs that map to a particular device

To list the DCSSs that map to a DCSS device, issue a command like this:

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsslk/<dcss-name>/seglst
```

where <dcss-name> is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

Examples

In this example, DCSS device MYDCSS maps to a single DCSS, “MYDCSS”.

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/seglst
MYDCSS
```

In this example, DCSS device MYDCSS2 maps to three DCSSs, “MYDCSS1”, “MYDCSS2”, and “MYDCSS3”.

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS2/seglst
MYDCSS2
MYDCSS1
MYDCSS3
```

Finding the minor number for a DCSS device

When you add a DCSS device, a minor number is assigned to it. Unless you use dynamically created device nodes as provided by udev, you might need to know the minor device number that has been assigned to the DCSS (see “DCSS naming scheme” on page 221).

When you add a DCSS device, a directory of this form is created in sysfs:

```
/sys/devices/dcsslk/<dcss-name>
```

where <dcss-name> is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

This directory contains a symbolic link, block, that helps you to find out the device name and minor number. The link is of the form ../../../../block/dcsslk<n>, where dcsslk<n> is the device name and <n> is the minor number.

Example

To find out the minor number assigned to a DCSS device that is represented by the directory /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS issue:

```
# readlink /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/block
../../../../block/dcsslk0
```

In the example, the assigned minor number is “0”.

Setting the access mode

You might want to access the DCSS device with write access to change the content of the DCSS or set of DCSSs that map to the device. There are two possible write access modes to the DCSS device:

shared

In the shared mode, changes to DCSSs are immediately visible to all guests that access them. Shared is the default.

Note: Writing to a shared DCSS device bears the same risks as writing to a shared disk.

exclusive-writable

In the exclusive-writable mode you write to private copies of DCSSs. A private copy is writable, even if the original DCSS is read-only. Changes you make to a private copy are invisible to other guests until you save the changes (see “Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs” on page 229).

After saving the changes to a DCSS, all guests that open the DCSS access the changed copy. z/VM retains a copy of the original DCSS for those guests that continue accessing it, until the last guest has stopped using it.

To access a DCSS in the exclusive-writable mode the maximum definable storage size of your z/VM virtual machine must be above the upper limit of the DCSS. Alternatively, suitable authorizations must be in place (see “Accessing a DCSS in exclusive-writable mode” on page 222).

For either access mode the changes are volatile until they are saved (see “Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs” on page 229).

Set the access mode before you open the DCSS device. To set the access mode to exclusive-writable set the DCSS device’s shared attribute to “0”. To reset the access mode to shared set the DCSS device’s shared attribute to “1”.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/devices/dcsslk/<dcss-name>/shared
```

where *<dcss-name>* is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

You can read the shared attribute to find out the current access mode.

Example

To find out the current access mode of a DCSS device represented by the DCSS name “MYDCSS”:

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/shared
1
```

“1” means that the current access mode is shared. To set the access mode to exclusive-writable issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/shared
```

Saving updates to a DCSS or set of DCSSs

Before you start:

- Saving a DCSS as described in this section results in a default DCSS, without optional properties. For DCSSs that have been defined with options (see “DCSS options” on page 222), see “Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties.”
- If you use the watchdog device driver, turn off the watchdog before saving updates to DCSSs. Saving updates to DCSSs can result in a watchdog timeout if the watchdog is active.
- Do not place save requests before you have accessed the DCSS device.

To place a request for saving changes permanently on the spool disk write “1” to the DCSS device’s save attribute. If a set of DCSSs has been mapped to the DCSS device, the save request applies to all DCSSs in the set.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/dcsslk/<dcss-name>/save
```

where *<dcss-name>* is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

Saving is delayed until you close the device.

You can check if a save request is waiting to be performed by reading the contents of the save attribute.

You can cancel a save request by writing “0” to the save attribute.

Examples

To check if a save request exists for a DCSS device that is represented by the DCSS name “MYDCSS”:

```
# cat /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/save
0
```

The “0” means that no save request exists. To place a save request issue:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/save
```

To purge an existing save request issue:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/dcsslk/MYDCSS/save
```

Workaround for saving DCSSs with optional properties

Note: This section applies to DCSSs with special options only. The workaround in this section is error-prone and requires utmost care. Erroneous parameter values for the described CP commands can render a DCSS unusable. Only use this workaround if you really need a DCSS with special options.

Perform the following steps to save a DCSS with optional properties:

1. Unmount the DCSS.

Example: Enter this command to unmount a DCSS with the device node `/dev/dcsslk0`:

```
# umount /dev/dcsslk0
```

2. Use the CP DEFSEG command to newly define the DCSS with the required properties.

Example: Enter this command to newly define a DCSS, `mydcss`, with the range `80000-9ffff`, segment type `sr`, and the `loadnshr` operand:

```
# vmcp defseg mydcss 80000-9ffff sr loadnshr
```

Note: If your DCSS device maps to multiple DCSSs as defined to z/VM, you must perform this step for each DCSS. Be sure to specify the command correctly with the correct address ranges and segment types. Incorrect specifications can render the DCSS unusable.

3. Use the CP SAVESEG command to save the DCSS.

Example: Enter this command to save a DCSS `mydcss`:

```
# vmcp saveseg mydcss
```

Note: If your DCSS device maps to multiple DCSSs as defined to z/VM you must perform this step for each DCSS. Omitting this step for individual DCSSs can render the DCSS device unusable.

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for details about the DEFSEG and SAVESEG CP commands.

Removing a DCSS device

Before you start: A DCSS device can only be removed when it is not in use.

You can remove the DCSS or set of DCSSs that are represented by a DCSS device from your Linux system by issuing a command of this form:

```
# echo <dcss-name> > /sys/devices/dcsslk/remove
```

where `<dcss-name>` is the DCSS name that represents the DCSS device.

If you have created your own device nodes, you can keep the nodes for reuse. Be aware that the major number of the device might change when you unload and reload the DCSS device driver. When the major number of your device has changed, existing nodes become unusable.

Example

To remove a DCSS device that is represented by the DCSS name “MYDCSS” issue:

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcsslk/remove
```

Changing the contents of a DCSS

The following scenario describes how you can use the DCSS block device driver to change the contents of a DCSS.

Assumptions:

- The Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest with class E user privileges.
- A DCSS has been set up and can be accessed in exclusive-writable mode by the Linux instance.
- The DCSS does not overlap with the guest's main storage.
- There is only a single DCSS named "MYDCSS".
- The DCSS block device driver has been set up and is ready to be used.

Note: The description in this scenario can readily be extended to changing the content of a set of DCSSs that form a contiguous memory space. The only change to the procedure would be mapping the DCSSs in the set to a single DCSS device in step 1. The assumptions about the set of DCSSs would be that the contiguous memory space formed by the set does not overlap with the guest storage and that only the DCSSs in the set are added to the Linux instance.

Perform the following steps to change the contents of a DCSS:

1. Add the DCSS to the block device driver.

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcssblk/add
```

2. Ensure that there is a device node for the DCSS block device. If it is not created for you, for example by udev, create it yourself.

- Find out the major number used for DCSS block devices. Read /proc/devices:

```
# cat /proc/devices
...
Block devices
...
254 dcssblk
...
```

The major number in the example is 254.

- Find out the minor number used for MYDCSS. If MYDCSS is the first DCSS that has been added the minor number is 0. To be sure you can read a symbolic link that is created when the DCSS is added.

```
# readlink /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/block
../../../../block/dcssblk0
```

The trailing 0 in the standard device name dcssblk0 indicates that the minor number is, indeed, 0.

- Create the node with the **mknod** command:

```
# mnod /dev/dcssblk0 b 254 0
```

3. Set the access mode to exclusive-write.

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/shared
```

4. Mount the file system in the DCSS on a spare mount point.

Example:

```
# mount /dev/dcssblk0 /mnt
```

5. Update the data in the DCSS.
6. Create a save request to save the changes.

```
# echo 1 > /sys/devices/dcssblk/MYDCSS/save
```

7. Unmount the file system.

```
# umount /mnt
```

The changes to the DCSS are now saved. When the last z/VM guest stops accessing the old version of the DCSS, the old version is discarded. Each guest that opens the DCSS accesses the updated copy.

8. Remove the device.

```
# echo MYDCSS > /sys/devices/dcssblk/remove
```

9. If you have created your own device node, you can optionally clean it up.

```
# rm -f /dev/dcssblk0
```

Chapter 20. Shared kernel support

You can save a Linux kernel in a VM named saved system (NSS). Through an NSS, z/VM makes operating system code in shared real memory pages available to z/VM guest virtual machines. Multiple Linux guest operating systems on the z/VM can then boot from the NSS and run from the single copy of the Linux kernel in memory.

For a z/VM guest virtual machine a shared kernel in an NSS amounts to a fast boot device. In a virtual Linux server farm with multiple z/VM guest virtual machines sharing the NSS, the NSS can help to reduce paging and enhance performance.

What you should know about NSS

Before you create an NSS you need to have a Linux system that supports kernel sharing installed on a conventional boot device, for example, a DASD or SCSI disk. You create the NSS when you use a special boot parameter to boot the Linux system from this original boot device.

For more information on NSS and the CP commands used in this section see:

- www.vm.ibm.com/linux/linuxnss.html
- *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.
- *z/VM Virtual Machine Operation*, SC24-6128.

Building a kernel with NSS support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

You need to select the option `CONFIG_SHARED_KERNEL` if you want to be able to IPL from an NSS (see Figure 59).

Base setup --->

...

VM shared kernel support

(`CONFIG_SHARED_KERNEL`)

Figure 59. NSS kernel configuration menu option

Kernel parameter for creating an NSS

You create an NSS with a shared kernel by booting a Linux system with shared kernel support with the `savesys=` parameter.

kernel parameter syntax

►►—`savesys=<nss_name>`—◄◄

where *<nss_name>* is the name you want to assign to the NSS. The name can be 1-8 characters long and must consist of alphabetic or numeric characters. Be sure not to assign a name that matches any of the device numbers used at your installation.

Note: If *<nss_name>* contains non-alphanumeric characters, the NSS might be created successfully. However, this name might not work in CP commands. Always use alphanumeric characters for the name.

Working with a Linux NSS

This section describes how you can create and maintain a Linux NSS. For information about booting Linux from an NSS see “Using a named saved system” on page 361. Note that Kexec is disabled for Linux guests booted from a kernel NSS.

For each task described in this section you need:

- You need a kernel image that provides shared kernel support and has been installed on a conventional boot device.

Important

Be aware that both compiling your own kernel or recompiling an existing distribution usually means that you have to maintain your kernel yourself.

- You need z/VM guest virtual machine that:
 - Runs with class E privileges
 - Runs on a single virtual processor

Setting up a Linux NSS

Perform these steps to create a Linux NSS:

1. Boot Linux.
2. Insert `savesys=<nssname>` into the kernel parameter file used by your boot configuration, where *<nssname>* is the name you want to assign to the NSS. The name can be 1-8 characters long and must consist of alphabetic or numeric characters. Examples of valid names include: 73248734, NSSCSITE, or NSS1234. Be sure not to assign a name that matches any of the device numbers used at your installation.
3. Issue a **zipl** command to write the modified configuration to the boot device.
4. Close down Linux.
5. Issue an IPL command to boot Linux from the device that holds the Linux kernel. During the IPL process, the NSS is created and Linux is actually booted from the NSS.

You can now use the NSS to boot Linux in other z/VM guest virtual machines. See “Using a named saved system” on page 361 for details.

Creating a Linux NSS from the CP command line

Before you begin: On z/VM prior to 5.4.0, you require a guest with a single CPU to create a kernel NSS.

You can create a Linux NSS without booting Linux and without editing the **zipl** parameter file. To boot Linux and save it as an NSS issue an IPL command of this form:

```
IPL <devno> PARM savesys=<nssname>
```

where *<devno>* refers to a device that designates the Linux system that is to be saved as an NSS; and *<nssname>* is the name you want to assign to the NSS.

The NSS name can be 1-8 characters long and must consist of alphabetic or numeric characters. Examples of valid names include: 73248734, NSSCSITE, or NSS1234. Be sure not to assign a name that matches any of the device numbers used at your installation.

During the IPL process, the NSS is created and Linux is booted from the NSS.

Example: To create a Linux NSS from CP when a standard Linux system is installed on device 1234, use the following command:

```
IPL 1234 PARM savesys=1nxnss
```

Once the Linux NSS has been defined and saved, it can be booted using its name:

```
IPL 1nxnss
```

For information about the PARM attribute, see “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

Updating a Linux NSS

Perform these steps to update a Linux NSS:

1. Boot the updated version of your Linux system.
2. Include `savesys=<nssname>` into the kernel parameters used by your boot configuration, where *<nssname>* is the name of the NSS you want to update. See “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for information about the boot configuration.
3. Issue a **zipl** command to write the modified configuration to the boot device.
4. Close down Linux.
5. Issue an IPL command to boot Linux from the device that holds the updated Linux kernel. During the IPL process, the NSS is updated and Linux is booted from the NSS.

Deleting a Linux NSS

Perform these steps to delete an obsolete Linux NSS:

1. Close down all Linux instances that use the NSS.
2. Issue a CP PURGE NSS NAME command to delete the NSS. For example, issue a command of this form

```
PURGE NSS NAME <nssname>
```

where *<nssname>* is the name of the NSS you want to delete.

Chapter 21. Watchdog device driver

The watchdog device driver provides Linux user space watchdog applications with access to the z/VM watchdog timer.

Watchdog applications can be used to set up automated restart mechanisms for Linux guests. Watchdog based restart mechanisms are an alternative to a networked heartbeat in conjunction with STONITH (see “STONITH support (snip1 for STONITH)” on page 492).

A watchdog application that communicates directly with the z/VM control program (CP) does not require a third operating system to monitor a heartbeat. The watchdog device driver enables you to set up a restart mechanism of this form.

Features

The watchdog device driver provides:

- Access to the z/VM watchdog timer.
- An API for watchdog applications (see “External programming interfaces” on page 241).

What you should know about the watchdog device driver

The watchdog function comprises the watchdog timer that runs on z/VM and a watchdog application that runs on the Linux guest being controlled. While the Linux guest operates satisfactory, the watchdog application reports a positive status to the z/VM watchdog timer at regular intervals. The watchdog application uses a miscellaneous character device to pass these status reports to the z/VM timer (Figure 60).

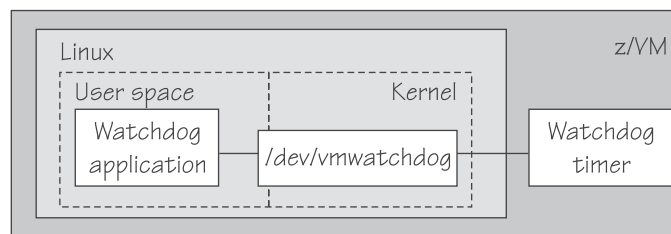


Figure 60. Watchdog application and timer

The watchdog application typically derives its status by monitoring, critical network connections, file systems, and processes on the Linux guest. If a given time elapses without a positive report being received by the watchdog timer, the watchdog timer assumes that the Linux guest is in an error state. The watchdog timer then triggers a predefined action from CP against the Linux guest. Examples of possible actions are: shutting down Linux, rebooting Linux, or initiating a system dump. For information on how to set the default timer and how to perform other actions, see “External programming interfaces” on page 241.

Note: Loading or saving a DCSS can take a long time during which the virtual machine does not respond, depending on the size of the DCSS. This may cause a watchdog to timeout and restart the guest. You are advised not to use the watchdog in combination with loading or saving DCSSs.

Your distribution might contain a watchdog application. You can also obtain a watchdog application from:

www.ibiblio.org/pub/Linux/system/daemons/watchdog/

See also the generic watchdog documentation in your Linux kernel source tree under Documentation/watchdog.

Building a kernel with the watchdog device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_ZVM_WATCHDOG` to be able to use the watchdog device driver (see Figure 61).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Watchdog Timer Support --->
...
--- Watchdog Device Drivers ---
...
z/VM Watchdog Timer          (CONFIG_ZVM_WATCHDOG)
```

Figure 61. Watchdog kernel configuration option

The watchdog device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `vmwatchdog`.

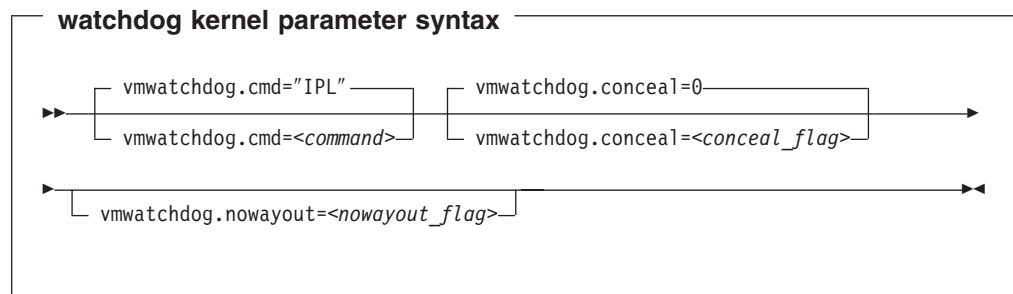
`CONFIG_ZVM_WATCHDOG` depends on the common code option `CONFIG_WATCHDOG`.

Setting up the watchdog device driver

This section describes the parameters that you can use to configure the watchdog device driver and how to assure that the required device node exists.

Watchdog kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure the watchdog device driver by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line if the watchdog support has been compiled into the kernel.



where:

<command>

is the command to be issued by CP if the Linux guest fails. The default “IPL” reboots the guest with the previous boot parameters.

Instead of rebooting the same system, you could also boot from an alternate IPL device (for example, a dump device). You can also specify multiple commands to be issued, see “Examples” for details. For more information on CP commands refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

The specification for *<command>*:

- Can be up to 230 characters long
- Needs to be enclosed by quotes if it contains any blanks or newline characters
- Is converted from ASCII to uppercase EBCDIC

<conceal_flag>

turns on and off the protected application environment where the guest is protected from unexpectedly entering CP READ. “0” turns off the protected environment, “1” enables it. The default is “0”.

For details, refer to the “SET CONCEAL” section of *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

<nowayout_flag>

determines what happens when the watchdog device node is closed by the watchdog application.

If the flag is set to “1”, the z/VM watchdog timer keeps running and triggers the command specified for *<command>* if no positive status report is received within the given time interval. If the character “V” is written to the device and the flag is set to “0”, the z/VM watchdog timer is stopped and the Linux guest continues without the watchdog support.

The default is determined by the common code kernel configuration option CONFIG_WATCHDOG_NOWAYOUT.

Examples

The following kernel parameters determine that, on failure, the Linux guest is to be IPLed from a device with devno 0xb1a0. The protected application environment is not enabled. The watchdog application can close the watchdog device node after writing “V” to it. As a result the watchdog timer becomes ineffective and does not IPL the guest.

```
vmwatchdog.cmd="ipl b1a0" vmwatchdog.nowayout=0
```

The following example shows how to specify multiple commands to be issued. This is true for both the built-in and module version, after booting the kernel or loading the module.

```
echo -en "cmd1\ncmd2\ncmd3" | cat > /sys/module/vmwatchdog/parameters/cmd
```

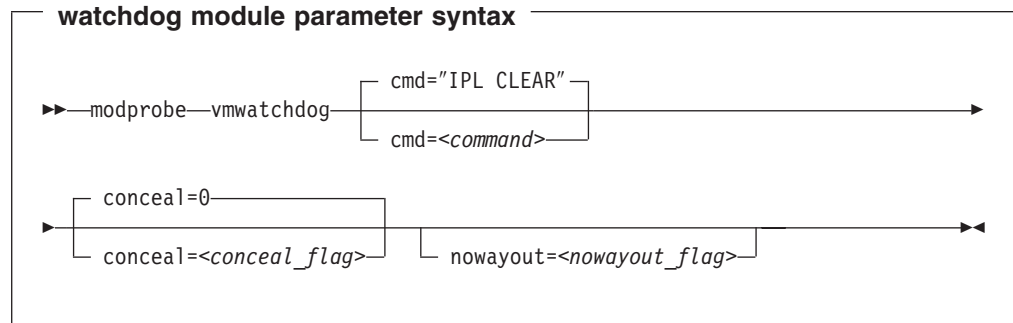
To verify that your commands have been accepted, issue:

```
cat /sys/module/vmwatchdog/parameters/cmd
cmd1
cmd2
cmd3
```

Note that it is not possible to specify the multiple commands as kernel parameters during boot time or module parameters while loading the module.

Module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure the watchdog device driver if it has been compiled as separate module.



The variables have the same meaning as in “Watchdog kernel parameters” on page 238.

Example

The following command loads the watchdog module and determines that, on failure, the Linux guest is to be IPLed from a device with devno 0xb1a0. The protected application environment is not enabled. The watchdog application can close the watchdog device node after writing “V” to it. As a result the watchdog timer becomes ineffective and does not IPL the guest.

```
modprobe vmwatchdog cmd="ipl b1a0" nowayout=0
```

Assuring that a device node exists

The watchdog application on Linux needs a misc character device to communicate with the z/VM watchdog timer. This device node is typically called `/dev/watchdog`. If your distribution does not create the device node for you (for example, with `udev`), you need to create a node.

To check if there is already a node issue:

```
# find / -name watchdog
```

If your distribution provides the watchdog device driver as a separate module, be sure to load the module before you check for the node. If there is no node, use major number 10 and minor number 130 to create one. Issue

```
# mknod /dev/watchdog c 10 130
```

External programming interfaces



This section provides information for those who want to program watchdog applications that work with the watchdog device driver.

For information on the API refer to the following files in the Linux source tree:

- `/Documentation/watchdog/watchdog-api.txt`
- `include/linux/watchdog.h`

The default watchdog timeout is 60 seconds, the minimum timeout that can be set through the IOCTL `SETTIMEOUT` is 15 seconds.

The following IOCTLs are supported:

- `WDIOC_GETSUPPORT`
- `WDIOC_SETOPTIONS` (`WDIOS_DISABLECARD`, `WDIOS_ENABLECARD`)
- `WDIOC_GETTIMEOUT`
- `WDIOC_SETTIMEOUT`
- `WDIOC_KEEPAIVE`

Chapter 22. z/VM CP interface device driver

Using the z/VM CP interface device driver (vmcp), you can send control program (CP) commands to the VM hypervisor and display VM's response. The vmcp device driver only works when Linux is running as a z/VM guest operating system.

What you should know about the z/VM CP interface

The z/VM CP interface driver (vmcp) uses the CP diagnose X'08' to send commands to CP and to receive responses. The behavior is similar but not identical to #cp on a 3270 console. There are two ways of using the z/VM CP interface driver:

- As a device node (usually /dev/vmcp)
- As a user space tool (see “vmcp - Send CP commands to the z/VM hypervisor” on page 503)

If vmcp is built as a module, you must load the vmcp module before you can use vmcp. If your system runs under VM, consider loading the vmcp kernel module automatically.

The vmcp tool can coexist with the cpint package.

Differences between vmcp and a 3270 console

Most CP commands behave identically with vmcp and on a 3270 console. However, some commands show a different behavior:

- Diagnose X'08' (see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084) requires you to specify a response buffer in conjunction with the command. As the size of the response is not known beforehand the default response buffer used by vmcp might be too small to hold the full response and as a result the response is truncated.
- On a 3270 console the CP command is executed on virtual CPU 0. The vmcp device driver uses the CPU that is scheduled by the Linux kernel. For CP commands that depend on the CPU number (like trace) you should specify the CPU, for example: `cpu 3 trace count`.
- Some CP commands do not return specific error or status messages through diagnose X'08'. These messages are only returned on a 3270 console. For example, the command `vmcp link user1 1234 123 mw` might return the message “DASD 123 LINKED R/W” in a 3270 console. This message will not appear when using vmcp. For details, see the z/VM help system or *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

Creating device nodes

User space programs access vmcp devices through *device nodes*. Your distribution might create these device nodes for you or provide udev to create them (see “Device nodes provided by udev” on page 4).

If no device nodes are created for you, you need to create them yourself, for example, with the **mknod** command. Refer to the **mknod** man page for further details.

The `/dev/vmcp` device node is a character device node (major number 10) with a dynamic minor number. During load, a `sysfs` folder called `class/misc/vmcp/` is created, which contains the dev file for getting the major and minor number of `vmcp`.

You can use the `vmcp` device node directly from an application using `open`, `write` (to issue the command), `read` (to get the response), `ioctl` (to get and set status) and `close`. The following `ioctls` are supported:

Table 36. The `vmcp` `ioctls`

Name	Code definition	Description
VMCP_GETCODE	_IOR (0x10, 1, int)	Queries the return code of VM.
VMCP_SETBUF	_IOW(0x10, 2, int)	Sets the buffer size (the device driver has a default of 4 KB; <code>/sbin/vmcp</code> calls this <code>ioctl</code> to set it to 8 KB instead).
VMCP_GETSIZE	_IOR(0x10, 3, int)	Queries the size of the response.

Building a kernel with the z/VM CP interface



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the `vmcp` device driver.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_VMCP` to be able to build a kernel with user space access to CP commands (see Figure 62).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices --->
...
Support for the z/VM CP interface (VM only)          (CONFIG_VMCP)
```

Figure 62. Kernel configuration menu option for the z/VM CP interface

The `vmcp` device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module. In case of a modular build, the module `vmcp.ko` must be loaded before `vmcp` can be used.

Setting up the z/VM CP interface

There are no kernel or module parameters for the `vmcp` device driver.

If you have compiled the `vmcp` component as a separate module, you need to load the module before you can work with the **vmcp** command.

```
# modprobe vmcp
```

Chapter 23. AF_IUCV address family support

The Inter-User Communication Vehicle (IUCV) is a z/VM communication facility that enables a program running in one z/VM guest virtual machine to communicate with another z/VM guest virtual machine, or with a control program (CP), or even with itself.

The AF_IUCV address family provides communication and addressing in the IUCV domain. In the IUCV domain, address spaces or virtual machines can use the socket interface to communicate with other virtual machines or address spaces within the same z/VM guest operating system.

AF_IUCV connects socket applications running on different Linux guest operating systems, or it connects a Linux application to another socket application running in another z/VM guest operating system (like z/VM CMS).

The AF_IUCV address family supports stream-oriented sockets (SOCK_STREAM) and connection-oriented datagram sockets (SOCK_SEQPACKET). Stream-oriented sockets fragment data over several native IUCV messages, whereas sockets of type SOCK_SEQPACKET map a particular socket write or read operation to a single native IUCV message.

Features

The AF_IUCV address family provides:

- Multiple outgoing socket connections from a Linux guest operating system.
- Multiple incoming socket connections to a Linux guest operating system.
- Socket communication with applications utilizing CMS AF_IUCV support.

Building a kernel with AF_IUCV support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include AF_IUCV support.

Figure 63 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the AF_IUCV support:

```
Networking support --->
...
  Networking options --->
  ...
    IUCV support (S390 - z/VM only)                (CONFIG_IUCV)
    └─ AF_IUCV support (S390 - z/VM only)          (CONFIG_AFIUCV)
```

Figure 63. IUCV kernel configuration menu option

CONFIG_IUCV

This option ensures that the base IUCV-services are usable. It is required if you want to make use of the z/VM Inter User Communication Vehicle. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, iucv.

CONFIG_AFIUCV

This option provides AF_IUCV address family support. It can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `af_iucv`.

Setting up the AF_IUCV address family support

This section describes the IUCV authorization you need for your z/VM guest virtual machine. It also describes how to load those components that have been compiled as separate modules. There are no kernel or module parameters for the AF_IUCV address family support.

Setting up your z/VM guest virtual machine for IUCV

This section provides an overview of the required IUCV statements for your z/VM guest virtual machine. For details and for general IUCV setup information for z/VM guest virtual machines see *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084 and *z/VM CP Planning and Administration*, SC24-6083.

Granting IUCV authorizations

Use the IUCV statement to grant the necessary authorizations.

IUCV ALLOW

allows any other z/VM virtual machine to establish a communication path with this z/VM virtual machine. With this statement, no further authorization is required in the z/VM virtual machine that initiates the communication.

IUCV ANY

allows this z/VM guest virtual machine to establish a communication path with any other z/VM guest virtual machine.

IUCV <user ID>

allows this z/VM guest virtual machine to establish a communication path to the z/VM guest virtual machine with the z/VM user ID <user ID>.

You can specify multiple IUCV statements. To any of these IUCV statements you can append the MSGLIMIT <limit> parameter. <limit> specifies the maximum number of outstanding messages that are allowed for each connection that is authorized by the statement. If no value is specified for MSGLIMIT, AF_IUCV requests 65 535, which is the maximum supported by IUCV.

Setting a connection limit

Use the OPTION statement to limit the number of concurrent connections.

OPTION MAXCONN <maxno>

<maxno> specifies the maximum number of IUCV connections allowed for this virtual machine. The default is 64. The maximum is 65 535.

Example

These sample statements allow any z/VM guest virtual machine to connect to your z/VM guest virtual machine with a maximum of 10 000 outstanding messages for each incoming connection. Your z/VM guest virtual machine is permitted to connect to all other z/VM guest virtual machines. The total number of connections for your z/VM guest virtual machine cannot exceed 100.

```
IUCV ALLOW MSGLIMIT 10000
IUCV ANY
OPTION MAXCONN 100
```

Loading the IUCV modules

If `af_iucv` has been compiled as a separate module, you need to load it before you can make use of it. Use **modprobe** to load the `AF_IUCV` address family support module `af_iucv`, which loads in addition to the required `iucv` module.

```
# modprobe af_iucv
```

Working with the `AF_IUCV` address family support

To use the `AF_IUCV` support, specify `AF_IUCV` as the socket address family and `AF_IUCV` address information in the `sockaddr` structure. The `AF_IUCV` constant on Linux on System z is 32. The primary difference between `AF_IUCV` sockets and TCP/IP sockets is how partners are identified (for example, how they are named). The `sockaddr` structure for `AF_IUCV` is:

```
struct sockaddr_iucv {
    sa_family_t    siucv_family;    /* AF_IUCV */
    unsigned short siucv_port;      /* reserved */
    unsigned int   siucv_addr;      /* reserved */
    char           siucv_nodeid[8]; /* reserved */
    char           siucv_userid[8]; /* guest user id */
    char           siucv_name[8];   /* application name */
};
```

where:

siucv_family

is set to `AF_IUCV` (= 32).

siucv_port, siucv_addr, and siucv_nodeid

are reserved for future use. The `siucv_port` and `siucv_addr` fields must be zero. The `siucv_nodeid` field must be set to exactly eight blank characters.

siucv_userid

is set to the z/VM user ID of the Linux guest virtual machine running the application that owns the address. This field must be eight characters long, padded with blanks on the right.

For the bind operation, `siucv_userid` must contain blanks only to allow `AF_IUCV` to set the correct z/VM user ID of the Linux guest operating system.

siucv_name

is set to the application name by which the socket is known. Servers advertise application names and clients use these application names to connect to servers. This field must be eight characters long, padded with blanks on the right.

Similar to TCP or UDP ports, application names distinguish separate applications on the same z/VM guest virtual machine that is reachable over IUCV. Do not call bind for names beginning with `lnxhvc`. These names are reserved for the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver.

For further details see the `af_iucv` man page.

Chapter 24. Cooperative memory management

The cooperative memory management (CMM, or "cmm1") is a mechanism to reduce the available memory of a Linux guest. CMM allocates pages to a dynamic page pool not available to Linux. A diagnose code indicates to z/VM that the pages in the page pool are out of use. z/VM can then immediately reuse these pages for other guests.

To set up CMM, you need to:

1. Incorporate cmm, either by building a kernel that includes it, or by loading the cmm module.
2. Set up a resource management tool that controls the page pool. This can be the z/VM resource monitor (VMRM) or a third party systems management tool.

This chapter describes how to set up CMM. For background information on CMM, see "Cooperative memory management background" on page 191.

You can also use the `cpuplugd` command to define rules for cmm behavior, see "Managing memory" on page 416.

Setting up the external resource manager is beyond the scope of this book. For more information, see the chapter on VMRM in z/VM V5R1.0 Performance, SC24-6109.

Building a kernel with cooperative memory management



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. To build a kernel with support for cooperative memory management you need to select option `CONFIG_CMM` in the configuration menu (see Figure 64).

```
Base setup --->
...
Cooperative memory management (CONFIG_CMM)
├ /proc interface to cooperative memory management (CONFIG_CMM_PROC)
└ IUCV special message interface to cooperative memory management (CONFIG_CMM_IUCV)
```

Figure 64. CMM kernel configuration menu option

The cooperative memory management support is available as a module, cmm, or built-in.

If you are using VMRM, you also need to select the special message support option `CONFIG_SMSGIUCV` (see Figure 64).

```

Networking --->
...
Networking options --->
...
IUCV support (S390 - z/VM only)                                (CONFIG_IUCV)
...
Device Drivers --->
...
Network device support -->
...
S/390 network device drivers -->
...
IUCV special message support (VM only)                        (CONFIG_MSGIUCV)

```

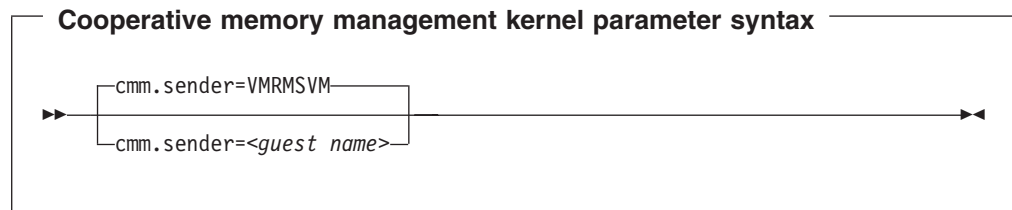
Figure 65. IUCV special message support kernel configuration menu option

Setting up cooperative memory management

This section describes how to set up a Linux instance to participate in the cooperative memory management when running as a z/VM guest operating system.

Kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure cooperative memory management if it has been compiled into the kernel. You configure cooperative memory management by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.



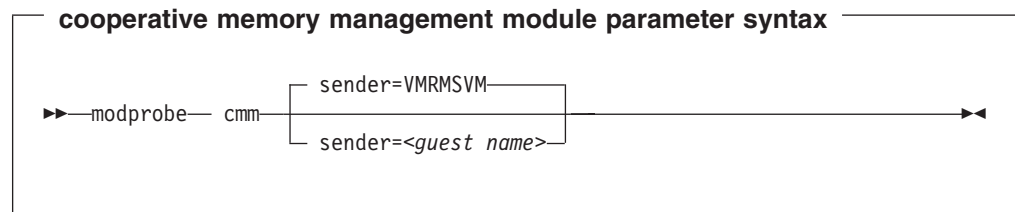
where:

<guest name>

is the name of the z/VM guest that is allowed to send messages to the module through the special messages interface. The default guest name is VMRMSVM, which is the default name of the VMRM service machine.

Loading the cooperative memory management module

The cooperative memory management support might have been compiled as a module. Use the **modprobe** command to load the module. Refer to the **modprobe** man page for command details.



where `<guest name>` is the name of the z/VM guest that is allowed to send messages to the module through the special messages interface. The default guest name is VMRMSVM.

Example

To load the cooperative memory management module and allow the guest TESTID to send messages:

```
# modprobe cmm sender=TESTID
```

Working with cooperative memory management

After set up, CMM works through the resource manager. No further actions are necessary. The following information is given for diagnostic purposes.

To reduce Linux guest memory size CMM allocates pages to page pools that make the pages unusable to Linux. There are two such page pools for a Linux guest, a static pool and a timed pool. You can use the `/proc` interface to read the sizes of the page pools.

Reading the size of the static page pool

To read the current size of the static page pool:

```
# cat /proc/sys/vm/cmm_pages
```

Reading the size of the timed page pool

To read the current size of the timed page pool:

```
# cat /proc/sys/vm/cmm_timed_pages
```

Part 5. System resources

This section describes device drivers and features that help to manage the resources of your real or virtual hardware.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 25. Managing CPUs	255
CPU capability change	255
Activating standby CPUs and deactivating operating CPUs	255
Examining the CPU topology	256
CPU polarization.	257
 Chapter 26. Managing hotplug memory	259
What you should know about memory hotplug	259
Building a kernel with memory hotplug support.	259
Setting up hotplug memory	260
Performing memory management tasks	261
 Chapter 27. Large page support	263
Building a kernel with large page support.	263
Setting up large page support	263
Working with large page support	264
 Chapter 28. S/390 hypervisor file system	265
Building a kernel with the S/390 hypervisor file system.	265
Directory structure	265
Setting up the S/390 hypervisor file system	268
Working with the S/390 hypervisor file system	269
 Chapter 29. CHSC subchannel device driver	271
What you should know about the CHSC subchannel device driver	271
Building a kernel with the CHSC subchannel device driver	272
Setting up the CHSC subchannel device driver	272
External programming interfaces	272
 Chapter 30. ETR and STP based clock synchronization	275
Setting up clock synchronization	275
Switching clock synchronization on and off	276

Chapter 25. Managing CPUs

Some attributes that govern CPUs are available in sysfs under:

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>
```

where <N> is the number of the CPU. You can read CPU capability, activate standby CPUs, and examine the CPU topology using the CPU attributes in sysfs.

CPU capability change

When the CPUs of a mainframe heat or cool, the Linux kernel generates a uevent for all affected online CPUs. You can read the CPU capability in:

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/capability
```

The capability value is an unsigned integer as defined in the system information block (SYSIB) 1.2.2 (see *z/Architecture Principles of Operation*, SA22-7832). A lower value indicates a proportionally higher CPU capacity. Beyond that, there is no formal description of the algorithm used to generate this value. The value is used as an indication of the capability of the CPU relative to the capability of other CPU models.

Activating standby CPUs and deactivating operating CPUs

A CPU on an LPAR can be in a configured, standby, or reserved state. Under Linux, on IPL only CPUs that are in a configured state are brought online and used. The kernel operates only with configured CPUs. You can change the state of standby CPUs to configured state and vice versa.

Reserved CPUs cannot be used without manual intervention and therefore are not recognized.

Before you begin:

- Sysfs needs to be mounted to /sys.
- To put a CPU into standby state the underlying hypervisor needs to support this operation.

To configure or deconfigure a CPU its physical address needs to be known. Since the sysfs interface is used to configure a CPU by its sysfs entry this requires a static mapping of physical to logical CPU numbers. The physical address of a CPU can be found in the address attribute of a logical CPU:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/address
```

For example:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu0/address  
0
```

To activate a standby CPU:

1. Only present CPUs have a sysfs entry. If you add a CPU to the system the kernel automatically detects it. You can force the detection of a CPU using the rescan attribute. To rescan, write any string to the rescan attribute, for example:

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/rescan
```

When new CPUs are found new sysfs entries are created and they are in the configured or standby state depending on how the hypervisor added them.

2. Change the state of the CPU to configured by writing "1" to its configure attribute:

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/configure
```

where <X> is any CPU in standby state.

3. Bring the CPU online by writing "1" to its online attribute:

```
echo 1 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/online
```

To deactivate an operating CPU:

1. Bring the CPU offline by writing "0" to its online attribute:

```
echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/online
```

2. Change the state of the CPU to standby by writing "0" to its configure attribute:

```
echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<X>/configure
```

Examining the CPU topology

If supported by your hardware, an interface is available that you can use to get information about the CPU topology of an LPAR. Use this, for example, to optimize the Linux scheduler, which bases its decisions on which process gets scheduled to which CPU. Depending on the workload, this might increase cache hits and therefore overall performance.

Note: By default CPU topology support is disabled in the Linux kernel. If it is advantageous to your workload, enable it by specifying the kernel parameter `topology=on` in your `parmfile` or `zipl.conf`.

Before you begin:

- The sysfs needs to be mounted to `/sys`.

The common code attribute `core_siblings` will be visible for all online CPUs:

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/topology/core_siblings
```

It contains a CPU mask that tells you which CPUs (including the current one) are close to each other. If a machine reconfiguration causes the CPU topology to change, then change uevents will be created for each online CPU.

Note that when the kernel also supports standby CPU activation/deactivation (see “Activating standby CPUs and deactivating operating CPUs” on page 255) then the `core_siblings` CPU mask also contains the CPUs that are in a configured, but offline state. Updating the mask after a reconfiguration might take up to a minute.

CPU polarization

You can optimize the operation of a vertical SMP environment by adjusting the SMP factor based on the workload demands. During peak workloads the operating system may operate on a large n-way, with all CPUs busy, whereas at other times it may fall back to a single processor. This limits the performance effects of context switches, TLB flushes, cache poisoning, as well as dispatcher workload balancing and the like, by delivering better processor affinity for particular workloads.

Before you begin:

- The sysfs needs to be mounted to /sys.

Horizontal CPU polarization means that the underlying hypervisor will dispatch each of the guests' virtual CPUs for the same amount of time.

If vertical CPU polarization is active then the hypervisor will dispatch certain CPUs for a longer time than others for maximum performance. For example, if a guest has three virtual CPUs, each of them with a share of 33% , then in case of vertical CPU polarization all of the processing time would be combined to a single CPU which would run all the time, while the other two CPUs would get nearly no CPU time.

There are three types of vertical CPUs: high, medium and low. Low CPUs hardly get any real CPU time, while high CPUs get a full real CPU. Medium CPUs get something in between.

Note: Running a system with different types of vertical CPUs may result in significant performance regressions. If possible, use only one type of vertical CPUs. Set all other CPUs offline and deconfigure them.

Use the dispatching attribute to switch between horizontal and vertical CPU polarization. To switch between the two modes write a 0 for horizontal polarization (the default) or a 1 for vertical polarization to the dispatching attribute.

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/dispatching
```

The polarization of each CPU can be seen from the polarization attribute of each CPU:

```
/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu<N>/polarization
```

Its contents is one of:

- horizontal - each of the guests' virtual CPUs is dispatched for the same amount of time.
- vertical:high - full CPU time is allocated.
- vertical:medium - medium CPU time is allocated.
- vertical:low - very little CPU time is allocated.
- unknown

When switching polarization the polarization attribute might contain the value unknown until the configuration change is done and the kernel has figured out the new polarization of each CPU.

Chapter 26. Managing hotplug memory

You can dynamically increase or decrease the memory for your running Linux system. To make memory available as hotplug memory you must define it to your LPAR or z/VM.

What you should know about memory hotplug

This section explains how hotplug memory is represented in sysfs.

How memory is represented in sysfs

In sysfs, both the core memory of a Linux instance and the available hotplug memory are represented in form of memory sections of equal size. Each section is represented as a directory of the form `/sys/devices/system/memory/memory<n>`, where `<n>` is an integer. You can find out the section size by reading the `/sys/devices/system/memory/block_size_bytes` attribute.

In the naming scheme, the memory sections with the lowest address ranges are assigned the lowest integer numbers. Accordingly, the core memory begins with `memory0`. The hotplug memory sections follow the core memory sections.

You can infer where the hotplug memory begins by calculating the number of core memory sections from the size of the base memory and the section size. For example, for a core memory of 512 MB and a section size of 128 MB, the core memory is represented by 4 sections, `memory0` through `memory3`. In this example, the first hotplug memory section is `memory4`. Another Linux instance with a core memory of 1024 MB and access to the same hotplug memory, represents this first hotplug memory section as `memory8`.

The hotplug memory is available to all operating system instances within the z/VM system or LPARs to which it has been defined. The state `sysfs` attribute of a memory section indicates whether the section is in use by your own Linux system. The state attribute does not indicate whether a section is in use by another operating system instance. Attempts to add memory sections that are already in use fail.

Further information

For more information on memory hotplug, see `/Documentation/memory-hotplug.txt` in the Linux source tree.

Building a kernel with memory hotplug support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

Figure 66 on page 260 summarizes the common source options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the memory hotplug functions.

Base setup -->

```
...
Allow for memory hot-add      (CONFIG_MEMORY_HOTPLUG)
Allow for memory hot remove   (CONFIG_MEMORY_HOTREMOVE)
Page migration                (CONFIG_MIGRATION)
```

Figure 66. Kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_MEMORY_HOTPLUG

is required for dynamically attaching memory to the Linux instance.

CONFIG_MEMORY_HOTREMOVE and **CONFIG_MIGRATION**

are required for dynamically detaching memory from the Linux instance.

Setting up hotplug memory

Before you can use hotplug memory on your Linux instance, you must define this memory as hotplug memory on your physical or virtual hardware.

Defining hotplug memory to an LPAR

You use the hardware management console (HMC) to define hotplug memory as *reserved storage* on an LPAR.

For information about defining reserved storage for your LPAR see the *Processor Resource/Systems Manager™ Planning Guide*, SB10-7041 for your mainframe.

Defining hotplug memory to z/VM

In z/VM, you define hotplug memory as *standby storage*. z/VM supports standby storage as of version 5.4. There is also *reserved storage* in z/VM, but other than reserved memory defined for an LPAR, reserved storage defined in z/VM is not available as hotplug memory.

For information about defining standby memory for z/VM guest operating systems see the “DEFINE STORAGE” section in *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

Making all hotplug memory removable

When using hotplug memory, Linux consumes memory for hotplug memory management. By default, the corresponding data structures are located in the hotplug memory section with the lowest address range. Because of these data structures, the lowest hotplug memory section cannot be released from a running Linux instance.

You can use the `kernelcore=` kernel parameter to make Linux maintain the hotplug memory management structures within the core memory. To make the lowest hotplug memory segment removable from a running Linux instance, specify a value that is approximately 10% below the upper limit of the core memory.

You can specify the value in byte or use a K, M, or G suffix to specify the value in kilobyte, megabyte, or gigabyte.

Example: If your core memory is 512 MB, specify `kernelcore=450M`.

For more information about kernel parameters, see `/Documentation/kernel-parameters.txt` in the Linux source tree.

Performing memory management tasks

This section describes typical memory management tasks.

- Finding out the memory section size
- Displaying the available memory sections
- Adding memory
- Removing memory

Finding out the memory section size

You can find out the size of your memory sections by reading `/sys/devices/system/memory/block_size_bytes`. This sysfs attribute contains the section size in byte in hexadecimal notation.

Example:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/memory/block_size_bytes
8000000
```

This hexadecimal value corresponds to 128 MB.

Displaying the available memory sections

You can find out if a memory section is online or offline by reading its state attribute. The following example shows how you can get an overview of all available memory sections:

```
# grep -r --include="state" "line" /sys/devices/system/memory/
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory0/state:online
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory1/state:online
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory2/state:online
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory3/state:online
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory4/state:offline
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory5/state:offline
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory6/state:offline
/sys/devices/system/memory/memory7/state:offline
```

Your core memory is always online and cannot be set offline. The offline sections represent hotplug memory that has not been added to your Linux instance. An offline section can be free to be added to your Linux instance but it might also be in use by another Linux instance.

Adding memory

You add a hotplug memory section by writing `online` to its sysfs state attribute.

Example: Enter the following command to add a memory section `memory5`:

```
# echo online > /sys/devices/system/memory/memory5/state
```

Adding the memory section fails, if the memory section is already in use. The state attribute changes to `online` when the memory section has been added successfully.

Suspend and resume: Do not add hotplug memory if you intend to suspend the Linux instance before the next IPL. Any changes to the original memory configuration prevent suspension, even if you restore the original memory configuration by removing memory sections that have been added. See Chapter 37, “Suspending and resuming Linux,” on page 373 for more information about suspending and resuming Linux.

Removing memory

You remove a hotplug memory section by writing `offline` to its `sysfs` state attribute.

Example: Enter the following command to remove a memory section `memory5`:

```
# echo offline > /sys/devices/system/memory/memory5/state
```

The hotplug memory functions first relocate memory pages to free the memory section and then remove it. The state attribute changes to `offline` when the memory section has been removed successfully.

The memory section is not removed if it is within the core memory or if it cannot be freed completely. You must take special setup steps to enable the hotplug memory functions to completely free the hotplug memory section with the lowest address range (see “Making all hotplug memory removable” on page 260).

Chapter 27. Large page support

Large page support entails support for the Linux hugetlbfs file system. This virtual file system is backed by larger memory pages than the usual 4 K pages; for System z the hardware page size is 1 MB. Because of Linux memory management issues, the Linux large page size is 2 MB for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10.

Applications using large page memory will save a considerable amount of page table memory. Another benefit from the support might be an acceleration in the address translation and overall memory access speed.

Building a kernel with large page support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include large page support. Note that the large page configuration option is only available for 64-bit kernels.

Figure 67 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to large page support:

```
File systems --->
...
Pseudo filesystems --->
...
HugeTLB file system support                (CONFIG_HUGETLBFS)
```

Figure 67. Large page support kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_HUGETLBFS

The hugetlbfs is a file system backing for HugeTLB pages, based on ramfs. See [Documentation/vm/hugetlbpage.txt](#) for details.

Setting up large page support

This section describes the parameters that you can use to configure large page support.

Kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure large page support if it has been compiled into the kernel. You configure large page support by adding parameters to the kernel parameter line.

Large page support kernel parameter syntax

►►—hugepages—=*<number>*—◄◄

where:

number

is the number of large pages to be allocated at boot time.

Note: If you specify more pages than available, Linux will reserve as many as possible. This will most probably leave too few general pages for the boot process and might stop your system with an out-of-memory error.

Working with large page support

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with large page support.

- The "hugepages=" kernel parameter should be specified with the number of large pages to be allocated at boot time. To read the current number of large pages, issue:

```
cat /proc/sys/vm/nr_hugepages
```

- To change the number of large pages dynamically during run-time, write to the /proc file system:

```
echo 12 > /proc/sys/vm/nr_hugepages
```

If there is not enough contiguous memory available to fulfill the request, the maximum number of large pages will be reserved.

- To obtain information about amount of large pages currently available and the large page size, issue:

```
cat /proc/meminfo
...
HugePages_Total: 20
HugePages_Free: 14
Hugepagesize: 2048 KB
...
```

- To see if hardware large page support is enabled (indicated by the word "edat" in the "features" line), issue:

```
cat /proc/cpuinfo
...
features : esan3 zarch stfle msa ldisp eimm dfp edat
...
```

The large page memory can be used through mmap() or SYSv shared memory system calls, more detailed information can be found in the Linux kernel source tree under Documentation/vm/hugetlbpage.txt, including implementation examples.

Chapter 28. S/390 hypervisor file system

The S/390 hypervisor file system provides a mechanism to access LPAR and z/VM hypervisor data.

The S/390 hypervisor file system requires that the z/VM version supports DIAG 2fc.

Building a kernel with the S/390 hypervisor file system



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the S/390 hypervisor file system.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_S390_HYPFS_FS` to be able to access LPAR CPU data.

```
Base setup --->
```

```
...
```

```
s390 hypervisor file system support  (CONFIG_S390_HYPFS_FS)
```

Directory structure

When the `hypfs` file system is mounted the accounting information is retrieved and a file system tree is created with a full set of attribute files containing the CPU information.

The recommended mount point for the hypervisor file system is `/sys/hypervisor/s390`.

Figure 68 on page 266 illustrates the file system tree that is created for LPAR.

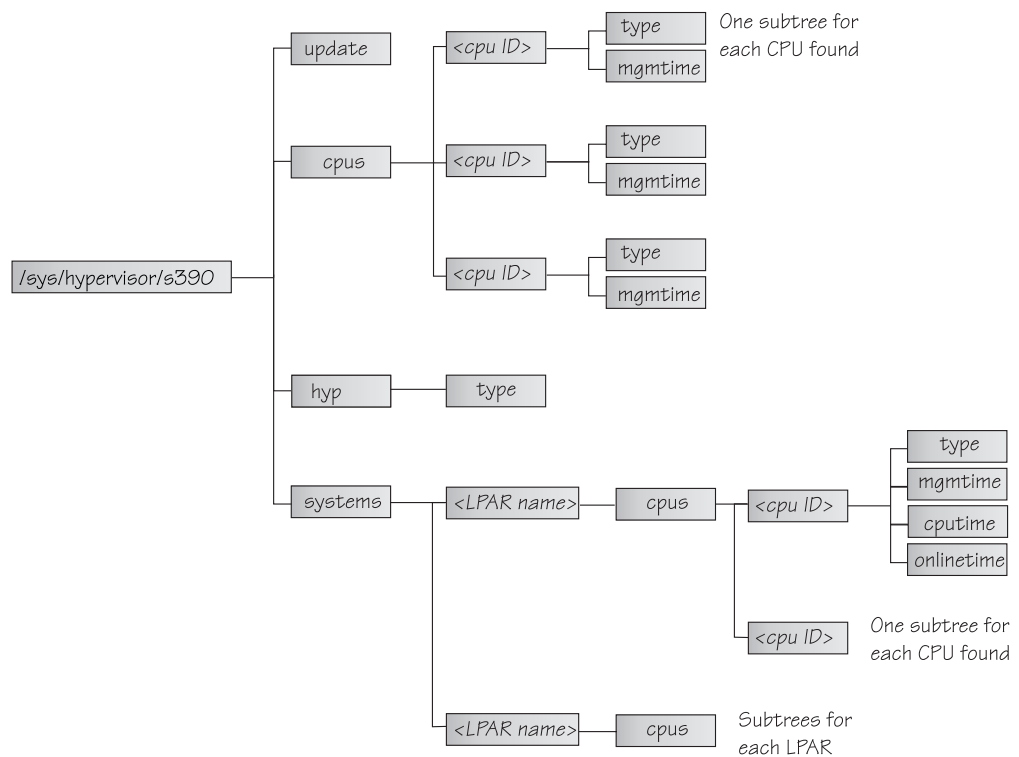


Figure 68. The hypervisor file system for LPAR

LPAR directories and attributes

The directories and attributes have the following meaning for LPARs:

update

Write only file to trigger an update of all attributes.

cpus/ Directory for all physical CPUs.

cpus/<cpu ID>

Directory for one physical CPU. <cpu ID> is the logical (decimal) CPU number.

type Type name of physical CPU, such as CP or IFL.

mgmtime

Physical-LPAR-management time in microseconds (LPAR overhead).

hyp/ Directory for hypervisor information.

hyp/type

Type of hypervisor (LPAR hypervisor).

systems/

Directory for all LPARs.

systems/<lpar name>/

Directory for one LPAR.

systems/<lpar name>/cpus/<cpu ID>/

Directory for the virtual CPUs for one LPAR. The <cpu ID> is the logical (decimal) cpu number.

type Type of the logical CPU, such as CP or IFL.

mgmtime

LPAR-management time. Accumulated number of microseconds during which a physical CPU was assigned to the logical cpu and the cpu time was consumed by the hypervisor and was not provided to the LPAR (LPAR overhead).

cputime

Accumulated number of microseconds during which a physical CPU was assigned to the logical cpu and the cpu time was consumed by the LPAR.

onlinetime

Accumulated number of microseconds during which the logical CPU has been online.

Note: For older machines the `onlinetime` attribute might be missing. In general, user space applications should be prepared that attributes are missing or new attributes are added to the file system. To check the content of the files you can use tools such as `cat` or `less`.

z/VM directories and attributes

The directories and attributes have the following meaning for z/VM guests:

update

Write only file to trigger an update of all attributes.

cpus/ Directory for all physical CPUs.

cpus/count

Total current CPUs.

hyp/ Directory for hypervisor information.

hyp/type

Type of hypervisor (z/VM hypervisor).

systems/

Directory for all z/VM guests.

systems/<guest name>/

Directory for one guest.

systems/<guest name>/onlinetime_us

Time in microseconds that the guest has been logged on.

systems/<guest name>/cpus/

Directory for the virtual CPUs for one guest.

capped

Flag that shows whether CPU capping is on for guest (0 = off, 1 = soft, 2 = hard).

count Total current virtual CPUs in the guest.

cputime_us

Number of microseconds where the guest virtual CPU was running on a physical CPU.

dedicated

Flag that shows if the guest has at least one dedicated CPU (0 = no, 1 = yes).

weight_cur

Current share of guest (1-10000); 0 for ABSOLUTE SHARE guests.

weight_max

Maximum share of guest (1-10000); 0 for ABSOLUTE SHARE guests.

weight_min

Minimum share of guest (1-10000); 0 for ABSOLUTE SHARE guests.

systems/<guest name>/samples/

Directory for sample information for one guest.

cpu_delay

Number of CPU delay samples attributed to the guest.

cpu_using

Number of CPU using samples attributed to the guest.

idle

Number of idle samples attributed to the guest.

mem_delay

Number of memory delay samples attributed to the guest.

other

Number of other samples attributed to the guest.

total

Number of total samples attributed to the guest.

systems/<guest name>/mem/

Directory for memory information for one guest.

max_KiB

Maximum memory in KiB (1024 bytes).

min_KiB

Minimum memory in KiB (1024 bytes).

share_KiB

Guest estimated core working set size in KiB (1024 bytes).

used_KiB

Resident memory in KiB (1024 bytes).

To check the content of the files you can use tools such as `cat` or `less`.

Setting up the S/390 hypervisor file system

In order to use the file system, it has to be mounted. You can do this either manually with the `mount` command or with an entry in `/etc/fstab`.

To mount the file system manually issue the following command:

```
# mount none -t s390_hypfs <mount point>
```

where `<mount point>` is where you want the file system mounted. Preferably, use `/sys/hypervisor/s390`.

If you want to put hypfs into your `/etc/fstab` you can add the following line:

```
none <mount point> s390_hypfs defaults 0 0
```

Note that if your z/VM system does not support DIAG 2fc, the s390_hypfs will not be activated and it is not possible to mount the file system. You will see an error message like the following:

```
mount: unknown filesystem type 's390_hypfs'
```

To get data for all z/VM guests, privilege class B is required for the guest, where hypfs is mounted. For non-class B guests, only data for the local guest is provided.

Working with the S/390 hypervisor file system

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with the S/390 hypervisor file system.

- Defining access rights
- Updating hypfs information

Defining access rights

If no mount options are specified, the files and directories of the file system get the uid and gid of the user who mounted the file system (normally root). It is possible to explicitly define uid and gid using the mount options `uid=<number>` and `gid=<number>`.

Example: You can define `uid=1000` and `gid=2000` with the following mount command:

```
# mount none -t s390_hypfs -o "uid=1000,gid=2000" <mount point>
```

Alternatively, you can add the following line to the `/etc/fstab` file:

```
none <mount point> s390_hypfs uid=1000,gid=2000 0 0
```

The first mount defines uid and gid. Subsequent mounts automatically have the same uid and gid setting as the first one.

The permissions for directories and files are as follows:

- Update file: 0220 (--w--w----
- Regular files: 0440 (-r--r-----)
- Directories: 0550 (dr-xr-x----

Updating hypfs information

You trigger the update process by writing something into the update file at the top level hypfs directory. For example, you can do this by writing the following:

```
echo 1 > update
```

During the update the whole directory structure is deleted and rebuilt. If a file was open before the update, subsequent reads will return the old data until the file is opened again. Within one second only one update can be done. If within one second more than one update is triggered, only the first one is done and the subsequent write system calls return -1 and `errno` is set to `EBUSY`.

If an application wants to ensure consistent data, the following should be done:

1. Read modification time through `stat(2)` from the update attribute.
2. If data is too old, write to the update attribute and go to 1.
3. Read data from file system.
4. Read modification time of the update attribute again and compare it with first timestamp. If the timestamps do not match then go to 2.

Chapter 29. CHSC subchannel device driver

From a designated LPAR with special rights you can issue asynchronous channel subsystem calls that allow you to dynamically change the I/O configuration of the machine. The CHSC subchannel device driver provides a means for user space programs to obtain information about the machine setup and to perform asynchronous channel subsystem calls that modify the machine setup.

This device driver only implements the information-gathering channel subsystem calls and an interface to issue asynchronous calls; building the control blocks for the asynchronous calls must be done in user space.

What you should know about the CHSC subchannel device driver

The CHSC subchannel device driver will bind to any CHSC subchannels found on the css bus. No special attributes will be created, and (unlike other subchannel types) no second level device will be registered.

CHSC subchannels do not have a control to enable or disable them; they are automatically enabled when the CHSC subchannel device driver binds to them.

Assuring that a device node exists

The CHSC subchannel device driver provides a misc character device:
`/dev/chsc`

If your distribution does not create the device node for you (for example, with udev), you need to create a node.

If your distribution provides the CHSC subchannel device driver as a separate module, be sure to load the module before you check for the node.

To check if there is already a node issue:

```
# find /dev -name chsc
```

If there is no node, use major number 10 and a dynamic minor number to create one. To find the minor number, issue:

```
# cat /proc/misc
57 chsc
58 network_throughput
59 network_latency
60 cpu_dma_latency
61 zfcp_cfdc
62 dasd_eer
63 device-mapper
```

Issue:

```
# mknod /dev/chsc c 10 57
```

An application can issue ioctls on this device to obtain information about the current I/O configuration and to dynamically change the I/O configuration. See “External programming interfaces” on page 272 for a summary of ioctls.

Building a kernel with the CHSC subchannel device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the CHSC subchannel device driver.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_CHSC_SCH` to enable the CHSC subchannel device driver (see Figure 69).

Base setup --->

...

Support for CHSC subchannels (CONFIG_CHSC_SCH)

Figure 69. Kernel configuration menu option for the CHSC subchannel device driver

The CHSC subchannel device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `chsc_sch`.

Setting up the CHSC subchannel device driver

This section describes the parameters that you can use to configure the CHSC subchannel device driver.

There are no kernel or module parameters for the CHSC subchannel device driver.

If you have compiled the CHSC subchannel device driver as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with it. Load the `chsc_sch` module with the `modprobe` command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
# modprobe chsc_sch
```

External programming interfaces



This section provides information for those who want to program additional functions for the CHSC subchannel device driver.

Issue `ioctl`s on the misc character device `/dev/chsc` to obtain information on the current I/O configuration and to dynamically change the I/O configuration. The `ioctl`s and the structures passed are defined in the header file `arch/s390/include/chsc.h`.

To use an `ioctl`, for example `CHSC_START`, issue a call of the form:

```
rc = ioctl(fd, CHSC_START, <pointer to chsc_async_area>);
```

The `ioctl`s defined are listed in Table 37 on page 273.

Table 37. The CHSC ioctls

Name	Structure passed	Description
CHSC_START	struct chsc_async_area	Use to start an asynchronous chsc request that changes the I/O configuration.
CHSC_INFO_CHANNEL_PATH	struct chsc_chp_cd	Use to obtain information about a specific channel path.
CHSC_INFO_CU	struct chsc_cu_cd	Use to obtain information about a specific control unit.
CHSC_INFO_SCH_CU	struct chsc_sch_cud	Use CHSC_INFO_SCH_CU to obtain information about control units on a subchannel.
CHSC_INFO_CI	struct chsc_conf_info	CHSC_INFO_CI can be used to obtain the configuration information as needed by the dynamic I/O configuration chscs.
CHSC_INFO_CCL	struct chsc_comp_list	CHSC_INFO_CCL can be used to obtain information about various configuration components.
CHSC_INFO_CPD	struct chsc_cpd_info	Use CHSC_INFO_CPD to obtain a description of a specified channel path.
CHSC_INFO_DCAL	struct chsc_dcal	Use CHSC_INFO_DCAL to obtain domain attributes of the configuration.

Chapter 30. ETR and STP based clock synchronization

Your Linux instance might be part of an extended remote copy (XRC) setup that requires synchronization of the Linux time-of-day (TOD) clock with a timing network.

Linux on System z supports external time reference (ETR) and system time protocol (STP) based TOD synchronization. ETR and STP work independently of one another. If both ETR and STP are enabled, Linux might use either to synchronize the clock.

For more information about ETR see the IBM Redbooks® technote at www.ibm.com/redbooks/abstracts/tips0217.html

For information about STP see www.ibm.com/systems/z/advantages/pso/stp.html

Both ETR and STP support are included in the Linux kernel. No special build options are required.

ETR requires at least one ETR unit that is connected to an external time source. For availability reasons, many installations use a second ETR unit. The ETR units correspond to two ETR ports on Linux. Always set both ports online if two ETR units are available.

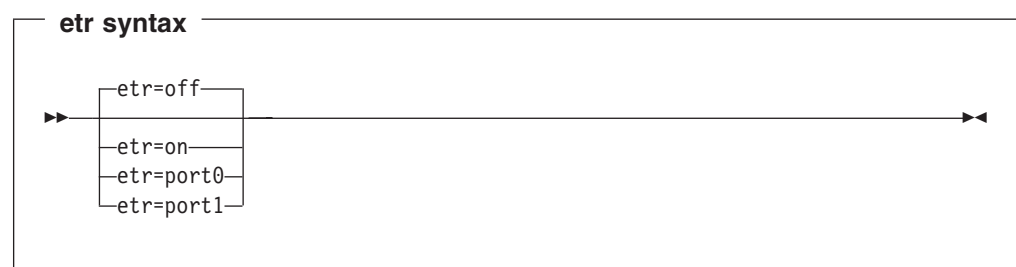
Attention: Be sure that a reliable timing signal is available before enabling clock synchronization. With enabled clock synchronization, Linux expects regular timing signals and might stop indefinitely to wait for such signals if it does not receive them.

Setting up clock synchronization

This section describes the kernel parameters that you can use to set up synchronization for your Linux TOD clock. These kernel parameters specify the initial synchronization settings. On a running Linux instance you can change these settings through attributes in sysfs (see “Switching clock synchronization on and off” on page 276).

Enabling ETR based clock synchronization

Use the `etr=` kernel parameter to set ETR ports online when Linux is booted. ETR based clock synchronization is enabled if at least one ETR port is online.



The values have the following effect:

on sets both ports online.

port0 sets port0 online and port1 offline.

port1 sets port1 online and port0 offline.

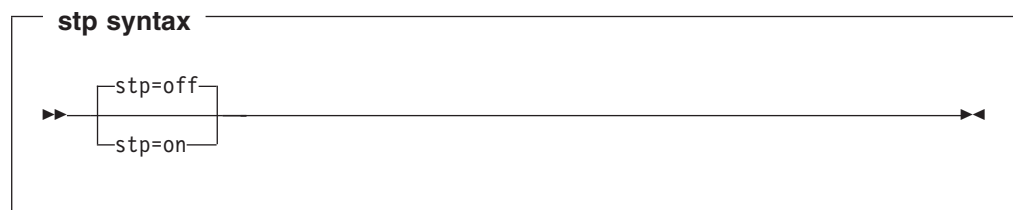
off sets both ports offline. With both ports offline, ETR based clock synchronization is not enabled. This is the default.

Example: To enable ETR based clock synchronization with both ETR ports online specify:

```
etr=on
```

Enabling STP based clock synchronization

Use the `stp=` kernel parameter to enable STP based clock synchronization when Linux is booted.



By default, STP based clock synchronization is not enabled.

Example: To enable STP based clock synchronization specify:

```
stp=on
```

Switching clock synchronization on and off

You can use the ETR and STP sysfs interfaces to switch clock synchronization on and off on a running Linux instance.

Switching ETR based clock synchronization on and off

ETR based clock synchronization is enabled if at least one of the two ETR ports is online. ETR based clock synchronization is switched off if both ETR ports are offline.

To set an ETR port online, set its sysfs online attribute to “1”. To set an ETR port offline, set its sysfs online attribute to “0”. Enter a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /sys/devices/system/etr/etr<n>/online
```

where `<n>` identifies the port and is either 0 or 1.

Examples:

- To set ETR port `etr1` offline enter:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/etr/etr1/online
```

Switching STP based clock synchronization on and off

To switch on STP based clock synchronization set `/sys/devices/system/stp/online` to “1”. To switch off STP based clock synchronization set this attribute to “0”.

Example: To switch off STP based clock synchronization enter:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/devices/system/stp/online
```

Part 6. Security

This part describes device drivers and features that support security aspects of Linux on System z.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 31. Generic cryptographic device driver	281
Features	281
Elements of zcrypt	281
Building a kernel with the zcrypt device driver	285
Setting up the zcrypt device driver	286
Working with the zcrypt device driver	290
External programming interfaces	294
 Chapter 32. Pseudo-random number device driver	 295
What you should know about the pseudo-random number device driver	295
Building a kernel with the pseudo-random number device driver	295
Setting up the pseudo-random number device driver	295
Reading pseudo-random numbers	296
 Chapter 33. Data execution protection for user processes	 297
Features	297
What you should know about the data execution protection feature	297
Building a kernel with the data execution protection feature	297
Setting up the data execution protection feature	298
Working with the data execution protection feature	298

Chapter 31. Generic cryptographic device driver

Some cryptographic processing in Linux can be off-loaded from the CPU and performed by dedicated coprocessors. Several of these coprocessors are available offering a range of features. The generic cryptographic device driver (zcrypt) is required when one or more of these devices is available in the hardware.

Features

The cryptographic device driver supports a range of hardware and software functions:

Supported devices

The coprocessors supported are:

- PCI Cryptographic Coprocessor (PCICC)
- PCI Cryptographic Accelerator (PCICA)
- PCI-X Cryptographic Coprocessor (PCIXCC) - see below
- Crypto Express2 Coprocessor (CEX2C)
- Crypto Express2 Accelerator (CEX2A)
- Crypto Express3 Accelerator (CEX3A)
- Crypto Express3 Coprocessor (CEX3C)

PCIXCC coprocessors are further distinguished by their licensed internal code (LIC) level:

- PCIXCC (MCL3) as of LIC EC J12220 level 29
- PCIXCC (MCL2) with a LIC prior to EC J12220 level 29

Notes:

1. When Linux is running as a z/VM guest operating system and an accelerator card (PCICA, CEX2A, or CEX3A) is present, any cryptographic coprocessor cards will be hidden. For information on how to set up your cryptographic environment on Linux under z/VM, refer to *Security on z/VM*, SG24-7471.
2. For z/VM 6.1, 5.4, and 5.3 the PTF for APAR VM64656 is required for support of CEX3C and CEX3A cards. To fix a shared coprocessor problem, the PTF for APAR VM64727 is required.

Supported facilities

The cryptographic device driver supports these cryptographic operations:

- Clear key encryption and decryption using the Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (RSA) exponentiation operation using either a modulus-exponent (Mod-Expo) or Chinese-Remainder Theorem (CRT) key.
- Secure key encryption and decryption - see *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294.
- Generation of long random numbers, see "Generating and accessing long random numbers" on page 292.

Elements of zcrypt

This section provides information about the software that you need to use zcrypt and the use it makes of cryptographic hardware.

Software components

To run programs that use the zcrypt device driver for clear key encryption, you need:

- The device driver module or modules (see “Building a kernel with the zcrypt device driver” on page 285),
- The libica library, unless applications call the device driver directly.
You can use the libica library for generation of RSA key pairs, symmetric and asymmetric encryption, and message hashing.
- The openCryptoki library if applications use the PKCS #11 API.

To run programs that use the zcrypt device driver for secure key encryption, you need:

- The device driver module or modules
- The CCA library, see “The CCA library” on page 289

Applications can use clear key cryptography with the libica library through the openCryptoki PKCS #11 API or the openssl library with the ibmca plug-in. For secure key cryptography the CCA library must be used. Figure 70 illustrates the software relationships:

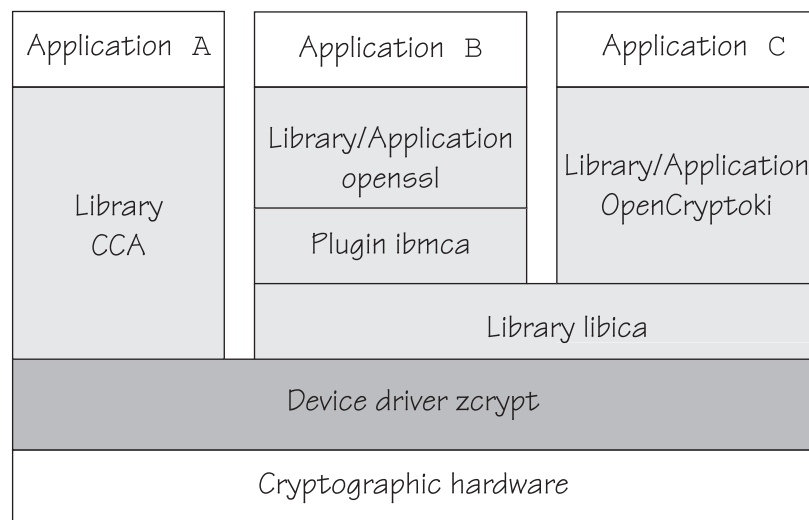


Figure 70. zcrypt device driver interfaces

In Figure 70 “Application A” is an application that uses the secure key interface, “Application B” uses the openssl library, and “Application C” uses the PKCS #11 API.

See “Setting up the zcrypt device driver” on page 286 for information on how to set up the different components.

CP Assist for Cryptographic Function (CPACF)

The libica library includes CPACF instructions that allow applications to use hardware-accelerated cryptography. The following functions are included in libica 2.0.2:

Table 38. CPACF functions included in libica

Function	Name	Supported on System z9	Supported on System z10
DES	icaDesEncrypt, icaDesDecrypt	Yes	Yes
TDES	icaTDesEncrypt, icaTDesDecrypt	Yes	Yes
SHA-1	icaSha1	Yes	Yes
SHA-224	icaSha224	No	Yes
SHA-256	icaSha256	Yes	Yes
SHA-384	icaSha384	No	Yes
SHA-512	icaSha512	No	Yes
AES with 128 bit keys	icaAesEncrypt, icaAesDecrypt	Yes	Yes
AES with 192 bit keys	icaAesEncrypt, icaAesDecrypt	No	Yes
AES with 256 bit keys	icaAesEncrypt, icaAesDecrypt	No	Yes
Pseudo Random Number Generation	icaRandomNumberGenerate	Yes	Yes

There is a software fallback provided within libica for CPACF functions (see Table 38) that are not supported on your hardware.

The function prototypes are provided in the header file, `ica_api.h`. Applications using these functions must link libica and libcrypto. The libcrypto library is available from the OpenSSL package.

To ascertain what functions are available on your system, use the **icainfo** command, for example:

```
# icainfo
The following CP Assist for Cryptographic Function (CPACF) operations are
supported by libica on this system:
SHA-1: yes
SHA-256: yes
SHA-512: yes
DES: yes
TDES-128: yes
TDES-192: yes
AES-128: yes
AES-192: yes
AES-256: yes
PRNG: yes
```

Hardware and software prerequisites

The hardware supports the Crypto Express2 and Crypto Express3 features as follows:

- For the coprocessor cards CEX2A and CEX2C you require a System z9 or later.
- For the coprocessor cards CEX3A and CEX3C you require a System z10 or later.

You require the following software:

- For the coprocessor cards CEX3C and CEX3A, you require APAR VM64656 if Linux is running as a z/VM guest operating system on z/VM 6.1, 5.4, or 5.3. To fix a shared coprocessor problem, APAR VM64727 is required.
- For the secure key cryptographic functions on CEX3C or CEX2C, you must use the CCA library. This can be downloaded from the IBM cryptographic coprocessor Web page at www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards/

Version 3.28 of the CCA library does not support CEX3C.

- For the clear key cryptographic functions, you should use the libica library. This library is part of the openCryptoki project (see “The libica library” on page 289).

Ensuring correct data padding when using PCICC

If you have a PCICC coprocessor only, or are attempting to use a CRT key on a system with a PCIXCC coprocessor (MCL2) only, you need to ensure that your data is PKCS-1.2 padded. In this case, the zcrypt device driver or the cryptographic hardware might change the padding. If the padding is not done correctly, the cryptographic operations are performed in software.

If you have at least one PCICA, PCIXCC (MCL3), CEX2C, CEX2A, CEX3A or CEX3C card, or if you are only using Mod-Expo keys with a PCIXCC (MCL2) coprocessor, you do not need to ensure that your data is PKCS-1.2 padded. In this case the padding remains unchanged.

Performance considerations

Load balancing

To maximize performance, the device driver uses a load balancing algorithm to distribute requests across all available AP bus devices. The algorithm uses a list holding all AP bus devices sorted by increasing utilization. A new request will be submitted to the AP bus device with the lowest utilization. The increased load will move this device further towards the end of the device list after a re-sort is done. When a device completes processing a request, the device will move up towards the beginning of the device list. To take in account different processing speeds per device type, each device has a speed rating assigned which is also used to calculate the device utilization.

The zcrypt device driver assigns work to cryptographic devices according to device type in the following order of coprocessor preference:

1. CEX3A
2. CEX2A
3. CEX3C
4. CEX2C
5. PCICA
6. PCIXCC
7. PCICC

Setting up for the 31-bit compatibility mode

31-bit applications can access the 64-bit zcrypt driver by using the 31-bit compatibility mode.

Building a kernel with the zcrypt device driver



This section describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the zcrypt device driver.

You need to select the option CONFIG_ZCRYPT to include the cryptographic device driver.

```
Cryptographic API --->
...
Hardware crypto devices --->
  Support for PCI-attached cryptographic adapters (CONFIG_ZCRYPT)
```

Figure 71. zcrypt kernel configuration menu option

The CONFIG_ZCRYPT option controls whether the driver is compiled into the kernel or built as a separate module.

The device driver can be compiled as multiple kernel modules or a monolithic kernel module. The default is to create multiple modules. You need to select the option CONFIG_ZCRYPT_MONOLITHIC to build the monolith (see Figure 72).

```
Cryptographic API --->
...
Hardware crypto devices --->
  Support for PCI-attached cryptographic adapters (CONFIG_ZCRYPT)
    └─ Monolithic zcrypt module (CONFIG_ZCRYPT_MONOLITHIC)
```

Figure 72. zcrypt monolithic configuration menu option

If configured as multiple kernel modules the following modules will be built:

ap AP bus module

zcrypt_api

request router module. Loads the rng_core module.

zcrypt_cex2a

card driver for CEX2A and CEX3A cards

zcrypt_pcica

card driver for PCICA cards

zcrypt_pcicc

card driver for PCICC cards

zcrypt_pcixcc

card driver for PCIXCC, CEX2C, and CEX3C cards

If configured as monolithic kernel module a single module will be built:

- **z90crypt** (this name is used for compatibility with earlier versions).

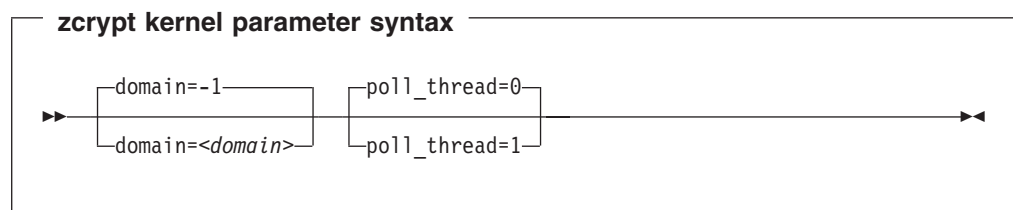
Setting up the zcrypt device driver

This section describes the zcrypt device driver kernel parameters and the z90crypt module parameters, and how to install additional components required by the device driver. This section also describes how to create the required device node.

For information on how to set up cryptographic hardware on your mainframe, refer to *zSeries Crypto Guide Update*, SG24-6870.

Kernel parameters

This section describes how to configure the zcrypt device driver if zcrypt has been compiled into the kernel. You can configure the device driver by adding the parameters to the kernel parameter line.



where

<domain>

is an integer in the range from 0 to 15 that identifies the cryptographic domain for the Linux instance.

The default (“domain=-1”) causes the device driver to attempt to autodetect and use the domain index with the maximum number of devices.

You need to specify the domain parameter only if you are running Linux in an LPAR for which multiple cryptographic domains have been defined.

<poll_thread>

is an integer argument and enables a polling thread to increase cryptographic performance. Valid values are 1 (enabled) or 0 (disabled, this is the default).

The zcrypt driver can run with or without the polling thread. When running with the polling thread, one CPU with no outstanding workload is constantly polling the cryptographic cards for finished cryptographic requests. The polling thread will sleep when no cryptographic requests are being processed. This mode uses the cryptographic cards as much as possible, at the cost of blocking one CPU during cryptographic operations.

Without the polling thread, the cryptographic cards are polled at a much lower rate, resulting in higher latency and reduced throughput for cryptographic requests but without a noticeable CPU load.

Note: If you are running Linux in an LPAR on a z10 EC or later, AP interrupts are used instead of the polling thread. The polling thread is disabled when AP interrupts are available. See “Using AP adapter interrupts” on page 291.

Example

The following kernel parameter line specification makes the zcrypt device driver operate within the cryptographic domain “7” with **poll_thread** enabled:

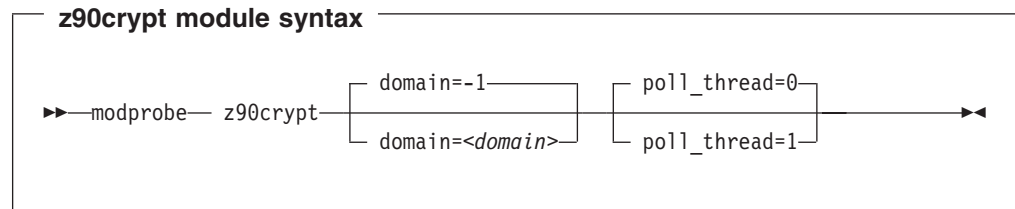
```
domain=7 poll_thread=1
```

Module parameters

If zcrypt is not compiled into the kernel it can be compiled as a single monolithic module or as a set of discrete modules. See “Building a kernel with the zcrypt device driver” on page 285 for details.

Monolithic module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure the zcrypt device driver if it has been compiled as a separate monolithic module.



where

<domain>

is an integer in the range from 0 to 15 that identifies the cryptographic domain for the Linux instance.

The default (“domain=-1”) causes the device driver to attempt to autodetect and use the domain index with the maximum number of devices.

You need to specify the domain parameter only if you are running Linux in an LPAR for which multiple cryptographic domains have been defined.

<poll_thread>

is an integer argument and enables a polling thread to increase cryptographic performance. Valid values are 1 (enabled) or 0 (disabled, this is the default).

The zcrypt driver can run with or without the polling thread. When running with the polling thread, one CPU with no outstanding workload is constantly polling the cryptographic cards for finished cryptographic requests. The polling thread will sleep when no cryptographic requests are being processed. This mode uses the cryptographic cards as much as possible, at the cost of blocking one CPU during cryptographic operations.

Without the polling thread, the cryptographic cards are polled at a much lower rate, resulting in higher latency and reduced throughput for cryptographic requests but without a noticeable CPU load.

Note: If you are running Linux in an LPAR on a z10 EC or later, AP interrupts are used instead of the polling thread. The polling thread is disabled when AP interrupts are available. See “Using AP adapter interrupts” on page 291.

See the **modprobe** man page for command details.

Examples:

- This example loads the zcrypt device driver module if Linux runs in an LPAR with only one cryptographic domain:

```
# modprobe z90crypt
```

- This example loads the zcrypt device driver module and makes zcrypt operate within the cryptographic domain “1”:

```
# modprobe z90crypt domain=1
```

Discrete module parameters

This section describes how to load and configure the zcrypt device driver if it has been compiled as discrete modules.

To load the AP bus module:

ap module syntax

```

>> modprobe ap [domain=-1 | domain=<domain>] [poll_thread=0 | poll_thread=1]

```

where the parameters are the same as those described in “Monolithic module parameters” on page 287.

All other modules required will be loaded automatically.

Note: To support automatic load of card driver modules, add the following rule to udev:

```
ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="ap", MODALIAS=="*", \ RUN+="/sbin/modprobe $modalias"
```

To unload the zcrypt device driver you must unload all modules manually:

Unload module syntax

```
>> modprobe -r zcrypt_cex2a zcrypt_pcixcc zcrypt_pcicc zcrypt_pcica zcrypt_api ap
```

It is important to list the arguments in the order given. You can also use **rmmod** but then you must only unload modules which have actually been loaded.

For example, if only the PCICC and PCICA modules are loaded, use:

```
rmmod zcrypt_pcicc zcrypt_pcica zcrypt_api ap
```

Examples:

- This example loads the discrete zcrypt device driver module **ap** if Linux runs in an LPAR with only one cryptographic domain:

```
# modprobe ap
```

- This example loads the discrete zcrypt device driver module **ap** to operate within the cryptographic domain “1”:

```
# modprobe ap domain=1
```


The libica library

You can obtain the libica library from the SourceForge Web site at sourceforge.net/projects/opencryptoki

You can find the release details with the module under the **Files** category.

Both a 31-bit and a 64-bit version are available. The 64-bit version includes the 31-bit compatibility code.

The openCryptoki library

You can obtain the openCryptoki library from the SourceForge Web site at: sourceforge.net/projects/opencryptoki

You can find the release details with the module on the **Files** category.

To be able to configure openCryptoki (with pkcsconf) user root must be a member of group pkcs11.

The CCA library

Note that two CCA libraries are involved in secure key cryptography; one comes with the PCIXCC, CEX2C, or CEX3C hardware feature, the other needs to be installed and run on Linux. The two libraries communicate through the device driver.

You can obtain the CCA library for Linux on System z from the IBM Cryptographic Hardware Web site at

www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards

The library is available from the software download page for the PCI-X Cryptographic Coprocessor. Install the RPM and see the readme file at `/opt/IBM/4764/doc/README.linz`. The readme explains where files are located, what users are defined, and how to proceed.

See also appendix H in *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294, for additional installation instructions.

Version 3.28 of the CCA library does not support the CEX3C cards.

Assuring that you have a device node

User space programs address cryptographic devices through a single device node. Both the major and minor number can be dynamic, depending on your Linux distribution and configuration. To provide the node, you need either udev or hotplug support.

Using udev

If udev support is enabled (see “Device nodes provided by udev” on page 4), z90crypt is assigned to the miscellaneous devices. The major device number is then that of the misc devices. You can find it as the value for the entry “misc” in `/proc/devices`.

The minor number is dynamically assigned and you can find it in `/proc/misc` as the value for the entry “z90crypt”.

If the device node `/dev/z90crypt` is not created for you, you can create it yourself by issuing a command of this form:

```
# mknod /dev/z90crypt c <misc_major> <dynamic_minor>
```

Working with the zcrypt device driver

Typically, cryptographic devices are not directly accessed by users but through user programs. Some tasks can be performed through the sysfs interface. This section describes the following tasks:

- “Setting devices online or offline”
- “Setting the polling thread”
- “Using AP adapter interrupts” on page 291
- “Using the high resolution polling timer” on page 291
- “Generating and accessing long random numbers” on page 292
- “Dynamically adding and removing cryptographic adapters” on page 292
- “Displaying zcrypt information” on page 293

Setting devices online or offline

Use the sysfs attribute `online` to set devices online or offline by writing 1 or 0 to it, respectively.

Examples

- To set a cryptographic device with bus device 0x3e online issue:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/online
```

- To set a cryptographic device with bus device 0x3e offline issue:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/online
```

- To check the online status of the cryptographic device with bus ID 0x3e issue:

```
cat /sys/bus/ap/devices/card3e/online
```

The value is '1' if device is online or '0' otherwise.

Setting the polling thread

To increase cryptographic performance use the `poll_thread` attribute.

Note: If AP interrupts are available, it is not possible to activate the polling thread. See “Using AP adapter interrupts” on page 291.

The zcrypt driver can run in two modes: with or without the polling thread. When running with the polling thread, one CPU with no outstanding workload is constantly polling the cryptographic cards for finished cryptographic requests. The polling thread will sleep when no cryptographic requests are currently being processed. This mode will utilize the cryptographic cards as much as possible at the cost of blocking one CPU during cryptographic operations. Without the polling thread the cryptographic cards are polled at a much lower rate, resulting in higher latency and reduced throughput for cryptographic requests, but without a noticeable CPU load.

Examples

- To activate a polling thread issue:

```
echo 1 > /sys/bus/ap/poll_thread
```

- To deactivate a polling thread issue:

```
echo 0 > /sys/bus/ap/poll_thread
```

Using AP adapter interrupts

To increase cryptographic performance on a IBM System z10 Enterprise Class (z10 EC) system or later, use the AP interrupts mechanism.

If you are running Linux in an LPAR on a z10 EC or later, use AP interrupts instead of the polling mode (described in “Setting the polling thread” on page 290). Using AP interrupts instead of the polling frees up one CPU while cryptographic requests are processed. As soon as an interrupt arrives all APs are checked for finished requests. There is no mechanism to indicate which AP has finished the request; the check is only for finished requests when an interrupt occurs. With the use of interrupts, less CPU time might be consumed and a higher performance achieved.

During module initialization the zcrypt device driver checks whether AP adapter interrupts are supported by the hardware. If so, AP polling is disabled and the interrupt mechanism is automatically used.

To tell whether AP adapter interrupts are used, a sysfs attribute called `ap_interrupts` is defined. The read-only attribute can be found at the AP bus level.

Example

To read the `ap_interrupts` attribute issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ap/ap_interrupts
```

The attribute shows 1 if interrupts are used, 0 otherwise.

Using the high resolution polling timer

If you are running Linux kernel version 2.6.27 or later in an LPAR or z/VM, a high resolution timer is used instead of the standard timer. The high resolution timer enables polling at nanosecond intervals rather than the 100 Hz intervals used by the standard timer.

You can set the polling time by using the sysfs attribute `poll_timeout`. The read-write attribute can be found at the AP bus level.

Example

To read the `poll_timeout` attribute for the ap bus issue:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ap/poll_timeout
```

To set the `poll_timeout` attribute for the ap bus to poll, for example, every microsecond, issue:

```
# echo 1000 > /sys/bus/ap/poll_timeout
```

Generating and accessing long random numbers

The support of long random numbers enables user-space applications to access large amounts of random number data through a character device.

Before you begin:

- At least one PCIXCC, CEX2C, or CEX3C feature must be installed in the system and be configured as coprocessor. The feature comes with a CCA library installed. The CCA library on the feature must be version 3.30 or later.
- Under z/VM, at least one PCIXCC, CEX2C, or CEX3C feature must be configured as DEDICATED to the z/VM guest operating system.
- Automatic creation of the random number character device requires udev.
- The cryptographic device driver zcrypt must be loaded.

If zcrypt detects at least one PCIXCC, CEX2C, or CEX3C feature capable of generating long random numbers, a new miscellaneous character device is registered and can be found under `/proc/misc` as `hw_random`. If udev is installed, the default rules provided with udev creates a character device called `/dev/hwrng` and a symbolic link called `/dev/hw_random` and pointing to `/dev/hwrng`.

If udev is not installed you must create a device node. You require the minor number of the hardware random number generator. Read this from `/proc/misc` where it is registered as `hw_random`. Create the device node by issuing a command of this form:

```
# mknod /dev/hwrng c <misc_major> <dynamic_minor>
```

Reading from the character device or the symbolic link returns the hardware generated long random numbers. However, do not read excess amounts of random number data from this character device as the data rate is limited due to the cryptographic hardware architecture.

Removing the last available PCIXCC, CEX2C, or CEX3C feature while zcrypt is loaded automatically removes the random number character device. Reading from the random number character device while all PCIXCC, CEX2C, or CEX3C features are set offline results in an input/output error (EIO). After at least one feature is set online again reading from the random number character device continues to return random number data.

Dynamically adding and removing cryptographic adapters

On an LPAR, you can add or remove cryptographic adapters without the need to reactivate the LPAR after a configuration change. z/VM does not support dynamically adding or removing cryptographic adapters.

Linux attempts to detect new cryptographic adapters and set them online every time a configuration timer expires. Read or modify the expiration time through the sysfs attribute `/sys/bus/ap/config_time`.

Adding or removing of cryptographic adapters to or from an LPAR is transparent to applications using clear key functions. If a cryptographic adapter is removed while cryptographic requests are being processed, zcrypt automatically re-submits lost requests to the remaining adapters. Special handling is required for secure key.

Secure key requests are usually submitted to a dedicated cryptographic coprocessor. If this coprocessor is removed, lost or new requests cannot be submitted to a different coprocessor. Therefore, dynamically adding and removing adapters with a secure key application requires support within the application. For more information about secure key cryptography, refer to *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294

Displaying zcrypt information

Each cryptographic adapter is represented in sysfs as a directory of the form `/sys/bus/ap/devices/card<XX>`

where `<XX>` is the device index for each device. The valid device index range is hex 00 to hex 3f. For example device 0x1a can be found under `/sys/bus/ap/devices/card1a`. The sysfs directory contains a number of attributes with information about the cryptographic adapter.

Table 39. Cryptographic adapter attributes

Attribute	Explanantion
depth	Read-only attribute representing the input queue length for this device.
hwtype	Read-only attribute representing the hardware type for this device. The following values are defined: <div><div>3</div>PCICC cards</div> <div><div>4</div>PCICA cards</div> <div><div>5</div>PCIXCC cards</div> <div><div>6</div>CEX2A cards</div> <div><div>7</div>CEX2C cards</div> <div><div>8</div>CEX3A cards</div> <div><div>9</div>CEX3C cards</div>
modalias	Read-only attribute representing an internally used device bus-ID.
request_count	Read-only attribute representing the number of requests already processed by this device.
type	Read-only attribute representing the type of this device. The following types are defined: <div><div>•</div>PCICC</div> <div><div>•</div>PCICA</div> <div><div>•</div>PCIXCC_MCL2</div> <div><div>•</div>PCIXCC_MCL3</div> <div><div>•</div>CEX2C</div> <div><div>•</div>CEX2A</div> <div><div>Note:</div>CEX3A and CEX3C cards will be reported as CEX2A and CEX2C, respectively. Use the hwtype attribute to determine the actual card type.</div>

External programming interfaces



This section provides information for those who want to circumvent libica and directly access the zcrypt device driver. For information about the libica, see the libica API.

Refer to `include/asm-s390/zcrypt.h` in the Linux kernel source tree for different structures that you might want to use.

Chapter 32. Pseudo-random number device driver

The pseudo-random number device driver is a character device driver that provides user-space applications with pseudo-random numbers generated by the pseudo-random number generator of the System z CP Assist for Cryptographic Function (CPACF).

What you should know about the pseudo-random number device driver

The pseudo-random number device provides pseudo-random numbers similar to the Linux pseudo-random number device `/dev/urandom` but provides a better performance.

Building a kernel with the pseudo-random number device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

To build a kernel with pseudo-random number device driver you need to select option `CONFIG_S390_PRNG` in the configuration menu (see Figure 73).

```
Cryptographic API --->
...
Hardware crypto devices --->
...
Pseudo random number generator device driver                (CONFIG_S390_PRNG)
```

Figure 73. Pseudo-random number kernel configuration menu options

The pseudo-random number device driver can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `prng`.

Setting up the pseudo-random number device driver

This section describes the parameters that you can use to configure the pseudo-random number device driver.

There are no module or kernel parameters for the pseudo-random number device driver device driver.

Device node

User-space programs access the pseudo-random-number device through a device node, `/dev/prandom`. Your distribution might create this device node for you or provide `udev` to create it (see “Device nodes provided by `udev`” on page 4).

If no device node is created for you, you need to create it yourself, for example, with the **mknod** command. Refer to the **mknod** man page for further details.

The `/dev/prandom` device node is a character device node (major number 10) with a dynamic minor number. During load, a `sysfs` folder called `class/misc/prandom/` is created, which contains the dev file for getting the major and minor number of the pseudo-random number device.

Making the device node accessible to non-root users

By default, only user root can read from the pseudo-random number device. Your distribution might extend the access to other users.

If access to the device is restricted to root on your system and your distribution uses `udev`, add the following `udev` rule to automatically extend access to the device to other users.

```
KERNEL=="prandom", MODE="0444", OPTIONS="last_rule"
```

If access to the device is restricted to root on your system and your distribution does not use `udev`, use the **`chmod`** command to make the device available to other users.

Reading pseudo-random numbers

The pseudo-random number device is read-only. You can obtain random numbers by using any of these function:

- `read(/dev/prandom, buffer, bytes)`
- `cat`
- `dd`

Chapter 33. Data execution protection for user processes

The data execution protection feature, similarly to the NX feature on other architectures, provides data execution protection for user processes. The data execution protection prevents, for example, stack-overflow exploits and generally makes a system insensitive to buffer-overflow attacks in user space. Using this feature you can switch the addressing modes of kernel and user space. The switch of the addressing modes is a prerequisite to enable the execute protection.

Features

The data execution protection feature provides the following functions:

- Switch the kernel/user space addressing modes
- Data execution protection for user processes

What you should know about the data execution protection feature

This feature is implemented in software, with some hardware support on IBM System z9-109 EC and BC hardware. The hardware support is an instruction that allows copying data between arbitrary address spaces. Without this hardware support, a manual page-table walk is used for kernel-user-copy functions. A manual page-table walk has a negative performance impact if you enable the feature through the kernel parameter. Selecting the config options does not have this negative effect.

Building a kernel with the data execution protection feature



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the data execution protection feature.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE` and `CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT` to enable the execute-protection option (see Figure 74).

Note: This feature is only active if the kernel parameter `noexec` is also specified. Otherwise, the config options has no effect.

Base setup --->

...

Switch kernel/user addressing modes	(CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE)
Data execution protection	(CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT)

Figure 74. Kernel configuration menu options for data execution protection

The `CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE` config option is automatically selected if you chose the `CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT` option. If you only select `CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE`, you also need to specify the kernel parameter `switch_amos` to switch the addressing modes. Otherwise the config option has no effect.

Setting up the data execution protection feature

To enable the data execution protection, configure the kernel with the `CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT` config option and add the kernel parameter `noexec` to your `parmfile` or `zipl.conf`. Enabling the feature also switches the addressing modes of kernel and user space. Specifying `noexec=off` or no parameter at all disables the feature (this is the default).

A kernel message indicates the status of the execute protection at boot time, for example like this (without z9-109 EC or BC hardware support it says “mvcos not available”):

```
...
Linux is running as a z/VM guest operating system in 64-bit mode
Execute protection active, mvcos available
Detected 4 CPUs
...
```

To enable only the addressing mode switch, configure the kernel with the `CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE` config option and add the kernel parameter `switch_amode` to your `parmfile` or `zipl.conf`. A kernel message indicates the status of the addressing mode switch at boot time, for example like this (with z9-109 EC/BC hardware support it says “mvcos available”):

```
...
Linux is running as a z/VM guest operating system in 64-bit mode
Address spaces switched, mvcos not available
Detected 4 CPUs
...
```

Working with the data execution protection feature

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with the data execution protection feature.

- Enabling and disabling stack execution protection

Enabling and disabling stack execution protection

To prevent stack-overflow exploits, the stack of a binary or shared library must be marked as not executable. Use the **execstack** user-space tool (part of the prelink package) which sets, clears, or queries the executable stack flag of ELF binaries and shared libraries (`GNU_STACK`).

Examples

Set and query the executable stack flag (stack is executable):

```
# execstack -s /usr/bin/find
# execstack -q /usr/bin/find
X /usr/bin/find
```

Clear and query the executable stack flag (stack is not executable):

```
# execstack -c /usr/bin/find
# execstack -q /usr/bin/find
- /usr/bin/find
```

To determine the presence of the flag, use the **readelf** command, which is part of the `binutils` package. To change the flag, however, you need the **execstack** utility.

Set and query the executable stack flag (stack is executable, note the "RWE" meaning "read/write/execute"):

```
# execstack -s /usr/bin/find
# readelf -a /usr/bin/find | grep GNU_STACK -A 1
GNU_STACK      0x0000000000000000 0x0000000000000000 0x0000000000000000
                0x0000000000000000 0x0000000000000000 RWE    8
```

Clear and query the executable stack flag (stack is not executable, note the "RW" meaning "read/write"):

```
# execstack -c /usr/bin/find
# readelf -a /usr/bin/find | grep GNU_STACK -A 1
GNU_STACK      0x0000000000000000 0x0000000000000000 0x0000000000000000
                0x0000000000000000 0x0000000000000000 RW     8
```

Part 7. Booting and shutdown

This section describes device drivers and features that are used in the context of booting and shutting down Linux.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 34. Console device drivers	303
Console features	303
What you should know about the console device drivers	304
Building a kernel with the console device drivers	309
Setting up the console device drivers	311
Working with Linux terminals	317
 Chapter 35. Initial program loader for System z - zipl	327
Usage	327
Parameters	343
Configuration file structure	347
 Chapter 36. Booting Linux	353
IPL and booting	353
Control point and boot medium	354
Menu configurations	354
Boot data	355
Booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine	357
Booting Linux in LPAR mode	363
Displaying current IPL parameters	369
Re-booting from an alternative source	370
 Chapter 37. Suspending and resuming Linux	373
Features	373
What you should know about suspend and resume	373
Building a kernel with suspend and resume support	375
Setting up Linux for suspend and resume	375
Suspending a Linux instance	377
Resuming a suspended Linux instance	377
Configuring Linux to suspend on SIGNAL SHUTDOWN	377
 Chapter 38. Shutdown actions	379
Examples	380

Chapter 34. Console device drivers

The Linux on System z console device drivers support terminal devices for basic Linux control, for example, for booting Linux, for troubleshooting, and for displaying Linux kernel messages.

The only interface to a Linux instance in an LPAR before the boot process is completed is the Hardware Management Console (HMC), see Figure 75. After the boot process has completed, you typically use a network connection to access Linux through a user login, for example, in a telnet or ssh session. The possible connections depend on the configuration of your particular Linux instance.

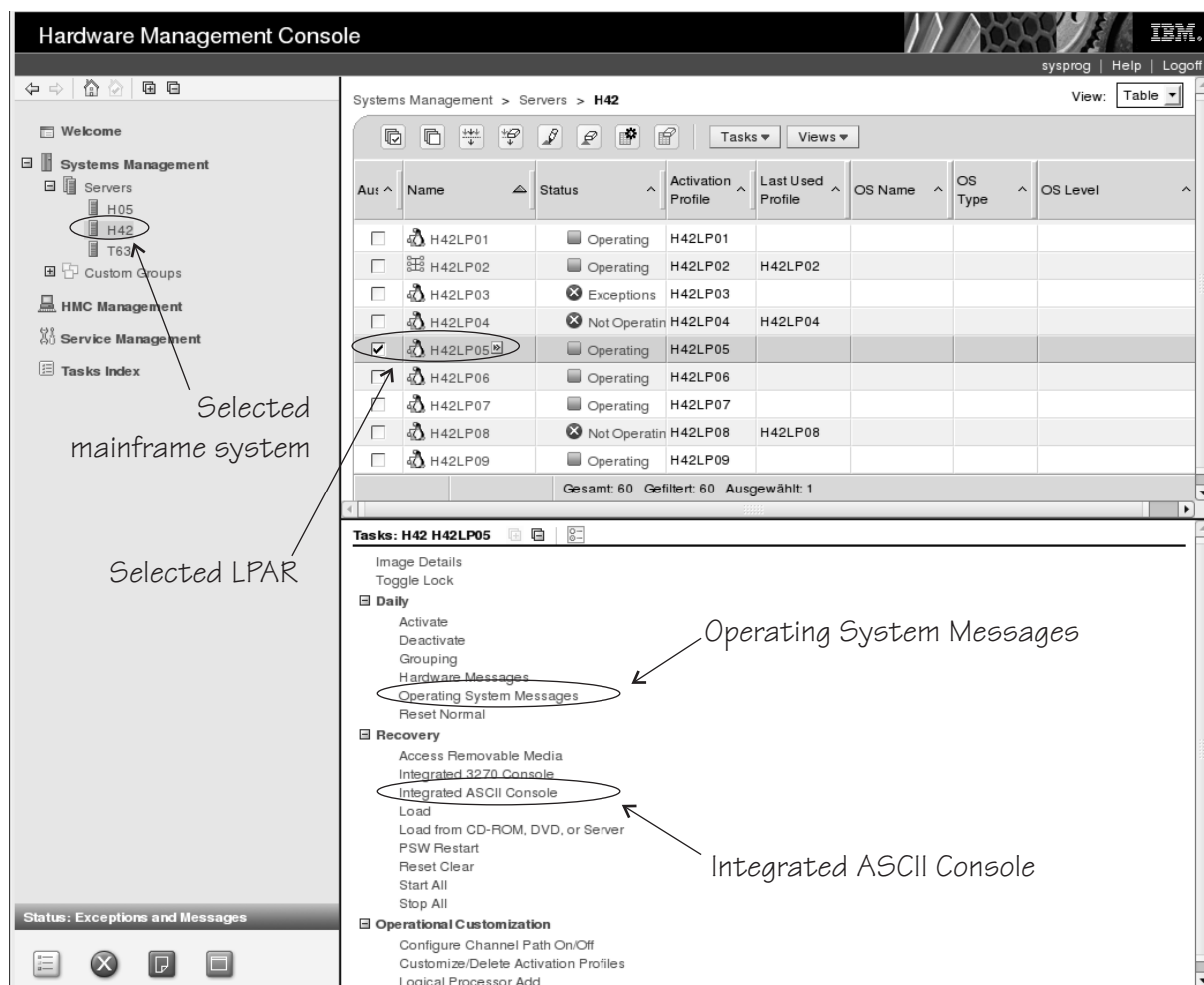


Figure 75. Hardware Management Console

If you run Linux as a z/VM guest operating system, you typically log in to z/VM first, using a 3270 terminal or terminal emulator. From the 3270 terminal you IPL the Linux boot device. Again, after boot you typically use a network connection to access Linux through a user login rather than a 3270 terminal.

Console features

The console device drivers support the following:

HMC applets

You can use two applets.

Operating System Messages

This is a line-mode terminal. See Figure 76 for an example.

Integrated ASCII Console

This is a full-screen mode terminal.

These HMC applets are accessed through the service-call logical processor (SCLP) console interface.

3270 terminal

This can be physical 3270 terminal hardware or a 3270 terminal emulation.

z/VM can use the 3270 terminal as a 3270 device or perform a protocol translation and use it as a 3215 device. As a 3215 device it is a line-mode terminal for the United States code page (037).

The iucvconn program

You can use the iucvconn program on a Linux instance that runs as a z/VM guest operating system to access terminal devices on other Linux instances that also run as guest operating systems of the same z/VM instance.

See *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596 for information about the iucvconn program.

The console device drivers support these terminals as output devices for Linux kernel messages.

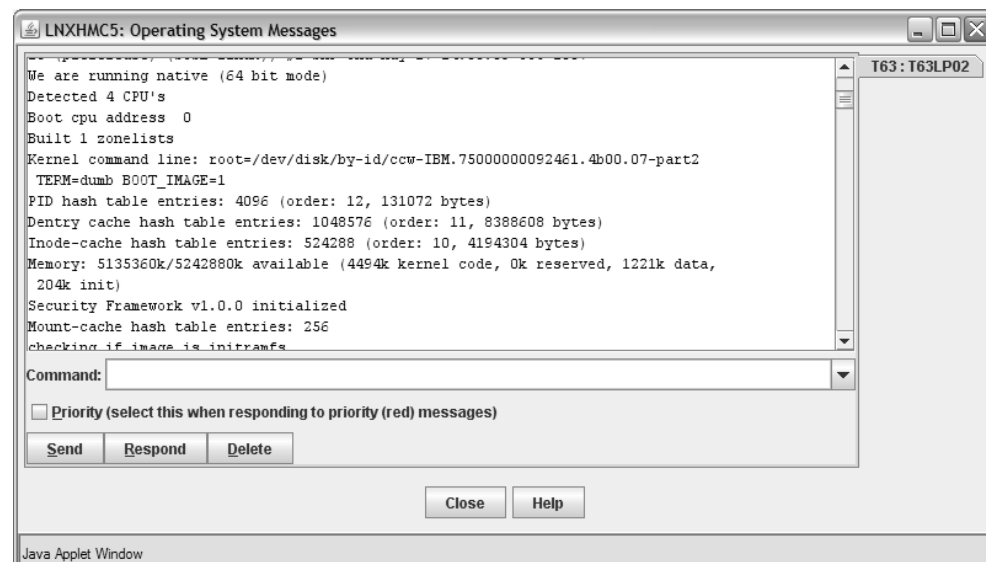


Figure 76. Linux kernel messages on the HMC Operating System Messages applet

What you should know about the console device drivers

This section defines some of the terms used in the context of the console device drivers and provides information about console device names and nodes, about terminal modes, and about how console devices are accessed.

About the terminology

Terminal and *console* have special meanings in Linux.

A Linux terminal

is an input/output device through which users interact with Linux and Linux applications. Login programs and shells typically run in Linux terminals and provide access to the Linux system.

The Linux console

is an output device that displays Linux kernel messages.

A mainframe terminal

is any device that gives a user access to operating systems and applications running on the mainframe. This could be a physical device such as a 3270 terminal hardware linked to the mainframe through a controller, or it can be a terminal emulator on a workstation connected through a network. For example, you access z/OS through a mainframe terminal.

The HMC

is a device that gives a system programmer control over the hardware resources, for example the LPARs. The HMC is a Web application on a Web server that is connected to the support element (SE). The HMC can be accessed from the SE but more commonly is accessed from a workstation within a secure network.

Console device

in the context of the console device drivers, a device, as seen by Linux, to which Linux kernel messages can be directed.

On the mainframe, the Linux console and Linux terminals are both connected to a mainframe terminal.

Before you have a Linux terminal - the zipl boot menu

Depending on your setup, a zipl boot menu might be displayed when you IPL. The zipl boot menu is part of the boot loader that loads the Linux kernel. Do not confuse the zipl boot menu with the Linux terminal, which has not been set up at this point. The zipl boot menu is very limited in its functionality, for example, there is no way to specify uppercase letters as all input is converted to lowercase. For more details about booting Linux, see Chapter 36, “Booting Linux,” on page 353. For more details about the zipl boot menu, see Chapter 35, “Initial program loader for System z - zipl,” on page 327.

Device and console names

Each terminal device driver can provide a single console device. Table 40 lists the terminal device drivers and the corresponding device names, console names, major and minor numbers.

Table 40. Device and console names

Device driver	Device name	Console name	Major	Minor
SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	sclp_line0	ttyS0	4	64
SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	tty sclp0	ttyS1	4	65
3215 line-mode terminal device driver	ttyS0	ttyS0	4	64

Table 40. Device and console names (continued)

Device driver	Device name	Console name	Major	Minor
3270 terminal device driver	tty0.0.009	tty3270	227	1
z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	hvc0 to hvc7	hvc0	229	0 to 7

As shown in Table 40 on page 305, the console with name `ttyS0` can be provided either by the SCLP console device driver or by the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver. The system environment and settings determine which device driver provides `ttyS0`. For details see the information about the `conmode` parameter in “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 311).

Of the terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only `hvc0` is associated with a console name. This is the device with minor number 0.

You require a device node to make a console device available to applications, for example to a login program (see “Assuring device nodes” on page 313).

Terminal modes

The Linux terminals provided by the console device drivers include line-mode terminals, full-screen mode terminals, and block-mode terminals.

On a full-screen mode terminal, pressing any key immediately results in data being sent to the TTY routines. Also, terminal output can be positioned anywhere on the screen. This allows for advanced interactive capability when using terminal based applications like the `vi` editor.

On a line-mode terminal, the user first types a full line and then presses `Enter` to let the system know that a line has been completed. The device driver then issues a read to get the completed line, adds a new line and hands over the input to the generic TTY routines.

The terminal provided by the 3270 terminal device driver is a traditional IBM mainframe block-mode terminal. Block-mode terminals provide full-screen output support and users can type input in predefined fields on the screen. Other than on typical full-screen mode terminals, no input is passed on until the user presses `Enter`. The terminal provided by the 3270 terminal device driver provides limited support for full-screen applications. For example, the `ned` editor is supported, but not `vi`.

Table 41 summarizes when to expect which terminal mode.

Table 41. Terminal modes

Accessed through	Environment	Device driver	Mode
Operating System Messages applet on the HMC	LPAR	SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	Line mode
HMC Operating System Messages applet emulation on z/VM	z/VM		
Integrated ASCII Console applet on the HMC	z/VM or LPAR	SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	Full-screen mode

Table 41. Terminal modes (continued)

Accessed through	Environment	Device driver	Mode
3270 terminal hardware or emulation	z/VM with CONMODE=3215	3215 line-mode terminal device driver	Line mode
	z/VM with CONMODE=3270	3270 terminal device driver	Block mode
iucvconn program	z/VM	z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	Full-screen mode

The 3270 terminal device driver provides three different views. See “Switching the views of the 3270 terminal device driver” on page 319 for details.

How console devices are accessed

How you can access console devices depends on your environment. The diagrams in the following sections omit device drivers that are not relevant for the particular access scenario.

Using the HMC for Linux in an LPAR

Figure 77 shows the possible terminal devices for Linux instances that run directly in an LPAR.

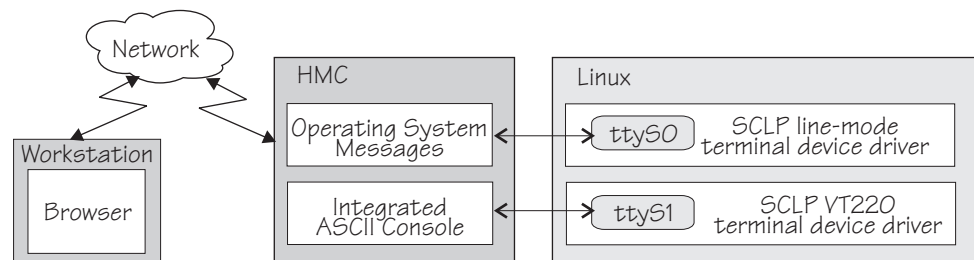


Figure 77. Accessing terminal devices on Linux in an LPAR from the HMC

The **Operating System Messages** applet accesses the device provided by the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. The **Integrated ASCII console** applet accesses the device provided by the SCLP VT220 terminal device driver.

Using the HMC when running Linux as a z/VM guest operating system

If the ASCII system console has been attached to the z/VM guest virtual machine where the Linux instance runs, you can access the ttyS1 terminal device from the HMC **Integrated ASCII Console** applet (see Figure 78 on page 308).

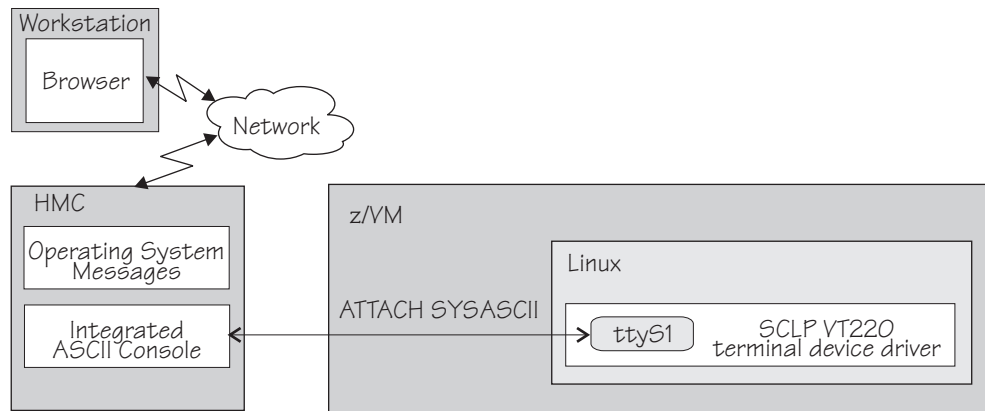


Figure 78. Accessing terminal devices from the HMC when running Linux as a z/VM guest operating system

Using 3270 terminal hardware or a 3270 terminal emulation

For a Linux instance that runs as a z/VM guest operating system, you can use 3270 terminal hardware or a 3270 terminal emulation to access a console device.

Figure 79 illustrates how z/VM can handle the 3270 communication.

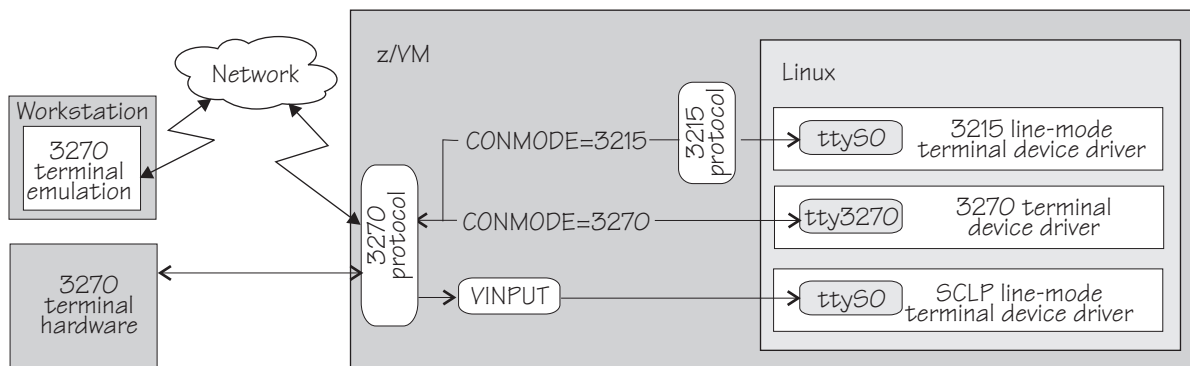


Figure 79. Accessing terminal devices from a 3270 device

Note: Figure 79 shows two console devices with the name `ttyS0`. Only one of these devices can be present at any one time.

CONMODE=3215

performs a translation between the 3270 protocol and the 3215 protocol and connects the 3270 terminal hardware or emulation to the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver in the Linux kernel.

CONMODE=3270

connects the 3270 terminal hardware or emulation to the 3270 terminal device driver in the Linux kernel.

VINPUT

is a z/VM CP command that directs input to the `ttyS0` device provided by the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. In a default z/VM environment, `ttyS0` is provided by the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver. You can use the `conmode` kernel parameter to make the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver provide `ttyS0` (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 311).

Using iucvconn when running Linux as a z/VM guest operating system

On a Linux instance that runs as a z/VM guest operating system, you can access the terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV Hypervisor Console (HVC) device driver.

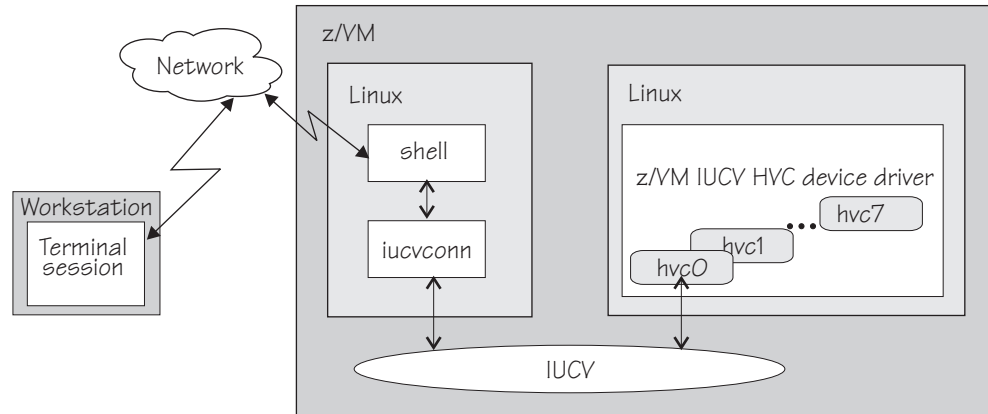


Figure 80. Accessing terminal devices from peer Linux guest operating system

As illustrated in Figure 80, you access the devices with the `iucvconn` program from another Linux instance that runs as a guest operating system of the same z/VM instance. IUCV provides the communication between the two Linux instances. With this setup, you can access terminal devices on Linux instances with no external network connection.

Note: Of the terminal devices provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only `hvc0` can be activated to receive Linux kernel messages.

Building a kernel with the console device drivers



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the console device drivers.

Figure 81 on page 310 summarizes the kernel configuration menu options that are relevant to the console device drivers. You must select at least one option that adds support for kernel messages to an output device. Select all options to compile a Linux kernel that supports all available console devices with all their features.

Device Drivers -->

...

Character devices --->

...

z/VM IUCV Hypervisor console support (VM only) (CONFIG_HVC_IUCV)

...

--- S/390 character device drivers (depends on S390) ---

Support for locally attached 3270 terminals (CONFIG_TN3270)

└ Support for tty input/output on 3270 terminals (CONFIG_TN3270_TTY)

└ Support for fullscreen applications on 3270 terminals (CONFIG_TN3270_FS)

└ Support for console on 3270 terminal (CONFIG_TN3270_CONSOLE)

Support for 3215 line mode terminal (CONFIG_TN3215)

└ Support for console on 3215 line mode terminal (CONFIG_TN3215_CONSOLE)

Support for SCLP line mode terminal (CONFIG_SCLP_TTY)

└ Support for console on SCLP line mode terminal (CONFIG_SCLP_CONSOLE)

Support for SCLP VT220-compatible terminal (CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_TTY)

└ Support for console on SCLP VT220-compatible terminal (CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_CONSOLE)

Figure 81. Console kernel configuration menu options

CONFIG_HVC_IUCV

Adds the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver and IUCV support. This device driver supports terminal access through the iucvconn program to Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems.

CONFIG_TN3270

Adds the 3270 terminal device driver. This device driver supports IBM 3270 terminal hardware and 3270 terminal emulations.

CONFIG_TN3270_TTY

Adds the terminal input and output support to the 3270 terminal device driver.

CONFIG_TN3270_FS

Adds limited support for full-screen applications the 3270 terminal device driver.

CONFIG_TN3270_CONSOLE

Adds the operating system messages view to the 3270 terminal device driver.

CONFIG_TN3215

Adds the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver. Through a translation between the 3215 protocol and the 3270 protocol within z/VM, this device driver supports IBM 3270 terminal hardware and 3270 terminal emulations.

CONFIG_TN3215_CONSOLE

Adds support for kernel messages to the 3215 line-mode terminal device driver.

CONFIG_SCLP_TTY

Adds the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. This device driver supports the **Operating System Messages** applet on the HMC.

CONFIG_SCLP_CONSOLE

Adds support for kernel messages to the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver.

CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_TTY

Adds the VT220-compatible SCLP VT220 terminal device driver. This device driver supports the **Integrated ASCII console** applet on the HMC.

CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_CONSOLE

Adds support for kernel messages to the SCLP VT220 terminal device driver.

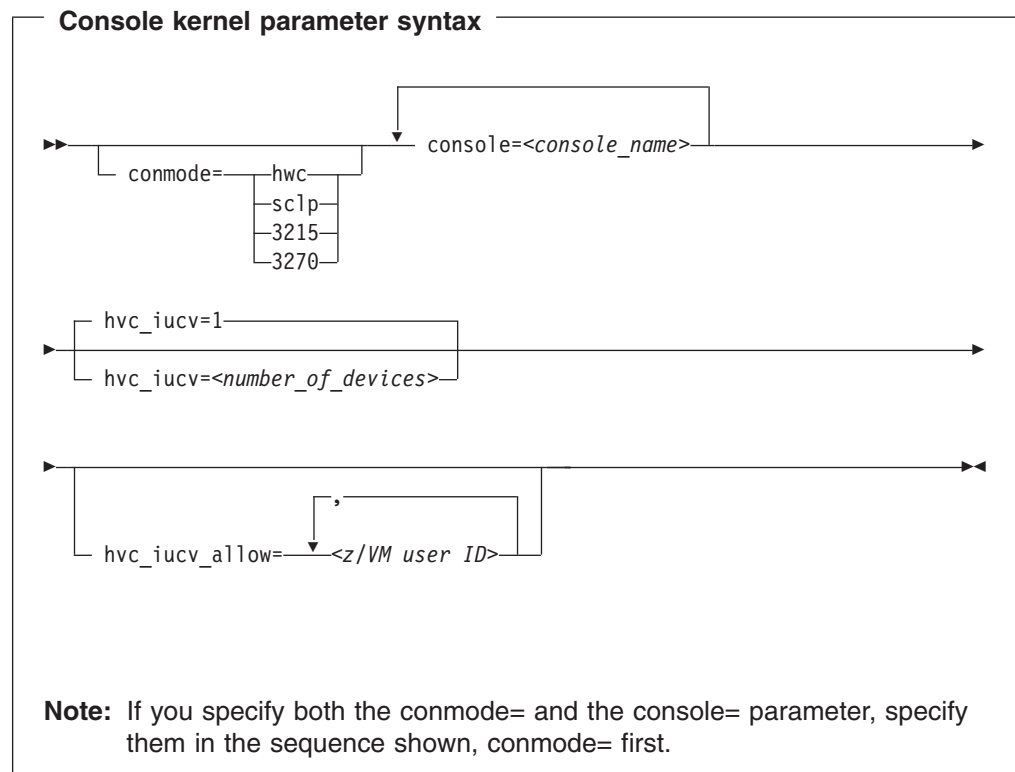
Linux requires a device for writing kernel messages early in the boot process. Always compile the console device drivers and their components into the kernel.

Setting up the console device drivers

This section describes the kernel parameters that you can use to configure the console device drivers. It also describes settings for initializing terminal devices for user logins.

Console kernel parameter syntax

This section describes the `conmode=`, `console=`, and `hvc_iucv=` kernel parameters for the console device drivers. The `hvc_iucv=` and `hvc_iucv_allow=` kernel parameters apply to terminal devices that are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only. The `condev=` kernel parameter applies to P/390 only and is described in “Defining a 3215 terminal to Linux on P/390” on page 316.



where:

conmode

specifies which one of the line-mode or block-mode terminal devices is present and provided by which device driver.

A Linux kernel might include multiple console device drivers that can provide a line-mode terminal:

- SCLP line-mode terminal device driver
- 3215 line-mode terminal device driver
- 3270 terminal device driver

On a running Linux instance, only one of these device drivers can provide a device. Table 42 shows how the device driver that is used by default depends on the environment.

Table 42. Default device driver for the line-mode terminal device

LPAR	SCLP line-mode terminal device driver
z/VM	3215 line-mode terminal device driver or 3270 terminal device driver, depending on the z/VM guest's console settings (the CONMODE field in the output of #CP QUERY TERMINAL). If the device driver you specify with the conmode= kernel parameter contradicts the CONMODE z/VM setting, z/VM is reconfigured to match the specification for the kernel parameter.

You can use the conmode parameter to override the default.

sclp or hwc

specifies the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver.

You need this specification if you want to use the z/VM VINPUT command ("Using a z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet" on page 322).

3270

specifies the 3270 device driver.

3215

specifies the 3215 device driver.

console=<console_name>

specifies which devices are to be activated to receive Linux kernel messages. If present, ttyS0 is always activated to receive Linux kernel messages and, by default, it is also the *preferred* console.

The preferred console is used as an initial terminal device, beginning at the stage of the boot process when the 'init'-program is called. Messages issued by programs that are run at this stage are therefore only displayed on the preferred console. Multiple terminal devices can be activated to receive Linux kernel messages but only one of the activated terminal devices can be the preferred console.

Be aware that there is no ttyS0 if you specify conmode=3270.

If you want terminal devices other than ttyS0 to be activated to receive Linux kernel messages specify a console statement for each of these other devices. The last console statement designates the preferred console.

If you specify one or more console parameters and you want to keep ttyS0 as the preferred console, add a console parameter for ttyS0 as the last console parameter. Otherwise you do not need a console parameter for ttyS0.

<console_name> is the console name associated with the terminal device to be activated to receive Linux kernel messages. Of the terminal devices provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver only hvc0 can be activated. Specify the console names as shown in Table 40 on page 305.

hvc_iucv=<number_of_devices>

specifies the number of terminal devices provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver. *<number_of_devices>* is an integer in the range 0 to 8. Specify 0 to switch off the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver.

hvc_iucv_allow=<z/VM user ID>,<z/VM user ID>, ...

specifies an initial list of z/VM guest virtual machines that are allowed to connect to HVC terminal devices. If this parameter is omitted, any z/VM guest virtual machine that is authorized to establish the required IUCV connection is also allowed to connect. On the running system, you can change this list with the **chiucvallow** command. See *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596 for more information.

Examples

- To activate ttyS1 in addition to ttyS0, and to use ttyS1 as the preferred console, add the following specification to the kernel command line:

```
console=ttyS1
```

- To activate ttyS1 in addition to ttyS0, and to keep ttyS0 as the preferred console, add the following specification to the kernel command line:

```
console=ttyS1 console=ttyS0
```

- To use an emulated HMC Operating System Messages applet in a z/VM environment specify:

```
conmode=sc1p
```

- To activate hvc0 in addition to ttyS0, use hvc0 as the preferred console, configure the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver to provide four devices, and limit the z/VM guest virtual machines that can connect to HVC terminal devices to lxtserv1 and lxtserv2, add the following specification to the kernel command line:

```
console=hvc0 hvc_iucv=4 hvc_iucv_allow=lxtserv1,lxtserv2
```

Assuring device nodes

Applications access console devices by *device nodes*. Depending on your distribution, udev might create the following standard device nodes for you:

Table 43. Device nodes created by udev

Device driver	On LPAR	On z/VM
SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	/dev/sc1p_line0	n/a
SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	/dev/ttysclp0	/dev/ttysclp0
3215 line-mode terminal device driver	n/a	/dev/ttyS0
3270 terminal device driver	/dev/tty0.0.0009	/dev/tty0.0.0009
z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	n/a	/dev/hvc0 to /dev/hvc7

If your distribution does not create these device nodes early in the boot process, Linux will not boot and you will not have a command prompt from where you can create the nodes yourself.

In this case, you can create the nodes from a support system that has access to the failed system's devices. The examples in Table 44 on page 314 base the device nodes on the console names.

Table 44. Device nodes that you can create manually

Device driver	On LPAR	On z/VM
SCLP line-mode terminal device driver	/dev/ttyS0	n/a
SCLP VT220 terminal device driver	/dev/ttyS1	/dev/ttyS1
3215 line-mode terminal device driver	n/a	/dev/ttyS0
3270 terminal device driver	/dev/tty3270	/dev/tty3270
z/VM IUCV HVC device driver	n/a	/dev/hvc0 to /dev/hvc7
Note: If you want to use the z/VM VINPUT command you also need a device node for ttyS0 on z/VM.		

For example, you can use the following commands to create nodes:

```
# mknod /dev/ttyS0 c 4 64
# mknod /dev/ttyS1 c 4 65
# mknod /dev/tty3270 c 227 0
```

Setting up a z/VM guest virtual machine for iucvconn

Because the iucvconn program uses z/VM IUCV to access Linux, you must set up your z/VM guest virtual machine for IUCV. See “Setting up your z/VM guest virtual machine for IUCV” on page 246 for details.

For information about how to access Linux through the iucvtty program rather than through the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596 or the man pages for the **iucvtty** and **iucvconn** commands.

Setting up a line-mode terminal

The line-mode terminals are primarily intended for booting Linux. The preferred user access to a running Linux on System z is through a user login that runs, for example, in a telnet or ssh session. See “Terminal modes” on page 306 for information about the available line-mode terminals.

Tip: If the terminal does not provide the expected output, ensure that dumb is assigned to the TERM environment variable. For example, enter the following command:

```
# export TERM=dumb
```

Setting up a full-screen mode terminal

The full-screen terminal can be used for full-screen text editors, such as vi, and terminal-based full-screen system administration tools. See “Terminal modes” on page 306 for information about the available full-screen mode terminals.

Tip: If the terminal does not provide the expected output, ensure that linux is assigned to the TERM environment variable. For example, enter the following command:

```
# export TERM=linux
```

Setting up a terminal provided by the 3270 terminal device driver

The terminal provided by the 3270 terminal device driver is neither a line-mode terminal nor a typical full-screen mode terminal. The terminal provides limited support for full-screen applications. For example, the `ned` editor is supported, but not `vi`.

Tip: If the terminal does not provide the expected output, ensure that `linux` is assigned to the `TERM` environment variable. For example, enter the following command:

```
# export TERM=linux
```

Enabling a terminal for user logins using `inittab`

You can use an `inittab` entry to allow user logins on a terminal. To enable user logins with the `mingetty` program, add a line of this form to the `/etc/inittab` file:

```
<id>:2345:respawn:/sbin/mingetty --noclear <dev>
```

where:

`<id>` is a unique identifier for the entry in the `inittab` file.

`<dev>` specifies the device node of the terminal, omitting the leading `/dev/` (see “Assuring device nodes” on page 313). For example, instead of specifying `/dev/sc1p_line0`, specify `sc1p_line0`.

With `mingetty` you must explicitly export the `TERM` environment variable with the terminal name as explained in “Setting up a full-screen mode terminal” on page 314. The terminal name indicates the capabilities of the terminal device. Examples for terminal names are `linux`, `dumb`, `xterm`, or `vt220`.

Instead of `mingetty`, you can use `agetty`, which can set the `TERM` environment variable at startup.

To set the `TERM` environment variable to `linux` and enable user logins with the `agetty` program add a line of this form to the `/etc/inittab` file:

```
<id>:2345:respawn:/sbin/agetty -L 9600 linux <dev>
```

where `<id>` and `<dev>` have the same meanings as in the `mingetty` example.

Your Linux system’s `/etc/inittab` file might already have an entry for a terminal. Be sure not to provide multiple entries for the same device or ID. See “Assuring device nodes” on page 313 for the device node names. If an existing entry uses a different name and you are not sure how it maps to the names in “Assuring device nodes” on page 313, you can comment it out and replace it.

For more details see the man page for the `inittab` file.

Example

To enable a device `ttyS0` for user logins with `mingetty` specify, for example:

```
1:2345:respawn:/sbin/mingetty --noclear ttyS0
```

Enabling a terminal for user logins using Upstart

You can use Upstart to allow user logins from a terminal. To enable user logins with Upstart, create an Upstart job file with the following content:

```
start on runlevel [2345]
stop on runlevel [01]

respawn
exec /sbin/mingetty --noclear <dev>
```

You can use a file name of your choice. The directory where you must locate the file depends on your distribution.

In the sample file, <dev> specifies the device node of the terminal, omitting the leading /dev/ (see “Assuring device nodes” on page 313). For example, instead of specifying /dev/sclp_line0, specify sclp_line0.

With mingetty you must explicitly export the TERM environment variable with the terminal name as explained in “Setting up a full-screen mode terminal” on page 314. The terminal name indicates the capabilities of the terminal device. Examples for terminal names are linux, dumb, xterm, or vt220.

Instead of mingetty, you can use agetty, which can set the TERM environment variable at startup.

To set the TERM environment variable to linux and enable user logins with Upstart create an Upstart job file with the following content:

```
start on runlevel [2345]
stop on runlevel [01]

respawn
exec /sbin/agetty -L 9600 linux <dev>
```

Example

To enable a device hvc0 for user logins with mingetty the Upstart job file could, for example, look like this:

```
start on runlevel [2345]
stop on runlevel [01]

respawn
exec /sbin/mingetty --noclear hvc0
```

Setting up the code page for an x3270 emulation on Linux

If you are accessing z/VM from Linux by using the x3270 terminal emulation, add the following settings to the .Xdefaults file to get the correct code translation:

```
! X3270 keymap and charset settings for Linux
x3270.charset: us-intl
x3270.keymap: circumfix
x3270.keymap.circumfix: :<key>asciicircum: Key("^")\n
```

Defining a 3215 terminal to Linux on P/390

The default console device driver for Linux on IBM PC Server System/390® (P/390) is the 3215 console device driver. You can change this default with the conmode kernel parameter (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 311). If you use the 3215 console device driver on a P/390 system, you must provide the device number of the 3215 terminal to Linux. Use the condev kernel parameter to specify the device number.

condev kernel parameter syntax

►—condev=<cuu>—◄◄

<cuu> is the device 'Control Unit and Unit' number, and may be expressed in hexadecimal form (preceded by 0x) or in decimal form.

Example

To instruct the device driver to use device number 0x001F for the 3215 terminal specify:

```
condev=0x001f
```

or:

```
condev=31
```

Working with Linux terminals

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with Linux terminals.

- “Using the terminal applets on the HMC”
- “Accessing a terminal device over z/VM IUCV” on page 318
- “Switching the views of the 3270 terminal device driver” on page 319
- “Setting a CCW terminal device online or offline” on page 319
- “Entering control and special characters on line-mode terminals” on page 320
- “Using the magic sysrequest functions” on page 321
- “Using a z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet” on page 322
- “Simulating the Enter and Spacebar keys” on page 324
- “Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode” on page 325

Using the terminal applets on the HMC

This section applies to both the line-mode terminal and the full-screen mode terminal on the HMC:

- On an HMC you can only open each applet once.
- Within an LPAR, there can only be one active terminal session for each applet, even if multiple HMCs are used.
- A particular Linux instance supports only one active terminal session for each applet.
- Security hint: Always end a terminal session by explicitly logging off (for example, type “exit” and press Enter). Simply closing the applet leaves the session active and the next user opening the applet resumes the existing session without a logon.
- Slow performance of the HMC is often due to a busy console or increased network traffic.

The following applies to the full-screen mode terminal only:

- Output that is written by Linux while the terminal window is closed is not displayed. Therefore, a newly opened terminal window is always blank. For most applications, like login or shell prompts, it is sufficient to press Enter to obtain a new prompt.
- The terminal window only shows 24 lines and does not provide a scroll bar. To scroll up press Shift+PgUp, to scroll down press Shift+PgDn.

Accessing a terminal device over z/VM IUCV

This section describes how to access hypervisor console (HVC) terminal devices, which are provided by the z/VM IUCV HVC device driver. For information about accessing terminal devices that are provided by the iucvtty program see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.

You access HVC terminal devices from a Linux instance where the iucvconn program is installed. The Linux instance with the terminal device to be accessed and the Linux instance with the iucvconn program must both run as guest operating systems of the same z/VM instance. The two z/VM guest virtual machines must be configured such that z/VM IUCV traffic is permitted between them.

Perform these steps to access a HVC terminal device over z/VM IUCV:

1. Open a terminal session on the Linux instance where the iucvconn program is installed.
2. Enter a command like this:

```
# iucvconn <guest_ID> <terminal_ID>
```

where:

<guest_ID>

specifies the z/VM guest virtual machine on which the Linux instance with the HVC terminal device to be accessed runs.

<terminal_ID>

specifies an identifier for the terminal device to be accessed. HVC terminal device names are of the form hvc*n* where *n* is an integer in the range 0-7. The corresponding terminal IDs are lnxhvc*n*.

Example: To access HVC device hvc0 on a Linux guest virtual machine LXGUEST1 enter:

```
# iucvconn LXGUEST1 lnxhvc0
```

For more details and further parameters of the **iucvconn** command see the **iucvconn** man page or *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.

3. Press Enter to obtain a prompt.

Output that is written by Linux while the terminal window is closed is not displayed. Therefore, a newly opened terminal window is always blank. For most applications, like login or shell prompts, it is sufficient to press Enter to obtain a new prompt.

Security hint: Always end terminal sessions by explicitly logging off (for example, type “exit” and press Enter). If logging off results in a new login prompt, press Control and Underscore (Ctrl+_) then press d to close the login window. Simply closing the terminal window for a hvc0

terminal device that has been activated for Linux kernel messages leaves the device active and the terminal session can be reopened without a login.

Switching the views of the 3270 terminal device driver

The 3270 terminal device driver provides three different views. Use function key 3 (PF3) to switch between the views (see Figure 82).

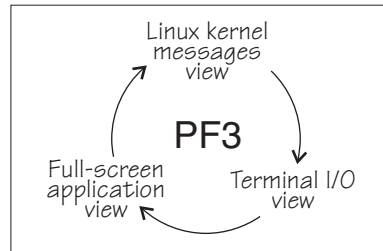


Figure 82. Switching views of the 3270 terminal device driver

The availability of the individual views depends on the configuration options that were selected when the kernel was compiled (see “Building a kernel with the console device drivers” on page 309). In addition, the Linux kernel messages view is available only if the terminal device has been activated for Linux kernel messages.

The full-screen application view is available only if there is an application that uses this view, for example, the `ned` editor. Be aware that the 3270 terminal only provides limited full-screen support. The full-screen application view of the 3270 terminal is not intended for applications that require vt220 capabilities. The application itself needs to create the 3270 data stream.

For the Linux kernel messages view and the terminal I/O view you can use the PF7 key to scroll backward and the PF8 key to scroll forward. The scroll buffers are fixed at 4 pages (16 KB) for the Linux kernel messages view and 5 pages (20 KB) for the terminal I/O view. When the buffer is full and more terminal data needs to be printed, the oldest lines are removed until there is enough room. The number of lines in the history, therefore, vary. Scrolling in the full-screen application view depends on the application.

You cannot issue z/VM CP commands from any of the three views provided by the 3270 terminal device driver. If you want to issue CP commands, use the PA1 key to switch to the CP READ mode.

Setting a CCW terminal device online or offline

This section applies to Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems.

The 3270 terminal device driver uses CCW devices and provides them as CCW terminal devices. A CCW terminal device can be:

- The `tty3270` terminal device that can be activated for receiving Linux kernel messages.

If this device exists, it comes online early during the Linux boot process. In a default z/VM environment, the device number for this device is 0009. In `sysfs` it is represented as `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.0.0009`. You need not set this device online and you must not set it offline.

- CCW terminal devices through which users can log in to Linux with the CP DIAL command.

These devices are defined with the CP DEF GRAF command. They are represented in sysfs as `/sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.<n>.<devno>` where `<n>` is the subchannel set ID and `<devno>` is the virtual device number. By setting these devices online you enable them for user logins. If you set a device offline it can no longer be used for user login.

See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for more information about the DEF GRAF and DIAL commands.

You can use the **chccwdev** command (see “chccwdev - Set a CCW device online” on page 402) to set a CCW terminal device online or offline. Alternatively, you can write “1” to the device’s online attribute to set it online, or “0” to set it offline.

Examples

- To set a CCW terminal device 0.0.7b01 online issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.7b01
```

or

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.0.7b01/online
```

- To set a CCW terminal device 0.0.7b01 offline issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.7b01
```

or

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/drivers/3270/0.0.7b01/online
```

Entering control and special characters on line-mode terminals

Line-mode terminals do not have a control (Ctrl) key. Without a control key you cannot enter control characters directly.

Another problem on line-mode terminals is how to enter a character string without a newline character at the end. Pressing the Enter key adds a newline character to your string which is not expected by some applications.

Table 45 summarizes how you can use the caret character (^) to enter some control characters and to enter strings without appended newline characters.

Table 45. Control and special characters on line-mode terminals

For the key combination	Type this	Usage
Ctrl+C	^c	Cancel the process that is currently running in the foreground of the terminal.
Ctrl+D	^d	Generate an end of file (EOF) indication.
Ctrl+Z	^z	Stop a process.

Table 45. Control and special characters on line-mode terminals (continued)

For the key combination	Type this	Usage
n/a	^n	Suppresses the automatic generation of a new line. This makes it possible to enter single characters, for example those characters that are needed for yes/no answers in the ext2 file system utilities.

Note: For a 3215 line-mode terminal in 3215 mode you must use United States code page (037).

Using the magic sysrequest functions

This section only applies to Linux instances that have been compiled with the common code kernel configuration option CONFIG_MAGIC_SYSRQ.

To call the magic sysrequest functions on a line-mode terminal enter the two characters “^_” (caret and hyphen) followed by a third character that specifies the particular function.

You can also call the magic sysrequest functions from the hvc0 terminal device if it is present and has been activated to receive Linux kernel messages. To call the magic sysrequest functions from hvc0 enter the single character Ctrl+o followed by the character for the particular function.

Table 46 provides an overview of the commands for the magic sysrequest functions:

Table 46. Magic sysrequest commands

On line-mode terminals enter	On hvc0 enter	To
^~b	Ctrl+o b	Re-IPL immediately (see “lsreipl - List IPL settings” on page 453).
^~s	Ctrl+o s	Emergency sync all file systems.
^~u	Ctrl+o u	Emergency remount all mounted file systems read-only.
^~t	Ctrl+o t	Show task info.
^~m	Ctrl+o m	Show memory.
^~ followed by a digit (0 to 9)	Ctrl+o followed by a digit (0 to 9)	Set the console log level.
^~e	Ctrl+o e	Terminate all tasks except init.
^~i	Ctrl+o i	Kill all tasks except init.

Note: In Table 46 **Ctrl+o** means pressing o while holding down the control key.

Table 46 lists the main magic sysrequest functions that are known to work on Linux on System z. For a more complete list of functions see Documentation/sysrq.txt in the Linux source tree. Some of the listed functions might not work on your system.

Activating and deactivating the magic sysrequest function

From a Linux terminal or a command prompt, enter the following command to activate the magic sysrequest function:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sys/kernel/sysrq
```

Enter the following command to deactivate the magic sysrequest function:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/kernel/sysrq
```

Triggering magic sysrequest functions from procfs

If you are working from a terminal that does not support a key sequence or combination to call magic sysrequest functions, you can trigger the functions through procfs. Write the character for the particular function to `/proc/sysrq-trigger`.

Example: To set the console log level to 1 enter:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sysrq-trigger
```

Using a z/VM emulation of the HMC Operating System Messages applet

The preferred terminal devices for Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems are the devices provided by the 3215 or 3270 terminal device drivers. If you need to use the “Operating System Messages” applet emulation, for example, because the 3215 terminal is not operational, you must use the **CP VINPUT** command to prefix any input.

The VINPUT command accesses the `ttyS0` terminal device. VINPUT requires that this device is provided by the SCLP line-mode terminal device driver. To be able to use VINPUT, you have to override the default device driver for z/VM environments (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 311).

VINPUT is a z/VM CP command. It can be abbreviated to **VI** but must not be confused with the Linux command **vi**.

If you use the SCLP console driver when running Linux as a z/VM guest operating system (as a line-mode terminal, full-screen mode is not supported), it is important to consider how the input is handled. Instead of writing into the suitable field within the graphical user interface at the service element or HMC, you have to use the **VINPUT** command provided by z/VM. The following examples are written at the input line of a 3270 terminal or terminal emulator (for example, x3270).

If you are in the CP READ mode, omit the leading “#CP” from the commands.

For more information on VINPUT refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081.

Priority and non-priority commands

VINPUT commands require a VMSG (non-priority) or PVMSG (priority) specification. Operating systems that honour this specification process priority commands with a higher priority than non-priority commands.

The hardware console driver is capable to accept both if supported by the hardware console within the specific machine or virtual machine.

Linux does not distinguish priority and non-priority commands.

Example: The specifications:

```
#CP VINPUT VMSG LS -L
```

and

```
#CP VINPUT PVMSG LS -L
```

are equivalent.

Case conversion

All lowercase characters are converted by z/VM to uppercase. To compensate for this, the console device driver converts all input to lowercase.

For example, if you type `VInput VMSG echo $PATH`, the device driver gets `ECHO $PATH` and converts it into `echo $path`.

Linux and bash are case sensitive and require some specifications with uppercase characters. To include uppercase characters in a command, use the percent sign (%) as a delimiter. The console device driver interprets characters that are enclosed by percent signs as uppercase.

This behavior and the delimiter are adjustable at build-time by editing the driver sources.

Examples: In the following examples, the first line shows the user input, the second line shows what the device driver receives after the case conversion by CP, and the third line shows the command processed by bash:

-

```
#cp vinput vmsg ls -l
CP VINPUT VMSG LS -L
ls -l
...
```

- The following input would result in a bash command that contains a variable `$path`, which is not defined in lowercase:

```
#cp vinput vmsg echo $PATH
CP VINPUT VMSG ECHO $PATH
echo $path
...
```

To obtain the correct bash command enclose a the uppercase string with the conversion escape character:

```
#cp vinput vmsg echo $%PATH%
CP VINPUT VMSG ECHO $%PATH%
echo $PATH
...
```

Using the escape character

The quotation mark (") is the standard CP escape character (see "Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode" on page 325). To include the escape character in a command passed to Linux, you need to type it twice.

Example: The following command passes an string in quotation marks to be echoed.

```
#cp vinput pvmsg echo ""H%ello, here is ""$0
CP VINPUT PVMSG ECHO "%H%ELLO, HERE IS "$0
echo "Hello, here is "$0
Hello, here is -bash
```

In the example, \$0 resolves to the name of the current process.

Using the end of line character

To include the end of line character in the command passed to Linux, you need to specify it with a leading escape character. If you are using the standard settings according to "Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode" on page 325, you need to specify "# to pass # to Linux.

If you specify the end of line character without a leading escape character, VM CP interprets it as an end of line character that ends the **VINPUT** command.

Example: In this example a number sign is intended to mark the begin of a comment in the bash command but is misinterpreted as the beginning of a second command:

```
#cp vinput pvmsg echo ""N%umber signs start bash comments"" #like this one
CP VINPUT PVMSG ECHO "%N%UMBER SIGNS START BASH COMMENTS"
LIKE THIS ONE
HPCMD001E Unknown CP command: LIKE
...
```

The escape character prevents the number sign from being interpreted as an end of line character:

```
#cp vinput pvmsg echo ""N%umber signs start bash comments"" "#like this one
VINPUT PVMSG ECHO "%N%UMBER SIGNS START BASH COMMENTS" #LIKE THIS ONE
echo "Number signs start bash comments" #like this one
Number signs start bash comments
```

Simulating the Enter and Spacebar keys

You can use the **CP VINPUT** command to simulate the Enter and Spacebar keys.

Simulate the Enter key by entering a blank followed by "\n":

```
#CP VINPUT VMSG \n
```

Simulate the Spacebar key by entering two blanks followed by "\n":

```
#CP VINPUT VMSG  \n
```

Using a 3270 terminal in 3215 mode

The z/VM control program (CP) defines five characters as line editing symbols. Use the **CP QUERY TERMINAL** command to see the current settings.

The default line editing symbols depend on your terminal emulator. You can reassign the symbols by changing the settings of LINEND, TABCHAR, CHARDEL, LINEDEL, or ESCAPE with the **CP TERMINAL** command. Table 47 shows the most commonly used settings:

Table 47. Line edit characters

Character	Symbol	Usage
#	LINEND	The end of line character allows you to enter several logical lines at once.
|	TABCHAR	The logical tab character.
@	CHARDEL	The character delete symbol deletes the preceding character.
[or ¢	LINEDEL	The line delete symbol deletes everything back to and including the previous LINEND symbol or the start of the input. “[” is common for ASCII terminals and “¢” for EBCDIC terminals.
"	ESCAPE	The escape character allows you to enter a line edit symbol as a normal character.

To enter a line edit symbol you need to precede it with the escape character. In particular, to enter the escape character you must type it twice.

Examples

The following examples assume the settings of Table 47 with the opening bracket character ([) as the delete line character.

- To specify a tab character specify:
" |
- To specify a the double quote character specify:
" "
- If you type the character string:
#CP HALT#CP ZIPL 190[#CP IPL 1@290 PARM vmpoff=""MSG OP REBOOT"#IPL 290"

the actual commands received by CP are:
CP HALT
CP IPL 290 PARM vmpoff=""MSG OP REBOOT"#IPL 290"

Chapter 35. Initial program loader for System z - zipl

zipl can be used to prepare a device for one of the following purposes:

- Booting Linux (as a Linux program loader)
- Dumping

For more information on the dump tools that **zipl** installs and on using the dump functions, refer to *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412.

- Loading a data file to initialize a discontinuous saved segment (DCSS)

You can simulate a **zipl** command to test a configuration before you apply the command to an actual device (see “dry-run” on page 330).

zipl supports the following devices:

- Enhanced Count Key Data (ECKD) DASDs with fixed block Linux disk layout (ldl)
- ECKD DASDs with z/OS-compliant compatible disk layout (cdl)
- Fixed Block Access (FBA) DASDs
- Magnetic tape subsystems compatible with IBM3480, IBM3490, or IBM3590 (boot and dump devices only)
- SCSI with PC-BIOS disk layout

Usage

zipl base functions

The **zipl** base functions can be invoked with one of the following options on the command line or in a configuration file:

Table 48. zipl base functions

Base function	Command line short option	Command line long option	Configuration file option
Install a boot loader See “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for details.	-i	--image	image=
Prepare a DASD or tape dump device See “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 336 for details.	-d	--dumpto	dumpto=
Prepare a list of ECKD volumes for a multi-volume dump See “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 337 for details.	-M	--mvdump	mvdump=
Prepare a SCSI dump device See “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 339 for details.	-D	--dumptofs	dumptofs=

Table 48. *zipl* base functions (continued)

Base function	Command line short option	Command line long option	Configuration file option
Prepare a device to load a file to initialize discontinuous named saved segments See “Installing a loader to initialize a discontinuous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 341 for details.	-s	--segment	segment=
Install a menu configuration See “Installing a menu configuration” on page 342 for details.	-m	--menu	(None)

zipl modes

zipl operates in one of two modes:

Command-line mode

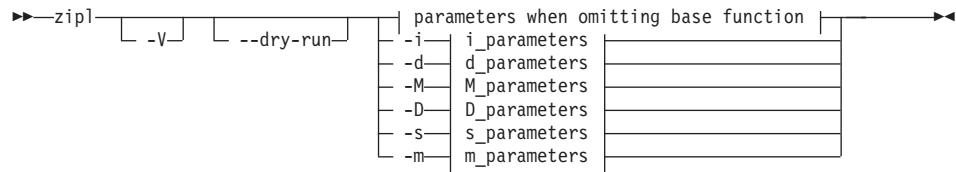
If a **zipl** command is issued with a base function other than installing a menu configuration (see “Installing a menu configuration” on page 342), the entire configuration must be defined using command-line parameters. See the following base functions for how to specify command-line parameters:

- “Preparing a boot device” on page 331
- “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 336
- “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 337
- “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 339
- “Installing a loader to initialize a discontinuous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 341

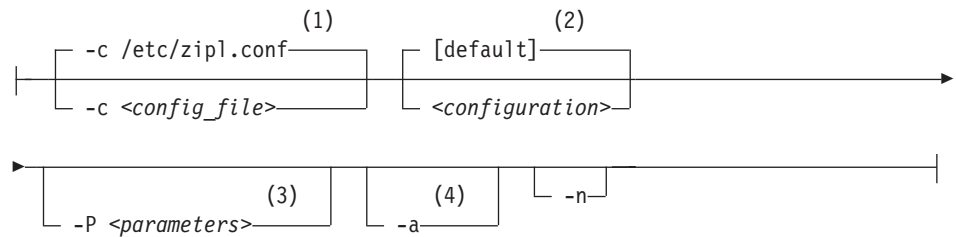
Configuration-file mode

If a **zipl** command is issued either without a base function or to install a menu configuration, a configuration file is accessed. See “Configuration file structure” on page 347 for more information.

zipl syntax overview



parameters when omitting base function:



Notes:

- 1 You can change the default configuration file with the ZIPLCONF environment variable.
- 2 If no configuration is specified, **zipl** uses the configuration specified in the [defaultboot] section of the configuration file (see “Configuration file structure” on page 347).
- 3 In a boot configuration or with a SCSI dump configuration only.
- 4 In a boot configuration or a menu configuration only.

Where:

-c <config_file>
specifies the configuration file to be used.

<configuration>
specifies a single configuration section in a configuration file.

-P <parameters>
can optionally be used to provide:

kernel parameters

in a boot configuration section. See “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 333 for information on how kernel parameters specified with the -P option are combined with any kernel parameters specified in the configuration file.

SCSI system dumper parameters

in a SCSI dump configuration section. See “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 341 for information on how parameters specified with the -P option are combined with any parameters specified in the configuration file.

If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotes (') or double quotes (").

- a in a boot configuration section, adds kernel image, kernel parameter file, and initial RAM disk to the bootmap file. Use this option when these files are spread across multiple disks to ensure that they are available at IPL time. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file created in the target directory.
- n suppresses confirmation prompts that require operator responses to allow unattended processing (for example, when processing DASD or tape dump configuration sections).
- V provides verbose command output.
- dry-run**
simulates a **zipl** command. Use this option to test a configuration without overwriting data on your device.

During simulation, **zipl** performs all command processing and issues error messages where appropriate. Data is temporarily written to the target directory and is cleared up when the command simulation is completed.
- v displays version information.
- h displays help information.

The basic functions and their parameters are described in detail in the following sections.

See “Parameters” on page 343 for a summary of the short and long command line options and their configuration file equivalents.

Examples

- To process the default configuration in the default configuration file (/etc/zipl.conf, unless specified otherwise with the environment variable ZIPLCONF) issue:

```
# zipl
```

- To process the default configuration in a configuration file /etc/myxmp.conf issue:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf
```

- To process a configuration [myconf] in the default configuration file issue:

```
# zipl myconf
```

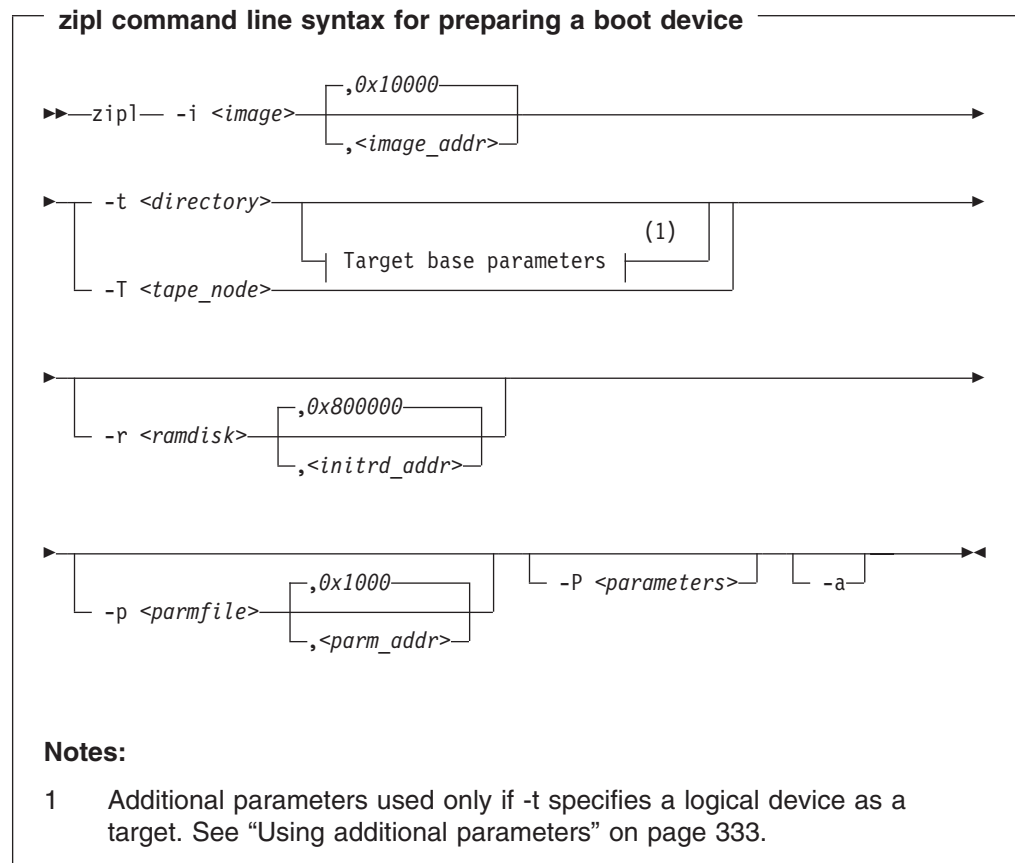
- To process a configuration [myconf] in a configuration file /etc/myxmp.conf issue:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf myconf
```

- To simulate processing a configuration [myconf] in a configuration file /etc/myxmp.conf issue:

```
# zipl --dry-run -c /etc/myxmp.conf myconf
```

Preparing a boot device



To prepare a device as a boot device you must specify:

The location *<image>*

of the Linux kernel image on the file system.

A target *<directory>* or *<tape_node>*

zipl installs the boot loader code on the device containing the specified directory *<directory>* or to the specified tape device *<tape_node>*.

Optionally, you can also specify:

A kernel image address *<image_addr>*

to which the kernel image is loaded at IPL time. The default address is 0x10000.

The RAM disk location *<ramdisk>*

of an initial RAM disk image (initrd) on the file system.

A RAM disk image address *<initrd_addr>*

to which the RAM disk image is loaded at IPL time. The default address is 0x800000.

Kernel parameters

to be used at IPL time. If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotes (') or double quotes (").

You can specify parameters *<parameters>* directly on the command line. Instead or in addition, you can specify a location *<parmfile>* of a kernel

parameter file on the file system. See “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 333 for a discussion of how **zipl** combines multiple kernel parameter specifications.

A parameter address *<parm_addr>*

to which the kernel parameters are loaded at IPL time. The default address is 0x1000.

An option -a

to add the kernel image, kernel parameter file, and initial RAM disk to the bootmap file. Use this option when these files are spread across multiple disks to ensure that they are available at IPL time. This option is available on the command line only. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file created in the target directory.

See “Parameters” on page 343 for a summary of the parameters including the long options you can use on the command line.

Figure 83 summarizes how you can specify a boot configuration within a configuration file section. Required specifications are shown in bold. See “Configuration file structure” on page 347 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

```
[<section_name>]
image=<image>,<image_addr>
ramdisk=<ramdisk>,<initrd_addr>
parmfile=<parmfile>,<parm_addr>
parameters=<parameters>
# Next line for devices other than tape only
target=<directory>
# Next line for tape devices only
tape=<tape_node>
```

Figure 83. zipl syntax for preparing a boot device — configuration file mode

Example

The following command identifies the location of the kernel image as /boot/mnt/image-2, identifies the location of an initial RAM disk as /boot/mnt/initrd, specifies a kernel parameter file /boot/mnt/parmf-2, and writes the required boot loader code to /boot. At IPL time, the initial RAM disk is to be loaded to address 0x900000 rather than the default address 0x800000. Kernel image, initial RAM disk and the kernel parameter file are to be copied to the bootmap file on the target directory /boot rather than being referenced.

zipl -i /boot/mnt/image-2 -r /boot/mnt/initrd,0x900000 -p /boot/mnt/parmf-2 -t /boot -a

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this:

```
[boot2]
image=/boot/mnt/image-2
ramdisk=/boot/mnt/initrd,0x900000
paramfile=/boot/mnt/parmf-2
target=/boot
```

There is no configuration file equivalent for option -a. To use this option for a boot configuration in a configuration file it needs to be specified with the **zipl** command that processes the configuration.

If the configuration file is called `/etc/myxmp.conf`:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf boot2 -a
```

How kernel parameters from different sources are combined

zipl allows for multiple sources of kernel parameters when preparing boot devices.

In command-line mode there are two possible sources of kernel parameters that are processed in the order:

1. Kernel parameter file (specified with the `-p` or `--parmfile` option)
2. Parameters specified on the command line (specified with the `-P` or `--parameters` option)

In configuration file mode there are three possible sources of kernel parameters that are processed in the order:

1. Kernel parameter file (specified with the `parmfile=` option)
2. Parameters specified in the configuration section (specified with the `parameters=` option)
3. Parameters specified on the command line (specified with the `-P` or `--parameters` option)

Parameters from different sources are concatenated and passed to the kernel in one string. At IPL time, the combined kernel parameter string is loaded to address 0x1000, unless an alternate address is provided.

Preparing a logical device as a boot device

You can prepare *logical devices* as boot devices. Logical devices are provided by device drivers that do not work on real hardware. For example, device mapper provides logical devices.

In this context, a *target device* means a logical device on which the file system is located. A *base device* is a physical device on which the logical device is located, or a logical device that is a linear mapping beginning at block 0 of the physical device.

You can prepare a logical DASD or SCSI device as a boot device if the following conditions are met:

- Kernel, initial RAM disk, and parameter files are all located on a logical device that maps to a single base device. This base device can be mirrored or accessed through a multipath configuration.
- Adjacent data blocks on the logical device correspond to adjacent data blocks on the base device.
- **zipl** has access to the first blocks, including block 0, of the base device.

For logical devices as targets, **zipl** cannot discover all the required data about the base device. There are two methods for supplementing the missing data to **zipl**.

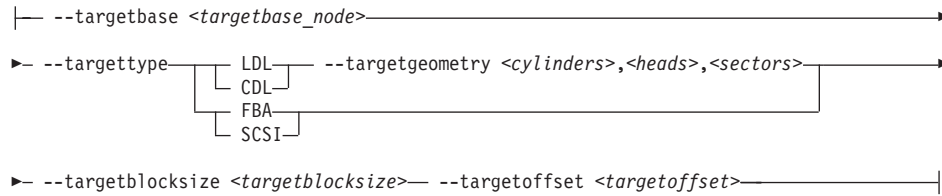
- You can use a helper script (see “Using a helper script” on page 335). A helper script is in place for device mapper.
- You can specify additional parameters with the **zipl** command or in a configuration file.

Using additional parameters

The following command syntax for the additional parameters extends the **zipl** command as shown in “Preparing a boot device” on page 331.

zipl - additional command line parameters for logical boot devices

Target base parameters:



The information you must specify as additional parameters is:

The device node *<targetbase_node>*

of the base device, either using the standard device name or in form of the major and minor number separated by a colon (:).

Examples: The device node specification for the device might be `/dev/dm-0` and the equivalent specification using major and minor numbers might be `253:0`.

The device type

of the base device. Valid specifications are:

- LDL** for ECKD type DASD with the Linux disk layout
- CDL** for ECKD type DASD with the compatible disk layout
- FBA** for FBA type DASD
- SCSI** for FCP-attached SCSI disks

ECKD type DASD only: The disk geometry *<cylinders>,<heads>,<sectors>*

of the base device in cylinders, heads, and sectors.

The block size *<targetblocksize>*

in bytes per block of the base device.

The offset *<targetoffset>*

in blocks between the start of the physical device and the start of the logical device.

Figure 84 on page 335 shows how you can specify this additional information in a configuration file.

```

[<section_name>]
image=<image>,<image_addr>
ramdisk=<ramdisk>,<initrd_addr>
parmfile=<parmfile>,<parm_addr>
parameters=<parameters>
target=<directory>
targetbase=<targetbase_node>
targettype=LDL|CDL|FBA|SCSI
# Next line for target types LDL and CDL only
targetgeometry=<cylinders>,<heads>,<sectors>
targetblocksize=<targetblocksize>
targetoffset=<targetoffset>

```

Figure 84. zipl syntax for preparing a logical device as a boot device — configuration file mode

Example for using the additional parameters

The example command in this section identifies the location of the kernel image as `/boot/image-5`, identifies the location of an initial RAM disk as `/boot/initrd-5`, specifies a kernel parameter file `/boot/parmf-5`, and writes the required boot loader code to `/boot`.

The command specifies the following information about the target base device: the device node is `/dev/dm-3`, the device has the compatible disk layout, there are 6678 cylinders, there are 15 heads, there are 12 sectors, and the logical device begins with an offset of 24 blocks from the start of the base device.

```
# zipl -i /boot/image-5 -r /boot/initrd-5 -p /boot/parmf-5 -t /boot --targetbase /dev/dm-3 \
# --targettype CDL --targetgeometry 6678,15,12 --targetblocksize=4096 --targetoffset 24
```

Note: Instead of using the continuation sign (`\`) at the end of the first line, you might want to specify the entire command on a single line.

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this:

```

[boot5]
image=/boot/image-5
ramdisk=/boot/initrd-5
paramfile=/boot/parmf-5
target=/boot
targetbase=/dev/dm-3
targettype=CDL
targetgeometry=6678,15,12
targetblocksize=4096
targetoffset=24

```

Using a helper script

Device mapper provides a helper script, `zipl_helper.device-mapper`, that can detect the required base device information and provide it to **zipl** for you. To use the helper script run **zipl** without specifying any of the additional parameters of “Using additional parameters” on page 333.

For the script to run successfully, `proc` must be mounted.

Assuming that the device in “Example for using the additional parameters” is a device mapper device, the command then becomes:

```
# zipl -i /boot/image-5 -r /boot/initrd-5 -p /boot/parmf-5 -t /boot
```

The corresponding configuration file section becomes:

```
[boot5]
image=/boot/image-5
ramdisk=/boot/initrd-5
paramfile=/boot/parmf-5
target=/boot
```

You can use a similar helper script for other device drivers that provide logical devices. The helper script must conform to the following specifications:

- The script must accept the name of the target directory as argument.
- The script must write the following parameter=<value> pairs to stdout as ASCII text. Each pair must be written on a separate line.
 - **targetbase**=<targetbase_node>
 - **targettype**=<type> where type can be LDL, CDL, FBA, or SCSI.
 - **targetgeometry**= <cylinders>,<heads>,<sectors> (For LDL and CDL only)
 - **targetblocksize**=<blocksize>
 - **targetoffset**=<offset>
- The script must be named `zipl_helper.<device>` where <device> is the device name as specified in `/proc/devices`.
- The script must be located in `/lib/s390-tools`.

Preparing a DASD or tape dump device

zipl command line syntax for preparing a DASD or tape dump device

```
➤ zipl -d <dump_device> [,<size>] [-n] ➤
```

To prepare a DASD or tape dump device you must specify:

The device node <dump_device>

of the DASD partition or tape device to be prepared as a dump device. **zipl** deletes all data on the partition or tape and installs the boot loader code there.

Notes:

1. If the dump device is an ECKD disk with fixed-block layout (ldl), a dump overwrites the dump utility. You must reinstall the dump utility before you can use the device for another dump.
2. If the dump device is a tape, FBA disk, or ECKD disk with the compatible disk layout (cdl), you do not need to reinstall the dump utility after every dump.

Optionally, you can also specify:

An option -n

to suppress confirmation prompts to allow unattended processing (for example, from a script). This option is available on the command line only.

A limit <size>

for the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary.

If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete.

DASD or tape dump devices are not formatted with a file system so no target directory can be specified. Refer to *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412 for details on how to process these dumps.

See “Parameters” on page 343 for a summary of the parameters including the long options you can use on the command line.

Figure 85 summarizes how you can specify a DASD or tape dump configuration in a configuration file. See “Configuration file structure” on page 347 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

```
[<section_name>]
dumpto=<dump_device>,<size>
```

Figure 85. *zipl* syntax for preparing a DASD or tape dump device — configuration file mode

Example

The following command prepares a DASD partition `/dev/dasdc1` as a dump device and suppresses confirmation prompts that require an operator response:

```
# zipl -d /dev/dasdc1 -n
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this:

```
[dumpdasd]
dumpto=/dev/dasdc1
```

There is no configuration file equivalent for option `-n`. To use this option for a DASD or tape dump configuration in a configuration file it needs to be specified with the **zipl** command that processes the configuration.

If the configuration file is called `/etc/myxmp.conf`:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf dumpdasd -n
```

Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD

zipl command line syntax for preparing devices for a multi-volume dump

```
➤ zipl [ -f ] -M <dump_device_list> [ ,<size> ] [ -n ] ➤
```

To prepare a set of DASD devices for a multi-volume dump you must specify:

A file -M <dump_device_list>

containing the device nodes of the dump partitions, separated by one or more line feed characters (0x0a). **zipl** writes a dump signature to each involved partition and installs the stand-alone multi-volume dump tool on each involved volume. Duplicate partitions are not allowed. A maximum of 32 partitions can be listed. The volumes must be formatted with cdl. You can use any block size, even mixed block sizes. However, to speed up the dump process and to reduce wasted disk space, use block size 4096.

Optionally, you can also specify:

An option -f or --force

to force that no signature checking will take place when dumping. Any data on all involved partitions will be overwritten without warning.

An option -n

to suppress confirmation prompts to allow unattended processing (for example, from a script). This option is available on the command line only.

A limit <size>

for the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary.

If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete.

DASD or tape dump devices are not formatted with a file system so no target directory can be specified. Refer to *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412 for details on how to process these dumps.

See “Parameters” on page 343 for a summary of the parameters including the long options you can use on the command line.

Figure 86 summarizes how you can specify a multi-volume DASD dump configuration in a configuration file. See “Configuration file structure” on page 347 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

```
[<section_name>]
mvdump=<dump_device_list>,<size>
```

Figure 86. zipl syntax for preparing DASD devices for a multi-volume dump — configuration file mode

Example

The following command prepares two DASD partitions /dev/dasdc1, /dev/dasdd1 for a multi-volume dump and suppresses confirmation prompts that require an operator response:

```
# zipl -M sample_dump_conf -n
```

where the sample_dump_conf file contains the two partitions separated by line breaks:

```
/dev/dasdc1
/dev/dasdd1
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this:

```
[multi_volume_dump]
mvdump=sample_dump_conf
```

There is no configuration file equivalent for option -n. To use this option for a multi-volume DASD dump configuration in a configuration file it needs to be specified with the **zipl** command that processes the configuration.

If the configuration file is called /etc/myxmp.conf:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf multi_volume_dump -n
```

Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk

Before you start: At least one partition, the *target partition*, must be available to **zipl**.

zipl command line syntax for preparing a SCSI dump device

```
➤ zipl -D <dump_partition> [,<size>] -t <directory>
➤ [-P <parameters>] [-p <parmfile>]
```

The target partition contains the target directory and is accessed to load the SCSI system dumper tool at IPL time. Dumps are written as files to a *dump partition*.

The dump and target partition can but need not be the same partition. Preferably, dump and target partition are two separate partitions.

The target and dump partitions must be formatted with a file system supported by the SCSI Linux system dumper tool. Unlike DASD and tape, creating a dump device on SCSI disk does not destroy the contents of the target partition. Refer to *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412 for more details.

To prepare a SCSI disk as a dump device, you must specify:

The dump partition *<dump_partition>*
to which the dumps are written.

A target *<directory>*
to which the SCSI system dumper components are written. **zipl** uses the target directory to determine the dump device (target partition).

Optionally, you can also specify:

SCSI system dumper parameters

You can specify parameters *<parameters>* directly on the command line. Instead or in addition, you can specify a location *<parmfile>* of a parameter file on the file system. See “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 341 for a discussion of how multiple parameter specifications are combined.

dump_dir=*/<directory>*

Path to the directory (relative to the root of the dump partition) where the dump file is to be written. This directory is specified with a leading slash. The directory must exist when the dump is initiated.

Example: If the dump partition is mounted as /dumps, and the parameter “dump_dir=/mydumps” is defined, the dump directory would be accessed as “/dumps/mydumps”.

The default is “/” (the root directory of the partition).

dump_compress=*gz|none*

Dump compression option. Compression can be time-consuming on slower systems with a large amount of memory.

The default is “none”.

dump_mode=*interactivelauto*

Action taken if there is no room on the file system for the new dump file. “interactive” prompts the user to confirm that the dump with the lowest number is to be deleted. “auto” automatically deletes this file.

The default is “interactive”.

If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotes (') or double quotes (").

A limit *<size>*

for the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary.

If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete.

See “Parameters” on page 343 for a summary of the parameters including the long options you can use on the command line.

Figure 87 summarizes how you can specify a SCSI dump configuration in a configuration file. Required specifications are shown in bold. See “Configuration file structure” on page 347 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

```
[<section_name>]
dumptofs=<dump_partition>
parmfile=<parmfile>,<parm_addr>
parameters=<parameters>
target=<directory>
```

Figure 87. zipl syntax for preparing a SCSI dump device — configuration file mode

Example

The following command prepares a SCSI partition /dev/sda2 as a dump device and a directory /boot as the target directory. Dumps are to be written to a directory mydumps, relative to the mount point. There is to be no compression but instead the oldest dump will be automatically deleted if there is not enough space for the new dump.

```
# zipl -D /dev/sda2 -P 'dumpdir=/mydumps dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto' -t /boot
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this:

```
[dumpscsi]
dumptofs=/dev/sda2
parameters='dumpdir=/mydumps dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto'
target=/boot
```

In both the command line and configuration file examples the parameter specifications “dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto” could be omitted because they correspond to the defaults.

If the configuration file is called /etc/myxmp.conf, the **zipl** command that processes the configuration would be:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf dumpscsi
```

How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined

zipl allows for multiple sources of SCSI system dumper parameters.

In command-line mode there are two possible sources of parameters that are processed in the order:

1. Parameter file (specified with the -p or --parmfile option)
2. Parameters specified on the command line (specified with the -P or --parameters option)

In configuration file mode there are three possible sources of parameters that are processed in the order:

1. Parameter file (specified with the parmfile= option)
2. Parameters specified in the configuration section (specified with the parameters= option)
3. Parameters specified on the command line (specified with the -P or --parameters option)

Parameters from different sources are concatenated and passed to the SCSI system dumper in one string. If the same parameter is specified in multiple sources, the value that is encountered last is honored. At IPL time, the combined parameter string is loaded to address (0x1000).

Installing a loader to initialize a discontinuous named saved segment (DCSS)

zipl command line syntax for loading a DCSS

```
►►—zipl— -s <segment_file>,<seg_addr>— -t <directory>—◄◄
```

To prepare a device for loading a data file to initialize discontinuous named saved segments, you must specify:

The source file *<segment_file>*
to be loaded at IPL time.

The segment address *<seg_addr>*
to which the segment is to be written at IPL time.

A target *<directory>*
zipl installs the boot loader code on the device containing the specified directory *<directory>*.

After the segment has been loaded, the system is put into the *disabled wait state*. No Linux instance is started.

See “Parameters” on page 343 for a summary of the parameters including the long options you can use on the command line.

Figure 88 summarizes how you can specify a file to be loaded to a DCSS within a configuration file section. See “Configuration file structure” on page 347 for a more comprehensive discussion of the configuration file.

```
[<section_name>]
segment=<segment_file>,<seg_addr>
target=<directory>
```

Figure 88. *zipl* syntax for loading a DCSS — configuration file mode

Example

The following command prepares a device for loading a file `/boot/segment` to a DCSS at address `0x40000000` when IPLed. The boot loader code is written to `/boot`:

```
# zipl -s /boot/segment,0x40000000 -t /boot
```

An equivalent section in a configuration file might look like this:

```
[segment]
segment=/boot/segment,0x40000000
target=/boot
```

If the configuration file is called `/etc/myxmp.conf`, the **zipl** command that processes the configuration would be:

```
# zipl -c /etc/myxmp.conf segment
```

Installing a menu configuration

To prepare a menu configuration you need a configuration file that includes at least one menu.

zipl syntax for installing a menu configuration

```

>> zipl -m <menu_name> [ -c /etc/zipl.conf (1) ] [ -c <config_file> ] [ -a ]

```

Notes:

- 1 You can change the default configuration file with the ZIPLCONF environment variable.

Where:

-m or --menu

specifies the menu that defines the menu configuration in the configuration file.

<config_file>

specifies the configuration file where the menu configuration is defined. The default, /etc/zipl.conf, can be changed with the ZIPLCONF environment variable.

-a or --add-files

specifies that the kernel image file, parmfile, and initial RAM disk image are added to the bootmap files in the respective target directories rather than being referenced. Use this option if the files are spread across disks to ensure that the files are available at IPL time. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file created in the target directory.

Example

Using the example of a configuration file in “Example” on page 349, you could install a menu configuration with:

```
# zipl -m menu1
```

Parameters

This section provides an overview of the options and how to specify them on the command line or in the configuration file.

Command line short option Command line long option	Explanation
Configuration file option	
-a --add-files	Causes kernel image , kernel parameter file, and initial RAM disk to be added to the bootmap file in the target directory rather than being referenced from this file.
n/a	Use this option when these files are spread across multiple disks to ensure that they are available at IPL time. Specifying this option significantly increases the size of the bootmap file created in the target directory.

Command line short option Command line long option	Explanation
Configuration file option	
-c <config_file> --config= <config_file>	Specifies the configuration file. You can change the default configuration file /etc/zipl.conf with the environment variable ZIPLCONF.
n/a	
<configuration> n/a	Specifies a configuration section to be read and processed from the configuration file.
n/a	
-d <dump_device>[,<size>] --dumpto= <dump_device>[,<size>]	Specifies the DASD partition or tape device to which a dump is to be written after IPL.
dumpto= <dump_device>[,<size>]	The optional size specification limits the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary. If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete. If no limit is provided, all of the available physical memory is dumped. See “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 336 and <i>Using the Dump Tools</i> , SC33-8412 for details.
-D <dump_partition>[,<size>] or --dumptofs= <dump_partition>[,<size>]	Specifies the partition to which a SCSI dump file is to be written. This partition must be formatted with a file system supported by the SCSI Linux system dumper tool (for example, ext2 or ext3). The dump partition must be on the same physical SCSI disk as the target partition. It can but need not be the partition that also contains the target directory (target partition).
dumptofs= <dump_partition>[,<size>]	The optional size specification limits the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary. If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete. If no limit is provided, all of the available physical memory is dumped. See “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 339 and <i>Using the Dump Tools</i> , SC33-8412 for details.
-h --help	Displays help information.
n/a	
-i <image>[,<image_addr>] --image= <image>[,<image_addr>]	Specifies the location of the Linux kernel image on the file system and, optionally, in memory after IPL. The default memory address is 0x10000.
image= <image>[,<image_addr>]	See “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for details.
-m <menu_name> --menu= <menu_name>	Specifies the name of the menu that defines a menu configuration in the configuration file (see “Menu configurations” on page 348).
n/a	

Command line short option Command line long option	Explanation
Configuration file option	
-M <dump_device_list>[,<size>] --mvdump =<dump_device_list>[,<size>] mvdump =<dump_device_list>[,<size>]	<p>Specifies a file with a list of DASD partitions to which a dump is to be written after IPL.</p> <p>The optional size specification limits the amount of memory to be dumped. The value is a decimal number that can optionally be suffixed with K for kilobytes, M for megabytes, or G for gigabytes. The value is rounded to the next megabyte boundary. If you limit the dump size below the amount of memory used by the system to be dumped, the resulting dump is incomplete. If no limit is provided, all of the available physical memory is dumped.</p> <p>See “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 337 and <i>Using the Dump Tools</i>, SC33-8412 for details.</p>
-n --noninteractive n/a	<p>Suppresses all confirmation prompts (for example, when preparing a DASD or tape dump device).</p>
-p <parmfile>[,<parm_addr>] --parmfile =<parmfile>[,<parm_addr>] parmfile =<parmfile>[,<parm_addr>]	<p>In a boot configuration, specifies the location of a kernel parameter file.</p> <p>In a SCSI dump configuration, specifies the location of a parameter file with SCSI system dumper parameters (see “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 339).</p> <p>You can specify multiple sources of kernel or SCSI system dumper parameters. See “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 341 and “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 333 for more information.</p> <p>The optional <parm_addr> specifies the memory address where the combined kernel parameter list is to be loaded at IPL time. This specification is ignored for SCSI dump configuration, SCSI system dumper parameters are always loaded to the default address 0x1000.</p>
-P <parameters> --parameters =<parameters> parameters =<parameters>	<p>In a boot configuration, specifies kernel parameters.</p> <p>In a SCSI dump configuration, specifies SCSI system dumper parameters (see “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 339)</p> <p>Individual parameters are single keywords or have the form <i>key=value</i>, without spaces. If you provide multiple parameters, separate them with a blank and enclose them within single quotes (') or double quotes (").</p> <p>You can specify multiple sources of kernel or SCSI system dumper parameters. See “How SCSI system dumper parameters from different sources are combined” on page 341 and “How kernel parameters from different sources are combined” on page 333 for more information.</p>
-r <ramdisk>[,<initrd_addr>] --ramdisk =<ramdisk>[,<initrd_addr>] ramdisk =<ramdisk>[,<initrd_addr>]	<p>Specifies the location of the initial RAM disk (initrd) on the file system and, optionally, in memory after IPL. The default memory address is 0x800000.</p>

Command line short option Command line long option	Explanation
Configuration file option	
-s <segment_file>, <seg_addr> or --segment= <segment_file>, <seg_addr>	Specifies the segment file to load at IPL time and the memory location for the segment.
segment= <segment_file>, <seg_addr>	See “Installing a loader to initialize a discontinuous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 341 for details.
-t <directory> --target= <directory>	Specifies the target directory where zipl creates boot-relevant files. The boot loader is installed on the disk containing the target directory. For a SCSI dump device, this partition must have been formatted with a file system supported by the SCSI system dumper (for example, ext2 or ext3).
target= <directory>	
none --targetbase= <targetbase_node>	For logical boot devices, specifies the device node of the base device, either using the standard device name or in form of the major and minor number separated by a colon (:).
targetbase= <targetbase_node>	See “Using additional parameters” on page 333 for details.
none --targetblocksize= <targetblocksize>	For logical boot devices, specifies the bytes per block of the base device.
targetblocksize= <targetblocksize>	See “Using additional parameters” on page 333 for details.
none --targetgeometry= <cylinders>, <heads>, <sectors>	For logical boot devices that map to ECKD type base devices, specifies the disk geometry of the base device in cylinders, heads, and sectors.
targetgeometry= <cylinders>, <heads>, <sectors>	See “Using additional parameters” on page 333 for details.
none --targetoffset= <targetoffset>	For logical boot devices, specifies the offset in blocks between the start of the physical device and the start of the logical device.
targetoffset= <targetoffset>	See “Using additional parameters” on page 333 for details.
none --targettype= <type>	For logical boot devices, specifies the device type of the base device.
targettype= <type>	See “Using additional parameters” on page 333 for details.
-T <tape_node> --tape= <tape_node>	Specifies the tape device where zipl installs the boot loader code.
tape= <tape_node>	
-v --version	Prints version information.
n/a	
-V --verbose	Provides more detailed command output.
n/a	

If you call **zipl** in configuration file mode without specifying a configuration file, the default `/etc/zipl.conf` is used. You can change the default configuration file with the environment variable `ZIPLCONF`.

Configuration file structure

A configuration file contains:

[defaultboot]

a default section that defines what is to be done if the configuration file is called without a section specification.

[<configuration>]

one or more sections that describe IPL configurations.

:<menu_name>

optionally, one or more menu sections that describe menu configurations.

A configuration file section consists of a section identifier and one or more option lines. Option lines are valid only as part of a section. Blank lines are permitted, and lines beginning with '#' are treated as comments and ignored. Option specifications consist of keyword=value pairs. There can but need not be blanks before and after the equal sign (=) of an option specification.

Default section

The default section consists of the section identifier **[defaultboot]** followed by a single option line. The option line specifies one of these mutually exclusive options:

default=<section_name>

where <section_name> is one of the IPL configurations described in the configuration file. If the configuration file is called without a section specification, an IPL device is prepared according to this IPL configuration.

defaultmenu=<menu_name>

where <menu_name> is the name of a menu configuration described in the configuration file. If the configuration file is called without a section specification, IPL devices are prepared according to this menu configuration.

Examples

- This default specification points to a boot configuration “boot1” as the default.

```
[defaultboot]
default=boot1
```

- This default specification points to a menu configuration with a menu “menu1” as the default.

```
[defaultboot]
defaultmenu=menu1
```

IPL configurations

An IPL configuration has a section identifier that consists of a section name within square brackets and is followed by one or more option lines. Each configuration includes one of the following mutually exclusive options that determine the type of IPL configuration:

image=<image>

Defines a boot configuration. See “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for details.

dump=<dump_device>

Defines a DASD or tape dump configuration. See “Preparing a DASD or tape dump device” on page 336 for details.

mvdump=<dump_device_list>

Defines a multi-volume DASD dump configuration. See “Preparing a multi-volume dump on ECKD DASD” on page 337 for details.

dumptofs=<dump_partition>

Defines a SCSI dump configuration. See “Preparing a dump device on a SCSI disk” on page 339 for details.

segment=<segment_file>

Defines a DCSS load configuration. See “Installing a loader to initialize a discontinuous named saved segment (DCSS)” on page 341 for details.

Menu configurations

For DASD and SCSI devices, you can define a menu configuration. A menu configuration has a section identifier that consists of a menu name with a leading colon. The identifier is followed by one or more lines with references to IPL configurations in the same configuration file and one or more option lines.

target=<directory>

specifies a device where a boot loader is installed that handles multiple IPL configurations. For menu configurations, the target options of the referenced IPL configurations are ignored.

<i>=<configuration>

specifies a menu item. A menu includes one and more lines that specify the menu items.

<configuration> is the name of an IPL configuration that is described in the same configuration file. You can specify multiple boot configurations. For SCSI target devices, you can also specify one or more SCSI dump configurations. You cannot include DASD dump configurations as menu items.

<i> is the configuration number. The configuration number sequentially numbers the menu items beginning with “1” for the first item. When initiating an IPL from a menu configuration, you can specify the configuration number of the menu item you want to use.

default=<n>

specifies the configuration number of one of the configurations in the menu to define it as the default configuration. If this option is omitted, the first configuration in the menu is the default configuration.

prompt=<flag>

for a DASD target device, determines whether the menu is displayed when an IPL is performed. Menus cannot be displayed for SCSI target devices.

For prompt=1 the menu is displayed, for prompt=0 it is suppressed. If this option is omitted, the menu is not displayed. Independent of this parameter, the operator can force a menu to be displayed by specifying “prompt” in place of a configuration number for an IPL configuration to be used.

If the menu of a menu configuration is not displayed, the operator can either specify the configuration number of an IPL configuration or the default configuration is used.

timeout=<seconds>

for a DASD target device and a displayed menu, specifies the time in seconds, after which the default configuration is IPLed, if no configuration has been specified by the operator. If this option is omitted or if “0” is specified as the timeout, the menu stays displayed indefinitely on the operator console and no IPL is performed until the operator specifies an IPL configuration.

Example

Figure 89 on page 350 shows a sample configuration file that defines multiple configuration sections and two menu configurations.

```

[defaultboot]
defaultmenu=menu1

# First boot configuration (DASD)
[boot1]
ramdisk=/boot/initrd
parameters='root=/dev/ram0 ro'
image=/boot/image-1
target=/boot

# Second boot configuration (SCSI)
[boot2]
image=/boot/mnt/image-2
ramdisk=/boot/mnt/initrd,0x900000
parmfile=/boot/mnt/parmf-2
target=/boot

# Third boot configuration (DASD)
[boot3]
image=/boot/mnt/image-3
ramdisk=/boot/mnt/initrd
parmfile=/boot/mnt/parmf-3
target=/boot

# Configuration for dumping to tape
[dumptape]
dumppto=/dev/rtibm0

# Configuration for dumping to DASD
[dumpdasd]
dumppto=/dev/dasdc1

# Configuration for multi-volume dumping to DASD
[multi_volume_dump]
mvdump=sample_dump_conf

# Configuration for dumping to SCSI disk
# Separate IPL and dump partitions
[dumpscsi]
target=/boot
dumpptofs=/dev/sda2
parameters="dump_dir=/mydumps dump_compress=none dump_mode=auto"

# Menu containing the SCSI boot and SCSI dump configurations
:menu1
1=dumpscsi
2=boot2
target=/boot
default=2

# Menu containing two DASD boot configurations
:menu2
1=boot1
2=boot3
target=/boot
default=1
prompt=1
timeout=30

# Configuration for initializing a DCSS
[segment]
segment=/boot/segment,0x800000
target=/boot

```

Figure 89. /etc/zipl.conf example

The following commands assume that the configuration file of our sample is the default configuration file.

- Call **zipl** to use the default configuration file settings:

```
# zipl
```

Result: **zipl** reads the default option from the [defaultboot] section and selects the :menu1 section. It then installs a menu configuration with a boot configuration and a SCSI dump configuration.

- Call **zipl** to install a menu configuration (see also “Installing a menu configuration” on page 342):

```
# zipl -m menu2
```

Result: **zipl** selects the :menu2 section. It then installs a menu configuration with two DASD boot configurations. “Example for a DASD menu configuration on VM” on page 359 and “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 366 illustrate what this menu looks like when it is displayed.

- Call **zipl** to install a boot loader for boot configuration [boot2]:

```
# zipl boot2
```

Result: **zipl** selects the [boot2] section. It then installs a boot loader that will load copies of /boot/mnt/image-2, /boot/mnt/initrd, and /boot/mnt/parmf-2.

- Call **zipl** to prepare a tape that can be IPLed for a tape dump:

```
# zipl dumptape
```

Result: **zipl** selects the [dumptape] section and prepares a dump tape on /dev/rtribm0.

- Call **zipl** to prepare a DASD dump device:

```
# zipl dumpdasd -n
```

Result: **zipl** selects the [dumpdasd] section and prepares the dump device /dev/dasdc1. Confirmation prompts that require an operator response are suppressed.

- Call **zipl** to prepare a SCSI dump device:

```
# mount /dev/sda1 /boot
# mount /dev/sda2 /dumps
# mkdir /dumps/mydumps
# zipl dumpscsi
# umount /dev/sda1
# umount /dev/sda2
```

Result: **zipl** selects the [dumpscsi] section and prepares the dump device /dev/sda1. The associated dump file will be created uncompressed in directory /mydumps on the dump partition. If space is required, the lowest-numbered dump file in the directory will be deleted.

- Call **zipl** to install a loader to initialize named saved segments:

```
# zip1 segment
```

Result: **zip1** installs segment loader that will load the contents of file /boot/segment to address 0x800000 at IPL time and then put the processor into the disabled wait state.

Chapter 36. Booting Linux

This chapter provides a general overview of how to boot Linux in an LPAR or as a z/VM guest. For details on how to define a Linux virtual machine, see *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6096, the chapter on creating your first Linux virtual machine.

IPL and booting

On System z, you usually start booting Linux by performing an Initial Program Load (IPL). Figure 90 summarizes the main steps.

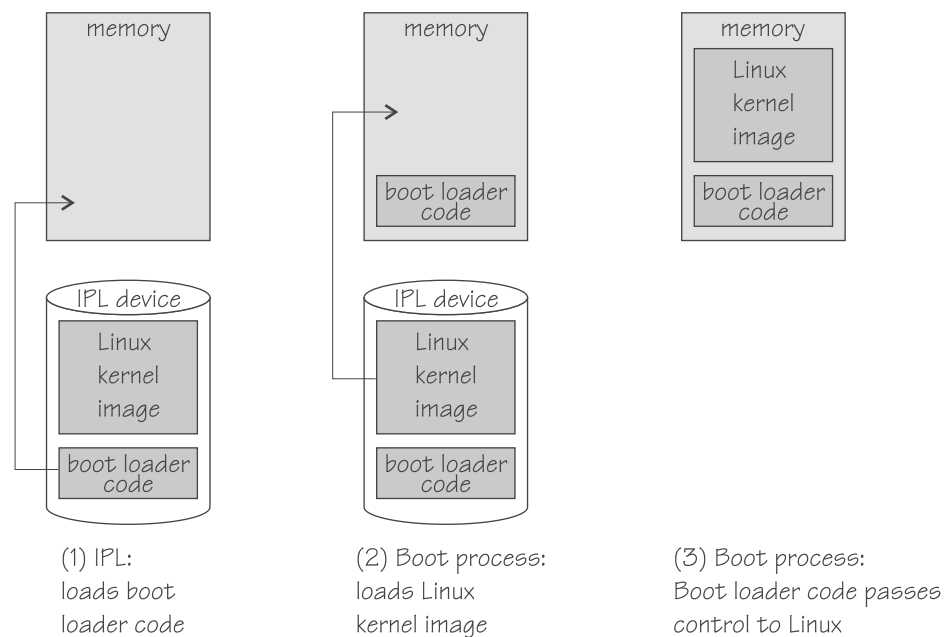


Figure 90. IPL and boot process

The IPL process accesses the IPL device and loads the Linux boot loader code to the mainframe memory. The boot loader code then gets control and loads the Linux kernel. At the end of the boot process Linux gets control.

If your Linux instance is to run in an LPAR, you can circumvent the IPL and use the service element (SE) to copy the Linux kernel to the mainframe memory (see “Loading Linux from a CD-ROM or from an FTP server” on page 366).

Apart from starting a boot process, an IPL can also be used for:

- Writing out system storage (dumping)
Refer to *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412 for more information on dumps.
- Loading a discontinuous saved segment (DCSS)
Refer to *How to use Execute-in-Place Technology with Linux on z/VM*, SC34-2594 for more information on DCSSs.

You can find the latest copies of these documents on developerWorks at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

The **zipl** tool allows you to prepare DASD, SCSI, and tape devices as IPL devices for booting Linux, for dumping, or for loading a DCSS. See Chapter 35, “Initial program loader for System z - zipl,” on page 327 for more information on **zipl**.

Control point and boot medium

The control point from where you can start the boot process depends on the environment where your Linux is to run. If your Linux is to run in LPAR mode, the control point is the mainframe’s Support Element (SE) or an attached Hardware Management Console (HMC). If your Linux is to run as a VM guest, the control point is the control program (CP) of the hosting z/VM.

The media that can be used as boot devices also depend on where Linux is to run. Table 49 provides an overview of the possibilities:

Table 49. Boot media

	DASD	tape	SCSI	NSS	VM reader	CD-ROM/FTP
VM guest	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
LPAR	✓	✓	✓			✓

DASDs, tapes on channel-attached tape devices, and SCSI disks that are attached through an FCP channel can be used for both LPAR and VM guests. A SCSI device can be a disk or an FC-attached CD-ROM or DVD drive. Named saved systems (NSS) and the VM reader are available only in a VM environment.

If your Linux runs in LPAR mode, you can also boot from a CD-ROM drive on the SE or HMC, or you can obtain the boot data from a remote FTP server.

Menu configurations

If you use **zipl** to prepare a DASD or SCSI boot device, you can define a menu configuration. A boot device with a menu configuration can hold the code for multiple boot configurations. For SCSI devices, the menu can also include one or more SCSI system dumpers.

Each boot and dump configuration in a menu is associated with a configuration number. At IPL time, you can specify a configuration number to select the configuration to be used.

For menu configurations on DASD, you can display a menu with the configuration numbers (see “Example for a DASD menu configuration on VM” on page 359 and “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 366). For menu configurations on SCSI devices, you need to know the configuration numbers without being able to display the menus.

See “Menu configurations” on page 348 for information on how to define menu configurations.

Boot data

Generally, you need the following to boot Linux:

- A kernel image
- Boot loader code
- Kernel parameters
- An initial RAM disk image

For sequential I/O boot devices (VM reader and tape) the order in which this data is provided is significant. For random access devices there is no required order.

Kernel image

You can obtain the kernel source from www.kernel.org/. Check for additional System z specific patches on developerWorks at: www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/index.shtml.

Important

Be aware that both compiling your own kernel or recompiling an existing distribution usually means that you have to maintain your kernel yourself.

Boot loader code

A kernel image is usually compiled to contain boot loader code for a particular boot device. For example, there are Linux configuration menu options to compile boot loader code for tape or for the VM reader into the kernel image.

If your kernel image does not include any boot loader code or if you want to boot a kernel image from a device that does not correspond to the included boot loader code, you can provide alternate boot loader code separate from the kernel image.

You can use **zipl** to prepare boot devices with separate DASD, SCSI, or tape boot loader code. You can then boot from DASD, SCSI, or tape regardless of the boot loader code in the kernel image.

Kernel parameters

The kernel parameters are in form of an ASCII text string of up to 895 characters. If the boot device is tape or the VM reader, the string can also be encoded in EBCDIC.

Individual kernel parameters are single keywords or keyword/value pairs of the form `keyword=<value>` with no blank. Blanks are used to separate consecutive parameters.

If you use the **zipl** command to prepare your boot device, you can provide kernel parameters on the command line, in a parameter file, and in a **zipl** configuration file. See Chapter 35, “Initial program loader for System z - zipl,” on page 327 or refer to the **zipl** and `zipl.conf` man pages for details.

Providing additional kernel parameters when booting

Depending on the boot device and whether you boot Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine or in LPAR mode, you can provide additional kernel parameters when you start the boot process.

- When booting Linux with a menu configuration on a DASD boot device, you can display the menu and specify additional kernel parameters as you select a boot configuration.
- When booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine from a CCW boot device, you can use the PARM parameter of the IPL command to specify additional kernel parameters.
If you are using z/VM 5.3 you require the PTFs for APAR VM64402 and APAR VM64442.
- When booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine from a SCSI boot device, you can use the SET LOADDEV command to specify additional kernel parameters.
- When booting Linux in LPAR mode from a SCSI boot device, you can specify additional kernel parameters on the HMC Load panel.

Kernel parameters as entered from a CMS or CP session are interpreted as lowercase on Linux.

By default, the additional kernel parameters you specify are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration. In total, the kernel parameters used for booting can be up to 4 KB.

If you specify the additional kernel parameters with a leading equal sign (=), the existing kernel parameters are ignored and replaced with the newly specified kernel parameters. If you replace the existing kernel parameters, be sure not to omit any kernel parameters required by your boot configuration.

Examples:

- This specification concatenates a kernel parameter to the end of the existing kernel parameters:
`noresume`
- This specification replaces the existing kernel parameters:
`=zfcpl.device=0.0.3c3b,0x5005076303048335,0x4050407e00000000 root=/dev/sda1`

Examples for kernel parameters

The following kernel parameters are typically used for booting Linux on System z:

conmode=<mode>, **condev=<cuu>**, and **console=<name>**
to set up the Linux console. See “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 311 for details.

noinitrd

to suppress an initial RAM disk. Specify this parameter if your boot configuration includes an initial RAM disk but you do not want to use it.

ramdisk_size=<size>

to specify the size of the initial RAM disk.

ro to mount the root file system read-only.

root=<rootdevice>

to specify the device to be mounted as the root file system.

resume=<device>, **noresume**, **no_console_suspend**

to configure suspend and resume support (see Chapter 37, “Suspending and resuming Linux,” on page 373).

dasd=<devices>

to set specific DASDs online during the boot process. You need to specify this parameter if a DASD is required for the boot process (for example, as the boot device).

zfcplib.device=<device_bus_id>,<wwpn>,<fcplun>

is required if a SCSI device is required for IPL (for example, as the root disk). See “zfcplib device driver kernel parameters” on page 54 for details.

Initial RAM disk image

An initial RAM disk holds files, programs, or modules that are not included in the kernel image but are required for booting.

For example, booting from DASD requires the DASD device driver. If you want to boot from DASD but the DASD device driver has not been compiled into your kernel, you need to provide the DASD device driver module on an initial RAM disk. If your image contains all files, programs, and modules that are needed for booting, you do not need an initial RAM disk.

Distributions often provide specific RAM disk images to go with their kernel images.

Booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine

You boot Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine by issuing CP commands from a CMS or CP session.

This section provides summary information for booting Linux in a z/VM guest virtual machine. For more detailed information about z/VM guest environments for Linux see *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6096.

Using tape

Before you start:

- You need a tape that is prepared as a boot device.

A tape boot device must contain the following in the specified order:

1. Tape boot loader code (optional — required only if the kernel image has not been compiled for booting from tape)

The tape boot loader code is included in the s390-tools package on developerWorks.

2. Tape mark
3. Kernel image
4. Tape mark
5. Kernel parameters (optional)
6. Tape mark
7. Initial RAM disk (optional)
8. Tape mark
9. Tape mark

All tape marks are required even if an optional item is omitted. For example, if you do not provide an initial RAM disk image, the end of the boot information is marked with three consecutive tape marks. **zipl** prepared tapes conform to this layout.

Perform these steps to start the boot process:

1. Establish a CMS or CP session with the z/VM guest virtual machine where you want to boot Linux.

2. Ensure that the boot device is accessible to your z/VM guest virtual machine.
3. Ensure that the correct tape is inserted and rewound.
4. Issue a command of this form:

```
#cp i <devno> parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where

<devno>

is the device number of the boot device as seen by the guest.

parm <kernel_parameters>

is an optional 64-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for information about the boot configuration). To replace the existing kernel parameters, use:

```
parm =<kernel_parameters>
```

See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

Using DASD

Before you start:

- You need a DASD boot device prepared with **zipl** (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331).

Perform these steps to start the boot process:

1. Establish a CMS or CP session with the z/VM guest virtual machine where you want to boot Linux.
2. Ensure that the boot device is accessible to your z/VM guest virtual machine.
3. Issue a command of this form:

```
#cp i <devno> loadparm <n> parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where:

<devno>

specifies the device number of the boot device as seen by the guest.

loadparm <n>

is applicable to menu configurations only. Omit this parameter if you are not working with a menu configuration.

Configuration number “0” specifies the default configuration. Depending on the menu configuration, omitting this option might display the menu or select the default configuration. Specifying “prompt” instead of a configuration number forces the menu to be displayed.

Displaying the menu allows you to specify additional kernel parameters (see “Example for a DASD menu configuration on VM” on page 359). These additional kernel parameters are appended to the parameters you might have provided in a parameter file. The combined parameter string must not exceed 895 bytes.

See “Menu configurations” on page 348 for more details on menu configurations.

parm *<kernel_parameters>*

is an optional 64-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for information about the boot configuration). To replace the existing kernel parameters, use:

```
parm =<kernel_parameters>
```

See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

Example for a DASD menu configuration on VM

This example illustrates how menu2 in the sample configuration file in Figure 89 on page 350 displays on the VM console:

```
00: zIPL v1.3.0 interactive boot menu
00:
00: 0. default (boot1)
00:
00: 1. boot1
00: 2. boot3
00:
00: Note: VM users please use '#cp vi vmmsg <input>'
00:
00: Please choose (default will boot in 30 seconds):
```

You choose a configuration by specifying its configuration number. For example, to boot configuration boot3, issue:

```
#cp vi vmmsg 2
```

You can also specify additional kernel parameters by appending them to this command. For example:

```
#cp vi vmmsg 2 maxcpus=1 mem=64m
```

Using a SCSI device

A SCSI device can be a disk or an FC-attached CD-ROM or DVD drive.

Before you start: You need a SCSI boot device prepared with **zipl** (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331).

Perform these steps to start the boot process:

1. Establish a CMS or CP session with the z/VM guest virtual machine where you want to boot Linux.
2. Ensure that the FCP channel that provides access to the SCSI boot disk is accessible to your z/VM guest virtual machine.
3. Specify the target port and LUN of the SCSI boot disk. Enter a command of this form:

```
#cp set loaddev portname <wwpn> lun <lun>
```

where:

<wwpn>

specifies the world wide port name (WWPN) of the target port in hexadecimal format. A blank separates the first eight digits from the final eight digits.

<lun>

specifies the LUN of the SCSI boot disk in hexadecimal format. A blank separating the first eight digits from the final eight digits.

Example: To specify a WWPN 0x5005076300c20b8e and a LUN 0x5241000000000000:

```
#cp set loaddev portname 50050763 00c20b8e lun 52410000 00000000
```

4. **Optional for menu configurations:** Specify the boot configuration (boot program in VM terminology) to be used. Enter a command of this form:

```
#cp set loaddev bootprog <n>
```

where <n> specifies the configuration number of the boot configuration. Omitting the bootprog parameter or specifying the value 0 selects the default configuration. See “Menu configurations” on page 348 for more details about menu configurations.

Example: To select a configuration with configuration number 2 from a menu configuration:

```
#cp set loaddev bootprog 2
```

5. **Optional:** Specify kernel parameters.

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata <APPEND|NEW> '<kernel_parameters>'
```

where:

<kernel_parameters>

specifies a set of kernel parameters to be stored as system control program data (SCPDATA). When booting Linux, these kernel parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration.

<kernel_parameters> must contain ASCII characters only. If characters other than ASCII characters are present, the boot process ignores the SCPDATA.

<kernel_parameters> as entered from a CMS or CP session is interpreted as lowercase on Linux. If you require uppercase letters in the kernel parameters, run the SET LOADDEV command from a REXX script instead.

To store SCPDATA that instead of being concatenated replaces the existing kernel parameters when booting, specify <kernel_parameters> with a leading equal sign (=):

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata <APPEND|NEW> '=<kernel_parameters>'
```

When replacing the existing kernel parameters, be sure not to omit any kernel parameters required by your boot configuration.

Optional: APPEND

appends kernel parameters to existing SCPDATA. This is the default.

Optional: NEW

replaces existing SCPDATA.

Examples:

- To append kernel parameter noresume to the current SCPDATA:

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata 'noresume'
```

- To replace the current SCPDATA with the kernel parameters resume=/dev/sda2 and no_console_suspend:

```
#cp set loaddev scpdata NEW 'resume=/dev/sda2 no_console_suspend'
```

For a subsequent IPL command, these kernel parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters in your boot configuration.

6. Start the IPL and boot process by entering a command of this form:

```
#cp i <devno>
```

where <devno> is the device number of the FCP channel that provides access to the SCSI boot disk.

Tip: You can specify the target port and LUN of the SCSI boot disk, a boot configuration, and SCPDATA all with a single SET LOADDEV command. See *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for more information about the SET LOADDEV command.

Using a named saved system

Before you start:

The z/VM guest virtual machine that is to boot Linux from the NSS must fulfill the following conditions:

- Run on a z/VM system on which a Linux kernel with kernel sharing support has been saved to an NSS (see “Building a kernel with NSS support” on page 233 for details).
- If the z/VM guest virtual machine uses multiple CPUs, you require z/VM 5.1 or later. For required PTFs refer to the kernel 2.6 October 2005 stream pages on developerWorks at

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/october2005_restrictions.html

To boot your z/VM guest from an NSS, <nss_name>, enter an IPL command of this form:

```
#cp i <nss_name> parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where:

<nss_name>

The NSS name can be one to eight characters long and must consist of alphabetic or numeric characters. Examples of valid names include: 73248734, NSSCSITE, or NSS1234.

parm *<kernel_parameters>*

is an optional 56-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for information about the boot configuration). To replace the existing kernel parameters, use:

```
parm =<kernel_parameters>
```

See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

Using the VM reader

This section provides a summary of how to boot Linux from a VM reader. For more details see the Redpaper *Building Linux Systems under IBM VM*, REDP-0120.

Before you start:

You need the following files, all in record format “fixed 80”:

- Linux kernel image with built-in VM reader boot loader code
- Kernel parameters (optional)
- Initial RAM disk image (optional)

Proceed like this to boot Linux from a VM reader:

1. Establish a CMS session with the guest where you want to boot Linux.
2. Transfer the kernel image, kernel parameters, and the initial RAM disk image to your guest. You can obtain the files from a shared minidisk or use:
 - The VM send file facility.
 - An FTP file transfer in binary mode.

Files that are sent to your reader contain a file header that you need to remove before you can use them for booting. Receive files that you obtain through your VM reader to a minidisk.

3. Set up the reader as a boot device.
 - a. Ensure that your reader is empty.
 - b. Direct the output of the punch device to the reader. Issue:

```
spool pun * rdr
```

- c. Use the CMS PUNCH command to transfer each of the required files to the reader. Be sure to use the “no header” option to omit the file headers.

First transfer the kernel image.

Second transfer the kernel parameters.

Third transfer the initial RAM disk image, if present.

For each file, issue a command of this form:

```
pun <file_name> <file_type> <file_mode> (noh
```

- d. Optionally, ensure that the contents of the reader remain fixed.

```
change rdr all keep nohold
```

If you omit this step, all files are deleted from the reader during the IPL that follows.

4. Issue the IPL command:

```
ipl 000c clear parm <kernel_parameters>
```

where:

0x000c

is the device number of the reader.

parm <kernel_parameters>

is an optional 64-byte string of kernel parameters to be concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331 for information about the boot configuration). To replace the existing kernel parameters, use:

```
parm =<kernel_parameters>
```

See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

Booting Linux in LPAR mode

You can boot Linux in LPAR mode from a Hardware Management Console (HMC) or Support Element (SE). The following description refers to an HMC, but the same steps also apply to an SE.

Booting from DASD, tape, or SCSI

Before you start:

- You need a boot device prepared with **zipl** (see “Preparing a boot device” on page 331).
- For booting from a SCSI boot device, you need to have the SCSI IPL feature (FC9904) installed.

Perform these steps to boot from a DASD, tape, or SCSI boot device:

1. In the left navigation pane of the HMC expand **Systems Management** and **Servers** and select the mainframe system you want to work with. A table of LPARs is displayed in the upper content area on the right.
2. Select the LPAR where you want to boot Linux.
3. In the **Tasks** area, expand **Recovery** and click **Load** (see Figure 91 on page 364).

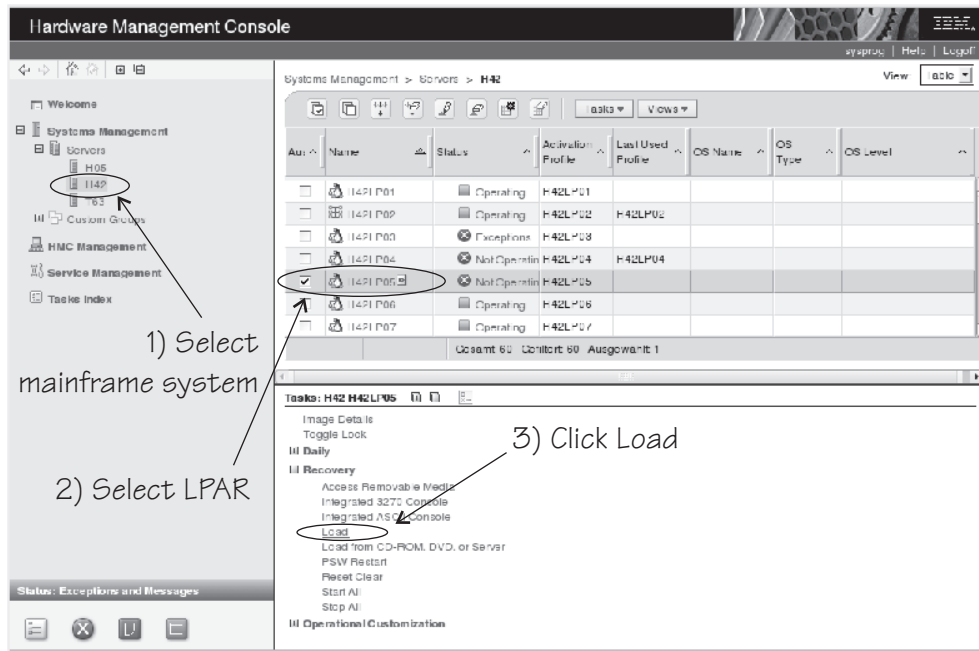


Figure 91. Load task on the HMC

4. Proceed according to your boot device.

For booting from tape:

a. Select **Load type** "Normal" (see Figure 92).

The screenshot shows the 'Load - H42:H42LP05' panel. The 'CPC' is 'H42:H42LP05' and the 'Image' is 'H42:H42LP05'. The 'Load type' is set to 'Normal'. The 'Load address' is 'E711'. The 'Time-out value' is '60' seconds. The 'Worldwide port name', 'Logical unit number', 'Boot program selector', and 'Boot record logical block address' are all set to '0'. The 'Operating system specific load parameters' field is empty.

Load - H42:H42LP05

CPC: H42:H42LP05

Image: H42:H42LP05

Load type: ☒ Normal ☐ Clear ☐ SCSI ☐ SCSI dump

☐ Store status

Load address: *E711

Load parameter:

Time-out value: 60 60 to 600 seconds

Worldwide port name: 0

Logical unit number: 0

Boot program selector: 0

Boot record logical block address: 0

Operating system specific load parameters:

OK Reset Cancel Help

Figure 92. Load panel for booting from tape or DASD

b. Enter the device number of the tape boot device in the **Load address** field.

For booting from DASD:

a. Select **Load type** "Normal" (see Figure 92).

- b. Enter the device number of the DASD boot device in the **Load address** field.
- c. If the boot configuration is part of a **zipl** created menu configuration, type the configuration number that identifies your DASD boot configuration within the menu in the **Load parameter** field.

Configuration number “0” specifies the default configuration. Depending on the menu configuration, omitting this option might display the menu or select the default configuration. Specifying “prompt” instead of a configuration number forces the menu to be displayed.

Displaying the menu allows you to specify additional kernel parameters (see “Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)” on page 366). These additional kernel parameters are appended to the parameters you might have provided in a parameter file. The combined parameter string must not exceed 895 bytes.

See “Menu configurations” on page 348 for more details on menu configurations.

For booting from a SCSI device:

A SCSI device can be a disk or an FC-attached CD-ROM or DVD drive.

- a. Select **Load type** “SCSI” (see Figure 93).

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Load - H42:H42LP05". It contains the following fields and options:

- CPC:** H42:H42LP05
- Image:** H42:H42LP05
- Load type:** Radio buttons for Normal, Clear, **SCSI** (selected), and SCSI dump.
- ☐ **Store status**
- Load address:** Text field containing "3C00" with a "*" prefix.
- Load parameter:** Empty text field.
- Time-out value:** Spin box set to "60", with a note "60 to 600 seconds".
- Worldwide port name:** Text field containing "500507630300c562".
- Logical unit number:** Text field containing "4010403c00000000".
- Boot program selector:** Text field containing "0".
- Boot record logical block address:** Text field containing "0".
- Operating system specific load parameters:** Text area containing "noresume".

At the bottom are buttons for OK, Reset, Cancel, and Help.

Figure 93. Load panel with SCSI feature enabled — for booting from a SCSI disk

- b. Enter the device number of the FCP channel through which the SCSI disk is accessed in the **Load address** field.
- c. Enter the WWPN of the SCSI disk in the **World wide port name** field.
- d. Enter the LUN of the SCSI disk in the **Logical unit number** field.
- e. If the boot configuration is part of a **zipl** created menu configuration, type the configuration number that identifies your SCSI boot configuration within the menu in the **Boot program selector** field. Configuration number “0” specifies the default configuration.

See “Menu configurations” on page 348 for more details on menu configurations.

- f. **Optional:** Type kernel parameters in the **Operating system specific load parameters** field. These parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration when booting Linux.

Use ASCII characters only. If you enter characters other than ASCII characters, the boot process ignores the data in the **Operating system specific load parameters** field.

To replace the existing kernel parameters, specify the kernel parameters in the **Operating system specific load parameters** with a leading equal sign (=). When replacing the existing kernel parameters, be sure not to omit any kernel parameters required by your boot configuration.

- g. Accept the defaults for the remaining fields.

- 5. Click **OK** to start the boot process.

Check the output on the preferred console (see “Console kernel parameter syntax” on page 311) to monitor the boot progress.

Example for a DASD menu configuration (LPAR)

This example illustrates how menu2 in the sample configuration file in Figure 89 on page 350 displays on the hardware console:

```
zIPL v1.3.0 interactive boot menu

0. default (boot1)

1. boot1
2. boot3

Please choose (default will boot in 30 seconds):
```

You choose a configuration by specifying the configuration number. For example, to boot configuration boot3, issue:

```
# 2
```

You can also specify additional kernel parameters by appending them to this command. For example:

```
# 2 maxcpus=1 mem=64m
```

These parameters are concatenated to the end of the existing kernel parameters used by your boot configuration when booting Linux.

Loading Linux from a CD-ROM or from an FTP server

You can use the SE to copy the Linux kernel image directly to your LPARs memory. This process bypasses IPL and does not require a boot loader. The SE performs the tasks that are normally done by the boot loader code. When the Linux kernel has been loaded, Linux is started using restart PSW.

As a source, you can use the SE's CD-ROM drive or any device on a remote system that you can access through FTP from your SE. If you access the SE remotely from an HMC, you can also use the CD-ROM drive of the system where your HMC runs.

Before you start: You need installation data that include a special file with installation information (with extension “ins”) either:

- On a CD-ROM that is inserted in the SE's CD-ROM drive or in the CD-ROM drive of the system where the HMC runs
- In the file system of an FTP server to which you have access

The “ins-file” contains a mapping of the location of installation data in the file system of the CD-ROM or FTP server and the memory locations where the data is to be copied.

1. In the left navigation pane of the HMC expand **Systems Management** and **Servers** and select the mainframe system you want to work with. A table of LPARs is displayed in the upper content area on the right.
2. Select the LPAR where you want to boot Linux.
3. In the **Tasks** area, expand **Recovery** and click **Load from CD-ROM, DVD, or Server** (see Figure 94).

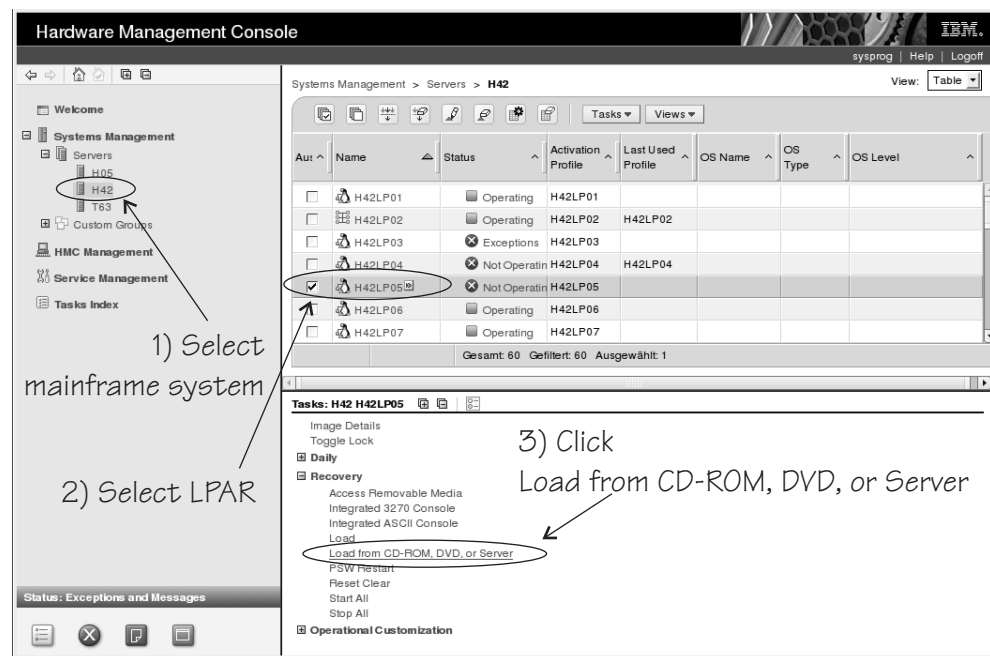


Figure 94. Load from CD-ROM, DVD, or Server task on the HMC

4. Specify the source of the code to be loaded.

For loading from a CD-ROM drive:

- a. Select **Hardware Management Console CD-ROM/DVD** (see Figure 95 on page 368).

Load from CD-ROM or Server - H42:H42LP05

Use this task to load operating system software or utility programs from a CD-ROM / DVD or a server that can be accessed using FTP.

Select the source of the software:

☒ Hardware Management Console CD-ROM / DVD

☐ FTP Source

Host computer:

User ID:

Password:

Account (optional):

File location (optional):

OK Cancel Help

Figure 95. Load from CD-ROM or Server panel

- b. Enter the path for the directory where the “ins-file” resides in the **File location** field. You can leave this field blank if the “ins-file” is located in the root directory of the file system on the CD-ROM.

For loading from an FTP server:

- a. Select the **FTP Source** radio button.
 - b. Enter the IP address or host name of the FTP server where the install code resides in the **Host computer** entry field.
 - c. Enter your user ID for the FTP server in the **User ID** entry field.
 - d. Enter your password for the FTP server in the **Password** entry field.
 - e. If required by your FTP server, type your account information in the **Account** entry field.
 - f. Enter the path for the directory where the “ins-file” resides in the file location entry field. You can leave this field blank if the file resides in the FTP server’s root directory.
5. Click **Continue** to display the “Select the software to load” panel (Figure 96).

Load from CD-ROM or Server - Select Software to Install - H42:H42LP05

Select the software to install.

Auswählen	Name	Description
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Distribution/DVD/mappin.ins	Linux for System z Installation/Rescue System

OK Cancel Help

Figure 96. Select the software to load panel

6. Select the “ins-file” to be used.
7. Click **OK** to start loading Linux.

At this point distribution-specific configuration scripts take over, if present.

Displaying current IPL parameters

To display the IPL parameters, use the command **lsreipl** (see “lsreipl - List IPL settings” on page 453). Alternatively, a sysfs user-space interface is available:

`/sys/firmware/ipl/ipl_type`

The `/sys/firmware/ipl/ipl_type` ASCII file contains the device type from which the kernel was booted. The following values are possible:

ccw The IPL device is a CCW device.

fcp The IPL device is an FCP device.

unknown

The IPL device is not known.

Depending on the IPL type, additional files might reside in `/sys/firmware/ipl/`.

If the device is CCW, the additional files `device` and `loadparm` are present.

device Contains the bus ID of the CCW device used for IPL, for example:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/device
0.0.1234
```

loadparm

Contains the eight-character loadparm used for IPL, for example:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/loadparm
1
```

parm

Contains the current VM parameter string:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/parm
noresume
```

See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

If the device is FCP, a number of additional files are present (also see Chapter 4, “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver,” on page 47 for details):

device Contains the bus ID of the FCP adapter used for IPL, for example:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/device
0.0.50dc
```

wwpn

Contains the WWPN used for IPL, for example:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/wwpn
0x5005076300c20b8e
```

lun

Contains the LUN used for IPL, for example:

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/lun
0x5010000000000000
```

br_1ba Contains the logical block address of the boot record on the boot device (usually 0).

bootprog

Contains the boot program number.

scp_data

Contains additional kernel parameters that might have been used when booting from a SCSI device (see “Using a SCSI device” on page 359 and “Booting from DASD, tape, or SCSI” on page 363). A leading equal sign (=) indicates that the existing kernel parameters used by the boot configuration were ignored and the kernel parameters of the scp_data attribute where the only kernel parameters used for booting Linux.

```
# cat /sys/firmware/ipl/scp_data
noresume
```

binary_parameter

Contains all of the above information in binary format.

Re-booting from an alternative source

When you re-boot Linux, the system conventionally boots from the last used location. However, you can configure an alternative device to be used for re-IPL instead of the last used IPL device. When the system is re-IPLed, the alternative device is used to boot the kernel.

This feature is built into the kernel by default.

Prerequisites

Sysfs must be mounted on the Linux system in order to use this feature.

The machine must have zfcp IPL support for re-IPL from SCSI devices. This support is available only for LPARs on System z machines.

Configuring the re-IPL device

To configure the re-IPL device, use the **chreipl** tool (see “chreipl - Modify the re-IPL configuration” on page 406).

Alternatively, you can use a sysfs interface. The virtual configuration files are located under `/sys/firmware/reipl`. To configure, write strings into the configuration files. The following re-IPL types can be set with the `/sys/firmware/reipl/reipl_type` attribute:

- **ccw**: For ccw devices such as ESCON- or FICON-attached DASDs.
- **fcpl**: For FCP SCSI devices, including SCSI disks and CD or DVD drives (Hardware support is required.)
- **nss**: For Named Saved Systems (z/VM only)

For each supported re-IPL type a sysfs directory is created under `/sys/firmware/reipl` that contains the configuration attributes for the device. The directory name is the same as the name of the re-IPL type.

When Linux is booted, the re-IPL attributes are set by default to the values of the boot device, which can be found under `/sys/firmware/ipl`.

Attributes for ccw

The attributes for re-IPL type ccw under `/sys/firmware/reipl/ccw` are:

- `device`: Device number of the re-IPL device. For example 0.0.4711.
- `loadparm`: An eight-character loadparm used to select the boot configuration in the ziplt menu (if available).
- `parm`: A 64-byte string containing kernel parameters that is concatenated to the boot command line. The PARM parameter can only be set when running Linux as a z/VM guest operating system. See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

The kernel parameters stored in the `parm` attribute can have a leading equal sign (=). Without the equal sign, the boot process concatenates these kernel parameters to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration. With the equal sign, the existing kernel parameter line is ignored and the boot process uses the kernel parameters in the `parm` attribute only.

Attributes for fcp

The attributes for re-IPL type fcp under `/sys/firmware/reipl/fcp` are:

- `device`: Device number of the fcp adapter used for re-IPL. For example 0.0.4711.

Note: IPL is possible only from subchannel set 0.

- `wwpn`: World wide port number of the FCP re-IPL device.
- `lun`: Logical unit number of the FCP re-IPL device.
- `bootprog`: Boot program selector. Used to select the boot configuration in the ziplt menu (if available).
- `br_lba`: Boot record logical block address. Master boot record. Is always 0 for Linux.
- `scp_data`: Kernel parameters to be used for the next FCP re-IPL.

The kernel parameters stored in the `scp_data` attribute can have a leading equal sign (=). Without the equal sign, the boot process concatenates these kernel parameters to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration. With the equal sign, the existing kernel parameter line is ignored and the boot process uses the kernel parameters in the `scp_data` attribute only.

Attributes for nss

The attributes for re-IPL type nss under `/sys/firmware/reipl/nss` are:

- `name`: Name of the NSS. The NSS name can be one to eight characters long and must consist of alphabetic or numeric characters. Examples of valid names include: 73248734, NSSCSITE, or NSS1234.
- `parm`: A 56-byte string containing kernel parameters that is concatenated to the boot command line. (Note the difference in length compared to ccw.) See also “Providing additional kernel parameters when booting” on page 355.

The kernel parameters stored in the `parm` attribute can have a leading equal sign (=). Without the equal sign, the boot process concatenates these kernel parameters to the end of the existing kernel parameters that are used by your boot configuration. With the equal sign, the existing kernel parameter line is ignored and the boot process uses the kernel parameters in the `parm` attribute only.

Kernel panic settings

Set the attribute `/sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_panic` to `reipl` to make the system re-IPL with the current re-IPL settings in case of a kernel panic. See also the **dumpconf** tool described in *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412 on the developerWorks Web site at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Examples

- To configure an FCP re-IPL device 0.0.4711 with a LUN 0x4711000000000000 and a WWPN 0x5005076303004711 with an additional kernel parameter `init=/bin/bash`:

```
# echo 0.0.4711 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/device
# echo 0x5005076303004711 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/wwpn
# echo 0x4711000000000000 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/lun
# echo 0 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/bootprog
# echo 0 > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/br_lba
# echo "init=/bin/bash" > /sys/firmware/reipl/fcp/scp_data
# echo fcp > /sys/firmware/reipl/reipl_type
```

Note: IPL is possible only from subchannel set 0.

- To set up re-IPL from a Linux NSS with different parameters:
 1. Change to the `reipl` sysfs directory:

```
# cd /sys/firmware/reipl/
```

2. Set the `reipl_type` to `nss`:

```
# echo nss > reipl_type
```

3. Set up the attributes in the `nss` directory:

```
# echo LNXNSS > name
# echo "dasd=0150 root=/dev/dasda1" > parm
```

Assuming that `dasd=` and `root=` are already included in your `nss` boot configuration and that no other kernel parameters are required, you can change to a root file system on a different device by replacing the existing kernel parameters:

```
# echo LNXNSS > name
# echo "=dasd=0151 root=/dev/dasda1" > parm
```

- To set the z/VM PARM parameter for Linux re-IPL, follow these steps:

1. Change to the sysfs directory appropriate for the next re-IPL:

```
# cd /sys/firmware/reipl/$(cat /sys/firmware/reipl/reipl_type)
/sys/firmware/reipl/ccw#
```

2. Use the `echo` command to output the parameter string into the `parm` attribute:

```
# echo "init=/bin/bash" > parm
```

Chapter 37. Suspending and resuming Linux

With suspend and resume support, you can stop a running Linux on System z instance and later continue operations.

When Linux is suspended, data is written to a swap partition. The resume process uses this data to make Linux continue from where it left off when it was suspended. A suspended Linux instance does not require memory or processor cycles.

Features

Linux on System z suspend and resume support applies to both Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems and Linux instances that run directly in an LPAR.

After a Linux instance has been suspended, you can run another Linux instance in the z/VM guest virtual machine or in the LPAR where the suspended Linux instance was running.

What you should know about suspend and resume

This section describes the prerequisites for suspending a Linux instance and makes you aware of activities that can cause resume to fail.

Prerequisites for suspending a Linux instance

Before a Linux instance is suspended, suspend and resume support checks for conditions that might prevent resuming the suspended Linux instance. You cannot suspend a Linux instance if the check finds prerequisites that are not fulfilled.

The following prerequisites must be fulfilled regardless of whether a Linux instance runs directly in an LPAR or whether it runs as a z/VM guest operating system:

- All tape device nodes must be closed and online tape drives must be unloaded.
- There must be no configured Common Link Access to Workstation (CLAW) devices.

The CLAW device driver does not support suspend and resume. You must ungroup all CLAW devices before you can suspend a Linux instance.

- The Linux instance must not have used any hotplug memory since it was last booted.
- No program must be in a prolonged uninterruptible sleep state.
Programs can assume this state while waiting for an outstanding I/O request to complete. Most I/O requests complete in a very short time and do not compromise suspend processing. An example of an I/O request that can take too long to complete is rewinding a tape.

For Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems the following additional prerequisites must be fulfilled:

- No discontinuous saved segment (DCSS) device must be accessed in exclusive-writable mode.
You must remove all DCSSs of segment types EW, SW, and EN by writing the DCSS name to the sysfs remove attribute.
You must remove all DCSSs of segment types SR and ER that are accessed in exclusive-writable mode or change their access mode to shared.
For details see “Removing a DCSS device” on page 230 and “Setting the access mode” on page 228.
- All device nodes of the z/VM recording device driver must be closed.
- All device nodes of the z/VM unit record device driver must be closed.
- No watchdog timer must run and the watchdog device node must be closed.

Precautions while a Linux instance is suspended

There are conditions outside the control of the suspended Linux instance that can cause resume to fail. In particular:

- The CPU configuration must remain unchanged between suspend and resume.
- The data that is written to the swap partition when the Linux instance is suspended must not be compromised.

In particular, be sure that the swap partition is not used if another operating system instance runs in the LPAR or z/VM guest virtual machine after the initial Linux instance has been suspended.

- If the Linux instance uses expanded storage (XPRAM), this expanded storage must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.

If the size or content of the expanded memory is changed before the Linux instance is resumed or if the expanded memory is unavailable when the Linux instance is resumed, resuming fails with a kernel panic.

- If the Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest operating system and uses one or more DCSSs these DCSSs must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.
If the size, location, or content of a DCSS is changed before the Linux instance is resumed, resuming fails with a kernel panic.
- If the Linux instance runs as a z/VM guest operating system and the Linux kernel is a named saved system (NSS), this NSS must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.
If the size, location, or content of the NSS is changed before the Linux instance is resumed, resuming fails.
- Take special care when replacing a DASD and, thus, making a different device available at a particular device bus-ID.
You might intentionally replace a device with a backup device. Changing the device also changes its UID-based device nodes. Expect problems if you run an application that depends on UID-based device nodes and you exchange one of the DASD the application uses. In particular, you cannot use multipath tools when the UID changes.
- The SCSI configuration must remain unchanged until the Linux instance is resumed.
- Generally, avoid changes to the real or virtual hardware configuration between suspending and resuming a Linux instance.

Potential problems after resuming a Linux instance

Devices might become unavailable or change their device bus-ID after the Linux instance has been suspended. Linux de-registers any devices that are no longer available with the previous bus-ID.

During a scan that follows, available devices are registered with their new device bus-ID. The device that is accessed through a particular device bus-ID might not be the same before Linux is suspended and after Linux is resumed. In particular, disk devices that are accessed by bus-ID might not map to the expected disk space.

Building a kernel with suspend and resume support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include suspend and resume support.

You need a kernel with the following common code options compiled into the kernel:

- CONFIG_PM
- CONFIG_HIBERNATION

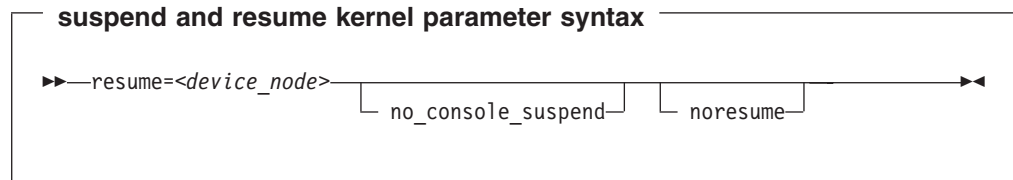
Selecting these items automatically selects all other options that are required.

Setting up Linux for suspend and resume

This section describes the kernel parameters you can use for setting up suspend and resume support. It also provides information about the swap partition you need to suspend and resume a Linux instance.

Kernel parameters

This section describes the kernel parameters you need to configure support for suspend and resume.



where:

resume=<device_node>

specifies the standard device node of the swap partition with the data that is required for resuming the Linux instance.

no_console_suspend

prevents Linux consoles from being suspended early in the suspend process. Without this parameter, you cannot see the kernel messages that are issued by the suspend process.

noresume

boots the kernel without resuming a previously suspended Linux instance. Add this parameter to circumvent the resume process, for example, if the data written by the previous suspend process is damaged.

Example:

- To use a partition `/dev/dasda2` as the swap partition and prevent Linux consoles from being suspended early in the suspend process specify:

```
resume=/dev/dasda2 no_console_suspend
```

Setting up a swap partition

During the suspend process, Linux writes data to a swap partition. This data is required later to resume Linux. Set up a swap partition that is at least the size of the available LPAR memory or the memory of the z/VM guest virtual machine.

Do not use this swap partition for any other operating system that might run in the LPAR or z/VM guest virtual machine while the Linux instance is suspended.

You cannot suspend a Linux instance while most of the memory and most of the swap space are in use. If there is not sufficient remaining swap space to hold the data for resuming the Linux instance, suspending the Linux instance fails. To assure sufficient swap space you might have to configure two swap partitions, one partition for regular swapping and another for suspending the Linux instance. Configure the swap partition for suspending the Linux instance with a lower priority than the regular swap partition.

Use the `pri=` parameter to specify the swap partitions in `/etc/fstab` with different priorities. See the `swapon` man page for details.

The following example shows two swap partitions with different priorities:


```
# cat /etc/fstab
...
/dev/dasdb1 swap swap pri=-1 0 0
/dev/dasdc1 swap swap pri=-2 0 0
```

In the example, the partition to be used for the resume data is `/dev/dasdc1`.

You can check your current swap configuration by reading `/proc/swaps`.

```
# cat /proc/swaps
Filename      Type      Size      Used      Priority
/dev/dasdb1   partition 7212136   71056     -1
/dev/dasdc1   partition 7212136   0         -2
```

Suspending a Linux instance

Attention: Only suspend a Linux instance for which you have specified the `resume=` kernel parameter. Without this parameter, you cannot resume the suspended Linux instance.

Enter the following command to suspend a Linux instance:

```
# echo disk > /sys/power/state
```

On the Linux console you might see progress messages until the console itself is suspended. Most of these messages require log level 7 or higher to be printed. See “Using the magic `sysrequest` functions” on page 321 about how to set the log level. You cannot see the progress messages if you suspend the Linux instance from an ssh session.

Resuming a suspended Linux instance

Boot Linux to resume a suspended Linux instance. Use the same kernel, initial RAM disk, and kernel parameters that you used to first boot the suspended Linux instance.

You must reestablish any terminal session for HVC terminal devices and for terminals provided by the `iucv tty` program. You also must reestablish all ssh sessions that have timed out while the Linux instance was suspended.

If resuming the Linux instance fails, boot Linux again with the `noresume` kernel parameter. The boot process then ignores the data that was written to the swap partition and starts Linux without resuming the suspended instance.

Configuring Linux to suspend on SIGNAL SHUTDOWN

This section applies to Linux instances that run as z/VM guest operating systems.

A z/VM administrator can use a CP command, `SIGNAL SHUTDOWN`, to shut down (log off) a z/VM guest virtual machine. Typically, the z/VM configuration defines a shutdown interval between the command and the logoff.

By default, a Linux instance performs a regular shutdown during the shutdown interval. After the z/VM guest virtual machine has been logged on again, Linux must be rebooted with an IPL.

You can configure Linux to suspend to disk instead of shutting down. A subsequent IPL then leads to Linux resuming rather than booting.

How to configure suspend on SIGNAL SHUTDOWN depends on whether your Linux distribution uses Upstart or inittab.

Using inittab

For distributions that use inittab, edit `/etc/inittab`. Replace the line

```
ca::ctrlaltdel:/sbin/shutdown -t3 -r now
```

with

```
ca::ctrlaltdel:/bin/sh -c "/bin/echo disk > /sys/power/state || /sbin/shutdown -t3 -h now"
```

If suspending Linux fails, a shutdown is performed as a backup action.

Using Upstart

For distributions that use Upstart, edit `/etc/event.d/control-alt-delete`. Replace the line

```
exec /sbin/shutdown -t3 -r now "Control-Alt-Delete pressed"
```

with

```
exec /bin/sh -c "/bin/echo disk > /sys/power/state || /sbin/shutdown -t3 -h now"
```

for each Linux guest.

If suspending Linux fails, a shutdown is performed as a backup action.

Chapter 38. Shutdown actions

You can specify the action to take on shutdown by setting the shutdown actions attributes. Figure 97 shows the structure of the `/sys/firmware/` directory.

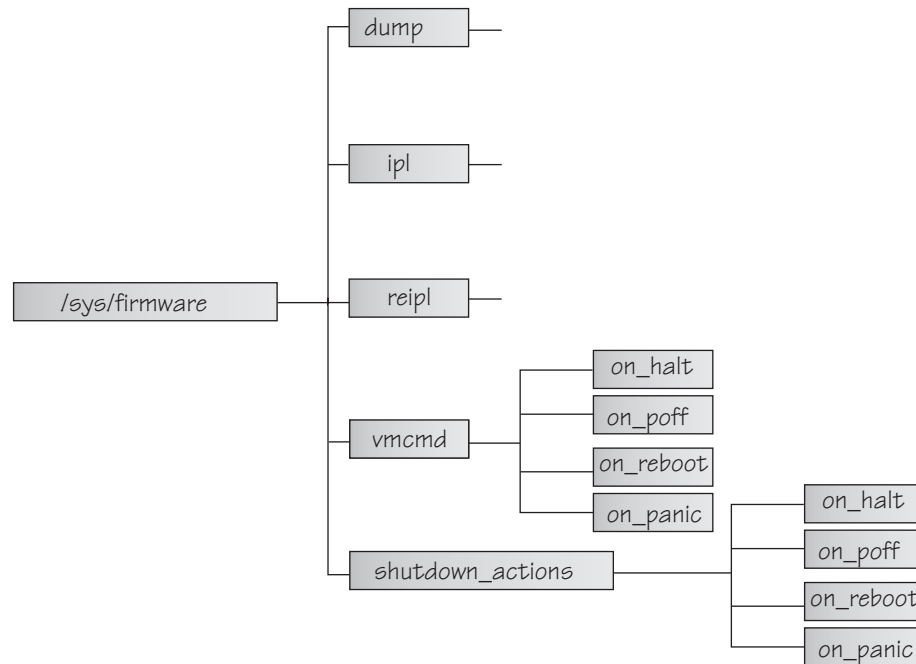


Figure 97. Firmware directory structure

The directories contain the following information:

- ipl** Information about the IPL device (see “Displaying current IPL parameters” on page 369).
- reipl** Information about the re-ipl device (see “Re-booting from an alternative source” on page 370).
- dump** Information about the dump device. Attributes are configured by the `dumpconf` script. For details, see the description of the `dumpconf` command in *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412.
- vmcmd**
CP commands for halt, power off, reboot, and panic.
- shutdown_actions**
Configuration of actions in case of halt, poff, reboot and panic.

The `shutdown_actions` directory contains the following files:

- `on_halt`
- `on_poff`
- `on_reboot`
- `on_panic`

The `shutdown_actions` attributes can contain the shutdown actions 'ipl', 'reipl', 'dump', 'stop', 'vmcmd' or 'dump_reipl'. These values specify what should be done in case of a halt, power off, reboot or kernel panic event. Default for `on_halt`, `on_poff`

and `on_panic` is 'stop'. Default for reboot is 'reipl'. The attributes can be set by writing the appropriate string into the virtual files.

The `vmcmd` directory also contains the four files `on_halt`, `on_poff`, `on_reboot`, and `on_panic`. All these files can contain CP commands.

For example, if CP commands should be executed in case of a halt, the `on_halt` attribute in the `vmcmd` directory must contain the CP commands and the `on_halt` attribute in the `shutdown_actions` directory must contain the string 'vmcmd'.

CP commands written to the `vmcmd` attributes must be uppercase. You can specify multiple commands using the newline character "\n" as separator. The maximum command line length is limited to 127 characters.

For CP commands that do not end or stop the virtual machine, halt, power off, and panic will stop the machine after the command execution. For reboot, the system will be rebooted using the parameters specified under `/sys/firmware/reipl`.

Examples

If the Linux **halt** command is executed, automatically log off the z/VM guest:

```
# echo vmcmd > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_halt
# echo LOGOFF > /sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_halt
```

If the Linux **poweroff** command is executed, send a message to guest MASTER and automatically log off the guest. Do not forget the **cat** command to ensure that the newline is processed correctly:

```
# echo vmcmd > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_poff
# echo -e "MSG MASTER Going down\nLOGOFF" | cat > /sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_poff
```

If a kernel panic occurs, trigger a re-ipl using the IPL parameters under `/sys/firmware/ipl`:

```
# echo ipl > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_panic
```

If the Linux **reboot** command is executed, send a message to guest MASTER and reboot Linux:

```
# echo vmcmd > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_reboot
# echo "MSG MASTER Reboot system" > /sys/firmware/vmcmd/on_reboot
```

If a kernel panic occurs, and you want to produce a system dump and trigger a subsequent re-ipl:

```
# echo dump_reipl > /sys/firmware/shutdown_actions/on_panic
```

Note that VM commands, device addresses, and guest names must be uppercase.

Part 8. Diagnostics and troubleshooting

This section describes device drivers and features that are used in the context of diagnostics and problem solving.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 39. Channel measurement facility	383
Features	383
Building a kernel with the channel measurement facility	383
Setting up the channel measurement facility	383
Working with the channel measurement facility	384
 Chapter 40. Control program identification	 387
Building a kernel with CPI support	387
Working with the CPI support	387
 Chapter 41. Activating automatic problem reporting	 391
Building a kernel with the SCLP_ASYNC device driver	391
Setting up the SCLP_ASYNC device driver	391
Activating the Call Home support	391
 Chapter 42. Avoiding common pitfalls	 393
Ensuring correct channel path status	393
Determining channel path usage	393
Configuring LPAR I/O devices	393
Using cio_ignore	394
Excessive guest swapping	394
Including service levels of the hardware and the hypervisor	394
Booting stops with disabled wait state	394
Preparing for dump on panic	395
 Chapter 43. Kernel messages	 397
Building a kernel with message documentation support	397
Generating the message man pages	397
Displaying a message man page	397

Chapter 39. Channel measurement facility

The System z architecture provides a channel measurement facility to collect statistical data about I/O on the channel subsystem. Data collection can be enabled for all CCW devices. User space applications can access this data through the sysfs.

Features

The channel measurement facility provides the following features:

- Basic channel measurement format for concurrently collecting data on up to 4096 devices. (Note that specifying 4096 or more channels causes high memory consumption and enabling data collection might not succeed.)
- Extended channel measurement format for concurrently collecting data on an unlimited number of devices.
- Data collection for all channel-attached devices, except those using QDIO (that is, except qeth and SCSI-over-Fibre channel attached devices)

Building a kernel with the channel measurement facility



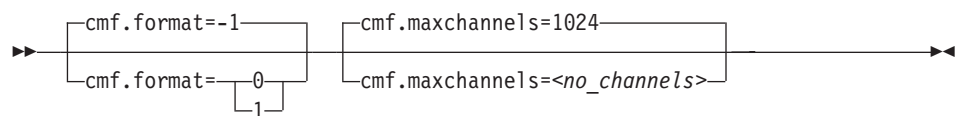
This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

The channel measurement facility is always included in the Linux 2.6 kernel. You do not need to select any options.

Setting up the channel measurement facility

You can configure the channel measurement facility by adding parameters to the kernel parameter file.

Channel measurement facility kernel parameters



where:

cmf.format

defines the format, “0” for basic and “1” for extended, of the channel measurement blocks. The default, “-1”, uses the extended format for z990 and later mainframes and the basic format for earlier mainframes.

cmf.maxchannels=<no_channels>

limits the number of devices for which data measurement can be enabled concurrently with the basic format. The maximum for <no_channels> is 4096. A warning will be printed if more than 4096 channels are specified. The channel measurement facility might still work; however, specifying more than 4096 channels causes a high memory consumption.

For the extended format there is no limit and any value you specify is ignored.

Working with the channel measurement facility

This section describes typical tasks you need to perform when working with the channel measurement facility.

- Enabling, resetting, and switching off data collection
- Reading data

Enabling, resetting, and switching off data collection

Use a device's `cmb_enable` attribute to enable, reset, or switch off data collection. To enable data collection, write “1” to the `cmb_enable` attribute. If data collection has already been enabled, this resets all collected data to zero.

Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmb_enable
```

where `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>` represents the device in sysfs.

When data collection is enabled for a device, a subdirectory `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmf` is created that contains several attributes. These attributes contain the collected data (see “Reading data”).

To switch off data collection issue a command of this form:

```
# echo 0 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmb_enable
```

When data collection for a device is switched off, the subdirectory `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device_bus_id>/cmf` and its content are deleted.

Example

In this example, data collection for a device `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100` is already active and reset:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/cmb_enable
1
# echo 1 > /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/cmb_enable
```

Reading data

While data collection is enabled for a device, the directories that represent it in sysfs contain a subdirectory, `cmf`, with several read-only attributes. These attributes hold the collected data. To read one of the attributes issue a command of this form:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device-bus-id>/cmf/<attribute>
```

where `/sys/bus/ccw/devices/<device-bus-id>` is the directory that represents the device, and `<attribute>` the attribute to be read. Table 50 on page 385 summarizes the available attributes.

Table 50. Attributes with collected I/O data

Attribute	Value
ssch_rsch_count	An integer representing the ssch rsch count value.
sample_count	An integer representing the sample count value.
avg_device_connect_time	An integer representing the average device connect time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_function_pending_time	An integer representing the average function pending time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_device_disconnect_time	An integer representing the average device disconnect time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_control_unit_queuing_time	An integer representing the average control unit queuing time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_initial_command_response_time	An integer representing the average initial command response time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_device_active_only_time	An integer representing the average device active only time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_device_busy_time	An integer representing the average value device busy time, in nanoseconds, per sample.
avg_utilization	A percent value representing the fraction of time that has been spent in device connect time plus function pending time plus device disconnect time during the measurement period.
avg_sample_interval	An integer representing the average time, in nanoseconds, between two samples during the measurement period. Can be "-1" if no measurement data has been collected.
avg_initial_command_response_time	An integer representing the average time in nanoseconds between the first command of a channel program being sent to the device and the command being accepted. Available in extended format only.
avg_device_busy_time	An integer representing the average time in nanoseconds of the subchannel being in the "device busy" state when initiating a start or resume function. Available in extended format only.

Example

To read the avg_device_busy_time attribute for a device /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100:

```
# cat /sys/bus/ccw/devices/0.0.b100/cmf/avg_device_busy_time
21
```

Chapter 40. Control program identification

This section applies to Linux instances in LPAR mode only.

If your Linux instance runs in LPAR mode, you can use the control program identification (CPI) module, `sclp_cpi`, or the sysfs interface `/sys/firmware/cpi` to assign names to your Linux instance and sysplex. The names are used, for example, to identify the Linux instance or the sysplex on the HMC.

Building a kernel with CPI support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the CPI support.

You need to select the kernel configuration option `CONFIG_SCLP_CPI` to enable control program identification through the SCLP interface (see Figure 98). Compile the CPI support as a separate module, `sclp_cpi`.

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices --->
...
Control-Program Identification                (CONFIG_SCLP_CPI)
```

Figure 98. Kernel configuration menu option for control program identification

Working with the CPI support

This section describes typical tasks that you need to perform when working with CPI support.

- Loading the CPI module
- “Defining a sysplex name” on page 388
- “Defining a system name” on page 388
- “Defining a system type” on page 388
- “Displaying the system level” on page 389
- “Sending system data to the SE” on page 389

Loading the CPI module

You can provide the system name and the sysplex name as parameters when you load the CPI module, but the preferred method is to use the sysfs interface. When loading the CPI module the following is sent to the SE:

- System name (if provided)
- Sysplex name (if provided)
- System type (automatically set to “LINUX”)
- System level (automatically set to the value of `LINUX_VERSION_CODE`)

CPI module parameter syntax

```
modprobe sclp_cpi [ system_name=<system> ] [ sysplex_name=<sysplex> ]
```

where:

system_name = <system>

specifies an 8-character system name of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, # and blank. The specification is converted to uppercase.

sysplex_name = <sysplex>

specifies an 8-character sysplex name of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, # and blank. The specification is converted to uppercase.

Defining a system name

Use the attribute `system_name` in `sysfs` to specify a system name:

```
/sys/firmware/cpi/system_name
```

The system name is a string consisting of up to 8 characters of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, # and blank.

Example:

```
# echo LPAR12 > /sys/firmware/cpi/system_name
```

This attribute is intended for setting the name only. To confirm the current system name, check the HMC.

Defining a sysplex name

Use the attribute `sysplex_name` in `sysfs` to specify a sysplex name:

```
/sys/firmware/cpi/sysplex_name
```

The sysplex name is a string consisting of up to 8 characters of the following set: A-Z, 0-9, \$, @, # and blank.

Example:

```
# echo SYSPLEX1 > /sys/firmware/cpi/sysplex_name
```

This attribute is intended for setting the name only. To confirm the current sysplex name, check the HMC.

Defining a system type

Use the attribute `system_type` in `sysfs` to specify a system type. The system type must be LINUX.

```
/sys/firmware/cpi/system_type
```

Example:

```
# echo LINUX > /sys/firmware/cpi/system_type
```

Displaying the system level

The attribute `system_level` in `sysfs` provides the operating system version:

`/sys/firmware/cpi/system_level`

The information is displayed in the format:

`0x0000000000aabbcc`

where:

aa kernel version

bb kernel patch level

cc kernel sublevel

Example: Linux kernel 2.6.27 displays as

```
# cat /sys/firmware/cpi/system_level  
0x00000000002061b
```

Sending system data to the SE

Use the attribute `set` in `sysfs` to send data to the service element:

`/sys/firmware/cpi/set`

To send the data in attributes `sysplex_name`, `system_level`, `system_name`, and, `system_type` to the SE, write an arbitrary string to the `set` attribute.

Example:

```
# echo 1 > /sys/firmware/cpi/set
```


Chapter 41. Activating automatic problem reporting

You can activate automatic problem reporting for situations where Linux experiences a kernel panic. Linux then uses the Call Home function to send automatically collected problem data to the IBM service organization through the Service Element. Hence a system crash automatically leads to a new Problem Management Record (PMR) which can be processed by IBM service.

Before you start:

- The Linux instance must run in an LPAR.
- You need a hardware support agreement with IBM to report problems to RETAIN®.
- The Linux kernel needs to be compiled with the SCLP_ASYNC device driver either as a module or built in.

Building a kernel with the SCLP_ASYNC device driver



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It describes the options you must select in the Linux configuration menu to include the call home support.

You need to select the option CONFIG_SCLP_ASYNC to enable automatic problem reporting (see Figure 99).

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Character devices -->
...
Support for Call Home via Asynchronous SCLP Records (CONFIG_SCLP_ASYNC)
```

Figure 99. Call Home kernel configuration menu option

The CONFIG_SCLP_ASYNC option can be compiled into the kernel or as a separate module, `sclp_async`.

Setting up the SCLP_ASYNC device driver

There are no kernel or module parameters for the SCLP_ASYNC device driver.

If you have compiled the SCLP_ASYNC component as a separate module, you need to load it before you can work with it. Load the `sclp_async` module with the `modprobe` command to ensure that any other required modules are loaded in the correct order:

```
# modprobe sclp_async
```

Activating the Call Home support

When the SCLP_ASYNC device driver is compiled into the kernel or loaded as a module you can control it through the `sysctl` interface or the `proc` filesystem.

To activate the support, set the callhome attribute to “1”. To deactivate the support, set the callhome attribute to “0”. Issue a command of this form:

```
# echo <flag> > /proc/sys/kernel/callhome
```

This is equivalent to:

```
# sysctl -w kernel.callhome=<flag>
```

Linux cannot check if the Call Home function is supported by the hardware.

Example

To activate the Call Home support issue:

```
# echo 1 > /proc/sys/kernel/callhome
```

To deactivate the Call Home support issue:

```
# echo 0 > /proc/sys/kernel/callhome
```

Chapter 42. Avoiding common pitfalls

This chapter lists some common problems and describes how to avoid them.

Ensuring correct channel path status

Before you perform a planned task on a path like:

- Pulling out or plugging in a cable on a path.
- Configuring a path off or on at the SE.

ensure that you have varied the path offline using:

```
echo off > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status
```

After the operation has finished and the path is available again, vary the path online using:

```
echo on > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status
```

If an unplanned change in path availability occurred (such as unplanned cable pulls or a temporary path malfunction), the PIM/PAM/POM values (as obtained through **lscss**) may not be as expected. To update the PIM/PAM/POM values, vary one of the paths leading to the affected devices using:

```
echo off > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status  
echo on > /sys/devices/css0/chp0.<chpid>/status.
```

Rationale: Linux does not always receive a notification (machine check) when the status of a path changes (especially a path becoming online again). To make sure Linux has up-to-date information on the usable paths, path verification is triggered through the Linux vary operation.

Determining channel path usage

To determine the usage of a specific channel path on LPAR, for example, to check whether traffic is distributed evenly over all channel paths, use the channel path measurement facility. See “Channel path measurement” on page 15 for details.

Configuring LPAR I/O devices

A Linux LPAR should only contain those I/O devices that it uses. Achieve this by:

- Adding only the needed devices to the IOCDS
- Using the `cio_ignore` kernel parameter to ignore all devices that are not currently in use by this LPAR.

If more devices are needed later, they can be dynamically removed from the list of devices to be ignored. For a description on how to use the `cio_ignore` kernel parameter and the `/proc/cio_ignore` dynamic control, see “`cio_ignore` - List devices to be ignored” on page 517 and “Changing the exclusion list” on page 518.

Rationale: Numerous unused devices can cause:

- Unnecessary high memory usage due to device structures being allocated.

- Unnecessary high load on status changes, since hot-plug handling must be done for every device found.

Using cio_ignore

With cio_ignore, essential devices might have been hidden. For example, if Linux does not boot under z/VM and does not show any message except

```
HCPGIR450W CP entered; disabled wait PSW 00020001 80000000 00000000 00144D7A
```

check if cio_ignore is used and verify that the console device, which is typically device number 0.0.0009, is not ignored.

Excessive guest swapping

If a Linux guest seems to be swapping and not making any progress, you might try to set the timed page pool size to zero:

```
#echo 0 > /proc/sys/vm/cmm_timed_pages
```

If you see a temporary relief, the guest does not have enough memory. Try increasing the guest memory.

If the problem persists, z/VM might be out of memory.

If the Linux guest is critical to your business, unload the cooperative memory management module:

```
#rmmod cmm
```

See Chapter 24, “Cooperative memory management,” on page 249 for more details on CMM.

Including service levels of the hardware and the hypervisor

The service levels of the different hardware cards, the LPAR level and the z/VM service level are valuable information for problem analysis. If possible, include this information with any problem you report to IBM service.

A /proc interface that provides a list of service levels is available. To see the service levels issue:

```
# cat /proc/service_levels
```

Example for a z/VM system with a QETH adapter:

```
# cat /proc/service_levels
VM: z/VM Version 5 Release 2.0, service level 0801 (64-bit)
qeth: 0.0.f5f0 firmware level 087d
```

Booting stops with disabled wait state

On some distributions, a processor type check is automatically run at every kernel startup. If the check determines that the distribution used is not compatible with the hardware, it stops the boot process with a disabled wait PSW.

If this happens, ensure that you are using a distribution that is supported on your hardware.

If you are using an SCLP console, you might get a message that indicates the problem.

Preparing for dump on panic

You might want to consider setting up your system to automatically create a dump after a kernel panic. Configuring and using "dump on panic" is a good idea for several reasons:

- You have a dump disk prepared ahead of time.
- You do not have to reproduce the problem since a dump will be triggered automatically right after the failure.

See Chapter 38, "Shutdown actions," on page 379 for details.

Chapter 43. Kernel messages

System z specific kernel modules issue messages on the console and write them to the syslog. You can configure your system to issue these messages with message numbers. Based on these message numbers, you can create man pages that users can call to obtain message details.

The message numbers consist of a module identifier a dot and a hash value that is generated from the message text. For example, xpram.ab9aa4 is a message number.

Kernel Messages summarizes the messages that are issued by the System z specific kernel modules. You can find this document on developerWorks at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html.

Building a kernel with message documentation support



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

Before you begin: You need to patch the 2.6.32 kernel source with additions from developerWorks at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/index.shtml to include message documentation support.

Select option CONFIG_KMSG_IDS in the Linux configuration menu to include message documentation support (see Figure 100).

```
Base setup --->
...
Kernel message numbers                (CONFIG_KMSG_IDS)
```

Figure 100. Kernel configuration menu option for message documentation support

Generating the message man pages



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel.

You can generate the message man pages from the root of the Linux source tree after you have compiled the kernel.

Generate the man pages by entering:

```
# make D=2
```

After running this command, you will find a man page for each message in a man directory that is located in the root of your Linux source tree.

Displaying a message man page

Before you start: Copy the message man pages as generated in “Generating the message man pages” to /man/man9.

System z specific kernel messages have a message identifier. For example, the following message has the message identifier xpram.ab9aa4:

xpram.ab9aa4: 50 is not a valid number of XPRAM devices

Enter a command of this form, to display a message man page:

man <message_identifier>

Example: Enter the following command to display the man page for message xpram.ab9aa4:

man xpram.ab9aa4

The corresponding man page looks like this:

xpram.ab9aa4(9) xpram.ab9aa4(9)

Message

xpram.ab9aa4: 50 is not a valid number of XPRAM devices

Severity

Error

Parameters

@1: number of partitions

Description

The number of XPRAM partitions specified for the 'devs' module parameter or with the 'xpram.parts' kernel parameter must be an integer in the range 1 to 32. The XPRAM device driver created a maximum of 32 partitions that are probably not configured as intended.

User action

If the XPRAM device driver has been compiled as a separate module, unload the module and load it again with a correct value for the 'devs' module parameter. If the XPRAM device driver has been compiled into the kernel, correct the 'xpram.parts' parameter in the kernel parameter line and restart Linux.

LINUX Linux Messages xpram.ab9aa4(9)

Part 9. Reference

This section describes commands, kernel parameters, kernel options, and Linux use of z/VM DIAG calls.

Newest version: You can find the newest version of this book at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

Restrictions: For prerequisites and restrictions see:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_technical.html

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/development_restrictions.html

Chapter 44. Useful Linux commands	401
Generic command options	401
chccwdev - Set a CCW device online	402
chchp - Change channel path status	404
chreipl - Modify the re-IPL configuration	406
chshut - Control the system behavior	408
chzcrypt - Modify the zcrypt configuration.	410
cio_ignore - Manage the I/O exclusion list	412
cpuplugg - Activate CPUs and control memory.	415
dasdfmt - Format a DASD	418
dasdview - Display DASD structure	422
fdasd - Partition a DASD	432
icastats - Show libica functions	440
lschp - List channel paths	441
lscss - List subchannels	443
lsdasd - List DASD devices	447
lsluns - Discover LUNs in Fibre Channel SANs	449
lsqeth - List qeth based network devices	451
lsreipl - List IPL settings	453
lsshut - List the configuration for system states	454
lstape - List tape devices.	455
lszcrypt - Display zcrypt devices	458
lszfcps - List zfcps devices	460
mon_fsstatd - Monitor z/VM guest file system size	462
mon_procd - Monitor Linux guest	467
osasnmppd - Start OSA-Express SNMP subagent.	475
qetharp - Query and purge OSA and HiperSockets ARP data	477
qethconf - Configure qeth devices	479
scsi_logging_level - Set and get the SCSI logging level	482
snipl - Simple network IPL (Linux image control for LPAR and z/VM)	485
tape390_crypt - Manage tape encryption	494
tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes	498
tunedasd - Adjust DASD performance	500
vmcp - Send CP commands to the z/VM hypervisor.	503
vmur - Work with z/VM spool file queues	505
znetconf - List and configure network devices	512
 Chapter 45. Selected kernel parameters	 515
additional_cpus - Specify the number of CPUs Linux can add	516
cio_ignore - List devices to be ignored.	517
mma - Reduce hypervisor paging I/O overhead	521

maxcpus - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can use at IPL	522
mem - Restricts memory usage	523
noinitrd - Bypass the initial ramdisk	524
possible_cpus - Limit the number of CPUs Linux can use.	525
ramdisk_size - Specify the ramdisk size	526
ro - Mount the root file system read-only	527
root - Specify the root device	528
vdso - Optimize system call performance.	529
vmhalt - Specify CP command to run after a system halt	530
vmpanic - Specify CP command to run after a kernel panic	531
vmppoff - Specify CP command to run after a power off.	532
vmreboot - Specify CP command to run on reboot	533
 Chapter 46. Linux diagnose code use	 535
 Chapter 47. Kernel configuration menu options	 537
Dependencies between options	537
General architecture-specific options	538
Device driver-related options	547

Chapter 44. Useful Linux commands

This chapter describes commands to configure and work with the Linux on System z device drivers and features.

The **snipl** command (version 2.1.6) is provided as a separate package under “Useful add-ons”. All other commands are included in the s390-tools package (version 1.8.3) that is available at www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/s390-tools.html.

Some commands come with an init script or a configuration file or both. It is assumed that these files are installed under `/etc/init.d/` or `/etc/sysconfig/` respectively, but this may vary depending on your distribution. You can extract any missing files from the `etc` subdirectory in the s390-tools package.

Commands described elsewhere:

- For the **zipl** command, see Chapter 35, “Initial program loader for System z - zipl,” on page 327.
- For commands and tools related to taking and analyzing system dumps, see *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412.
- For commands related to terminal access over IUCV connections, see *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596.

Generic command options

The following options are supported by all commands described in this section and, for simplicity, have been omitted from some of the syntax diagrams:

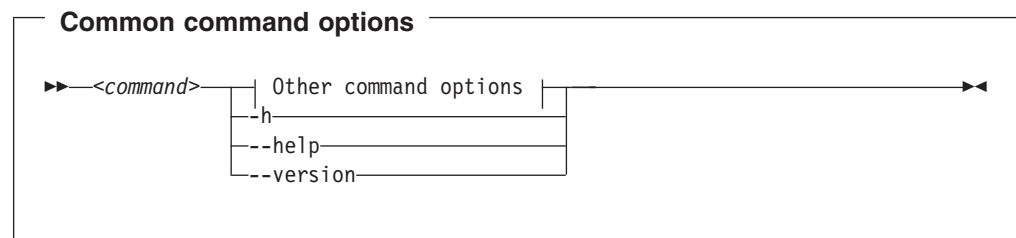
-h or **--help**

to display help information for the command.

--version

to display version information for the command.

The syntax for these options is:



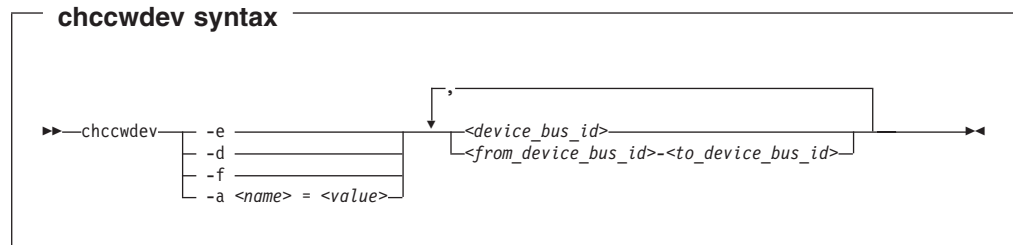
where `command` can be any of the commands described in this section.

See “Understanding syntax diagrams” on page xi for general information on reading syntax diagrams.

chccwdev - Set a CCW device online

This command is used to set CCW devices (See “Device categories” on page 9) online or offline.

Format



Where:

-e or --online

sets the device online.

-d or --offline

sets the device offline.

-f or --forceonline

forces a boxed device online, if this is supported by the device driver.

-a or --attribute <name>=<value>

sets the attribute specified in <name> to the given <value>. When <name> is “online”, attribute will have the same effect as using the **-e** or **-d** options.

<device_bus_id>

identifies the device to be set online or offline. <device_bus_id> is a device number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID. Input will be converted to lower case.

<from_device_bus_id>-<to_device_bus_id>

identifies a range of devices. Note that if not all devices in the given range exist, the command will be limited to the existing ones. If you specify a range with no existing devices, you will get an error message.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man chccwdev**.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

Examples

- To set a CCW device 0.0.b100 online issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.b100
```

- Alternatively, using **-a** to set a CCW device 0.0.b100 online, issue:

```
# chccwdev -a online=1 0.0.b100
```

- To set all CCW devices in the range 0.0.b200 through 0.0.b2ff online issue:

```
# chccwdev -e 0.0.b200-0.0.b2ff
```

- To set a CCW device 0.0.b100 and all CCW devices in the range 0.0.b200 through 0.0.b2ff offline issue:

```
# chccwdev -d 0.0.b100,0.0.b200-0.0.b2ff
```

- To set several CCW devices in different ranges and different subchannel sets offline, issue:

```
# chccwdev -a online=0 0.0.1000-0.0.1100,0.1.7000-0.1.7010,0.0.1234,0.1.4321
```

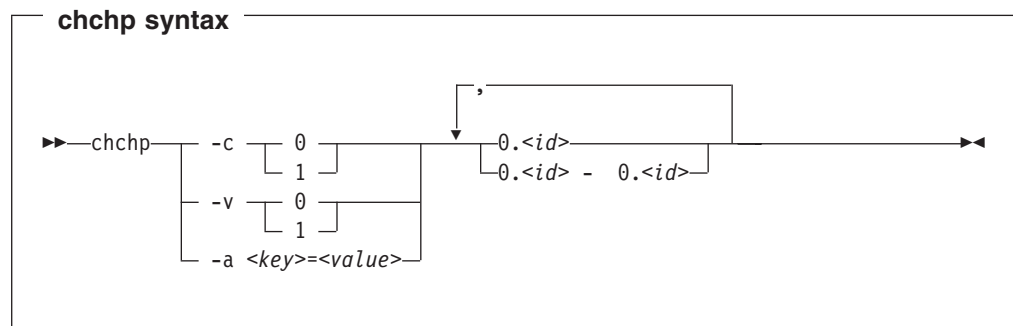
chchp - Change channel path status

Use this command to set channel paths online or offline. The actions are equivalent to performing a Configure Channel Path Off or Configure Channel Path On operation on the hardware management console.

The channel path status that results from a configure operation is persistent across IPLs.

Note: Changing the configuration state of an I/O channel path might affect the availability of I/O devices as well as trigger associated functions (such as channel-path verification or device scanning) which in turn can result in a temporary increase in processor, memory and I/O load.

Format



Where:

-c or **--configure** *<value>*

sets the device to configured (1) or standby (0). Note that setting the configured state to standby may cause a currently running I/O operation to be aborted.

-v or **--vary** *<value>*

changes the logical channel-path state to online (1) or offline (0). Note that setting the logical state to offline may cause a currently running I/O operation to be aborted.

-a or **--attribute** *<key> = <value>*

changes the channel-path sysfs attribute *<key>* to *<value>*. The *<key>* can be the name of any available channel-path sysfs attribute (that is, "configure" or "status"), while *<value>* can take any valid value that can be written to the attribute (for example, "0" or "offline"). This is a more generic way of modifying the state of a channel-path through the sysfs interface. It is intended for cases where sysfs attributes or attribute values are available in the kernel but not in **chchp**.

0.<id> and **0.<id> - 0.<id>**

where *<id>* is a hexadecimal, two-digit, lower-case identifier for the channel path. An operation can be performed on more than one channel path by specifying multiple identifiers as a comma-separated list, or a range, or a combination of both.

--version

displays the version number of **chchp** and exits.

-h or --help

displays a short help text. To view the man page, enter **man chchp**.

Examples

- To set channel path 0.19 into standby state issue:

```
# chchp -a configure=0 0.19
```

- To set the channel path with the channel path ID 0.40 to the standby state, write "0" to the configure file using the **chchp** command:

```
# chchp --configure 0 0.40  
Configure standby 0.40... done.
```

- To set a channel-path to the configured state, write "1" to the configure file using the **chchp** command:

```
# chchp --configure 1 0.40  
Configure online 0.40... done.
```

- To set channel-paths 0.65 to 0.6f to the configured state issue:

```
# chchp -c 1 0.65-0.6f
```

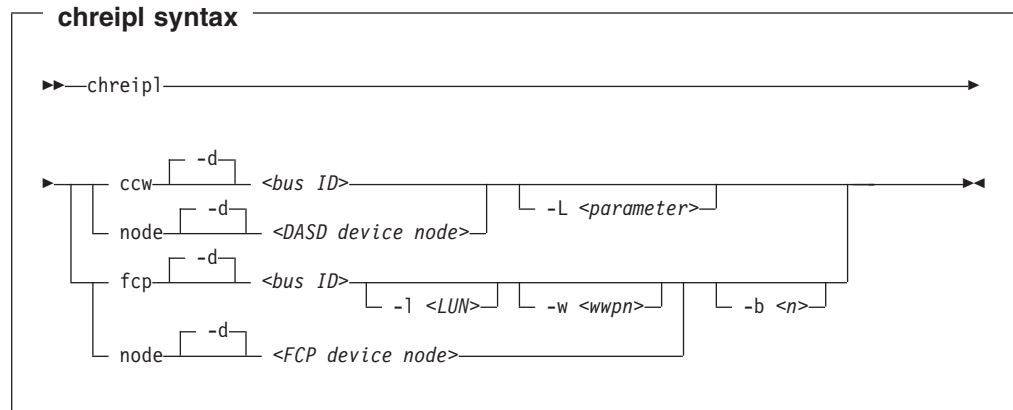
- To set channel-paths 0.12, 0.7f and 0.17 to 0.20 to the logical offline state issue:

```
# chchp -v 0 0.12,0.7f,0.17-0.20
```

chreipl - Modify the re-IPL configuration

Use the chreipl command to configure a disk or change a an entry in the boot menu for the next boot cycle.

Format



Where:

ccw selects a ccw device (DASD) for configuration.

fcp selects an FCP device (device) for configuration.

node specifies a boot target based on a device file.

-d or **--device <bus ID>**
specifies the device bus-ID of the re-IPL device.

<device node>
the device node of the re-IPL device, either an FCP node (/dev/sd...) or a DASD node (/dev/dasd...).

-b or **--bootprog <n>**
specifies an optional configuration number that identifies the entry in the boot menu to use for the next reboot. The bootprog parameter only works in an FCP environment.

-L or **--loadparm <parameter>**
specifies an optional entry in the boot menu to use for the next reboot. This parameter must be an alphanumeric character or blank (" ") and only works if a valid zipl boot menu is present. The loadparm parameter only works in a DASD environment.

-l or **--lun <LUN>**
logical unit number (LUN) of the FCP re-IPL device.

-w or **--wwpn <wwpn>**
specifies the world-wide port name (WWPN) of the FCP re-IPL device.

-h or **--help**
displays some short information on command usage. To view the man page, enter **man chreipl**.

-v or **--version**
displays version information.

Examples

This section illustrates common uses for **chreipl**.

- To boot from device `/dev/dasda` at next system start:

```
# chreipl node /dev/dasda
```

- To use `/dev/sda` as the boot device for the next boot:

```
# chreipl node /dev/sda
```

- To use the ccw device with the number `0.0.7e78` for the next system start:

```
# chreipl ccw 0.0.7e78
```

- After reboot, IPL from the ccw device with the number `0.0.7e78` using the first entry of the boot menu:

```
# chreipl ccw -d 0.0.7e78 -L 1
```

- Re-IPL from the fcp device number `0.0.1700` using WWPN `0x500507630300c562` and LUN `0x401040B300000000`

```
# chreipl fcp --wwpn 0x500507630300c562 --lun 0x401040B300000000 -d 0.0.1700
```

chshut - Control the system behavior

The kernel configuration is controlled through entries below the `/sys/firmware` directory structure. Use the **chshut** command to change the entries pertaining to shutdown. Also see Chapter 38, “Shutdown actions,” on page 379 for more information on shutdown options.

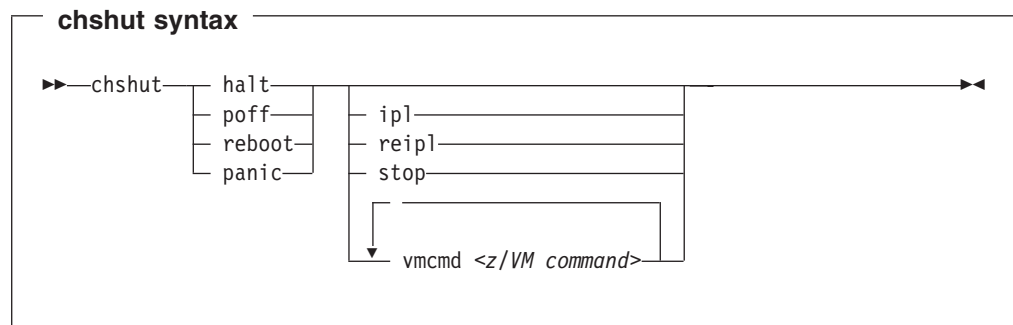
The **chshut** command controls the system behavior in the following system states:

- Halt
- Power off
- Reboot
- Kernel panic

The **chshut** command handles up to three parameters. The first specifies the system state to which you want to change. The second argument specifies the action you want to execute in the previously specified system state. Valid arguments are `ipl`, `reipl`, `stop`, and `vmcmd`.

If you have chosen `vmcmd` as action, a third parameter is used for the command to be run in `z/VM`.

Format



Where:

halt specifies a system state of halt.

If your distribution maps `halt` to power off, set the `poff` shutdown action instead of the `halt` action.

poff specifies a system state of power off.

reboot specifies a system state of reboot.

panic specifies a system state of kernel panic.

ipl sets the action to be taken to IPL.

reipl sets the action to be taken to re-IPL.

stop sets the action to be taken to stop.

vmcmd `<z/VM command>`
sets the action to be taken to run the specified `z/VM` command. The

command must be in upper case. To issue several commands, repeat the `vmcmd` attribute with each command. The command string must be enclosed in quotation marks.

-h or --help

displays short information on command usage. To view the man page, enter **man chshut**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

This section illustrates common uses for **chshut**.

- To make the system start again after a halt:

```
# chshut halt ip1
```

- To log off the z/VM guest if the Linux halt command was executed successfully:

```
# chshut halt vmcmd LOGOFF
```

- To send a message to guest MASTER and automatically log off the guest if the Linux power off command is executed:

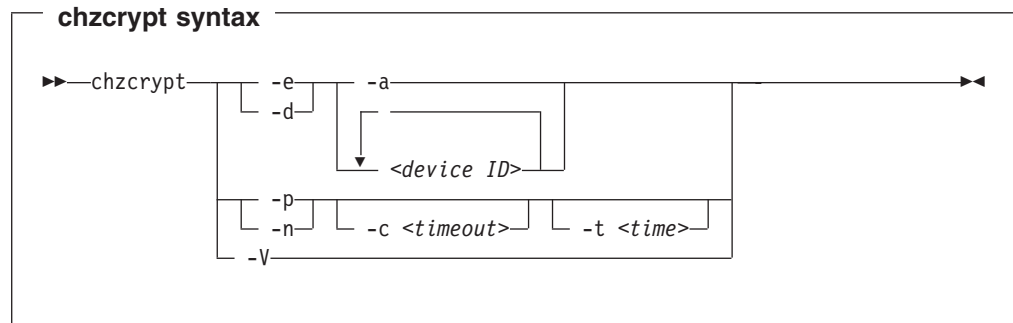
```
# chshut poff vmcmd "MSG MASTER Going down" vmcmd "LOGOFF"
```

chzcrypt - Modify the zcrypt configuration

Use the **chzcrypt** command to configure cryptographic adapters managed by zcrypt and modify zcrypt's AP bus attributes. To display the attributes, use "lszcrypt - Display zcrypt devices" on page 458.

Before you start: The sysfs file system must be mounted.

Format



Where:

-e or --enable

sets the given cryptographic adapters online.

-d or --disable

sets the given cryptographic adapters offline.

-a or --all

sets all available cryptographic adapters online or offline.

<device ID>

specifies a cryptographic adapter which will be set online or offline. A cryptographic adapter can be specified either in decimal notation or hexadecimal notation using a '0x' prefix.

-p or --poll-thread-enable

enables zcrypt's poll thread.

-n or --poll-thread-disable

disables zcrypt's poll thread.

-c <timeout> or --config-time <timeout>

sets configuration timer for re-scanning the AP bus to <timeout> seconds.

-t <time> or --poll-timeout=<time>

sets the high resolution polling timer to <time> nanoseconds. To display the value, use `lszcrypt -b`.

-V or --verbose

displays verbose messages.

-h or --help

displays information on command usage. To view the man page, enter **man chzcrypt**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

This section illustrates common uses for **chzcrypt**.

- To set the cryptographic adapters 0, 1, 4, 5, and 12 online (in decimal notation):

```
chzcrypt -e 0 1 4 5 12
```

- To set all available cryptographic adapters offline:

```
chzcrypt -d -a
```

- To set the configuration timer for re-scanning the AP bus to 60 seconds and disable zcrypt's poll thread:

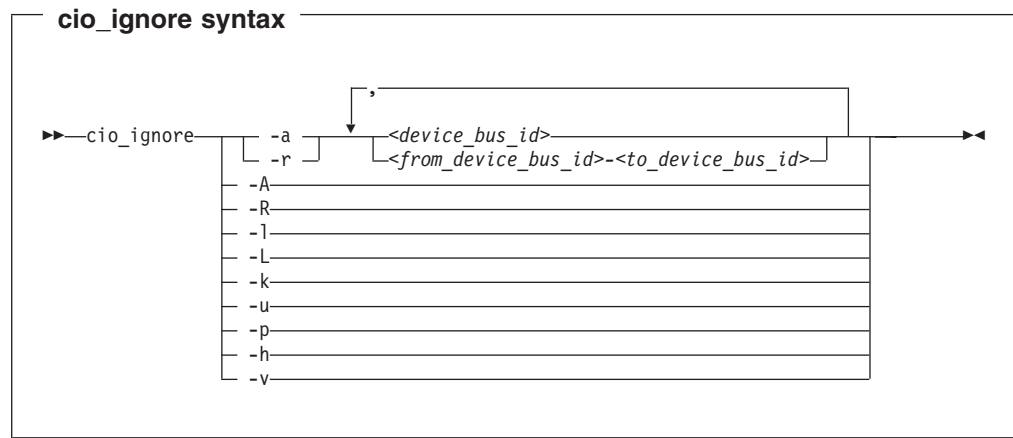
```
chzcrypt -c 60 -n
```

cio_ignore - Manage the I/O exclusion list

When a Linux on System z instance boots, it senses and analyzes all available I/O devices. You can use the `cio_ignore` kernel parameter (see “`cio_ignore` - List devices to be ignored” on page 517) to list specifications for devices that are to be ignored. This exclusion list can cover all possible devices, even devices that do not actually exist.

The **`cio_ignore`** command manages this exclusion list on a running Linux instance. You can make changes to the exclusion list and display it in different formats.

Format



Where:

-a or --add

adds one or more device specifications to the exclusion list.

When you add specifications for a device that has already been sensed and analyzed, there is no immediate effect of adding it to the exclusion list. For example, the device still appears in the output of the **`lscss`** command and can be set online. However, if the device subsequently becomes unavailable, it is ignored when it reappears. For example, if the device is detached in z/VM it is ignored when it is attached again.

See the “-p option” on page 413 about how to make devices that have already been sensed and analyzed unavailable to Linux.

-r or --remove

removes one or more device specifications from the exclusion list.

When you remove device specifications from the exclusion list, the corresponding devices are sensed and analyzed if they exist. Where possible, the respective device driver is informed, and the devices become available to Linux.

<device_bus_id>

identifies a device to be added or removed.

`<device_bus_id>` is a device number with a leading “0.n.”, where n is the subchannel set ID. If the subchannel set ID is 0, you can abbreviate the specification to the device number, with or without a leading 0x.

Example: The specifications 0.0.0190, 190, 0190, and 0x190 are all equivalent. There is no short form of 0.1.0190.

<from_device_bus_id>-<to_device_bus_id>
identifies a range of devices. <from_device_bus_id> and <to_device_bus_id>
have the same format as <device_bus_id>.

-A or --add-all

adds the entire range of possible devices to the exclusion list.

When you add specifications for a device that has already been sensed and analyzed, there is no immediate effect of adding it to the exclusion list. For example, the device still appears in the output of the **lscss** command and can be set online. However, if the device subsequently becomes unavailable, it is ignored when it reappears. For example, if the device is detached in z/VM it is ignored when it is attached again.

See the “-p option” about how to make devices that have already been sensed and analyzed unavailable to Linux.

-R or --remove-all

removes all devices from the exclusion list.

When you remove device specifications from the exclusion list, the corresponding devices are sensed and analyzed if they exist. Where possible, the respective device driver is informed, and the devices become available to Linux.

-l or --list

displays the current exclusion list.

-L or --list-not-blacklisted

displays specifications for all devices that are not in the current exclusion list.

-k or --kernel-param

returns the current exclusion list in kernel parameter format.

You can make the current exclusion list persistent across rebooting Linux by using the output of the **cio_ignore** command with the **-k** option as part of the Linux kernel parameter.

-u or --unused

discards the current exclusion list and replaces it with a specification for all devices that are not online. This includes specification for possible devices that do not actually exist.

-p or --purge

makes all devices that are in the exclusion list and that are currently offline unavailable to Linux. This option does not make devices unavailable if they are online.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man cio_ignore**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

This section illustrates common uses for **cio_ignore**.

- The following command shows the current exclusion list:

```
# cio_ignore -l
Ignored devices:
=====
0.0.0000-0.0.7e8e
0.0.7e94-0.0.f4ff
0.0.f503-0.0.ffff
0.1.0000-0.1.ffff
0.2.0000-0.2.ffff
0.3.0000-0.3.ffff
```

- The following command shows specifications for the devices that are not on the exclusion list:

```
# cio_ignore -L
Accessible devices:
=====
0.0.7e8f-0.0.7e93
0.0.f500-0.0.f502
```

- The following command adds a device specification, 0.0.7e8f, to the exclusion list:

```
# cio_ignore -a 0.0.7e8f
```

The previous example then becomes:

```
# cio_ignore -L
Accessible devices:
=====
0.0.7e90-0.0.7e93
0.0.f500-0.0.f502
```

- The following command shows the current exclusion list in kernel parameter format:

```
# cio_ignore -k
cio_ignore=all,!7e90-7e93,!f500-f502
```

cpuplugd - Activate CPUs and control memory

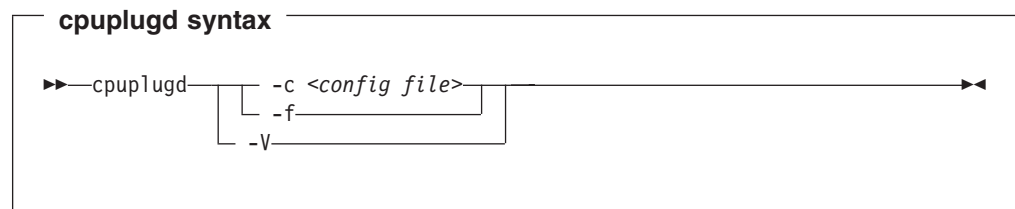
Use the **cpuplugd** command to:

- Enable or disable CPUs based on a set of rules. This increases the performance of single threaded applications within a z/VM or LPAR environment with multiple CPUs. The rules can incorporate certain system load variables.
- Manage memory when running Linux as a z/VM guest operating system.

Before you start:

- The sysfs file system must be mounted to /sys.
- The proc file system needs to be available at /proc

Format



Where:

-c or **--config** *<config file>*

sets the path to the configuration file. The file can contain the following variables:

- loadavg
- idle
- onumcpus
- runnable_proc (for hotplug)
- apcr
- freemem
- swaprte (for memplug)

To create rules you can use the operators +, *, (,), /, -, <, >, &, !, and !

See “Examples” on page 416 below for details.

-f or **--foreground**

runs in foreground.

-V or **--verbose**

displays verbose messages.

-h or **--help**

displays short information on command usage. To view the man page, enter **man cpuplugd**.

-v or **--version**

displays version information.

Examples

Enabling and disabling CPUs

The following shows an example configuration file that dynamically adds or takes away CPUs according to the rules given:

```
CPU_MIN="2"
CPU_MAX="10"
UPDATE="60"

HOTPLUG = "(loadavg > onumcpus +0.75) & (idle < 10.0)"
HOTUNPLUG = "(loadavg < onumcpus -0.25) | (idle > 50)"
```

The first two lines specify the minimum and maximum numbers of CPUs. This example ensures that at least two CPUs and no more than ten CPUs are active at any time. Every 60 seconds the daemon checks if a given rule matched against the current system state. If the CPU_MAX variable equals zero, the maximum number of CPUs is equivalent to number of CPUs detected.

The hotplug line enables a CPU if the current load average (loadavg) is greater than the number of online CPUs (onumcpus) plus 0.75 and the current idle percentage (idle) is below 10 percent.

The hotunplug line disables a CPU if one of the following conditions is true:

- The load is below the number of active CPUs minus 0.25
- The idle percentage is above 50 percent.

You can also use the variable runnable_proc, which represents the current number of running processes. For example:

```
HOTPLUG = "RUNABLE_PROC > (onumcpus+2)"
```

The idle percentage is extracted from /proc/stat, whereas the load average and the number of runnable processes is extracted from /proc/loadavg. Information on the current CPUs and their state can be found in the directories below /sys/devices/system/cpu (see Chapter 25, “Managing CPUs,” on page 255).

See the man page for more details.

Managing memory

You can use the **cpuplugd** command to react dynamically to changing requirements of the amount of main memory used within a Linux instance running on z/VM.

Before you begin:

- The sys filesystem needs to be mounted to /sys and proc needs to be available at /proc.
- The cmm kernel module has to be loaded (included in the Linux kernel as of kernel version 2.6.4-rc1). For information on how to load the module, see Chapter 24, “Cooperative memory management,” on page 249.

An example configuration file might look like:


```

UPDATE="60"
CMM_MIN="0"
CMM_MAX="8192"
CMM_INC="256"

MEMPLUG = "swaprate > freemem+10 & freemem+10 < apcr"
MEMUNPLUG = "swaprate > freemem + 10000"

```

The example above illustrates the syntactic format of a memplug and memunplug rule. These two variables must be adjusted depending on the usage and workload of your Linux on System z installation. No general or all purpose example configuration can be provided as this does not provide a useful setup for production systems.

Every 60 seconds the daemon checks if a given rule matches against the current system state.

The `cmm_min` and `cmm_max` variables define the minimum and maximum size of the cmm static page pool respectively. For an explanation of the cmm page pools, see “Cooperative memory management background” on page 191.

The `cmm_inc` variable specifies the amount of pages the static page pool is increased (decreased) if a memplug (memunplug) rule is matched.

The memplug rule in the example is matched when:

1. The current swaprate (as shown in the output of the `vmstat` command) is greater than the current amount of free memory (in megabytes) plus 10.
2. The sum of the free memory (in megabytes) plus 10 is less than the current amount of page cache reads (`apcr`).

The amount of page-cache reads equals the sum of the `bi` and `bo` values shown in the output of **vmstat 1**. The swaprate equals the sum of the `si` and `so` fields of the same command. The size of the free memory is retrieved from `/proc/meminfo`.

For further details, see the man page.

dasdfmt - Format a DASD

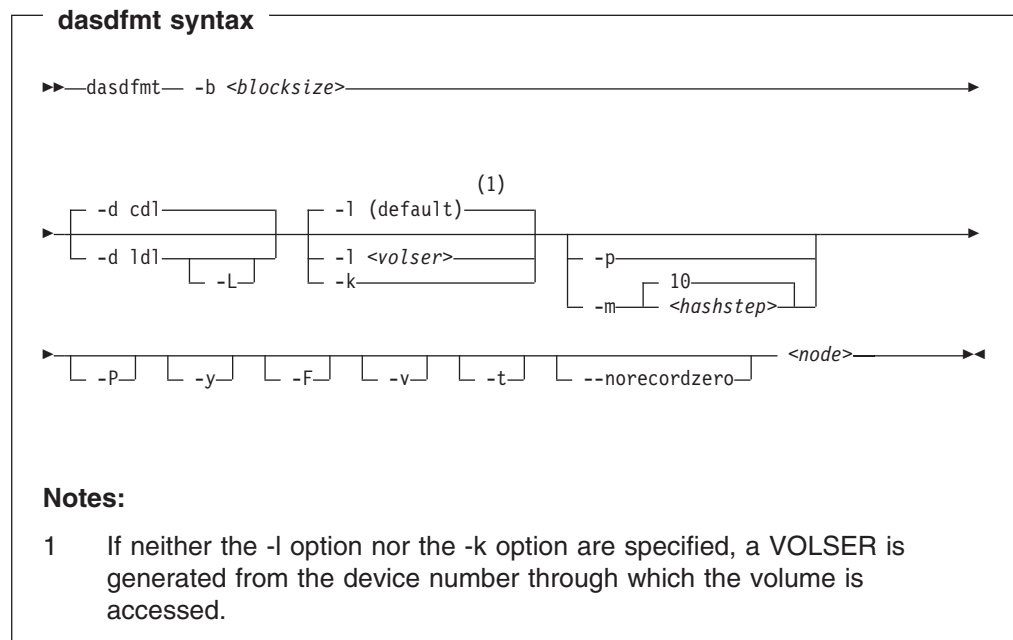
Use this tool to low-level format ECKD-type direct access storage devices (DASD). Note that this is a software format. To hardware format a raw DASD you must use another System z device support facility such as ICKDSF, either in stand-alone mode or through another operating system.

dasdfmt uses an ioctl call to the DASD driver to format tracks. A blocksize (hard sector size) can be specified. Remember that the formatting process can take quite a long time (hours for large DASD). Use the -p option to monitor the progress.

CAUTION:

As on any platform, formatting irreversibly destroys data on the target disk. Be sure not to format a disk with vital data unintentionally.

Format



Where:

-b <block_size> or --blocksize=<block_size>
specifies one of the following block sizes in bytes: 512, 1024, 2048, or 4096.

If you do not specify a value for the block size, you are prompted. You can then press Enter to accept 4096 or specify a different value.

Tip: Set <block_size> to 1024 or higher (ideally 4096) because the ext2fs file system uses 1 KB blocks and 50% of capacity is unusable if the DASD block size is 512 bytes.

<node>

specifies the device node of the device to be formatted, for example, /dev/dasdzzz. See "DASD naming scheme" on page 27 for more details on device nodes).

- d** *<disklayout>* or **--disk_layout=***<disklayout>*
formats the device with the compatible disk layout (cdl) or the Linux disk layout (ldl). If the parameter is not specified the default (cdl) is used.
- L** or **--no_label**
valid for -d ldl only, where it suppresses the default LNX1 label.
- l** *<volser>* or **--label=***<volser>*
specifies the volume serial number (see “VOLSER” on page 24) to be written to the disk. If the VOLSER contains special characters, it must be enclosed in single quotes. In addition, any '\$' character in the VOLSER must be preceded by a backslash ('\').
- k** or **--keep_serial**
keeps the volume serial number when writing the volume 5 Label (see “VOLSER” on page 24). This is useful, for example, if the volume serial number has been written with a z/VM tool and should not be overwritten.
- p** or **--progressbar**
displays a progress bar. Do not use this option if you are using a line-mode terminal console driver (for example, a 3215 terminal device driver or a line-mode hardware console device driver).
- P** or **--percentage**
displays one line for each formatted cylinder showing the number of the cylinder and percentage of formatting process. Intended for use by higher level interfaces.
- m** *<hashstep>* or **--hashmarks=***<hashstep>*
displays a hash mark (#) after every *<hashstep>* cylinders are formatted. *<hashstep>* must be in the range 1 to 1000. The default is 10.

The -m option is useful where the console device driver is not suitable for the progress bar (-p option).
- y** starts formatting immediately without prompting for confirmation.
- F** or **--force**
formats the device without checking if it is mounted.
- v** displays extra information messages (verbose).
- t** or **--test**
runs the command in test mode. Analyzes parameters and prints out what would happen, but does not modify the disk.
- norecordzero**
prevents a format write of record zero. This is an expert option: Subsystems in DASD drivers are by default granted permission to modify or add a standard record zero to each track when needed. Before revoking the permission with this option, you must ensure that the device contains standard record zeros on all tracks.
- V** or **--version**
displays the version number of **dasdfmt** and exits.
- h** or **--help**
displays an overview of the syntax. Any other parameters are ignored. To view the man page, enter **man dasdfmt**.

Examples

- To format a 100 cylinder z/VM minidisk with the standard Linux disk layout and a 4 KB blocksize with device node /dev/dasdc:

```
# dasdfmt -b 4096 -d ldl -p /dev/dasdc
Drive Geometry: 100 Cylinders * 15 Heads = 1500 Tracks

I am going to format the device /dev/dasdc in the following way:
  Device number of device : 0x192
  Labelling device       : yes
  Disk label            : LNX1
  Disk identifier       : 0X0192
  Extent start (trk no) : 0
  Extent end (trk no)   : 1499
  Compatible Disk Layout : no
  Blocksize             : 4096

--->> ATTENTION! <---
All data of that device will be lost.
Type "yes" to continue, no will leave the disk untouched: yes
Formatting the device. This may take a while (get yourself a coffee).

cyl   100 of   100 |#####| 100%

Finished formatting the device.
Rereading the partition table... ok
#
```

- To format the same disk with the compatible disk layout (using the default value of the -d option).

```
# dasdfmt -b 4096 -p /dev/dasdc
Drive Geometry: 100 Cylinders * 15 Heads = 1500 Tracks

I am going to format the device /dev/dasdc in the following way:
  Device number of device : 0x192
  Labelling device       : yes
  Disk label            : VOL1
  Disk identifier       : 0X0192
  Extent start (trk no) : 0
  Extent end (trk no)   : 1499
  Compatible Disk Layout : yes
  Blocksize             : 4096

--->> ATTENTION! <---
All data of that device will be lost.
Type "yes" to continue, no will leave the disk untouched: yes
Formatting the device. This may take a while (get yourself a coffee).

cyl   100 of   100 |#####| 100%

Finished formatting the device.
Rereading the partition table... ok
#
```

- To format using the -P option:

```
#dasdfmt -P /dev/dasde
```

cyl	1 of	500	|	0%
cyl	2 of	500	|	0%
cyl	3 of	500	|	0%
cyl	4 of	500	|	0%
cyl	5 of	500	|	1%

...

cyl	496 of	500	|	99%
cyl	497 of	500	|	99%
cyl	498 of	500	|	99%
cyl	499 of	500	|	99%
cyl	500 of	500	|	100%

dasdview - Display DASD structure

Use **dasdview** to display DASD information on the system console, including:

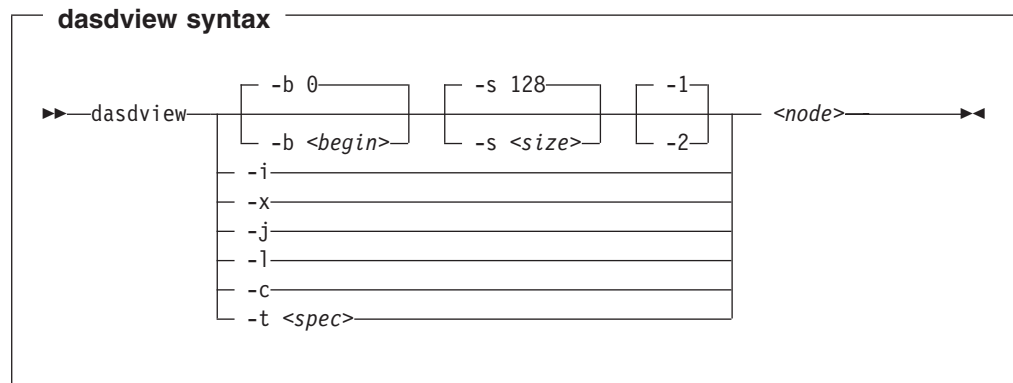
- The volume label.
- VTOC details (general information, and FMT1, FMT4, FMT5, FMT7, and FMT8 labels).
- The content of the DASD, by specifying:
 - Starting point
 - Size

You can display these values in hexadecimal, EBCDIC, and ASCII format.

- Device characteristics, such as:
 - Whether the data on the DASD is encrypted.
 - Whether the disk is a solid state device.

If you specify a start point and size, you can also display the contents of a disk dump. See “The IBM label partitioning scheme” on page 22 for further information on partitioning.

Format



Where:

-b <begin> or **--begin=<begin>**

displays disk content on the console, starting from **<begin>**. The content of the disk are displayed as hexadecimal numbers, ASCII text and EBCDIC text. If **<size>** is not specified (see below), **dasdview** will take the default size (128 bytes). You can specify the variable **<begin>** as:

<begin>[k|m|b|t|c]

The default for **<begin>** is 0.

dasdview displays a disk dump on the console using the DASD driver. The DASD driver might suppress parts of the disk, or add information that is not relevant. This might occur, for example, when displaying the first two tracks of a disk that has been formatted as **cdl**. In this situation, the DASD driver will pad shorter blocks with zeros, in order to maintain a constant blocksize. All Linux applications (including **dasdview**) will process according to this rule.

Here are some examples of how this option can be used:

```

-b 32    (start printing at Byte 32)
-b 32k   (start printing at kByte 32)
-b 32m   (start printing at MByte 32)
  
```

```
-b 32b (start printing at block 32)
-b 32t (start printing at track 32)
-b 32c (start printing at cylinder 32)
```

-s <size> or --size=<size>

displays a disk dump on the console, starting at *<begin>*, and continuing for **size** = *<size>*). The content of the dump are displayed as hexadecimal numbers, ASCII text, and EBCDIC text. If a start value (*begin*) is not specified, **dasdview** will take the default. You can specify the variable *<size>* as:

```
size[k|m|b|t|c]
```

The default for *<size>* is 128 bytes. Here are some examples of how this option can be used:

```
-s 16 (use a 16 Byte size)
-s 16k (use a 16 kByte size)
-s 16m (use a 16 MByte size)
-s 16b (use a 16 block size)
-s 16t (use a 16 track size)
-s 16c (use a 16 cylinder size)
```

-1 displays the disk dump using format 1 (as 16 Bytes per line in hexadecimal, ASCII and EBCDIC). A line number is not displayed. You can only use option **-1** together with **-b** or **-s**.

Option **-1** is the default.

-2 displays the disk dump using format 2 (as 8 Bytes per line in hexadecimal, ASCII and EBCDIC). A decimal and hexadecimal byte count are also displayed. You can only use option **-2** together with **-b** or **-s**.

-i or --info

displays basic information such as device node, device bus-id, device type, or geometry data.

-x or --extended

displays the information obtained by using **-i** option, but also open count, subchannel identifier, and so on.

-j displays volume serial number (volume identifier).

-l or --label

displays the volume label.

The **-l** option displays all known label fields. The fields shown depend on the label, identified by the 'volume label identifier'. The most important differences are:

volume label key	is only valid for 'VOL1' labels (used for ECKD CDL format)
VTOC pointer	is only valid for 'VOL1' labels
ldl_version	is only valid for 'LNX1' labels (used for ECKD LDL format)
formatted_blocks	is only valid for 'LNX1' labels and when the (EBCDIC) ldl_version is 2 or higher

-c or --characteristics

displays model-dependent device characteristics, for example disk encryption status or whether the disk is a solid state device.

dasdview

-t <spec> or --vtoc=<spec>

displays the VTOC's table-of-contents, or a single VTOC entry, on the console. The variable <spec> can take these values:

- info** displays overview information about the VTOC, such as a list of the data set names and their sizes.
- f1** displays the contents of all *format 1* data set control blocks (DSCBs).
- f4** displays the contents of all *format 4* DSCBs.
- f5** displays the contents of all *format 5* DSCBs.
- f7** displays the contents of all *format 7* DSCBs.
- f8** displays the contents of all *format 8* DSCBs.
- all** displays the contents of *all* DSCBs.

<node>

specifies the device node of the device for which you want to display information, for example, /dev/dasdzzz. See "DASD naming scheme" on page 27 for more details on device nodes).

-h or --help

displays short usage text on console. To view the man page, enter **man dasdview**.

-v or --version

displays version number on console, and exit.

Examples

- To display basic information about a DASD:

```
# dasdview -i -f /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

```
--- general DASD information -----
device node      : /dev/dasdzzz
busid            : 0.0.0193
type             : ECKD
device type      : hex 3390          dec 13200

--- DASD geometry -----
number of cylinders : hex 64          dec 100
tracks per cylinder : hex f           dec 15
blocks per track    : hex c           dec 12
blocksize           : hex 1000        dec 4096
#
```

- To display device characteristics:

```
# dasdview -c /dev/dasda
```

This displays:

```
encrypted disk      : no
solid state device  : no
```

- To include extended information:

```
# dasdview -x -f /dev/dasdzzz
```


This displays:

```

--- general DASD information -----
device node      : /dev/dasdzzz
busid            : 0.0.0193
type            : ECKD
device type     : hex 3390      dec 13200

--- DASD geometry -----
number of cylinders : hex 64      dec 100
tracks per cylinder : hex f       dec 15
blocks per track    : hex c       dec 12
blocksize          : hex 1000     dec 4096

--- extended DASD information -----
real device number : hex 452bc08   dec 72530952
subchannel identifier : hex e      dec 14
CU type (SenseID)  : hex 3990     dec 14736
CU model (SenseID) : hex e9       dec 233
device type (SenseID) : hex 3390   dec 13200
device model (SenseID) : hex a     dec 10
open count         : hex 1        dec 1
req_queue_len      : hex 0        dec 0
chanq_len          : hex 0        dec 0
status             : hex 5        dec 5
label_block        : hex 2        dec 2
FBA_layout         : hex 0        dec 0
characteristics_size : hex 40      dec 64
confdata_size      : hex 100      dec 256

characteristics    : 3990e933 900a5f80 dff72024 0064000f
                   : e000e5a2 05940222 13090674 00000000
                   : 00000000 00000000 24241502 dfee0001
                   : 0677080f 007f4a00 1b350000 00000000

configuration_data : dc010100 4040f2f1 f0f54040 40c9c2d4
                   : f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0 f0c6c3f1 f1f30509
                   : dc000000 4040f2f1 f0f54040 40c9c2d4
                   : f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0 f0c6c3f1 f1f30500
                   : d4020000 4040f2f1 f0f5c5f2 f0c9c2d4
                   : f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0 f0c6c3f1 f1f3050a
                   : f0000001 4040f2f1 f0f54040 40c9c2d4
                   : f1f3f0f0 f0f0f0f0 f0c6c3f1 f1f30500
                   : 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
                   : 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
                   : 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
                   : 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
                   : 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
                   : 800000a1 00001e00 51400009 0909a188
                   : 0140c009 7cb7efb7 00000000 00000800
#

```

- To display volume label information for a cdl formatted disk:

```
# dasdview -l /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

```
--- volume label -----
volume label key      : ascii  'äÖÖñ'
                      : ebcdic  'VOL1'
                      : hex     e5d6d3f1

volume label identifier : ascii  'äÖÖñ'
                      : ebcdic  'VOL1'
                      : hex     e5d6d3f1

volume identifier      : ascii  'ðçðñùó'
                      : ebcdic  '0X0193'
                      : hex     f0e7f0f1f9f3

security byte          : hex     40

VTOC pointer           : hex     0000000101
                      (cyl 0, trk 1, blk 1)

reserved               : ascii  '@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     4040404040

CI size for FBA        : ascii  '@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40404040

blocks per CI (FBA)    : ascii  '@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40404040

labels per CI (FBA)    : ascii  '@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40404040

reserved               : ascii  '@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40404040

owner code for VTOC    : ascii  '@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40404040 40404040 40404040 4040

reserved               : ascii  '@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040
                      40404040 40404040 40404040

ldl_version            : ascii  '@'
                      : ebcdic  ' '
                      : hex     40

formatted_blocks        : dec 16565899579919558117
                      : hex e5e5e5e5e5e5e5e5#
```

- To display volume label information for an ldl formatted disk:

```

--- volume label -----
volume label key      : ascii  ' '
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    00000000

volume label identifier : ascii  '00cñ'
                     : ebcdic  'LNX1'
                     : hex    d3d5e7f1

volume identifier      : ascii  'ðçðñùó'
                     : ebcdic  '0X0193'
                     : hex    f0e7f0f1f9f3

security byte         : hex    40

VTOC pointer          : hex    4040404040
reserved              : ascii  '@@@@'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    4040404040

CI size for FBA       : ascii  '@@@@'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    40404040

blocks per CI (FBA)   : ascii  '@@@@'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    40404040

labels per CI (FBA)   : ascii  '@@@@'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    40404040

reserved              : ascii  '@@@@'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    40404040

owner code for VTOC   : ascii  '0000000000000000'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    40404040 40404040 40404040 4040

reserved              : ascii  '00000000000000000000000000000000'
                     : ebcdic  ' '
                     : hex    40404040 40404040 40404040 40404040
                        40404040 40404040 40404040

ldl_version           : ascii  'ð'
                     : ebcdic  '2'
                     : hex    f2

formatted_blocks       : dec 18000
                     : hex  0000000000004650

```

- To display partition information:

```
# dasdview -t info /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

```
--- VTOC info -----
The VTOC contains:
 3 format 1 label(s)
 1 format 4 label(s)
 1 format 5 label(s)
 0 format 7 label(s)
 0 format 8 label(s)
 0 format 9 label(s)
Other S/390 and zSeries operating systems would see the following data sets:
```

data set	start	end
LINUX.V0X0193.PART0001.NATIVE	trk	trk
data set serial number : '0X0193'	2	500
system code : 'IBM LINUX '	cyl/trk	cyl/trk
creation date : year 2009, day 55	0/ 2	33/ 5
LINUX.V0X0193.PART0002.NATIVE	trk	trk
data set serial number : '0X0193'	501	900
system code : 'IBM LINUX '	cyl/trk	cyl/trk
creation date : year 2009, day 55	33/ 6	60/ 0
LINUX.V0X0193.PART0003.NATIVE	trk	trk
data set serial number : '0X0193'	901	1499
system code : 'IBM LINUX '	cyl/trk	cyl/trk
creation date : year 2009, day 55	60/ 1	99/ 14

```
#
```

- To display VTOC format 4 label information:

```
# dasdview -t f4 /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

```
--- VTOC format 4 label -----
DS4KEYCD : 04040404040404040404040404040404040404040404040404040404...
DS4IDFMT : dec 244, hex f4
DS4HPCHR : 0000000105 (cyl 0, trk 1, blk 5)
DS4DSREC : dec 7, hex 0007
DS4HCCHH : 00000000 (cyl 0, trk 0)
DS4NOATK : dec 0, hex 0000
DS4VTOCI : dec 0, hex 00
DS4NOEXT : dec 1, hex 01
DS4SMSFG : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVAC : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DSCYL : dec 100, hex 0064
DS4DSTRK : dec 15, hex 000f
DS4DEVTK : dec 58786, hex e5a2
DS4DEVI : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVL : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVK : dec 0, hex 00
DS4DEVFG : dec 48, hex 30
DS4DEVTL : dec 0, hex 0000
DS4DEVDT : dec 12, hex 0c
DS4DEVDB : dec 0, hex 00
DS4AMTIM : hex 0000000000000000
DS4AMCAT : hex 000000
DS4R2TIM : hex 0000000000000000
res1 : hex 0000000000
DS4F6PTR : hex 0000000000
DS4VTOCE : hex 01000000000100000001
           typeind : dec 1, hex 01
           seqno  : dec 0, hex 00
           llimit : hex 00000001 (cyl 0, trk 1)
           ulimit : hex 00000001 (cyl 0, trk 1)
res2 : hex 00000000000000000000
DS4EFLVL : dec 0, hex 00
DS4EFPTR : hex 0000000000 (cyl 0, trk 0, blk 0)
res3 : hex 00
DS4DCYL : dec 100, hex 00000064
res4 : hex 0000
DS4DEVF2 : dec 64, hex 40
res5 : hex 00
#
```

- To print the contents of a disk to the console starting at block 2 (volume label):

```
# dasdview -b 2b -s 128 -f /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

HEXADECIMAL				EBCDIC	ASCII
01....04 05....08 09....12 13....16				1.....16	1.....16
E5D6D3F1	E5D6D3F1	F0E7F0F1	F9F34000	VOL1VOL10X0193?	?????????????@.
00000101	40404040	40404040	40404040	.....	.....
40404040	40404040	40404040	40404040	????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040	40404040	40404040	40404040	????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040	40404040	40404040	40404040	????????????????	0000000000000000
40404040	88001000	10000000	00808000	???h.....	0000?.....
00000000	00000000	00010000	00000200	.....	.....
21000500	00000000	00000000	00000000	?.....	!.....

- To display the contents of a disk on the console starting at block 14 (first FMT1 DSCB) using format 2:

```
# dasdview -b 14b -s 128 -2 -f /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

BYTE DECIMAL	BYTE HEXADECIMAL	HEXADECIMAL								EBCDIC 12345678	ASCII 12345678
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
57344	E000	D3C9D5E4	E74BE5F0							LINUX.V0	????K??
57352	E008	E7F0F1F9	F34BD7C1							X0193.PA	????K??
57360	E010	D9E3F0F0	F0F14BD5							RT0001.N	????K?
57368	E018	C1E3C9E5	C5404040							ATIVE???	????@??
57376	E020	40404040	40404040							???????	@@@@@@??
57384	E028	40404040	F1F0E7F0							????10X0	@???@???
57392	E030	F1F9F300	0165013D							193.???	???.?e?
57400	E038	63016D01	0000C9C2							??_?..IB	c?m?..??
57408	E040	D440D3C9	D5E4E740							M?LINUX?	?@?????@
57416	E048	40404065	013D0000							???????	@??e?=?..
57424	E050	00000000	88001000							...h.??	...?.?.
57432	E058	10000000	00808000							?...??.	?...??.
57440	E060	00000000	00000000							.....	.....
57448	E068	00010000	00000200							.?.....?	.?.....?
57456	E070	21000500	00000000							??.?....	!..?....
57464	E078	00000000	00000000							.....	.....

- To see what is at block 1234 (in this example there is nothing there):

```
# dasdview -b 1234b -s 128 -f /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

HEXADECIMAL				EBCDIC	ASCII
01....04	05....08	09....12	13....16	1.....16	1.....16
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....
00000000	00000000	00000000	00000000	.....	.....

- To try byte 0 instead:

```
# dasdview -b 0 -s 64 -f /dev/dasdzzz
```

This displays:

HEXADECIMAL				EBCDIC	ASCII
01....04	05....08	09....12	13....16	1.....16	1.....16
C9D7D3F1	000A0000	0000000F	03000000	IPL1.....	???.
00000001	00000000	00000000	40404040	.....	.....
40404040	40404040	40404040	40404040	????????	@@@@@@@@
40404040	40404040	40404040	40404040	????????	@@@@@@@@

fdasd - Partition a DASD

The compatible disk layout allows you to split DASD into several partitions. Use **fdasd** to manage partitions on a DASD. You can use **fdasd** to create, change and delete partitions, and also to change the volume serial number.

- **fdasd** checks that the volume has a valid volume label and VTOC. If either is missing or incorrect, **fdasd** recreates it.
- Calling **fdasd** with a node, but without options, enters interactive mode. In interactive mode, you are given a menu through which you can display DASD information, add or remove partitions, or change the volume identifier.
- Your changes are not written to disk until you type the “write” option on the menu. You may quit without altering the disk at any time prior to this. The items written to the disk will be the volume label, the “format 4” DSCB, a “format 5” DSCB, sometimes a “format 7” DSCB or a “format 8” DSCB depending on the DASD size, and one to three “format 1” DSCBs.

Note: To partition a SCSI disk, use **fdisk** rather than **fdasd**.

Before you start: The disk must be formatted with **dasdfmt** with the (default) **-d cd1** option.

For more information on partitions see “The IBM label partitioning scheme” on page 22.

Attention: Careless use of **fdasd** can result in loss of data.

Format

fdasd syntax

```

>> fdasd [ -s ] [ -r ] | partitioning options |

```

partitioning options:

```

|-----<node>-----|
| (1) |
| -a | -k |
|   | -l <volser> |
| -c <conf_file> |
| -i |
| -p |

```

Notes:

- 1 If neither the **-l** option nor the **-k** option are specified, a VOLSER is generated from the device number through which the volume is accessed.

Where:

-s or **--silent**
suppresses messages.

-r or --verbose

displays additional messages that are normally suppressed.

-a or --auto

auto-creates one partition using the whole disk in non-interactive mode.

-k or --keep_serial

keeps the volume serial number when writing the volume 5 Label (see “VOLSER” on page 24). This is useful, for example, if the volume serial number has been written with a z/VM tool and should not be overwritten.

-l <volser> or --label=<volser>

specifies the volume serial number (see “VOLSER” on page 24).

A volume serial consists of one through six alphanumeric characters or the following special characters: \$, #, @, %. All other characters are ignored. Avoid using special characters in the volume serial. This may cause problems accessing a disk by VOLSER. If you must use special characters, enclose the VOLSER in single quotation marks. In addition, any '\$' character in the VOLSER must be preceded by a backslash ('\').

For example, specify:

```
-l 'a@b\ $c#'
```

to get:

```
A@B$C#
```

VOLSER is interpreted as an ASCII string and is automatically converted to uppercase, padded with blanks and finally converted to EBCDIC before being written to disk.

Do not use the following reserved volume serials:

- SCRTCH
- PRIVAT
- MIGRAT
- Lnnnnn (L followed by a five digit number)

These are used as keywords by other System z operating systems, such as z/OS.

Omitting this parameter causes **fdasd** to prompt for it, if it is needed.

-c <conf_file> or --config <conf_file>

creates several partitions in non-interactive mode, controlled by the plain text configuration file <conf_file>.

For each partition you want to create, add one line of the following format to <conf_file>:

```
[x,y]
```

where x is the first track and y is the last track of that partition. You can use the keyword **first** for the first possible track on disk and, correspondingly, the keyword **last** for the last possible track on disk.

The following sample configuration file allows you to create three partitions:

```
[first,1000]
[1001,2000]
[2001,last]
```

-i or --volser

displays the volume serial number and exits.

fdasd

-p or --table

displays the partition table and exits.

<node>

specifies the device node of the DASD you want to partition, for example, /dev/dasdzzz. See “DASD naming scheme” on page 27 for more details on device nodes.

-h or --help

displays help on command line arguments. To view the man page, enter **man fdasd**.

-v or --version

displays the version of **fdasd**.

Processing

fdasd menu

If you call **fdasd** in the interactive mode (that is, with just a node), the following menu appears:

```
Command action
m print this menu
p print the partition table
n add a new partition
d delete a partition
v change volume serial
t change partition type
r re-create VTOC and delete all partitions
u re-create VTOC re-using existing partition sizes
s show mapping (partition number - data set name)
q quit without saving changes
w write table to disk and exit
```

Command (m for help):

Menu commands:

m

re-displays the **fdasd** command menu.

p

displays the following information about the DASD:

- Number of cylinders
- Number of tracks per cylinder
- Number of blocks per track
- Block size
- Volume label
- Volume identifier
- Number of partitions defined

and the following information about each partition (including the free space area):

- Linux node
- Start track
- End track
- Number of tracks
- Partition id
- Partition type (1 = filesystem, 2 = swap)

- n** adds a new partition to the DASD. You will be asked to give the start track and the length or end track of the new partition.
- d** deletes a partition from the DASD. You will be asked which partition to delete.
- v** changes the volume identifier. You will be asked to enter a new volume identifier. See “VOLSER” on page 24 for the format.
- t** changes the partition type. You will be asked to identify the partition to be changed. You will then be asked for the new partition type (Linux native or swap). Note that this type is a guideline; the actual use Linux makes of the partition depends on how it is defined with the `mkswap` or `mkxfs` tools. The main function of the partition type is to describe the partition to other operating systems so that, for example, swap partitions can be skipped by backup programs.
- r** recreates the VTOC and thereby deletes all partitions.
- u** recreates all VTOC labels without removing all partitions. Existing partition sizes will be reused. This is useful to repair damaged labels or migrate partitions created with older versions of **fdasd**.
- s** displays the mapping of partition numbers to data set names. For example:


```

Command (m for help): s

device .....: /dev/dasdzzz
volume label ...: VOL1
volume serial ..: 0X0193

WARNING: This mapping may be NOT up-to-date,
         if you have NOT saved your last changes!

/dev/dasdzzz1 - LINUX.V0X0193.PART0001.NATIVE
/dev/dasdzzz2 - LINUX.V0X0193.PART0002.NATIVE
/dev/dasdzzz3 - LINUX.V0X0193.PART0003.NATIVE

```
- q** quits **fdasd** without updating the disk. Any changes you have made (in this session) will be discarded.
- w** writes your changes to disk and exits. After the data is written Linux will reread the partition table.

Examples

Example using the menu

This section gives an example of how to use **fdasd** to create two partitions on a z/VM minidisk, change the type of one of the partitions, save the changes and check the results.

In this example, we will format a z/VM minidisk with the compatible disk layout. The minidisk has device number 193.

1. Call **fdasd**, specifying the minidisk:

```
# fdasd /dev/dasdzzz
```

fdasd reads the existing data and displays the menu:

```

reading volume label: VOL1
reading vtoc : ok

Command action
  m print this menu
  p print the partition table
  n add a new partition
  d delete a partition
  v change volume serial
  t change partition type
  r re-create VTOC and delete all partitions
  u re-create VTOC re-using existing partition sizes
  s show mapping (partition number - data set name)
  q quit without saving changes
  w write table to disk and exit
Command (m for help):

```

2. Use the p option to verify that no partitions have yet been created on this DASD:

```

Command (m for help): p

Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
cylinders .....: 100
tracks per cylinder ..: 15
blocks per track .....: 12
bytes per block .....: 4096
volume label .....: VOL1
volume serial .....: 0X0193
max partitions .....: 3

----- tracks -----
      Device      start      end    length    Id  System
                   2      1499      1498
                   unused

```

3. Define two partitions, one by specifying an end track and the other by specifying a length. (In both cases the default start tracks are used):

```

Command (m for help): n
First track (1 track = 48 KByte) ([2]-1499):
Using default value 2
Last track or +size[c|k|M] (2-[1499]): 700
You have selected track 700

```

```

Command (m for help): n
First track (1 track = 48 KByte) ([701]-1499):
Using default value 701
Last track or +size[c|k|M] (701-[1499]): +400
You have selected track 1100

```

4. Check the results using the p option:

Command (m for help): **p**

Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
 cylinders: 100
 tracks per cylinder ..: 15
 blocks per track: 12
 bytes per block: 4096
 volume label: VOL1
 volume serial: 0X0193
 max partitions: 3

		tracks				
	Device	start	end	length	Id	System
	/dev/dasdzzz1	2	700	699	1	Linux native
	/dev/dasdzzz2	701	1100	400	2	Linux native
		1101	1499	399		unused

5. Change the type of a partition:

Command (m for help): **t**

Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
 cylinders: 100
 tracks per cylinder ..: 15
 blocks per track: 12
 bytes per block: 4096
 volume label: VOL1
 volume serial: 0X0193
 max partitions: 3

		tracks				
	Device	start	end	length	Id	System
	/dev/dasdzzz1	2	700	699	1	Linux native
	/dev/dasdzzz2	701	1100	400	2	Linux native
		1101	1499	399		unused

change partition type
 partition id (use 0 to exit):

Enter the ID of the partition you want to change; in this example partition 2:

partition id (use 0 to exit): **2**

6. Enter the new partition type; in this example type 2 for swap:

current partition type is: Linux native

1 Linux native
 2 Linux swap

new partition type: **2**

7. Check the result:

```
Command (m for help): p
```

```
Disk /dev/dasdzzz:
cylinders .....: 100
tracks per cylinder ..: 15
blocks per track .....: 12
bytes per block .....: 4096
volume label .....: VOL1
volume serial .....: 0X0193
max partitions .....: 3
```

```
----- tracks -----
      Device      start    end    length  Id  System
/dev/dasdzzz1         2     700     699    1  Linux native
/dev/dasdzzz2       701    1100     400    2  Linux swap
                   1101    1499     399    unused
```

8. Write the results to disk using the w option:

```
Command (m for help): w
writing VTOC...
rereading partition table...
#
```

Example using options

You can partition using the **-a** or **-c** option without entering the menu mode. This is useful for partitioning using scripts, if you need to partition several hundred DASDs, for example.

With the **-a** parameter you can create one large partition on a DASD:

```
# fdasd -a /dev/dasdzzz
auto-creating one partition for the whole disk...
writing volume label...
writing VTOC...
rereading partition table...
#
```

This will create a partition as follows:

```
      Device      start    end    length  Id  System
/dev/dasdzzz1         2    1499     1498    1  Linux native
```

Using a configuration file you can create several partitions. For example, the following configuration file, config, creates three partitions:

```
[first,500]
[501,1100]
[1101,last]
```

Submitting the command with the **-c** option creates the partitions:

```
# fdasd -c config /dev/dasdzzz
parsing config file 'config'...
writing volume label...
writing VTOC...
rereading partition table...
#
```

This creates partitions as follows:

Device	start	end	length	Id	System
/dev/dasdzzz1	2	500	499	1	Linux native
/dev/dasdzzz2	501	1100	600	2	Linux native
/dev/dasdzzz3	1101	1499	399	3	Linux native

icastats - Show libica functions

This command is used to indicate whether libica uses hardware or works with software fallbacks. It shows also which specific functions of libica are used.

Format

icastats syntax

```
▶▶—icastats— --reset —————▶▶
```

Where:

--reset

sets the function counters to zero.

-h or **--help**

displays help information for the command.

Examples

- To display the current use of libica functions issue:

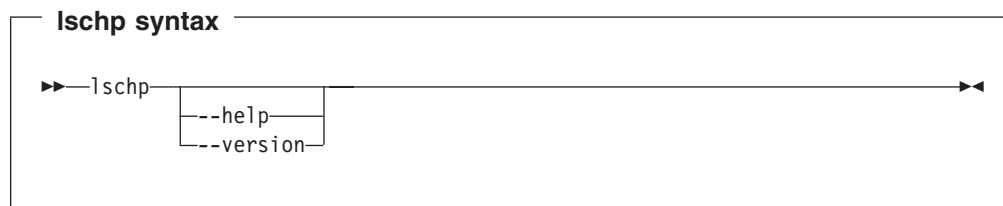
```
# icastats
```

function	# hardware	# software
SHA1	33210	49815
SHA224	171992	328312
SHA256	189565	440615
SHA384	172081	323235
SHA512	205170	266679
RANDOM	6716896	0
MOD EXPO	29	53
RSA CRT	15	18
DES ENC	2366808	0
DES DEC	2366808	0
3DES ENC	0	0
3DES DEC	0	0
AES ENC	576713	414708
AES DEC	576688	414700

lschp - List channel paths

Use this command to display information about channel paths.

Format



where:

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lschp** and exits.

-h or --help

displays out a short help text, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man lschp**.

Output column description:

CHPID

Channel-path identifier.

Vary

Logical channel-path state:

- 0 = channel-path is not used for I/O.
- 1 = channel-path is used for I/O.

Cfg.

Channel-path configure state:

- 0 = stand-by
- 1 = configured
- 2 = reserved
- 3 = not recognized

Type

Channel-path type identifier.

Cmg

Channel measurement group identifier.

Shared

Indicates whether a channel-path is shared between LPARs:

- 0 = channel-path is not shared
- 1 = channel-path is shared

A column value of '-' indicates that a facility associated with the respective channel-path attribute is not available.

lschp

Examples

- To query the configuration status of channel path ID 0.40 issue:

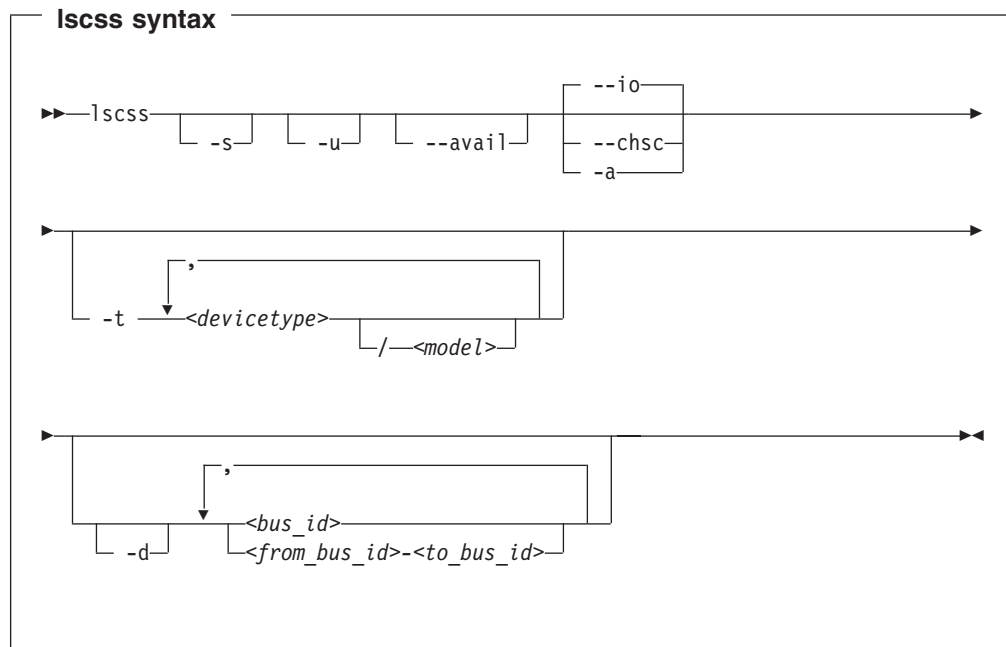
```
# lschp
CHPID Vary Cfg. Type Cmg Shared
=====
.
.
0.40 1    1    1b   2    1
.
.
```

The value under Cfg. shows that the channel path is configured (1).

lscss - List subchannels

This command is used to gather subchannel information from sysfs and display it in a summary format.

Format



Where:

-s or --short

strips the 0.0. from the device bus-IDs in the command output.

Note: This option limits the output to bus IDs that begin with 0.0.

-u or --uppercase

displays the output with uppercase letters. The default is lowercase.

Changed default: Earlier versions of **lscss** printed the command output in uppercase. Specify this option, to obtain the former output style.

--avail

includes the availability attribute of I/O devices.

--io

limits the output to I/O subchannels and corresponding devices. This is the default.

--chsc

limits the output to CHSC subchannels.

-a or --all

does not limit the output.

-t or --devtype

limits the output to subchannels that correspond to devices of the specified device types and, if provided, the specified model.

<devicetype>

specifies a device type.

<model>

is a specific model of the specified device type.

-d or --devrange

interprets bus IDs as specifications of devices. By default, bus IDs are interpreted as specifications of subchannels.

<bus_id>

specifies an individual subchannel; if used with **-d** specifies an individual device. If you omit the leading 0.<subchannel set ID>., 0.0. is assumed.

If you specify subchannels or devices, the command output is limited to these subchannels or devices.

<from_bus_id>-<to_bus_id>

specifies a range of subchannels; if used with **-d** specifies a range of devices. If you omit the leading 0.<subchannel set ID>., 0.0. is assumed.

If you specify subchannels or devices, the command output is limited to these subchannels or devices.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man lscss**.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

Examples

- This command lists all subchannels that correspond to I/O devices:

```
# lscss
Device    Subchan.  DevType CU Type Use  PIM PAM POM  CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78  3390/0a 3990/e9 yes  c0 c0 ff  34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55  3390/0a 3990/e9      c0 c0 bf  34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56  3390/0a 3990/e9      c0 c0 bf  34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57  3390/0a 3990/e9 yes  c0 c0 ff  34400000 00000000
0.0.7e10 0.0.1828  3390/0c 3990/e9 yes  f0 f0 ef  34403541 00000000
0.0.f500 0.0.351d  1732/01 1731/01 yes  80 80 ff  76000000 00000000
0.0.f501 0.0.351e  1732/01 1731/01 yes  80 80 ff  76000000 00000000
0.0.f502 0.0.351f  1732/01 1731/01 yes  80 80 ff  76000000 00000000
```

- This command lists all subchannels, including subchannels that do not correspond to I/O devices:

```
# lscss -a
IO Subchannels and Devices:
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
0.0.7e10 0.0.1828 3390/0c 3990/e9 yes f0 f0 ef 34403541 00000000
0.0.f500 0.0.351d 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 76000000 00000000
0.0.f501 0.0.351e 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 76000000 00000000
0.0.f502 0.0.351f 1732/01 1731/01 yes 80 80 ff 76000000 00000000

CHSC Subchannels:
Device Subchan.
-----
n/a 0.0.ffa00
```

- This command limits the output to subchannels with attached DASD model 3390 type 0a:

```
# lscss -t 3390/0a
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to the subchannel range 0.0.0b00-0.0.0bff:

```
# lscss 0.0.0b00-0.0.0bff
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56 3390/0a 3990/e9 c0 c0 bf 34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to subchannels 0.0.0a78 and 0.0.0b57 and shows the availability:

```
# lscss --avail 0a78,0b57
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs Avail.
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000 good
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57 3390/0a 3990/e9 yes c0 c0 ff 34400000 00000000 good
```

- This command limits the output to subchannel 0.0.0a78 and prints uppercase output:

```
# lscss -u 0a78
Device Subchan. DevType CU Type Use PIM PAM POM CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2F08 0.0.0A78 3390/0A 3990/E9 YES C0 C0 FF 34400000 00000000
```

- This command limits the output to subchannels that correspond to I/O device 0.0.7e10 and the device range 0.0.2f00-0.0.2fff:

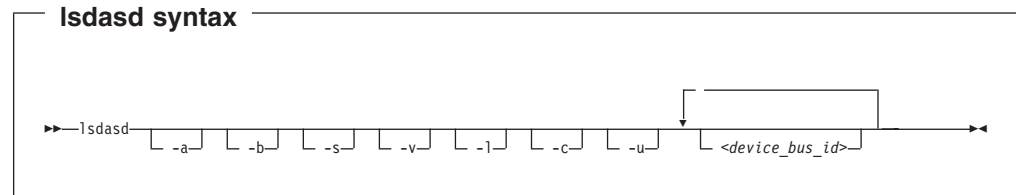
lscss

```
# lscss -d 2f00-2fff,0.0.7e10
Device  Subchan.  DevType CU Type Use  PIM PAM POM  CHPIDs
-----
0.0.2f08 0.0.0a78  3390/0a 3990/e9 yes  c0  c0  ff  34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe5 0.0.0b55  3390/0a 3990/e9      c0  c0  bf  34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe6 0.0.0b56  3390/0a 3990/e9      c0  c0  bf  34400000 00000000
0.0.2fe7 0.0.0b57  3390/0a 3990/e9 yes  c0  c0  ff  34400000 00000000
0.0.7e10 0.0.1828  3390/0c 3990/e9 yes  f0  f0  ef  34403541 00000000
```

lsdasd - List DASD devices

This command is used to gather information on DASD devices from sysfs and display it in a summary format.

Format



Where:

- a or --offline**
includes devices that are currently offline.
- b or --base**
omits PAV alias devices. Lists only base devices.
- s or --short**
strips the “0.n.” from the device bus IDs in the command output.
- v or --verbose**
Obsolete. This option has no effect on the output.
- l or --long**
extends the output to include UID and attributes.
- c or --compat**
creates output of this command as with versions earlier than 1.7.0.
- u or --uid**
includes and sorts output by UID.
- <device_bus_id>**
limits the output to information on the specified devices only.
- version**
displays the version of the s390-tools package and the command.
- h or --help**
displays out a short help text, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man lsdasd**.

Examples

- The following command lists all DASD (including offline DASDs):

```
# lsdasd -a
Bus-ID      Status      Name      Device      Type      BlkSz      Size      Blocks
=====
0.0.0190    offline
0.0.0191    offline
0.0.019d    offline
0.0.019e    offline
0.0.0592    offline
0.0.4711    offline
0.0.4712    offline
0.0.4f2c    offline
0.0.4d80    active      dasda     94:0        ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
0.0.4f19    active      dasdb     94:4        ECKD      4096      23034MB   5896800
0.0.4d81    active      dasdc     94:8        ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
0.0.4d82    active      dasdd     94:12       ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
0.0.4d83    active      dasde     94:16       ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
```

- The following command shows information only for the DASD with device number 0x4d80 and strips the “0.n.” from the bus IDs in the output:

```
# lsdasd -s 4d80
Bus-ID      Status      Name      Device      Type      BlkSz      Size      Blocks
=====
4d80        active      dasda     94:0        ECKD      4096      4695MB    1202040
```

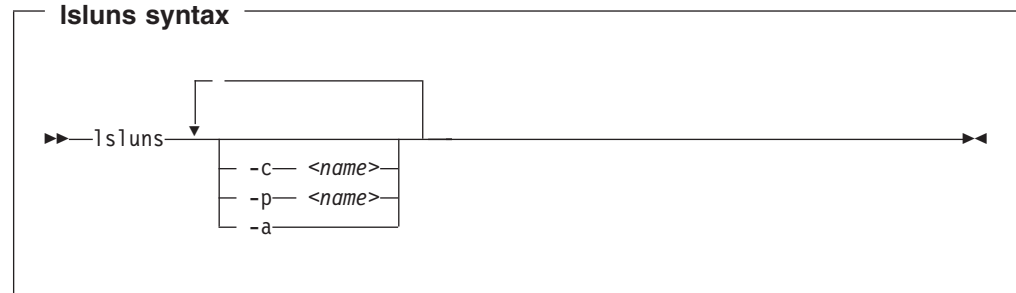
- The following command shows only online DASDs in the previous format:

```
# lsdasd -c
0.0.4d80(ECKD) at ( 94: 0) is dasda : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
0.0.4f19(ECKD) at ( 94: 4) is dasdb : active at blocksize 4096, 5896800 blocks, 23034 MB
0.0.4d81(ECKD) at ( 94: 8) is dasdc : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
0.0.4d82(ECKD) at ( 94: 12) is dasdd : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
0.0.4d83(ECKD) at ( 94: 16) is dasde : active at blocksize 4096, 1202040 blocks, 4695 MB
```


Isluns - Discover LUNs in Fibre Channel SANs

Use the Isluns command to discover and scan LUNs in Fibre Channel Storage Area Networks (SANs).

Format



Where:

-c or **--ccw** *<name>*

shows LUNs for a specific adapter. The adapter name is of the form 0.0.XXXX.

-p or **--port** *<name>*

shows LUNs for a specific port. The port name is an 8-byte hexadecimal value, for example, 0x500500ab0012cd00.

-a or **--active**

shows the currently active LUNs. A bracketed "x" indicates that the corresponding disk is encrypted.

-v or **--version**

displays the version number of **Isluns** and exits.

-h or **--help**

displays an overview of the syntax. To view the man page, enter **man Isluns**.

Examples

- This example shows all LUNs for port 0x500507630300c562:

```

# Isluns --port 0x500507630300c562
Scanning for LUNs on adapter 0.0.5922
  at port 0x500507630300c562:
    0x4010400000000000
    0x4010400100000000
    0x4010400200000000
    0x4010400300000000
    0x4010400400000000
    0x4010400500000000
  
```

- This example shows all LUNs for adapter 0.0.5922:

lsluns

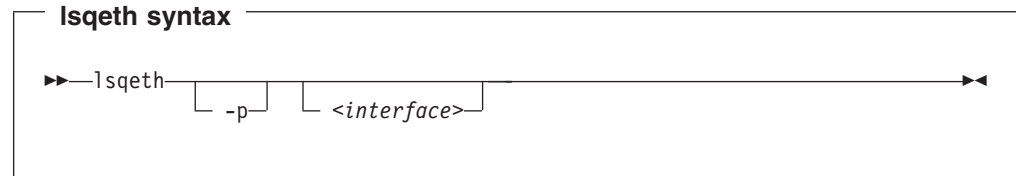
```
# lsluns -c 0.0.5922
  at port 0x500507630300c562:
    0x4010400000000000
    0x4010400100000000
    0x4010400200000000
    0x4010400300000000
    0x4010400400000000
    0x4010400500000000
  at port 0x500507630303c562:
    0x4010400000000000
    0x4010400100000000
    0x4010400200000000
    0x4010400300000000
    0x4010400400000000
    0x4010400500000000
```

lsqeth - List qeth based network devices

This command is used to gather information on qeth-based network devices from sysfs and display it in a summary format.

Before you start: To be able to use this command you must also have installed **qethconf** (see “qethconf - Configure qeth devices” on page 479). You install **qethconf** and **lsqeth** with the same packet.

Format



Where:

-p or --proc

displays the interface information in the former `/proc/qeth` format. This option can generate input to tools that expect this particular format.

<interface>

limits the output to information on the specified interface only.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man lsqeth**.

Examples

- The following command lists information on interface eth0 in the default format:

```

# lsqeth eth0
Device name           : eth0
-----
card_type             : OSD_100
cdev0                 : 0.0.f5a2
cdev1                 : 0.0.f5a3
cdev2                 : 0.0.f5a4
chpid                 : B5
online                : 1
portname              : OSAPORT
portno                : 0
route4                : no
route6                : no
checksumming          : sw checksumming
state                 : UP (LAN ONLINE)
priority_queueing     : always queue 2
fake_broadcast        : 0
buffer_count          : 16
layer2                : 0
large_send            : no

```

- The following command lists information on all qeth-based interfaces in the former `/proc/qeth` format:

lsqeth

```
# lsqeth -p
devices
```

	CHPID	interface	cardtype	port	chksum	prio-q'ing	rtr4	rtr6	fsz	cnt
0.0.833f/0.0.8340/0.0.8341 xFE	hsi0		HiperSockets	0	sw	always_q_2	no	no	n/a	16
0.0.f5a2/0.0.f5a3/0.0.f5a4 xB5	eth0		OSD_100	0	sw	always_q_2	no	no	n/a	16
0.0.fba2/0.0.fba3/0.0.fba4 xB0	eth1		OSD_100	0	sw	always_q_2	no	no	n/a	16

lsreipl - List IPL settings

Use this command to see from which device your system will boot after you issue the reboot command. Further you can query the system for information about the current boot device.

Format

lsreipl syntax

```
» lsreipl [-i]
```

where:

-i or --ipl

displays the IPL setting.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lsreipl** and exits.

-h or --help

displays an overview of the syntax. Any other parameters are ignored. To view the man page, enter **man lsreipl**.

Examples

- This example shows the current IPL settings:

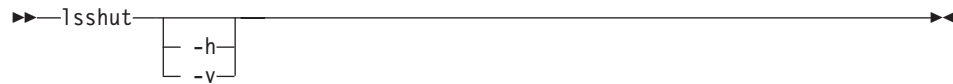
```
# lsreipl
Re-IPL type:    fcp
WWPN:          0x500507630300c562
LUN:           0x401040b300000000
Device:        0.0.1700
bootprog:      0
br_lba:        0
```

lsshut - List the configuration for system states

Use this command to see how the system is configured to behave in the following system states: halt, panic, power off, and reboot.

Format

lsshut syntax



where:

-h or --help

displays a short help text, then exits. To view the man page, enter **man lsshut**.

-v or --version

displays the version number of **lsshut** and exits.

Examples

- To query the configuration issue:

```
# lsshut
Trigger  Action
=====
Halt     stop
Panic    stop
Power off vmcmd (LOGOFF)
Reboot   reipl
```

lstape - List tape devices

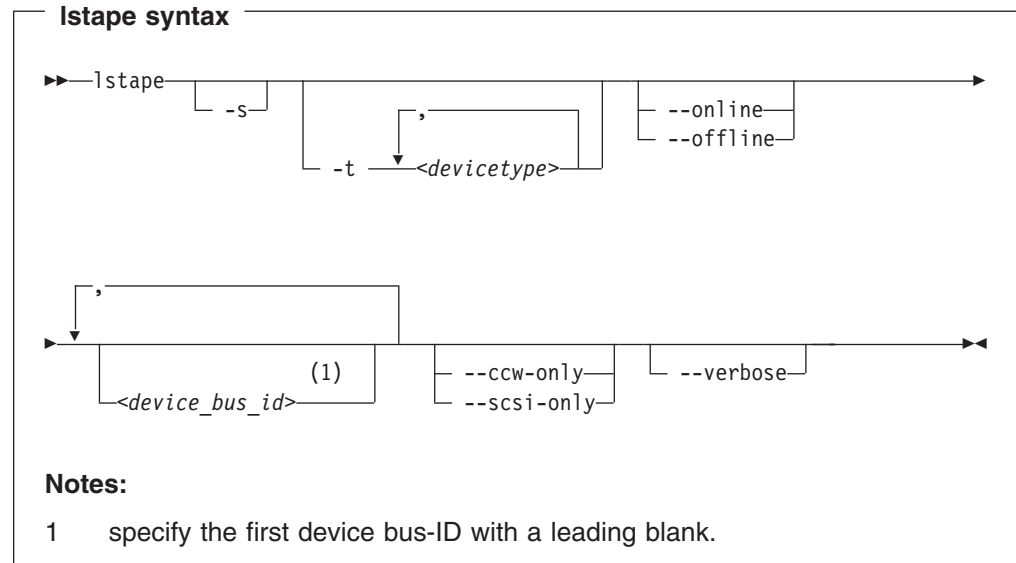
This command is used to gather information on CCW-attached tape devices and tape devices attached to the SCSI bus from sysfs (see “Displaying tape information” on page 83) and display it in a summary format.

For information about SCSI tape devices, the command uses the following sources for the information displayed:

- The IBMTape or the open source lin_tape driver.
- The sg_inq command from the scsi/sg3_utils package.
- The st (SCSI tape) device driver in the Linux kernel.

If you use the IBMTape or lin_tape driver, the sg_inq utility is required. If sg_inq is missing, certain information about the IBMTape or lin_tape driver cannot be displayed.

Format



Where:

-s or --shortid

strips the “0.n.” from the device bus-IDs in the command output. For CCW-attached devices only.

-t or --type

limits the output to information on the specified type or types of CCW-attached devices only.

--ccw-only

limits the output to information on CCW-attached devices only.

--scsi-only

limits the output to information on tape devices attached to the SCSI bus.

--online | --offline

limits the output to information on online or offline CCW-attached tape devices only.

lstape

<device_bus_id>

limits the output to information on the specified tape device or devices only.

-V or --verbose

For tape devices attached to the SCSI bus only. Displays the serial of the tape as well as information about the FCP connection as an additional text line below each SCSI tape in the list.

-h or --help

displays a short help text. To view the man page, enter **man lstape**.

-v or --version

displays the version of the command.

Output attributes

The attributes in the output provide this data:

Table 51. Output for lstape

Attribute	Description
Generic	SCSI generic device file for the tape drive (for example /dev/sg0). This attribute is empty if the sg_inq command is not available.
Device	Main device file for accessing the tape drive, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• /dev/st0 for a tape drive attached through the Linux st device driver• /dev/sch0 for a medium changer device attached through the Linux changer device driver• /dev/IBMchanger0 for a medium changer attached through the IBMtape or lin_tape device driver• /dev/IBMtape0 for a tape drive attached through the IBMtape or lin_tape device driver
Target	The ID in Linux used to identify the SCSI device.
Vendor	The vendor field from the tape drive.
Model	The model field from the tape drive.
Type	"Tapedrv" for a tape driver or "changer" for a medium changer.
State	The state of the SCSI device in Linux. This is an internal state of the Linux kernel, any state other than "running" can indicate problems.
HBA	The FCP adapter to which the tape drive is attached.
WWPN	The WWPN (World Wide Port Name) of the tape drive in the SAN.
Serial	The serial number field from the tape drive.

Examples

- This command displays information on all tapes found, here one CCW-attached tape and one tape and changer device configured for zFCP:

```
#> lstape
FICON/ESCON tapes (found 1):
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/Model  BlkSize  State  Op   MedState
0        0.0.0480    3480/01       3480/04        auto    UNUSED ---  UNLOADED

SCSI tape devices (found 2):
Generic  Device      Target      Vendor      Model      Type      State
sg4      IBMchanger0 0:0:0:0     IBM         03590H11   changer  running
sg5      IBMtape0    0:0:0:1     IBM         03590H11   tapedrv  running
```


If only the generic tape driver (st) and the generic changer driver (ch) are loaded, the output will list those names in the device section:

```
#> lstape
FICON/ESCON tapes (found 1):
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/Model  BlkSize  State  Op    MedState
0        0.0.0480   3480/01       3480/04        auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED

SCSI tape devices (found 2):
Generic Device      Target      Vendor      Model      Type      State
sg0      sch0      0:0:0:0      IBM      03590H11   changer   running
sg1      st0      0:0:0:1      IBM      03590H11   tapedrv   running
```

- This command displays information on all available CCW-attached tapes.

```
# lstape --ccw-only
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/DevMod  BlkSize  State  Op    MedState
0        0.0.0132   3590/50       3590/11         auto    IN_USE ---    LOADED
1        0.0.0110   3490/10       3490/40         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
2        0.0.0133   3590/50       3590/11         auto    IN_USE ---    LOADED
3        0.0.012a   3480/01       3480/04         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
N/A      0.0.01f8   3480/01       3480/04         N/A     OFFLINE ---    N/A
```

- This command limits the output to tapes of type 3480 and 3490.

```
# lstape -t 3480,3490
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/DevMod  BlkSize  State  Op    MedState
1        0.0.0110   3490/10       3490/40         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
3        0.0.012a   3480/01       3480/04         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
N/A      0.0.01f8   3480/01       3480/04         N/A     OFFLINE ---    N/A
```

- This command limits the output to those tapes of type 3480 and 3490 that are currently online.

```
# lstape -t 3480,3490 --online
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/DevMod  BlkSize  State  Op    MedState
1        0.0.0110   3490/10       3490/40         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
3        0.0.012a   3480/01       3480/04         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
```

- This command limits the output to the tape with device bus-ID 0.0.012a and strips the “0.n.” from the device bus-ID in the output.

```
# lstape -s 0.0.012a
TapeNo  BusID      CuType/Model  DevType/DevMod  BlkSize  State  Op    MedState
3        012a      3480/01       3480/04         auto    UNUSED ---    UNLOADED
```

- This command limits the output to SCSI devices but gives more details. Note that the serial numbers are only displayed if the **sg_inq** command is found on the system.

```
#> lstape --scsi-only --verbose
Generic Device      Target      Vendor      Model      Type      State
HBA      WWPN
sg0      st0      0:0:0:1      IBM      03590H11   tapedrv   running
          0.0.1708   0x500507630040727b  NO/INQ
sg1      sch0      0:0:0:2      IBM      03590H11   changer   running
          0.0.1708   0x500507630040727b  NO/INQ
```

lszcrypt - Display zcrypt devices

Use the **lszcrypt** command to display information about cryptographic adapters managed by zcrypt and zcrypt's AP bus attributes. To set the attributes, use "chzcrypt - Modify the zcrypt configuration" on page 410. The following information can be displayed for each cryptographic adapter:

- The card type
- The online status
- The hardware card type
- The hardware queue depth
- The request count

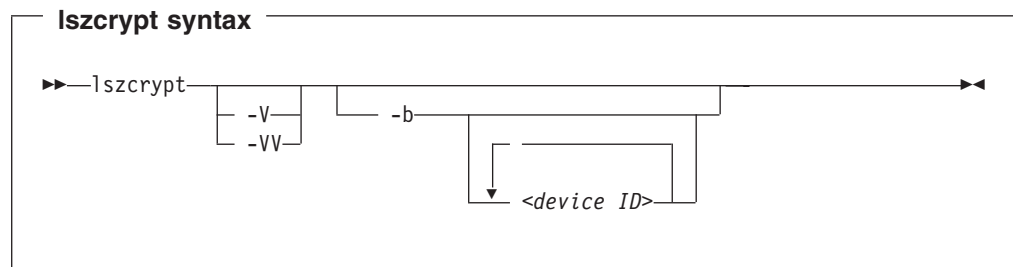
The following AP bus attributes can be displayed:

- The AP domain
- The configuration timer
- The poll thread status

Before you start:

- The sysfs file system must be mounted.

Format



Where:

-V, -VV or --verbose

increases the verbose level for cryptographic adapter information. The maximum verbose level is two (-VV). At verbose level one (-V) card type and online status are displayed. At verbose level two card type, online status, hardware card type, hardware queue depth, and request count are displayed.

<device ID>

specifies the cryptographic adapter which will be displayed. A cryptographic adapter can be specified either in decimal notation or hexadecimal notation using a '0x' prefix. If no adapters are specified information about all available adapters will be displayed.

-b or --bus

displays the AP bus attributes.

-h or --help

displays short information on command usage. To view the man page, enter **man lszcrypt**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

This section illustrates common uses for **lszcrypt**.

- To display card type and online status of all available cryptographic adapters:

```
lszcrypt -V
```

- To display card type, online status, hardware card type, hardware queue depth, and request count for cryptographic adapters 0, 1, 10, and 12 (in decimal notation):

```
lszcrypt -VV 0 1 10 12
```

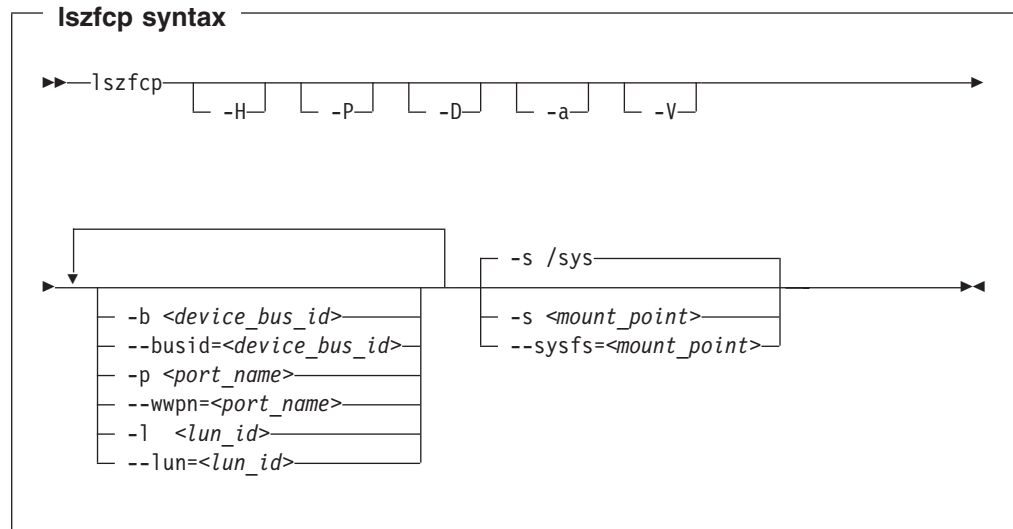
- To display AP bus information:

```
lszcrypt -b
```

lszfcp - List zfcps devices

This command is used to gather information on zfcps adapters, ports, units, and their associated class devices from sysfs and to display it in a summary format.

Format



Where:

- H** or **--hosts**
shows information about hosts.
- P** or **--ports**
shows information about ports.
- D** or **--devices**
shows information about SCSI devices.
- a** or **--attributes**
shows all attributes (implies -V).
- V** or **--verbose**
shows sysfs paths of associated class and bus devices.
- b** or **--busid** *<device_bus_id>*
limits the output to information on the specified device.
- p** or **--wwpn** *<port_name>*
limits the output to information on the specified port name.
- l** or **--lun** *<lun_id>*
limits the output to information on the specified LUN.
- s** or **--sysfs** *<mount_point>*
specifies the mount point for sysfs.
- v** or **--version**
displays version information.
- h** or **--help**
displays a short help text. To view the man page, enter **man lszfcp**.

Examples

- This command displays information on all available hosts, ports, and SCSI devices.

```
# lszfc -H -D -P
0.0.3d0c host0
0.0.500c host1
...
0.0.3c0c host5
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562 rport-0:0-0
0.0.3d0c/0x50050763030bc562 rport-0:0-1
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630303c562 rport-0:0-2
0.0.500c/0x50050763030bc562 rport-1:0-0
...
0.0.3c0c/0x500507630303c562 rport-5:0-2
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403300000000 0:0:0:1
0.0.3d0c/0x50050763030bc562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:1:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630303c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:2:0
0.0.500c/0x50050763030bc562/0x4010403200000000 1:0:0:0
...
0.0.3c0c/0x500507630303c562/0x4010403200000000 5:0:2:0
```

- This command limits the output to the SCSI device with device bus-ID 0.0.3d0c:

```
# lszfc -D -b 0.0.3d0c
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:0:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630300c562/0x4010403300000000 0:0:0:1
0.0.3d0c/0x50050763030bc562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:1:0
0.0.3d0c/0x500507630303c562/0x4010403200000000 0:0:2:0
```

mon_fsstatd – Monitor z/VM guest file system size

The **mon_fsstatd** command is a user space daemon that collects physical file system size data from a Linux guest and periodically writes the data as defined records to the z/VM monitor stream using the monwriter character device driver. You can start the daemon with a service script `/etc/init.d/mon_statd` or call it manually. When it is called with the service utility, it reads the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`.

Before you start:

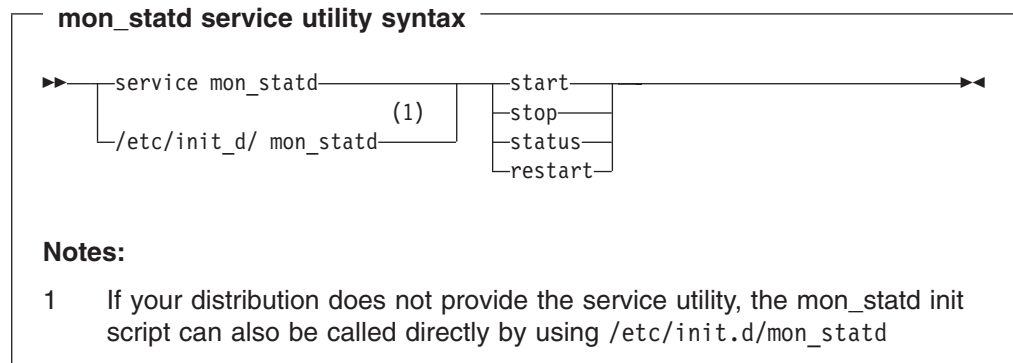
- Install the monwriter device driver and set up z/VM to start the collection of monitor sample data. See Chapter 15, “Writing application APPLDATA records,” on page 201 for information on the setup for and usage of the monwriter device driver.
- Customize the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd` if you plan to call it with the service utility.

Format

You can run the **mon_fsstatd** command in two ways:

- Calling `mon_statd` with the service utility, if this is provided by your distribution. Use this method when you have the `mon_statd` service script installed in `/etc/init.d`. This method will read the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`. The `mon_statd` service script also controls other daemons, such as `mon_procd`.
- Calling `mon_fsstatd` manually from a command line.

Service utility syntax



Where:

start enables monitoring of guest file system size, using the configuration in `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`.

stop disables monitoring of guest file system size.

status shows current status of guest file system size monitoring.

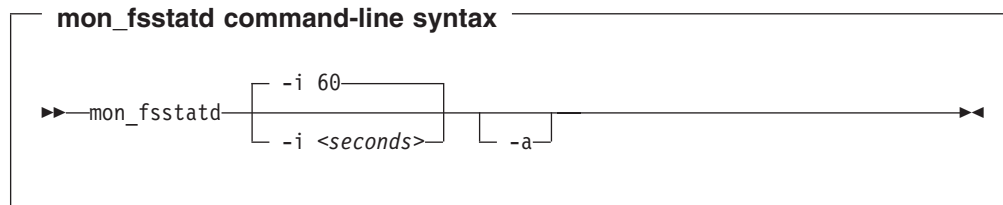
restart stops and restarts monitoring. Useful to re-read the configuration file when it was changed.

Configuration file keywords:

FSSTAT_INTERVAL="<n>"
specifies the desired sampling interval in seconds.

FSSTAT="yes | no"

specifies whether to enable the mon_fsstatd daemon. Set to "yes" to enable the daemon. Anything other than "yes" will be interpreted as "no".

Command-line syntax

Where:

-i or --interval <seconds>

specifies the desired sampling interval in seconds.

-a or --attach

runs the daemon in the foreground.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man mon_fsstatd**.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

Examples**Examples of service utility use**

Example configuration file for mon_statd (/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd).

- This example sets the sampling interval to 30 seconds and enables the mon_fsstatd daemon:

```

FSSTAT_INTERVAL="30"
FSSTAT="yes"

```

Example of mon_statd use (note that your output may look different and include messages for other daemons, such as mon_procd):

- To enable guest file system size monitoring:

```

> service mon_statd start
...
Starting mon_fsstatd: [ OK ]
...

```

- To display the status:

```

> service mon_statd status
...
mon_fsstatd (pid 1075, interval: 30) is running.
...

```

- To disable guest file system size monitoring:

```
> service mon_statd stop
...
Stopping mon_fsstatd: [ OK ]
...
```

- To display the status again and check that monitoring is now disabled:

```
> service mon_statd status
...
mon_fsstatd is not running
...
```

- To restart the daemon and re-read the configuration file:

```
> service mon_statd restart
...
stopping mon_fsstatd: [ OK ]
starting mon_fsstatd: [ OK ]
...
```

Examples of command-line use

- To start mon_fsstatd with default setting:

```
> mon_fsstatd
```

- To start mon_fsstatd with a sampling interval of 30 seconds:

```
> mon_fsstatd -i 30
```

- To start mon_fsstatd and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_fsstatd -a
```

- To start mon_fsstatd with a sampling interval of 45 seconds and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_fsstatd -a -i 45
```

Usage

Processing monitor data

The feature writes physical file system size data for a Linux guest to the z/VM monitor stream. The following is the format of the file system size data that is passed to the z/VM monitor stream. One sample monitor record is written for each physical file system mounted at the time of the sample interval. The monitor data in each record contains a header, `fsstatd_hdr`, followed by the length of the file system name, then the file system name, then the length of the mount directory name, followed by the mount directory name, then followed by the size information for that file system (as obtained from `statvfs`).

Table 52. File system size data format

Type	Name	Description
<code>__u64</code>	<code>time_stamp</code>	Time at which the file system data was sampled.
<code>__u16</code>	<code>fsstat_data_len</code>	Length of data following this <code>fsstatd_hdr</code> .

Table 52. File system size data format (continued)

Type	Name	Description
__u16	fsstat_data_offset	Offset from start of fsstatd_hdr to start of file system data (that is, to the fields beginning with fs_).
__u16	fs_name_len	Length of the file system name. If the file system name was too long to fit in the monitor record, this is the length of the portion of the name that is contained in the monitor record.
char [fs_name_len]	fs_name	The file system name. If the name is too long to fit in the monitor record, the name is truncated to the length in the fs_name_len field.
__u16	fs_dir_len	Length of the mount directory name. If the mount directory name was too long to fit in the monitor record, this is the length of the portion of the name that is contained in the monitor record.
char[fs_dir_len]	fs_dir	The mount directory name. If the name is too long to fit in the monitor record, the name is truncated to the length in the fs_dir_len field.
__u16	fs_type_len	Length of the mount type. If the mount type is too long to fit in the monitor record, this is the length of the portion that is contained in the monitor record.
char[fs_type_len]	fs_type	The mount type (as returned by getmntent). If the type is too long to fit in the monitor record, the type is truncated to the length in the fs_type_len field.
__u64	fs_bsize	File system block size.
__u64	fs_fsize	Fragment size.
__u64	fs_blocks	Total data blocks in file system.
__u64	fs_bfree	Free blocks in fs.
__u64	fs_bavail	Free blocks avail to non-superuser.
__u64	fs_files	Total file nodes in file system.
__u64	fs_ffree	Free file nodes in fs.
__u64	fs_favail	Free file nodes available to non-superuser.
__u64	fs_flag	Mount flags.

The following data structures map the fixed-length portion of the record above. See /s390-tools/mon_tools/mon_fsstatd.h for these mappings.

```

struct fsstatd_hdr {
    __u64 time_stamp;
    __u16 fsstat_data_len;
    __u16 fsstat_data_offset;
} __attribute__((packed));

struct fsstatd_data {
    __u64 fs_bsize;
    __u64 fs_fsize;
    __u64 fs_blocks;
    __u64 fs_bfree;
    __u64 fs_bavail;
    __u64 fs_type;
    __u64 fs_files;
    __u64 fs_ffree;

```

mon_fsstatd

```
    _u64 fs_favail;  
    _u64 fs_flag;  
  
};
```

The time_stamp should be used to correlate all file systems that were sampled in a given interval.

Note: The data length field (fs_data_len) in the fsstatd_hdr (not the length of the monitor record itself) should be used to determine how much data there is in the monitor record.

Reading the monitor data

As described in the monwriter documentation, all records written to the z/VM monitor stream begin with a product identifier. The product ID is a 16-byte structure of the form pppppppffnvrrmm, where for records written by mon_fsstatd, these values will be:

pppppppp

is a fixed ASCII string LNXAPPL.

ff is the application number for mon_fsstatd = x'0001'.

n is the record number = x'00'.

vv is the version number = x'0000'.

rr is reserved for future use and should be ignored.

mm is reserved for mon_fsstatd and should be ignored.

Note: Though the mod_level field (mm) of the product ID will vary, there is no relationship between any particular mod_level and file system. The mod_level field should be ignored by the reader of this monitor data.

There are many tools available to read z/VM monitor data. One such tool is the Linux monreader character device driver. See Chapter 16, “Reading z/VM monitor records” for more information about monreader.

Further information

- Refer to *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116 for general information on DCSSs.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084 for information on the DIAG x'DC' instruction.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information on the CP commands.
- Refer to *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for information on monitor APPLDATA.

mon_procd – Monitor Linux guest

The **mon_procd** command is a user space daemon that writes system summary information and information of each process for up to 100 concurrent processes that are managed by a Linux guest to the z/VM monitor stream using the monwriter character device driver. You can start the daemon with a service script `/etc/init.d/mon_statd` or call it manually. When it is called with the service utility, it reads the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`.

Before you start:

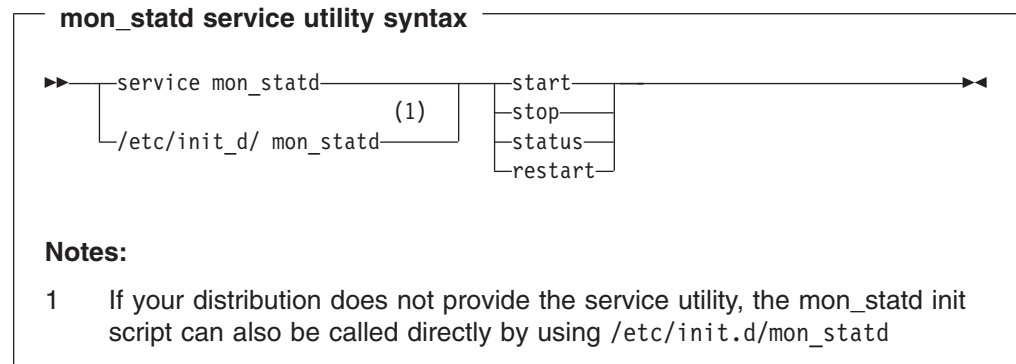
- Install the monwriter device driver and set up z/VM to start the collection of monitor sample data. See Chapter 15, “Writing application APPLDATA records,” on page 201 for information on the setup for and usage of the monwriter device driver.
- Customize the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd` if you plan to call it with the service utility.
- The z/VM virtual machine in which the Linux guest running this daemon resides must have the **OPTION APPLMON** statement in its CP directory entry.

Format

You can run the **mon_procd** command in two ways:

- Calling **mon_procd** with the service utility. Use this method when you have the `mon_statd` service script installed in `/etc/init.d`. This method will read the configuration file `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`. The `mon_statd` service script also controls other daemons, such as `mon_fsstatd`.
- Calling **mon_procd** manually from a command line.

Service utility syntax



Where:

start enables monitoring of guest process data, using the configuration in `/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd`.

stop disables monitoring of guest process data.

status shows current status of guest process data monitoring.

restart

stops and restarts guest process data monitoring. Useful in order to re-read the configuration file when it has changed.

Configuration file keywords:

mon_procd

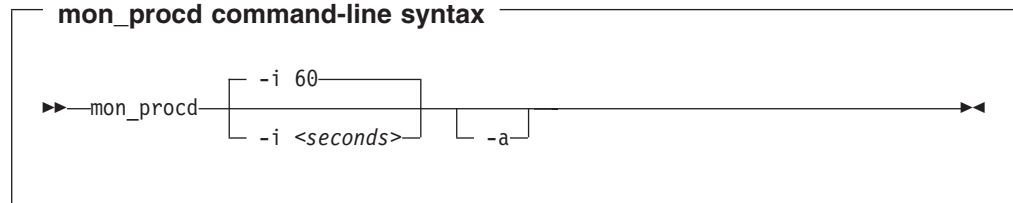
PROC_INTERVAL="*<n>*"

specifies the desired sampling interval in seconds.

PROC="yes | no"

specifies whether to enable the mon_procd daemon. Set to "yes" to enable the daemon. Anything other than "yes" will be interpreted as "no".

Command-line syntax



Where:

-i or --interval *<seconds>*

specifies the desired sampling interval in seconds.

-a or --attach

runs the daemon in the foreground.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command. To view the man page, enter **man mon_procd**.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

Examples

Examples of service utility use

Example configuration file for mon_statd (/etc/sysconfig/mon_statd).

- This example sets the sampling interval to 30 seconds and enables the mon_procd:

```
PROC_INTERVAL="30"
PROC="yes"
```

Example of mon_statd use (note that your output might look different and include messages for other daemons, such as mon_fsstatd):

- To enable guest process data monitoring:

```
> service mon_statd start
...
Starting mon_procd: [ OK ]
...
```

- To display the status:

```
> service mon_statd status
...
mon_procd (pid 1075, interval: 30) is running.
...
```

- To disable guest process data monitoring:

```
> service mon_statd stop
...
Stopping mon_procd: [ OK ]
...
```

- To display the status again and check that monitoring is now disabled:

```
> service mon_statd status
...
mon_procd is not running
...
```

- To restart the daemon and re-read the configuration file:

```
> service mon_statd restart
...
stopping mon_procd: [ OK ]
starting mon_procd: [ OK ]
...
```

Examples of command-line use

- To start mon_procd with default setting:

```
> mon_procd
```

- To start mon_procd with a sampling interval of 30 seconds:

```
> mon_procd -i 30
```

- To start mon_procd and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_procd -a
```

- To start mon_procd with a sampling interval of 45 seconds and have it run in the foreground:

```
> mon_procd -a -i 45
```

Usage

Processing monitor data

The mon_procd daemon writes system summary information and information of each process for up to 100 processes currently being managed by a Linux guest to the z/VM monitor stream. At the time of the sample interval, one sample monitor record is written for system summary data, then one sample monitor record is written for each process for up to 100 processes currently being managed by the Linux guest. If more than 100 processes exist in a Linux guest system at a given time, processes are sorted by the sum of CPU and memory usage percentage values and only the top 100 processes' data is written to the z/VM monitor stream.

The monitor data in each record contains a header, procd_hdr, followed by summary data if the type in the field “record number” of the 16-byte product ID is a summary type or process data if the type in the field “record number” of the 16-byte product ID is a process type. The following is the format of system summary data passed to the z/VM monitor stream.

Table 53. System summary data format

Type	Name	Description
__u64	time_stamp	Time at which the process data was sampled.
__u16	data_len	Length of data following this procd_hdr.
__u16	data_offset	Offset from start of procd_hdr to start of process data.
__u64	uptime	Uptime of the Linux guest system.
__u32	users	Number of users on the Linux guest system.
char[6]	loadavg_1	Load average over the last one minute.
char[6]	loadavg_5	Load average over the last five minutes.
char[6]	loadavg_15	Load average over the last 15 minutes.
__u32	task_total	total number of tasks on the Linux guest system.
__u32	task_running	Number of running tasks.
__u32	task_sleeping	Number of sleeping tasks.
__u32	task_stopped	Number of stopped tasks.
__u32	task_zombie	Number of zombie tasks.
__u64	num_cpus	Number of CPUs.
__u16	puser	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for normal processes executing in user mode).
__u16	pnice	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for niced processes executing in user mode).
__u16	psystem	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for processes executing in kernel mode).
__u16	pidle	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU idle time).
__u16	piowait	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for I/O wait).
__u16	pirq	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for interrupts).
__u16	psoftirq	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time used for softirqs).
__u16	psteal	A number representing (100 * percentage of total CPU time spent in stealing).
__u64	mem_total	Total memory in KB.
__u64	mem_used	Used memory in KB.
__u64	mem_free	Free memory in KB.
__u64	mem_buffers	Memory in buffer cache in KB.
__u64	mem_pgpgin	Data read from disk in KB.
__u64	mem_pgpgout	Data written to disk in KB.
__u64	swap_total	Total swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_used	Used swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_free	Free swap memory in KB.

Table 53. System summary data format (continued)

Type	Name	Description
__u64	swap_cached	Cached swap memory in KB.
__u64	swap_pswpin	Pages swapped in.
__u64	swap_pswpout	Pages swapped out.

The following is the format of a process information data passed to the z/VM monitor stream.

Table 54. Data format passed to the z/VM monitor stream

Type	Name	Description
__u64	time_stamp	Time at which the process data was sampled.
__u16	data_len	Length of data following this procd_hdr.
__u16	data_offset	Offset from start of procd_hdr to start of process data.
__u32	pid	ID of the process.
__u32	ppid	ID of the process parent.
__u32	euclid	Effective user ID of the process owner.
__u16	tty	Device number of the controlling terminal or 0.
__s16	priority	Priority of the process
__s16	nice	Nice value of the process.
__u32	processor	Last used processor.
__u16	pcpu	A number representing (100 * percentage of the elapsed cpu time used by the process since last sampling).
__u16	pmem	A number representing (100 * percentage of physical memory used by the process).
__u64	total_time	Total cpu time the process has used.
__u64	ctotal_time	Total cpu time the process and its dead children has used.
__u64	size	Total virtual memory used by the task in KB.
__u64	swap	Swapped out portion of the virtual memory in KB.
__u64	resident	Non-swapped physical memory used by the task in KB.
__u64	trs	Physical memory devoted to executable code in KB.
__u64	drs	Physical memory devoted to other than executable code in KB.
__u64	share	Shared memory used by the task in KB.
__u64	dt	Dirty page count.
__u64	majflt	Number of major page faults occurred for the process.
char	state	Status of the process.
__u32	flags	The process current scheduling flags.
__u16	ruser_len	Length of real user name of the process owner and should not be larger than 64.
char[ruser_len]	ruser	Real user name of the process owner. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	euser_len	Length of effective user name of the process owner and should not be larger than 64.

Table 54. Data format passed to the z/VM monitor stream (continued)

Type	Name	Description
char[euser_len]	euser	Effective user name of the process owner. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	egroup_len	Length of effective group name of the process owner and should not be larger than 64.
char[egroup_len]	egroup	Effective group name of the process owner. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	wchan_len	Length of sleeping in function's name and should not be larger than 64.
char[wchan_len]	wchan_name	Name of sleeping in function or '-'. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	cmd_len	Length of command name or program name used to start the process and should not be larger than 64.
char[cmd_len]	cmd	Command or program name used to start the process. If the name is longer than 64, the name is truncated to the length 64.
__u16	cmd_line_len	Length of command line used to start the process and should not be larger than 1024.
char [cmd_line_len]	cmd_line	Command line used to start the process. If the name is longer than 1024, the name is truncated to the length 1024.

The following data structures map the fixed-length portion of the record above. See /s390-tools/mon_tools/mon_procd.h for these mappings.

```

struct procd_hdr {
    __u64 time_stamp;
    __u16 data_len;
    __u16 data_offset;
} __attribute__((packed));

struct proc_sum_t {
    __u64 uptime;
    __u32 users;
    char loadavg_1[6];
    char loadavg_5[6];
    char loadavg_15[6];
    struct task_sum_t task;
    struct cpu_t cpu;
    struct mem_t mem;
    struct swap_t swap;
} __attribute__((packed));

struct task_sum_t {
    __u32 total;
    __u32 running;
    __u32 sleeping;
    __u32 stopped;
    __u32 zombie;
};

struct mem_t {
    __u64 total;
    __u64 used;
    __u64 free;
    __u64 buffers;
    __u64 pgpgin;
    __u64 pgpgout;
};

```



```

struct swap_t {
    __u64 total;
    __u64 used;
    __u64 free;
    __u64 cached;
    __u64 pswpin;
    __u64 pswpout;
};
struct cpu_t {
    __u32 num_cpus;
    __u16 puser;
    __u16 pnice;
    __u16 psystem;
    __u16 pidle;
    __u16 piowait;
    __u16 pirq;
    __u16 psoftirq;
    __u16 psteal;
};
struct task_t {
    __u32 pid;
    __u32 ppid;
    __u32 euid;
    __u16 tty;
    __s16 priority;
    __s16 nice;
    __u32 processor;
    __u16 pcpu;
    __u16 pmem;
    __u64 total_time;
    __u64 ctotat_time;
    __u64 size;
    __u64 swap;
    __u64 resident;
    __u64 trs;
    __u64 drs;
    __u64 share;
    __u64 dt;
    __u64 majflt;
    char state;
    __u32 flags;
}__attribute__((packed));

```

The time_stamp should be used to correlate all process information that were sampled in a given interval.

Note: The data length field (data_len) in the procd_hdr (not the length of the monitor record itself) should be used to determine how much data there is in the monitor record.

Reading the monitor data

As described in the monwriter documentation, all records written to the z/VM monitor stream begin with a product identifier. The product ID is a 16-byte structure of the form pppppppffnnvrrmm, where for records written by mon_procd, these values will be:

ppppppp

is a fixed ASCII string LNXAPPL.

ff is the application number for mon_procd = x'0002'.

n is the record number as follows:

- x'00' indicates summary data.
- x'01' indicates task data.

mon_procd

- vv** is the version number = x'0000'.
- rr** is the release number, which can be used to mark different versions of process APPLDATA records.
- mm** is reserved for mon_procd and should be ignored.

Note: Though the mod_level field (mm) of the product ID will vary, there is no relationship between any particular mod_level and process. The mod_level field should be ignored by the reader of this monitor data.

This item uses at most 101 monitor buffer records from the monwriter device driver. Since a maximum number of buffers is set when a monwriter module is loaded, the maximum number of buffers must not be less than the sum of buffer records used by all monwriter applications.

There are many tools available to read z/VM monitor data. One such tool is the Linux monreader character device driver. See Chapter 16, "Reading z/VM monitor records" for more information about monreader.

Further information

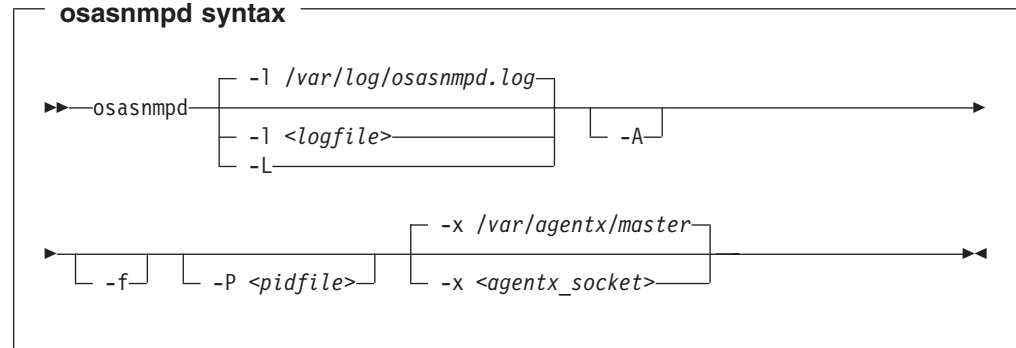
- Refer to *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116 for general information on DCSSs.
- Refer to *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081 for information on the CP commands.
- Refer to *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109 for information on monitor APPLDATA.

osasnmppd – Start OSA-Express SNMP subagent

The **osasnmppd** command is used to start the OSA-Express Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) subagent (osasnmppd).

See Chapter 8, “OSA-Express SNMP subagent support,” on page 147 for information on SNMP agent and osasnmppd subagent setup and usage.

Format



-l or --logfile <logfile>

specifies a file for logging all subagent messages and warnings, including stdout and stderr. If no path is specified, the log file is created in the current directory. The default log file is `/var/log/osasnmppd.log`.

-L or --stderrlog

prints messages and warnings to stdout or stderr.

-A or --append

appends to an existing log file rather than replacing it.

-f or --nofork

prevents forking from the calling shell.

-P or --pidfile <pidfile>

saves the process ID of the subagent in a file `<pidfile>`. If a path is not specified, the current directory is used.

-x or --sockaddr <agentx_socket>

specifies the socket to be used for the AgentX connection. The default socket is `/var/agentx/master`.

The socket can either be a UNIX domain socket path, or the address of a network interface. If a network address of the form `inet-addr:port` is specified, the subagent uses the specified port. If a net address of the form `inet-addr` is specified, the subagent uses the default AgentX port, 705. The AgentX sockets of the `snmpd` daemon and `osasnmppd` must match.

-h or --help

displays help information for the command.

-v or --version

displays version information for the command.

osasnmpd

Examples

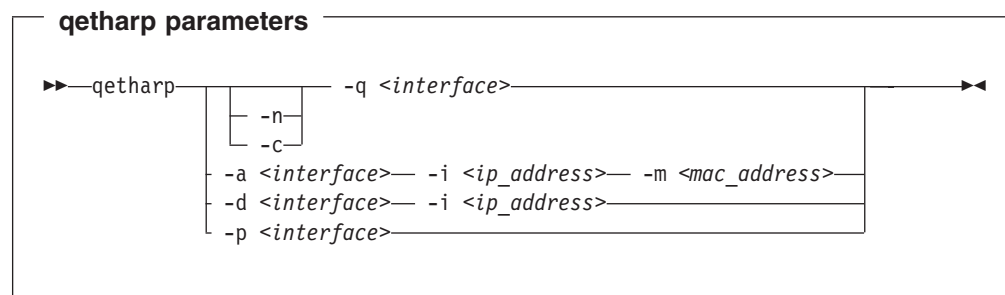
To start the osasnmpd subagent with all default settings:

```
# osasnmpd
```

getharp - Query and purge OSA and HiperSockets ARP data

Use the **getharp** command to query and purge address data such as MAC and IP addresses from the ARP cache of the OSA and HiperSockets hardware. You cannot use this command in conjunction with the layer2 option. For z/VM guest LAN and VSWITCH interfaces in non-layer2 mode, note that only the **--query** option is supported.

Format



The meanings of the parameters of this command are as follows:

-q or --query

shows the address resolution protocol (ARP) information found in the ARP cache of the OSA or HiperSockets, which depends on *interface*. If it is an OSA device, it shows the ARP entries stored in the OSA feature's ARP cache, otherwise, the ones from the HiperSockets ARP cache. If the IP address is an IPv4 address, getharp tries to determine the symbolic host name. If it fails, the IP address will be shown. In case of IPv6, there is currently no attempt to determine host names, so that the IP address will be shown directly.

-n or --numeric

shows numeric addresses instead of trying to determine symbolic host names. This option can only be used in conjunction with the **-q** option.

-c or --compact

limits the output to numeric addresses only. This option can only be used in conjunction with the **-q** option.

<interface>

specifies the qeth interface to which the command applies.

-a or --add

adds a static ARP entry to the OSA adapter card.

<ip_address>

specifies the IP address to be added to the OSA adapter card.

-d or --delete

deletes a static ARP entry from the OSA adapter card.

<mac_address>

specifies the MAC address to be added to the OSA adapter card.

-p or --purge

flushes the ARP cache of the OSA, causing the hardware to regenerate the addresses. This option works only with OSA devices. getharp returns immediately.

qetharp

-v or --version

displays version information and exits

-h or --help

displays usage information and exits. To view the man page, enter **man qetharp**.

Examples

- Show all ARP entries of the OSA defined as eth0:

```
# qetharp -q eth0
```

- Show all ARP entries of the OSA defined as eth0, without resolving host names:

```
# qetharp -nq eth0
```

- Flush the OSA's ARP cache for eth0:

```
# qetharp -p eth0
```

- Add a static entry for eth0 and IP address 1.2.3.4 to the OSA's ARP cache, using MAC address aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff:

```
# qetharp -a eth0 -i 1.2.3.4 -m aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
```

- Delete the static entry for eth0 and IP address 1.2.3.4 from the OSA's ARP cache, using MAC address aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff:

```
# qetharp -d eth0 -i 1.2.3.4
```

qethconf - Configure qeth devices

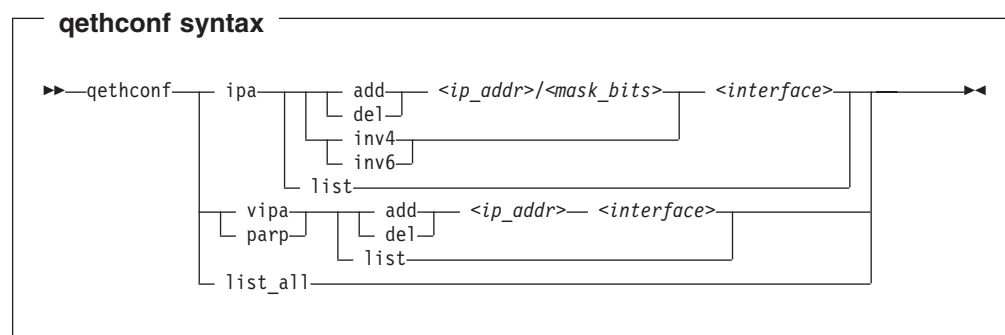
The qethconf configuration tool is a bash shell script that simplifies configuring qeth devices (see Chapter 7, “qeth device driver for OSA-Express (QDIO) and HiperSockets,” on page 95) for:

- IP address takeover
- VIPA (virtual IP address)
- Proxy ARP

You cannot use this command in conjunction with the layer2 option.

From the arguments that are specified, **qethconf** assembles the corresponding function command and redirects it to the respective sysfs attributes. You can also use **qethconf** to list the already defined entries.

Format



The qethconf command has these function keywords:

ipa

configures qeth for IP address takeover (IPA).

vipa

configures qeth for virtual IP address (VIPA).

parp or rxip

configures qeth for proxy ARP.

The qethconf command has these action keywords:

add

adds an IP address or address range.

del

deletes an IP address or address range.

inv4

inverts the selection of address ranges for IPv4 address takeover. This makes the list of IP addresses that has been specified with qethconf add and qethconf del an exclusion list.

inv6

inverts the selection of address ranges for IPv6 address takeover. This makes the list of IP addresses that has been specified with qethconf add and qethconf del an exclusion list.

list

lists existing definitions for specified qeth function.

list_all

lists existing definitions for IPA, VIPA, and proxy ARP.

<ip_addr>

specifies the IP address. Can be specified in one of these formats:

- IP version 4 format, for example, 192.168.10.38
- IP version 6 format, for example, FE80::1:800:23e7:f5db
- 8- or 32-character hexadecimals prefixed with -x, for example, -xc0a80a26

<mask_bits>

specifies the number of bits that are set in the network mask. Allows you to specify an address range.

Example: A **<mask_bits>** of 24 corresponds to a network mask of 255.255.255.0.

<interface>

specifies the name of the interface associated with the specified address or address range.

-h or --help

displays help information. To view the man page, enter **man qethconf**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

- List existing proxy ARP definitions:

```
# qethconf parp list
parp add 1.2.3.4 eth0
```

- Assume responsibility for packages destined for 1.2.3.5:

```
# qethconf parp add 1.2.3.5 eth0
qethconf: Added 1.2.3.5 to /sys/class/net/eth0/device/rxip/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf parp list" to check for the result
```

Confirm the new proxy ARP definitions:

```
# qethconf parp list
parp add 1.2.3.4 eth0
parp add 1.2.3.5 eth0
```

- Configure eth0 for IP address takeover for all addresses that start with 192.168.10:

```
# qethconf ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 eth0
qethconf: Added 192.168.10.0/24 to /sys/class/net/eth0/device/ipa_takeover/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf ipa list" to check for the result
```

Display the new IP address takeover definitions:

```
# qethconf ipa list
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 eth0
```

- Configure VIPA for eth1:


```
# qethconf vipa add 10.99.3.3 eth1
qethconf: Added 10.99.3.3 to /sys/class/net/eth1/device/vipa/add4.
qethconf: Use "qethconf vipa list" to check for the result
```

Display the new VIPA definitions:

```
# qethconf vipa list
vipa add 10.99.3.3 eth1
```

- List all existing IPA, VIPA, and proxy ARP definitions.

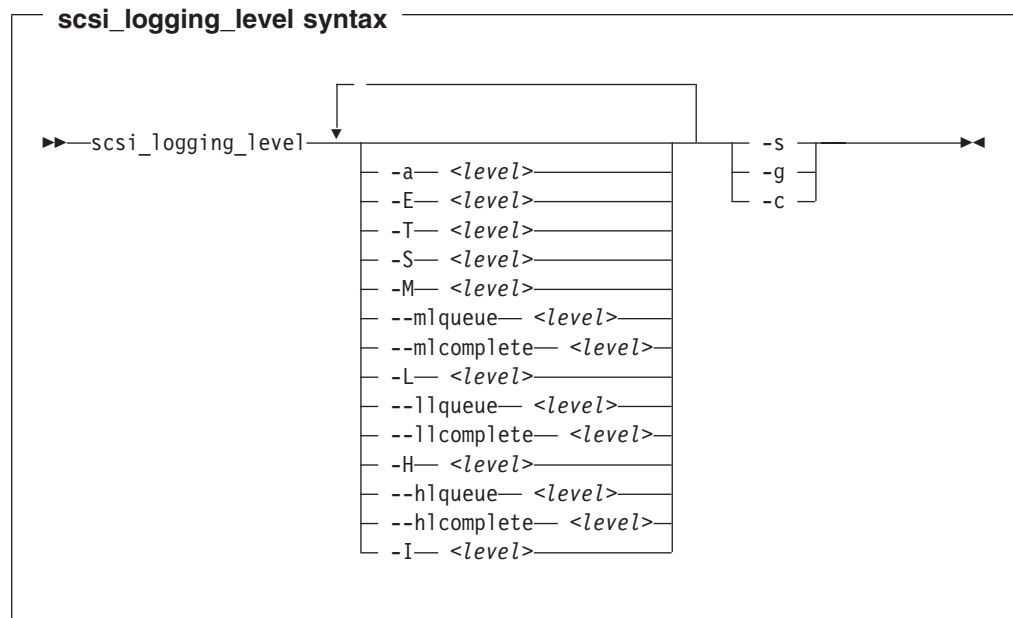
```
# qethconf list_all
parp add 1.2.3.4 eth0
parp add 1.2.3.5 eth0
ipa add 192.168.10.0/24 eth0
vipa add 10.99.3.3 eth1
```

scsi_logging_level - Set and get the SCSI logging level

This command is used to create, set, or get the SCSI logging level.

The SCSI logging feature is controlled by a 32 bit value – the SCSI logging level. This value is divided into 3-bit fields describing the log level of a specific log area. Due to the 3-bit subdivision, setting levels or interpreting the meaning of current levels of the SCSI logging feature is not trivial. The `scsi_logging_level` script helps with both tasks.

Format



Where:

- a** or **--all** *<level>*
specifies value for all SCSI_LOG fields.
- E** or **--error** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_ERROR.
- T** or **--timeout** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT.
- S** or **--scan** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_SCAN.
- M** or **--midlevel** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE and SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE.
- mlqueue** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE.
- mlcomplete** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE.
- L** or **--lowlevel** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE and SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE.

- llqueue** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE.
- llcomplete** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE.
- H** or **--highlevel** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE and SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE.
- hlqueue** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE.
- hlcomplete** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE.
- I** or **--ioctl** *<level>*
specifies SCSI_LOG_IOCTL.
- s** or **--set**
creates and sets the logging level as specified on the command line.
- g** or **--get**
gets the current logging level.
- c** or **--create**
creates the logging level as specified on the command line.
- v** or **--version**
displays version information.
- h** or **--help**
displays help text.

You can specify several SCSI_LOG fields by using several options. When multiple options specify the same SCSI_LOG field the most specific option has precedence.

Examples

- This command displays the logging word of the SCSI logging feature and each logging level.

```
#> scsi_logging_level -g
Current scsi logging level:
dev.scsi.logging_level = 0
SCSI_LOG_ERROR=0
SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT=0
SCSI_LOG_SCAN=0
SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE=0
SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE=0
SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE=0
SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE=0
SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=0
SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=0
SCSI_LOG_IOCTL=0
```

- This command sets all logging levels to 3:

scsi_logging_level

```
#> scsi_logging_level -s -a 3
New scsi logging level:
dev.scsi.logging_level = 460175067
SCSI_LOG_ERROR=3
SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT=3
SCSI_LOG_SCAN=3
SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE=3
SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE=3
SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=3
SCSI_LOG_IOCTL=3
```

- This command sets SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=3, SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=2 and assigns all other SCSI_LOG fields the value 1.

```
# scsi_logging_level --hlqueue 3 --highlevel 2 --all 1 -s
New scsi logging level:
dev.scsi.logging_level = 174363209
SCSI_LOG_ERROR=1
SCSI_LOG_TIMEOUT=1
SCSI_LOG_SCAN=1
SCSI_LOG_MLQUEUE=1
SCSI_LOG_MLCOMPLETE=1
SCSI_LOG_LLQUEUE=1
SCSI_LOG_LLCOMPLETE=1
SCSI_LOG_HLQUEUE=3
SCSI_LOG_HLCOMPLETE=2
SCSI_LOG_IOCTL=1
```

snipl – Simple network IPL (Linux image control for LPAR and z/VM)

This section describes **snipl** version 2.1.6.

snipl (simple network IPL) is a command line tool for *remotely controlling Linux images* using either:

- Basic System z support element (SE) functions for systems running in **LPAR mode**, or
- Basic z/VM system management functions for systems running as a **z/VM guest**.

Note: Be aware that incautious use of **snipl** can result in loss of data.

LPAR mode

In LPAR mode, **snipl** allows you to:

- *Load* (IPL) an LPAR from a device, for example, a DASD device or a SCSI device.
- *Send* and *retrieve* operating system messages.
- *Activate*, *reset*, or *deactivate* an LPAR for I/O-fencing purposes.

Using **snipl** in LPAR mode allows you to overcome the limitations of the SE graphical interface when **snipl** is used for I/O-fencing from within a clustered environment of Linux systems that run in LPAR mode.

snipl uses the network management application programming interfaces (API) provided by the SE, which establishes an SNMP network connection and uses the SNMP protocol to send and retrieve data. The API is called “hwmcaapi”. It has to be available as shared library.

To establish a connection (using a valid community):

- In the SE *SNMP configuration* task, configure the IP address of the initiating system and the community.
- In the SE *settings* task, configure SNMP support.
- In your firewall settings, ensure that UDP port 161 and TCP port 3161 are enabled.

If **snipl** in LPAR mode repeatedly reports a timeout, the target SE is most likely inaccessible or not configured properly. For details on how to configure the SE, refer to *zSeries Application Programming Interfaces*, SB10-7030, or *S/390 Application Programming Interfaces*, SC28-8141, which is obtainable from the following Web site:

www.ibm.com/servers/resource link/

z/VM mode

In z/VM mode, **snipl** allows you to remotely control basic z/VM system management functions. You can:

- *Activate*, *reset*, or *deactivate* an image for I/O-fencing purposes.

snipl in z/VM mode uses the system management application programming interfaces (APIs) of z/VM. To communicate with the z/VM host, **snipl** establishes a network connection and uses the RPC protocol to send and retrieve data.

To establish a connection to the z/VM host, the VSMSEVERE server must be configured and the *vsmap* service must be registered on the target z/VM host. Also, there has to be an account for the specified user ID on the host. If **snipl** in VM

snipl

mode repeatedly reports "RPC: Port mapper failure - RPC timed out", it is most likely that the target z/VM host is inaccessible, or the service is not registered, or the configuration of the VSMERVE server is not correct.

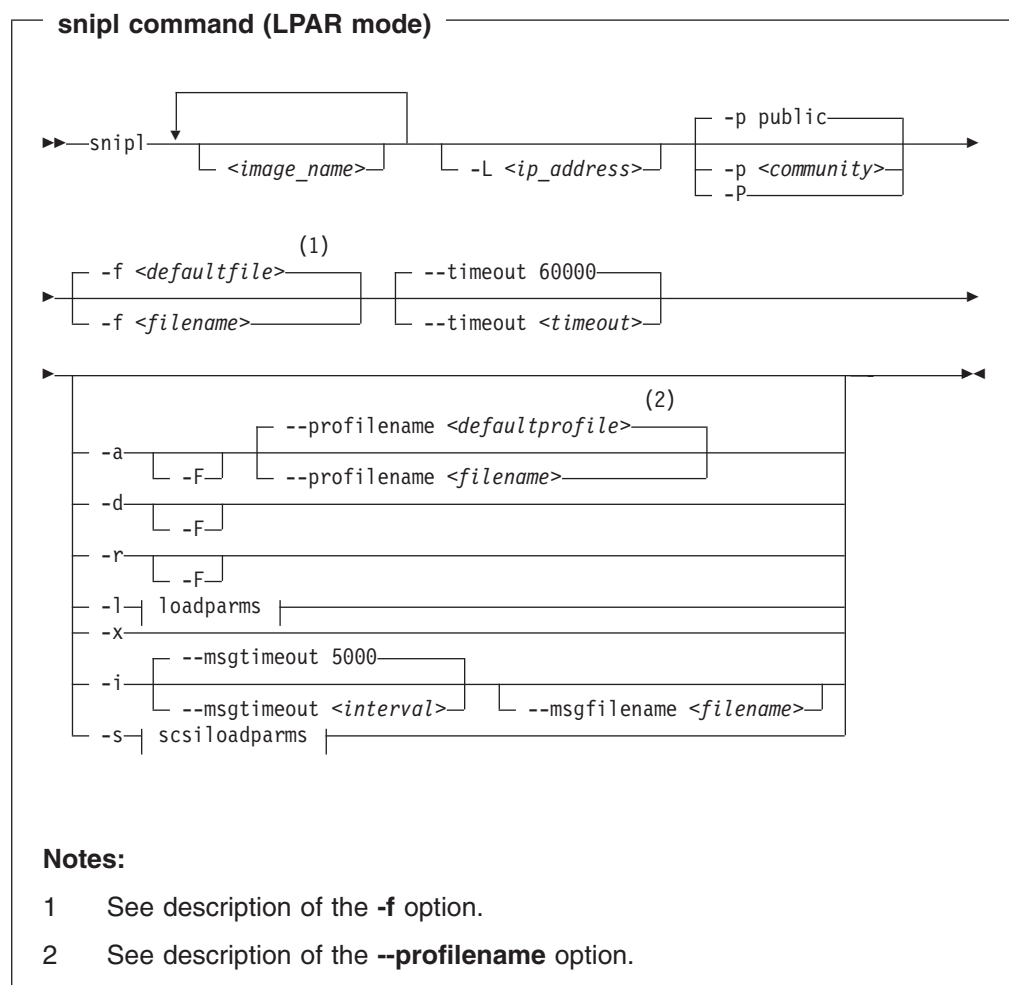
Note: The configuration of VSMERVE requires DIRMAINT authorization.

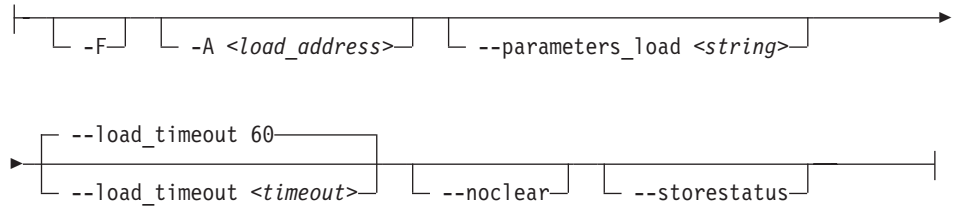
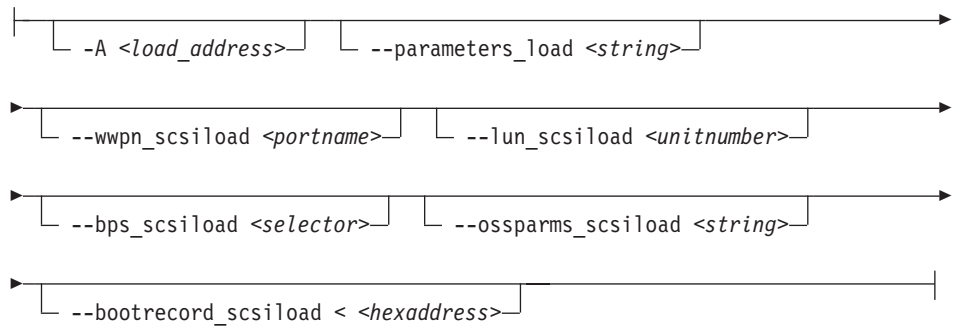
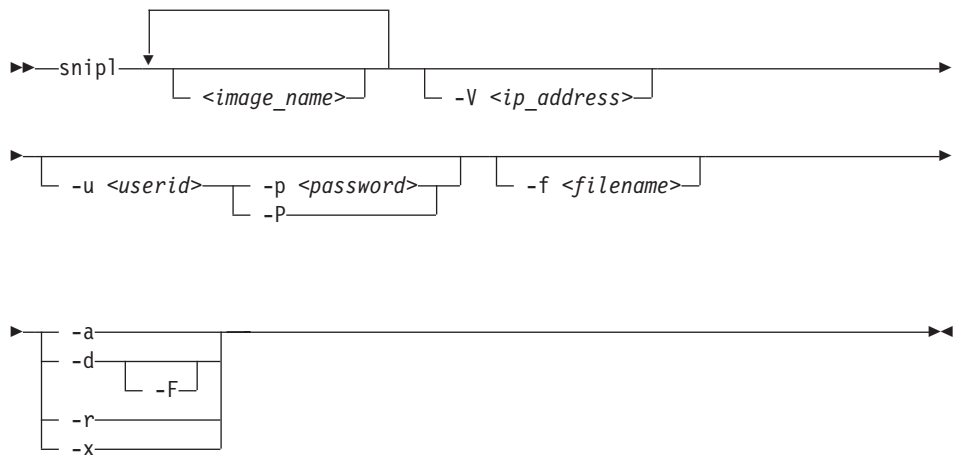
For details about configuration of the VSMERVE server on z/VM refer to *z/VM Systems Management Application Programming*, SC24-6122 obtainable from the following Web site:

www.ibm.com/vm/

Usage

Command line syntax (LPAR mode)



snip1 command (LPAR mode) cont.**loadparms:****snip1 command (LPAR mode) cont.****scsiloadparms:****Command line syntax (VM mode)****snip1 command (VM mode)**

Options and Parameters

<image_name>

specifies the name of the targeted LPAR or z/VM guest. This parameter is required for `--activate`, `--deactivate`, `--reset`, `--load`, and `--dialog`. If the same command is to be performed on more than one image of a given server, more than one **<image_name>** can be specified. Exception: A `--dialog` can only be started with one image.

-V <ip_address> or **--vmserver <ip_address>**

specifies the server to be of type VM. Use this option if the system is running in VM mode. Also specifies the IP-address/host-name of targeted VM-host. This option can also be defined in the configuration file and thus may also be omitted.

-L <ip_address> or **--lparserver <ip_address>**

specifies the server to be of type LPAR. Use this option if the system is running in LPAR mode. Specifies the IP-address/hostname of targeted SE. This option can also be defined in the configuration file and thus may also be omitted.

-u <userid> or **--userid <userid>**

VM only: Specifies the userid used to access the VM-host. If none is given, the configuration file can be used to determine the userid for a given IP-address or z/VM-guest-name.

-p <community> / <password> or **--password <community> / <password>**

- For LPAR mode, the option specifies the **<community>** (HMC term for password) of the initiating host system. The default for **<community>** is "public". The value entered here must match the entry contained in the SNMP configuration settings on the SE.
- For VM mode, specifies the password for the given user ID.

If no password is given, the configuration file can be used to determine the password for a given IP address, LPAR, or z/VM guest name.

-P or **--promptpassword**

lets **snip1** prompt for a password in protected entry mode.

-f <filename> or **--configfilename <filename>**

specifies the name of a configuration file containing HMC/SE IP-addresses together with their community (=password) and z/VM IP-address together with their userid and password followed by a list of controlled LPARnames or VM-guest-names. Default *user-specific filename* is `$HOME/.snip1.conf` and *default system-wide filename* is `/etc/snip1.conf`. Without available configuration file all required options have to be specified with the command. The structure of the configuration file is described below.

--timeout <timeout>

LPAR only: Specifies the timeout in milliseconds for general management API calls. The default is 60000 ms.

-a or **--activate**

issues an activate command for the targeted LPAR or z/VM guest.

--profilename <filename>

LPAR only: In conjunction with `--activate` the option specifies the profile name used on the activate command for LPAR mode. If none is provided, the HMC/SE default profile name for the given image is used.

-d or --deactivate

issues a deactivate command for the target LPAR or z/VM guest.

-F or --force

forces the image operation.

- VM: in conjunction with `--deactivate` non graceful deactivation of the image.
- LPAR: In conjunction with `--activate`, `--deactivate`, `--reset` and `--load` allows unconditional execution of the command regardless of the state of the image.

-r or --reset

issues a reset command for the targeted LPAR(s) or z/VM guest(s).

-x or --listimages

lists all available images for the specified server.

- For z/VM this may be specified with *image*, *server*, *server+user* or *image+user* according to the uniqueness in the configuration file. In case of z/VM the returned list is retrieved from the configuration file only.
- For LPAR just the *server name* is used to retrieve the actual images. The information is directly retrieved from the SE.

-i or --dialog

LPAR only: This option starts an operating system message dialog with the targeted LPAR. It allows the user to enter arbitrary commands, which are sent to the targeted LPAR. In addition, `dialog` starts a background process, which continuously retrieves operating system messages. The output of this polling process is sent to stdout. The operating system messages dialog is aborted by pressing CTRL-D. This also kills the polling process. After the dialog is terminated, **snipl** exits.

--msgtimeout <interval>

LPAR only: In conjunction with `--dialog` this option specifies the interval in milliseconds for management API calls that retrieve operating system messages. The default value is 5000 ms.

-M <filename> or --msgfilename <filename>

LPAR only: In conjunction with `--dialog` this option specifies the name of a file to which the operating system messages are written as well as to stdout. If none is given, operating system messages are written to stdout only.

-l or --load

LPAR only: Issues a load command for the target LPAR.

-A <loadaddress> or --address_load <loadaddress>

LPAR only: In conjunction with `--load` and `--scsiload` this option specifies the load address as four hexadecimal digits. If none is provided, the address of the previous load is used as load address.

--parameters_load <string>

LPAR only: In conjunction with `--load` and `--scsiload` specifies a parameter string for loading. If none is given, the parameter string of the previous load is used. This parameter is used for instance for IPL of z/OS and z/VM.

--noclear

LPAR only: In conjunction with `--load` denies memory clearing before loading. The memory is cleared by default.

--load_timeout <timeout>

LPAR only: In conjunction with **--load** specifies the maximum time for load completion, in seconds. The value must be between 60 and 600 seconds. The default value is 60 seconds.

--storestatus

LPAR only: In conjunction with **--load** requests status before loading. The status is not stored by default.

-s or --scsiload

LPAR only: Issues a SCSI load command for the target LPAR.

--wwpn_scsiload <portname>

LPAR only: Specifies the worldwide port name (WWPN) to be used for **scsiload**. It identifies the Fibre Channel port of the SCSI target device and consists of 16 hexadecimal characters. Smaller specifications are padded with zeroes at the end. If none is given, the worldwide port name of the previous **scsiload** is used.

--lun_scsiload <unitnumber>

LPAR only: Specifies the logical unit number (LUN) defined by FCP to be used for **scsiload**. It consists of 16 hexadecimal characters. Smaller specifications are padded with zeroes at the end. If none is given, the logical unit number of the previous **scsiload** is used.

--bps_scsiload <selector>

LPAR only: Specifies the boot program selector to be used for **scsiload**. It identifies the program to load from the FCP-load device. Valid values range from 0 to 30. This option provides the possibility of having up to 31 different boot configurations on a single SCSI disk device. If none is given, the boot program selector of the previous **scsiload** is used.

--ossparms_scsiload <string>

LPAR only: Specifies an operating-system specific load parameter string for **scsiload**. The field contains a variable number of characters to be used by the program that is loaded during SCSI IPL. This information is given to the IPLed operating system and ignored by the machine loader. The IPLed operating system must support this. If none is given, the parameter string of the previous **scsiload** is used.

--bootrecord_scsiload <hexaddress>

LPAR only: Specifies the boot record logical block address for **scsiload**, if your file system supports dual boot or booting from one of multiple partitions. It consists of 16 hexadecimal characters. Smaller specifications are padded with zeroes at the end. If none is given, the address of the previous **scsiload** is used.

-v or --version

displays the version of **snipl** and exits.

-h or --help

displays a short usage description and exits.

Structure of the configuration file

A configuration file contains a list of addresses (IP-addresses of an SE or a z/VM host), and the host type (LPAR vs. z/VM). The configuration file also contains a list of image names available for control on the subswitch.

- For LPAR, the list of image names can also be retrieved from the SE.

- For z/VM the list can only be retrieved by users with appropriate z/VM access rights. Therefore, a local list must be available.

An alias name to specify a hostname for an image can optionally be specified using the slash-character as a separator in the image name. Both are valid:

```
image = <imagename>
image = <imagename>/<alias>
```

The following is an example for the structure of the **snip1** configuration file:

```
Server = <IP-address>
type = <host-type>
password = <password>
image = <imagename>
image = <imagename>/<alias>
image = <imagename>/<alias>
Server = <IP-address>
type = <host-type>
user = <username>
password = <password>
image = <imagename>
image = <imagename>/<alias>
image = <imagename>
image = <imagename>
```

Blanks and \n are separators. The keywords are not case-sensitive.

snip1 command examples

LPAR mode - Activate:

```
# snip1 LPARLNx1 -L 9.164.70.100 -a -P
Enter password: Warning : No default configuration file could be found/opened.
processing.....
LPARLNx1: acknowledged.
```

LPAR mode - Load using configuration file:

```
# snip1 LPARLNx1 -f xcfg -l -A 5119
Server 9.99.99.99 from config file xcfg is used
processing.....
LPARLNx1: acknowledged.
```

LPAR mode - SCSI load using configuration file:

```
snip1 LPARLNx1 -s -A 5000 --wwpn_scsiload 500507630303c562 --lun_scsiload 4010404900000000
Server 9.99.99.99 from config file /etc/snip1.conf is used
processing...
LPARLNx1: acknowledged.
```

z/VM mode - Activate using configuration file:

```
# snip1 -f xcfg -a vmlnx2 vmlnx1
* ImageActivate : Image vmlnx1 Request Successful
* ImageActivate : Image vmlnx2 Image Already Active
```

Connection errors and exit codes

If a connection error occurs (e.g. *timeout*, or *communication failure*), **snip1** sends an *error code* of the management API and a *message* to stderr. For

- **snip1 --vmserver** the shell exit code is set to "1000 + error code"
- **snip1 --lparsserver** the shell exit code is set to "2000 + error code"

Return codes like

LPARLNX1: not acknowledged – command was not successful – rc is 135921664

are described in “Appendix B” of the HWMCAAPI document *zSeries Application Programming Interfaces*, SB10-7030. You can obtain this publication from the following Web site: www.ibm.com/servers/resourceLink/.

Additionally, the following **snip1** error codes exist. They are accompanied by a short message on stderr:

- | | |
|----|--|
| 1 | An unknown option is specified. |
| 2 | An option with an invalid value is specified. |
| 3 | An option is specified more than once. |
| 4 | Conflicting options are specified. |
| 5 | No command option is specified. |
| 6 | Server is not specified and cannot be determined. |
| 7 | No image is specified. |
| 8 | User-ID is not specified and cannot be determined. |
| 9 | Password is not specified and cannot be determined. |
| 10 | A specified image name does not exist on the server used. |
| 20 | An error occurred while processing the configuration file. |
| 22 | Operation --dialog: More than one image name is specified. |
| 30 | An error occurred while loading one of the libraries <i>libhwmcaapi.so</i> or <i>libvmsmapi.so</i> |
| 40 | Operation --dialog encounters a problem while starting another process. |
| 41 | Operation --dialog encounters a problem with stdin attribute setting. |
| 50 | Response from HMC/SE is cannot be interpreted. |
| 60 | Response buffer is too small for HMC/SE response. |
| 90 | A storage allocation failure occurred. |

If no error occurs, a shell exit code of 0 is returned upon completion of **snip1**.

Recovery

Currently, **snip1** does not

- recover connection failures.
- recover errors in API call execution.

In these cases, it is sufficient to *restart* the tool. Should the problem persist, a networking failure is most likely. In this case, increase the timeout values for **snip1** --lparserver.

STONITH support (snip1 for STONITH)

The STONITH implementation is part of the Heartbeat framework of the High Availability Project (see linux-ha.org/) and STONITH is generally used as part of this framework. It can also be used independently, however. A general description of the STONITH technology can be found at

linux-ha.org/

The STONITH support for **snip1** can be regarded as a driver for one or more virtual power switches controlling a set of Linux images located on LPARs or z/VM instances as z/VM guests. A single LPAR or z/VM host can be seen as a VPS subswitch. STONITH requires the availability of a list of the controllable images by a switch. For this Linux Image Control VPS, the set of controlled images is retrieved from different locations depending on access rights and configuration.

The format of the **snip1** for STONITH configuration file corresponds with the configuration file format of **snip1**, see “Structure of the configuration file” on page 490.

Before you start: The setup requirements for using the STONITH plug-in differ, depending on the environment into which you want to implement it.

- **snip1** for STONITH in LPAR mode:

The SE must be configured to allow the initiating host system to access the network management API. Direct communication with the HMC is not supported.

For details, refer to either of these publications, as applicable:

zSeries Application Programming Interfaces, SB10-7030

S/390 Application Programming Interfaces, SC28-8141

You can obtain these publications from the following Web site:

www.ibm.com/servers/resourceLink/

- **snip1** for STONITH in VM mode:

To communicate with the z/VM host, **snip1** establishes a network connection and uses the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) protocol to send and retrieve data.

Communication with z/VM requires prior configuration of the VSMERVE server on z/VM. For details, refer to:

z/VM Systems Management Application Programming, SC24-6122

You can obtain this publication from the following Web site: www.ibm.com/vm/

Using STONITH: The following examples show how you can invoke STONITH.

- Sample call that passes a configuration file:

```
stonith -t lic_vps -p "snip1_file snip1.conf" -T reset t293043
```

- Equivalent call passing a parameter string:

```
stonith -t lic_vps -p "snip1_param server=boet2930,type=vm\
,user=t2930043,password=passw0rd,image=t2930043" -T reset t2930043
```

tape390_crypt - Manage tape encryption

Use this command to enable and disable tape encryption for a channel attached tape device, as well as to specify key encrypting keys (KEK) by means of labels or hashes.

For 3592 tape devices, it is possible to write data in an encrypted format. The encryption keys are stored on an encryption key manager (EKM) server, which can run on any machine with TCP/IP and Java™ support. The EKM communicates with the tape drive over the tape control unit using TCP/IP. The control unit acts as a proxy and forwards the traffic between the tape drive and the EKM. This type of setup is called “out of band” control-unit based encryption.

The EKM creates a data key that encrypts data. The data key itself is encrypted with KEKs and is stored in so called external encrypted data keys (EEDKs) on the tape medium.

You can store up to two EEDKs on the tape medium. The advantage of having two EEDKs is that one EEDK can contain a locally available KEK and the other can contain the public KEK of the location or company to where the tape is to be transferred. Then the tape medium can be read in both locations.

When the tape device is mounted, the tape drive sends the EEDKs to the EKM, which tries to unwrap one of the two EEDKs and sends back the extracted data key to the tape drive.

Linux can address KEKs by specifying either hashes or labels. Hashes and labels are stored in the EEDKs.

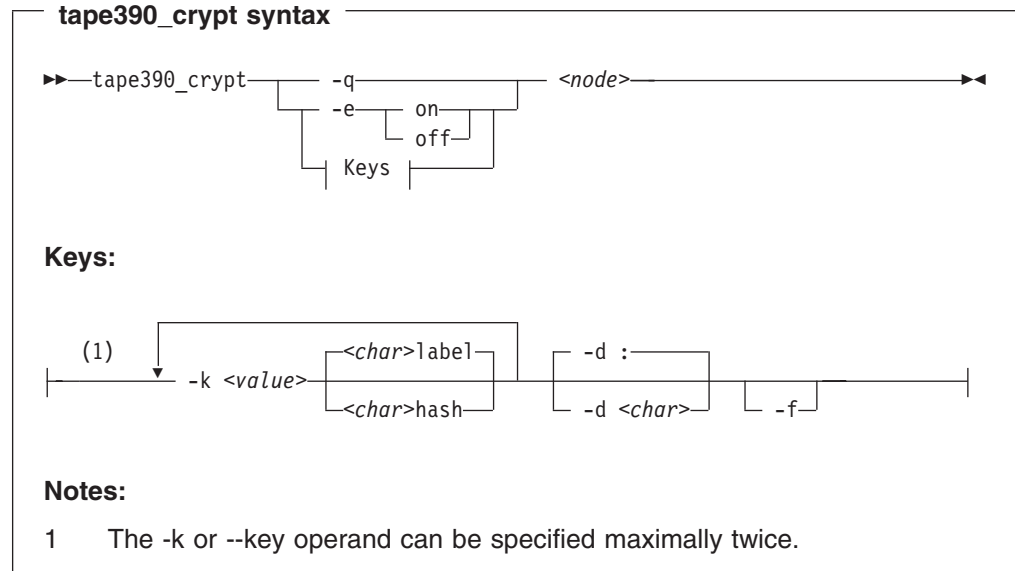
Note: If a tape has been encrypted, it cannot be used for IPL.

Prerequisites

To use tape encryption you need:

- A 3592 crypto-enabled tape device and control unit configured as system-managed encryption.
- A crypto-enabled 3590 channel-attached tape device driver. See Chapter 5, “Channel-attached tape device driver,” on page 75.
- A key manager. See *Encryption Key Manager Component for the Java(TM) Platform Introduction, Planning, and User's Guide*, GA76-0418 for more information.

Format



where:

-q or --query

displays information on the tape's encryption status. If encryption is active and the medium is encrypted, additional information about the encryption keys is displayed.

-e or --encryption

sets tape encryption on or off.

-k or --key

sets tape encryption keys. You can only specify the -k option if the tape medium is loaded and rewound. While processing the -k option, the tape medium is initialized and all previous data contained on the tape medium is lost.

You can specify the -k option twice, because the tape medium can store two EEDKs. If you specify the -k option once, two identical EEDKs are stored.

<value>

specifies the key encrypting key (KEK), which can be up to 64 characters long. The keywords **label** or **hash** specify how the KEK in <value> is to be stored on the tape medium. The default store type is **label**.

-d or --delimiter

specifies the character that separates the KEK in <value> from the store type (label or hash). The default delimiter is ":" (colon).

<char>

is a character separating the KEK in <value> from the store type (label or hash).

-f or --force

specifies that no prompt message is to be issued before writing the KEK information and initializing the tape medium.

<node>

specifies the device node of the tape device.

-h or --help

displays help text. To view the man page, enter **man tape390_crypt**.

-v or --version

displays information about the version.

Examples

This example shows a query of tape device /dev/ntibm0. Initially, encryption for this device is off. Encryption is then turned on, and the status is queried again.

```
tape390_crypt -q /dev/ntibm0
ENCRYPTION: OFF
MEDIUM: NOT ENCRYPTED

tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0

tape390_crypt -q /dev/ntibm0
ENCRYPTION: ON
MEDIUM: NOT ENCRYPTED
```

Then two keys are set, one in label format and one in hash format. The status is queried and there is now additional output for the keys.

```
tape390_crypt -k my_first_key:label -k my_second_key:hash /dev/ntibm0
---->> ATTENTION! <<----
All data on tape /dev/ntibm0 will be lost.
Type "yes" to continue: yes
SUCCESS: key information set.

tape390_crypt -q /dev/ntibm0
ENCRYPTION: ON
MEDIUM: ENCRYPTED
KEY1:
  value: my_first_key
  type: label
  ontape: label
KEY2:
  value: my_second_key
  type: label
  ontape: hash
```

Usage scenarios

The following scenarios illustrate the most common use of tape encryption. In all examples /dev/ntibm0 is used as the tape device.

Using default keys for encryption:

1. Load the cartridge. If the cartridge is already loaded:
 - Switch encryption off:


```
tape390_crypt -e off /dev/ntibm
```
 - Rewind:


```
mt -f /dev/ntibm0 rewind
```
2. Switch encryption on:


```
tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0
```
3. Write data.

Using specific keys for encryption:

1. Load the cartridge. If the cartridge is already loaded, rewind:


```
mt -f /dev/ntibm0 rewind
```

2. Switch encryption on:

```
tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0
```

3. Set new keys:

```
tape390_crypt -k key1 -k key2 /dev/ntibm0
```

4. Write data.

Writing unencrypted data:

1. Load the cartridge. If the cartridge is already loaded, rewind:

```
mt -f /dev/ntibm0 rewind
```

2. If encryption is on, switch encryption off:

```
tape390_crypt -e off /dev/ntibm0
```

3. Write data.

Appending new files to an encrypted cartridge:

1. Load the cartridge

2. Switch encryption on:

```
tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0
```

3. Position the tape.

4. Write data.

Reading an encrypted tape:

1. Load the cartridge

2. Switch encryption on:

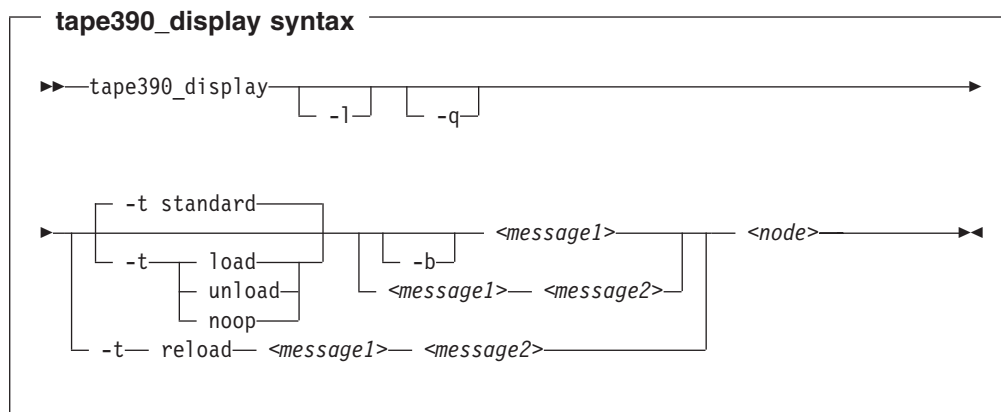
```
tape390_crypt -e on /dev/ntibm0
```

3. Read data.

tape390_display - Display messages on tape devices and load tapes

This command is used to display messages on a physical tape device's display unit, optionally in conjunction with loading a tape.

Format



where:

-l or --load

instructs the tape unit to load the next indexed tape from the automatic tape loader (if installed); ignored if there is no loader installed or if the loader is not in “system” mode. The loader “system” mode allows the operating system to handle tape loads.

-t or --type

The possible values have the following meanings:

standard

displays the message or messages until the physical tape device processes the next tape movement command.

load displays the message or messages until a tape is loaded; if a tape is already loaded, the message is ignored.

unload

displays the message or messages while a tape is loaded; if no tape is loaded, the message is ignored.

reload displays the first message while a tape is loaded and the second message when the tape is removed. If no tape is loaded, the first message is ignored and the second message is displayed immediately. The second message is displayed until the next tape is loaded.

noop is intended for test purposes only. It accesses the tape device but does not display the message or messages.

-b or --blink

causes *<message1>* to be displayed repeatedly for 2 seconds with a half-second pause in between.

<message1>

is the first or only message to be displayed. The message can be up to 8 byte.

<message2>

is a second message to be displayed alternately with the first, at 2 second intervals. The message can be up to 8 byte.

<node>

is a device node of the target tape device

-q or --quiet

suppresses all error messages.

-h or --help

displays help text. To view the man page, enter **man tape390_display**.

-v or --version

displays information about the version.

Notes:

1. Symbols that can be displayed include:

Alphabetic characters:

A through Z (uppercase only) and spaces. Lowercase letters are converted to uppercase.

Numeric characters:

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

Special characters:

@ \$ # , . / ' () * & + - = % : _ < > ? ;

The following are included in the 3490 hardware reference but might not display on all devices: | ¢

2. If only one message is defined, it remains displayed until the tape device driver next starts to move or the message is updated.
3. If the messages contain spaces or shell-sensitive characters, they must be enclosed in quotation marks.

Examples

The following examples assume that you are using standard devices nodes and not device nodes created by udev:

- Alternately display "BACKUP" and "COMPLETE" at two second intervals until device /dev/ntibm0 processes the next tape movement command:

```
tape390_display BACKUP COMPLETE /dev/ntibm0
```
- Display the message "REM TAPE" while a tape is in the physical tape device followed by the message "NEW TAPE" until a new tape is loaded:

```
tape390_display --type reload "REM TAPE" "NEW TAPE" /dev/ntibm0
```
- Attempts to unload the tape and load a new tape automatically, the messages are the same as in the previous example:

```
tape390_display -l -t reload "REM TAPE" "NEW TAPE" /dev/ntibm0
```

tunedasd - Adjust DASD performance

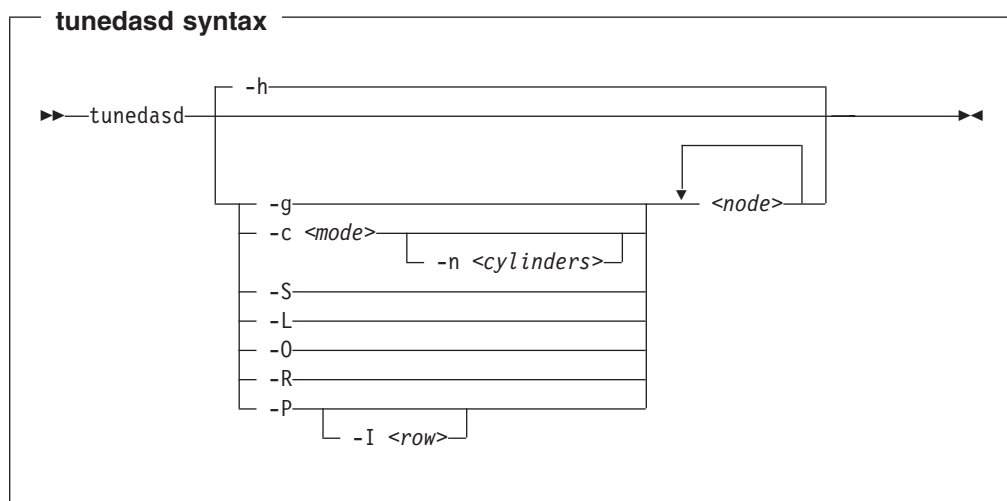
Use **tunedasd** to:

- Display and reset DASD performance statistics
- Query and set a DASD's cache mode
- Reserve and release DASD
- Breaking the lock of a known DASD (for accessing a boxed DASD while booting Linux see "Accessing DASD by force" on page 39)

Before you start: For the performance statistics:

- Your kernel needs to have been compiled with the kernel configuration option CONFIG_DASD_PROFILE (see "Building a kernel with the DASD device driver" on page 31).
- Data gathering must have been switched on by writing "on" to /proc/dasd/statistics.

Format



Where:

<node>

specifies a device node for the DASD to which the command is to be applied.

-g or **--get_cache**

gets the current caching mode of the storage controller. This option applies to ECKD only.

-c <mode> or **--cache <mode>**

Sets the caching mode on the storage controller to **<mode>**. This option applies to ECKD only.

Today's ECKD devices support the following behaviors:

normal	for normal cache replacement.
bypass	to bypass cache.
inhibit	to inhibit cache.
sequential	for sequential access.
prestige	for sequential prestage.

record for record access.

For details, refer to *IBM TotalStorage® Enterprise Storage Server® System/390 Command Reference 2105 Models E10, E20, F10, and F20*, SC26-7295.

-n <cylinders> or --no_cyl <cylinders>
specifies the number of cylinders to be cached. This option applies to ECKD only.

-S or --reserve
reserves the device. This option applies to ECKD only.

-L or --release
releases the device. This option applies to ECKD only.

-O or --slock
unconditionally reserves the device. This option applies to ECKD only.

Note: This option is to be used with care as it breaks any existing reserve by another operating system.

-R or --reset_prof
resets the profile information of the device.

-P or --profile
displays a usage profile of the device.

-I <row> or --prof_item <row>
displays the usage profile item specified by <row>. <row> can be one of:

reqs	number of DASD I/O requests
sects	number of 512 byte sectors
sizes	histogram of sizes
total	histogram of I/O times
totsect	histogram of I/O times per sector
start	histogram of I/O time till ssch
irq	histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq
irqsect	histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq per sector
end	histogram of I/O time between irq and end
queue	number of requests in the DASD internal request queue at enqueueing

-v or --version
displays version information.

-h or --help
displays help information. To view the man page, enter **man tunedasd**.

Examples

- This example first queries the current setting for the cache mode of a DASD with device node /dev/dasdzzz and then sets it to 1 cylinder "prestage".

```
# tunedasd -g /dev/dasdzzz
normal (0 cyl)
# tunedasd -c prestage -n 2 /dev/dasdzzz
Setting cache mode for device </dev/dasdzzz>...
Done.
# tunedasd -g /dev/dasdzzz
prestage (2 cyl)
```

- In this example two device nodes are specified. The output is printed for each node in the order in which the nodes were specified.

```
# tunedasd -g /dev/dasdzzz /dev/dasdzzz
prestage (2 cyl)
normal (0 cyl)
```

- The following command displays the usage profile of a DASD.

```
# tunedasd -P /dev/dasdzzz

19617 dasd I/O requests
with 4841336 sectors(512B each)

  <4      8      16      32      64      128      256      512      1k      2k      4k      8k      16k      32k      64k      128k
  256     512     1M     2M     4M     8M     16M     32M     64M    128M    256M    512M    1G     2G     4G     >4G
Histogram of sizes (512B secs)
0 0 0 441 77 78 87 188 18746 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Histogram of I/O times (microseconds)
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 235 150 297 18683 241 3 4 4
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Histogram of I/O times per sector
0 0 0 0 18736 333 278 94 78 97 1 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Histogram of I/O time till ssch
19234 40 32 0 2 0 0 3 40 53 128 85 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 387 208 250 18538 223 3 4 4
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Histogram of I/O time between ssch and irq per sector
0 0 0 18803 326 398 70 19 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Histogram of I/O time between irq and end
18520 735 246 68 43 4 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
# of req in chanq at enqueueing (1..32)
0 19308 123 30 25 130 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

- The following command displays a row of the usage profile of a DASD. The output is on a single line as indicated by the (cont...) (... cont) in the illustration:

```
# tunedasd -P -I irq /dev/dasdzzz
0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 503| 271|(cont...)
(... cont) 267| 18544| 224| 3| 4| 4| 0| 0| 0|(cont...)
(... cont) 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0|(cont...)
(... cont) 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0| 0|(cont...)
```

vmcp - Send CP commands to the z/VM hypervisor

vmcp is used to:

- Send control program (CP) commands to the VM hypervisor.
- Display VM's response.

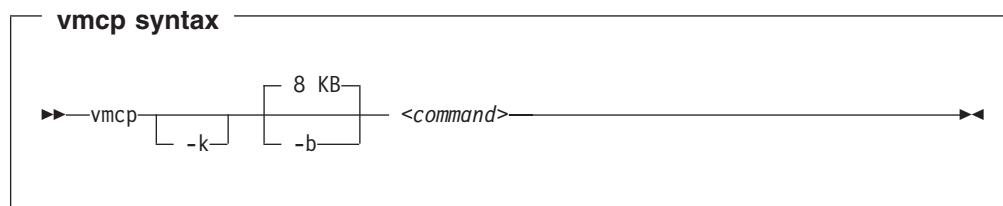
The **vmcp** command expects the command line as a parameter and returns the response to stdout. Error messages are written to stderr.

You can issue **vmcp** commands using the /dev/vmcp device node (see Chapter 22, “z/VM CP interface device driver,” on page 243) or with the user space tool vmcp. In both cases, the vmcp module must be loaded or compiled in the kernel. Distributors should consider providing a boot script that automatically loads the module if the Linux instance runs as a guest operating system of the z/VM hypervisor.

The vmcp tool can coexist with the cpint package.

Before you start: Ensure that vmcp is loaded by issuing: modprobe vmcp.

Format



Where:

-k or --keepcase

converts the first word of the command to uppercase. Without this option, the complete command line is replaced by uppercase characters.

-b <size> or --buffer <size>

specifies the buffer size in bytes for VM's response. Valid values are from 4096 (or 4k) up to 1048756 (or 1M). By default, **vmcp** allocates an 8192 byte (8k) buffer. You can use k and M to specify kilo- and megabytes.

<command>

specifies the command you want to send to CP.

-h or --help

displays help information. To view the man page, enter **man vmcp**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

If the command completes successfully, **vmcp** returns 0. Otherwise, **vmcp** returns one of the following values:

1. CP returned a non-zero response code.
2. The specified buffer was not large enough to hold CP's response. The command was executed, but the response was truncated. You can use the **--buffer** option to increase the response buffer.

vmcp

3. Linux reported an error to **vmcp**. See the error message for details.
4. The options passed to **vmcp** were erroneous. See the error messages for details.

Examples

- To get your user ID issue:

```
# vmcp query userid
```

- To attach the device 1234 to your guest, issue:

```
# vmcp attach 1234 \*
```

- If you add the following line to /etc/sudoers:

```
ALL ALL=NOPASSWD:/sbin/vmcp indicate
```

every user on the system can run the indicate command using:

```
# sudo vmcp indicate
```

- If you need a larger response buffer, use the --buffer option:

```
# vmcp --buffer=128k q 1-ffff
```

vmur - Work with z/VM spool file queues

The **vmur** command provides all functions required to work with z/VM spool file queues:

Receive

Read data from the z/VM reader file queue. The command performs the following steps:

- Places the reader queue file to be received at the top of the queue.
- Changes the reader queue file attribute to NOHOLD.
- Closes the z/VM reader after reading the file.

Punch or print

Write data to the z/VM punch or printer file queue and transfer it to another user's virtual reader, optionally on a remote z/VM node. The data is sliced up into 80-byte or 132-byte chunks (called *records*) and written to the punch or printer device. If the data length is not an integer multiple of 80 or 132, the last record is padded with 0x00.

List

displays detailed information about one or all files on the specified spool file queue.

Purge removes one or all files on the specified spool file queue.

Order positions a file at the top of the specified spool file queue.

The **vmur** command provides strict serialization of all its functions other than list, which does not affect a file queue's contents or sequence. Thus concurrent access to spool file queues is blocked in order to prevent unpredictable results or destructive conflicts.

For example, this serialization prevents a process from issuing `vmur purge -f` while another process is executing `vmur receive 1234`. However, **vmur** is not serialized against concurrent CP commands issued through **vmcp**: if one process is executing `vmur receive 1234` and another process issues `vmcp purge rdr 1234`, then the received file might be incomplete. To avoid such unwanted effects use **vmur** exclusively when working with z/VM spool file queues.

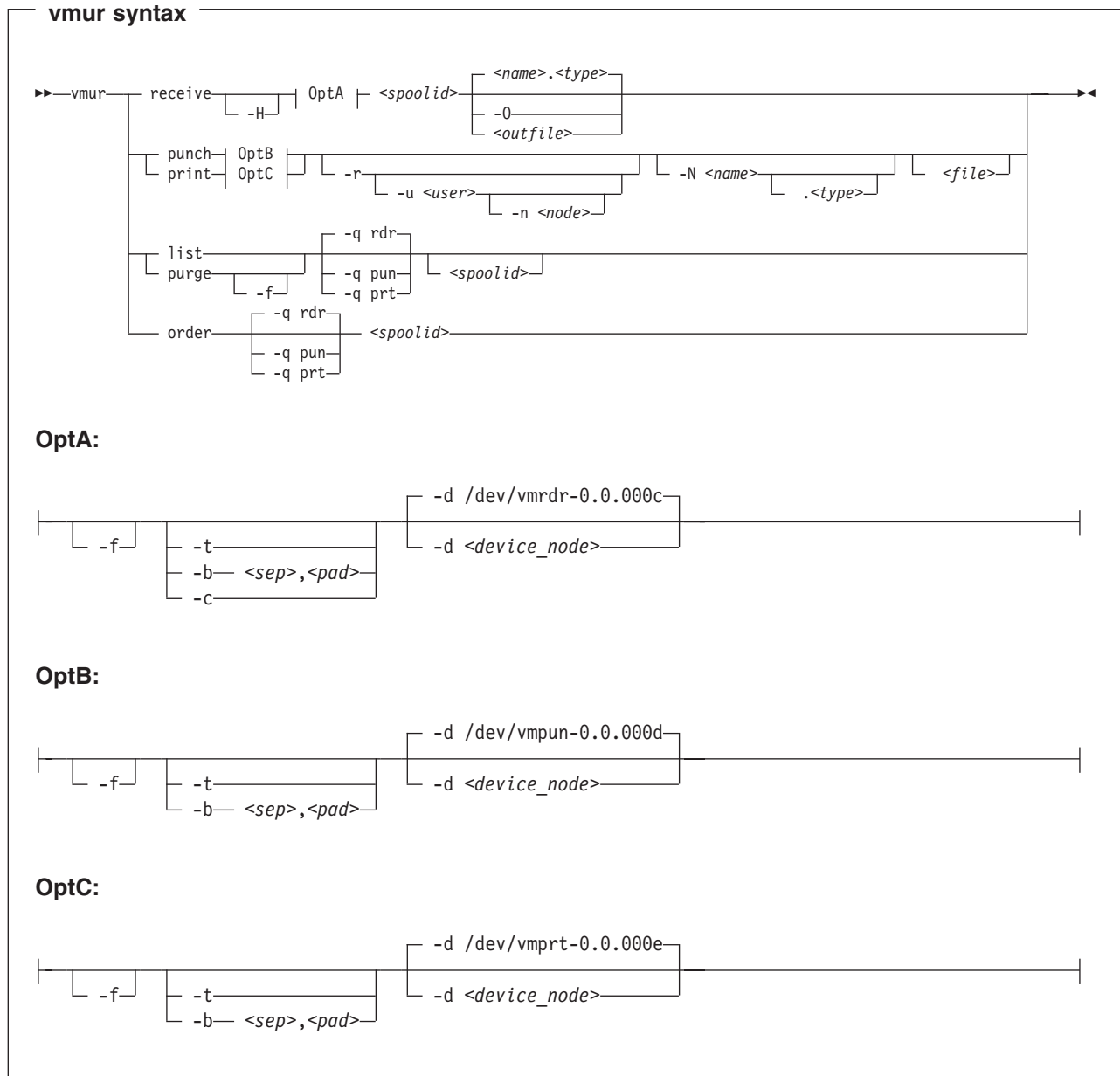
The **vmur** command detects z/VM reader queue files in:

- VMDUMP format as created by CP VMDUMP.
- NETDATA format as created by CMS SENDFILE or TSO XMIT.

Before you start:

- Ensure that vmcp module is loaded by issuing: `modprobe vmcp`
- To use the receive, punch, and print functions, the vmur device driver must be loaded and the respective unit record devices must be set online.

Format



Where:

re or receive

specifies that a file on the z/VM reader queue is to be received.

pun or punch

specifies that a file is to be written to the z/VM punch queue.

li or list

specifies that information on one or all files on a z/VM spool file queue is to be listed.

pur or purge

specifies that one or all files on a z/VM spool file queue is to be purged.

or or order

specifies that a file on a z/VM spool file queue is to be ordered, that is to be placed on top of the queue.

Note: The short forms given for receive, punch, print, list, purge, and order are the shortest forms possible. As is common in z/VM, you can use any form of these keywords that contain the minimum form. For example, vmur re, vmur rec, or vmur rece are all equivalent.

-d or --device

specifies the device node of the virtual unit record device.

- If omitted in the receive function, /dev/vmrdrr-0.0.000c is assumed.
- If omitted in the punch function, /dev/vmpun-0.0.000d is assumed.
- If omitted in the print function, /dev/vmprt-0.0.000e is assumed.

-q or --queue

specifies the z/VM spool file queue to be listed, purged or ordered. If omitted, the reader file queue is assumed.

-t or --text

specifies a text file requiring EBCDIC-to-ASCII conversion (or vice versa) according to character sets IBM037 and ISO-8859-1.

- For the receive function: specifies to receive the reader file as text file, that is, perform EBCDIC-to-ASCII conversion and insert an ASCII line feed character (0x0a) for each input record read from the z/VM reader. Trailing EBCDIC blanks (0x40) in the input records are stripped.
- For the punch or print function: specifies to punch the input file as text file, that is, perform ASCII-to-EBCDIC conversion and pad each input line with trailing blanks to fill up the record. The record length is 80 for a punch and 132 for a printer. If an input line length exceeds 80 or 132 for punch or print, respectively, an error message is issued.

The --text and the --blocked attributes are mutually exclusive.

-b <sep, pad> or --blocked <sep, pad>

specifies that the file has to be received or written using the blocked mode. As parameter for the -b option, specify the hex codes of the separator and the padding character. Example:

```
--blocked 0xSS,0xPP
```

Use this option if you need to use character sets other than IBM037 and ISO-8859-1 for conversion.

- For the receive function: All trailing padding characters are removed from the end of each record read from the virtual reader and the separator character is inserted afterwards. The receive function's output can be piped to **iconv** using the appropriate character sets. Example:

```
# vmur rec 7 -b 0x25,0x40 -0 | iconv -f EBCDIC-US -t ISO-8859-1 > myfile
```

- For the punch or print function: The separator is used to identify the line end character of the file to punch or print. If a line has less characters than the record length of the used unit record device, the residual of the record is filled up with the specified padding byte. If a line exceeds the record size, an error is printed. Example:

```
# iconv test.txt -f ISO-8859-1 -t EBCDIC-US | vmur pun -b 0x25,0x40 -N test
```

-c or --convert

converts the VMDUMP spool file into a format appropriate for further analysis with crash or lcrash.

-r or --rdr

specifies that the punch or print file is to be transferred to a reader.

-u <user> or --user <user>

specifies the z/VM user ID to whose reader the data is to be transferred. If user is omitted, the data is transferred to your own machine's reader. The user option is only valid if the -r option has been specified.

-n <node> or --node <node>

specifies the z/VM node ID of the z/VM system to which the data is to be transferred. Remote Spooling Communications Subsystem (RSCS) must be installed on the z/VM systems and the specified node ID must be defined in the RSCS machine's configuration file. If node is omitted, the data is transferred to the specified user at your local z/VM system. The node option is only valid, if the -u option has been specified.

-f or --force

suppresses confirmation messages.

- For the receive function: specifies that *<outfile>* is to be overwritten without displaying any confirmation message.
- For the purge function: specifies that the spool files specified are to be purged without displaying any confirmation message.
- For the punch or print option: convert Linux input file name to valid spool file name automatically without any error message.

-O or --stdout

specifies that the reader file's contents are written to standard output.

-N or --name

specifies a name and, optionally, a type for the z/VM spool file to be created by the punch or print option. To specify a type, after the file name enter a period followed by the type. For example:

```
# vmur pun -r /boot/parmfile -N myname.mytype
```

Both the name and the type must comply to z/VM file name rules (that is, must be one to eight characters long).

If omitted, the Linux input file name (if any) is used instead. Use the --force option to enforce valid spool file names and types.

-H or --hold

specifies that the spool file to be received remains in the reader queue. If omitted, the spool file is purged.

<spoolid>

denotes the spool ID that identifies a file belonging to z/VM's reader, punch or printer queue. The spool ID must be a decimal number in the range 0-9999. If the spool ID is omitted in the list or purge function, all files on the respective queue are listed or purged.

<outfile>

specifies the name of the output file to receive the reader spool file's data. If both *<outfile>* and --stdout are omitted, name and type of the spool file to be received (see the NAME and TYPE columns in **vmur list** output) are

taken to build the output file `<name>.<type>`. If the spool file to be received is an unnamed file, an error message is issued.

`<file>` specifies the file data to be punched or printed. If file is omitted, the data is read from standard input.

-h or --help

displays short information on command usage. To view the man page, enter **man vmur**.

-v or --version

displays version information.

Examples

This section illustrates common scenarios for unit record devices. In all examples the following device nodes are used:

- `/dev/vmrdr-0.0.000c` as virtual reader.
- `/dev/vmpun-0.0.000d` as virtual punch.

Besides the vmur device driver and the **vmur** command these scenarios require that:

- The **vmcp** module must be loaded.
- The **vmcp** and **vmconvert** commands from the s390-tools package must be available.

Produce and read Linux guest machine dump

1. Produce guest machine dump:

```
# vmcp vmdump /* Patience required ... */
```

2. Find spool ID of VMDUMP spool file in the output of the **vmur li** command:

```
# vmur li

ORIGINID FILE CLASS RECORDS CPY HOLD DATE TIME NAME TYPE DIST
T6360025 0463 V DMP 00020222 001 NONE 06/11 15:07:42 VMDUMP FILE T6360025
```

In the example above the required VMDUMP file spool ID is 463.

3. Read and convert the VMDUMP spool file to a file on the Linux file system in the current working directory:

```
# vmur rec 463 -c linux_dump
```

Using FTP to receive and convert a dump file: You can use the `--convert` option together with the `--stdout` option to receive a VMDUMP spool file straight from the VM reader queue, convert it, and send it to another host using FTP:

1. Establish an FTP session with the target host and login.
2. Enter the FTP command binary.
3. Enter the FTP command:

```
put |"vmur re <spoolid> -c -0" <filename_on_target_host>
```

Log and read Linux guest machine console

1. Begin console spooling:

```
# vmcp sp cons start
```

2. Produce output to VM console (for example, with CP TRACE).
3. Close the console file and transfer it to the reader queue, find the spool ID behind the FILE keyword in the corresponding CP message. In the example below, the spool ID is 398:

```
# vmcp sp cons clo \* rdr
RDR FILE 0398 SENT FROM T6360025 CON WAS 0398 RECS 1872 CPY 001 T NOHOLD NOKEEP
```

4. Read the guest machine console file into a file on the Linux file system in the current working directory:

```
# vmur re -t 398 linux_cons
```

Prepare z/VM reader to IPL Linux image

1. Send parmfile to VM punch and transfer it to the reader queue:

```
# vmur pun -r /boot/parmfile
```

2. Find the parmfile spool ID in message:

```
Reader file with spoolid 0465 created.
```

3. Send image to VM punch and transfer it to reader queue:

```
# vmur pun -r /boot/vmlinuz -N image
```

Find the image spool ID in message:

```
Reader file with spoolid 0466 created.
```

4. (Optional) Check the spool IDs of image and parmfile in the reader queue:

```
# vmur li
```

ORIGINID	FILE	CLASS	RECORDS	CPY	HOLD	DATE	TIME	NAME	TYPE	DIST
T6360025	0463	V	DMP	00020222	001	NONE	06/11 15:07:42	VMDUMP	FILE	T6360025
T6360025	0465	A	PUN	00000002	001	NONE	06/11 15:30:31	parmfile		T6360025
T6360025	0466	A	PUN	00065200	001	NONE	06/11 15:30:52	image		T6360025

In this example the parmfile spool ID is 465 and the image spool ID is 466.

5. Move image to first and parmfile to the second position in the reader queue:

```
# vmur or 465
# vmur or 466
```

6. Prepare re-IPL from the VM reader:

```
# echo 0.0.000c > /sys/firmware/reipl/ccw/device
```

7. Boot the Linux image in the VM reader:

```
# reboot
```

Send VM PROFILE EXEC to different Linux guest machines

This scenario describes how to send a file called `vmprofile.exe` from the Linux file system to other Linux guest machines. The file contains the VM PROFILE EXEC file.

1. Send `vmprofile.exe` (configuration file containing CP and CMS commands to customize a virtual machine) to two other Linux guest machines: user ID `t2930020` at node ID `boet2930` and user ID `t6360025` at node ID `boet6360`.

```
vmur pun vmprofile.exe -t -r -u t2930020 -n boet2930 -N PROFILE
vmur pun vmprofile.exe -t -r -u t6360025 -n boet6360 -N PROFILE
```

2. Logon to `t2930020` at `boet2930`, IPL CMS, and issue the CP command:

```
QUERY RDR ALL
```

Find the spool ID of PROFILE in the FILE column.

3. Issue the CMS command:

```
RECEIVE <spoolid> PROFILE EXEC A (REPL
```

4. Logon to `t6360025` at `boet6360`, IPL CMS, and issue the CP command:

```
QUERY RDR ALL
```

Find the spool ID of PROFILE in the FILE column.

5. Issue the CMS command:

```
RECEIVE <spoolid> PROFILE EXEC A (REPL
```

Send VSE job to VSE guest machine

This scenario describes how to send a file containing a VSE job to a VSE guest machine.

To send `lserv.job` (file containing VSE job control and JECL commands) to user ID `vseuser` at node ID `vse01sys`, issue:

```
vmur pun lserv.job -t -r -u vseuser -n vse01sys -N LSERV
```

znetconf - List and configure network devices

The **znetconf** command:

- Lists potential network devices.
- Lists configured network devices.
- Automatically configures and adds network devices.
- Removes network devices.

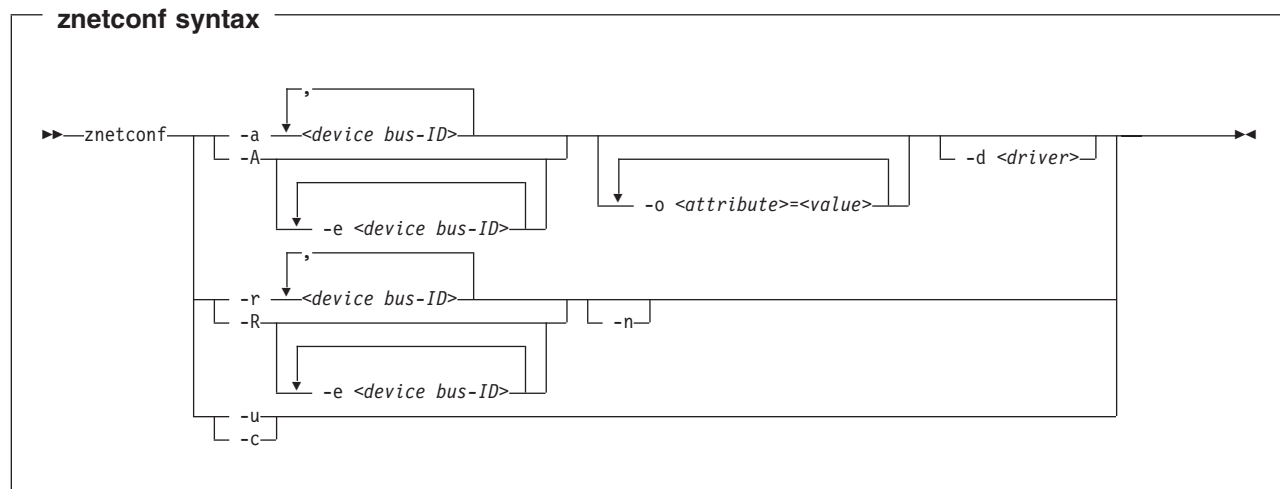
For automatic configuration, **znetconf** first builds a channel command word (CCW) group device from sensed CCW devices. It then configures any specified option through the sensed network device driver and sets the new network device online.

During automatic removal, **znetconf** sets the device offline and removes it.

Attention: Removing all network devices might lead to complete loss of network connectivity. You might require the HMC or a 3270 terminal session to restore the connectivity.

Before you start: The qeth, ctcn or lcs device drivers must be part of the compiled kernel or loaded as modules. If needed, the **znetconf** command attempts to load the particular device driver.

Format



Where:

-a or --add

configures the network device with the specified device bus-ID. You can enter a list of device bus-IDs separated by commas. The **znetconf** command does not check the validity of the combination of device bus-IDs.

<device bus-ID>

specifies the device bus-ID of the CCW devices constituting the network device. If a device bus-ID begins with "0.0.", you can abbreviate it to the final four hexadecimal digits. For example, you can abbreviate 0.0.f503 to f503.

-A or --add-all

configures all potential network devices. After running **znetconf -A**, enter

znetconf -c to see which devices have been configured. You can also enter **znetconf -u** to display devices that have not been configured.

- e** or **--except**
omits the specified devices when configuring all potential network devices or removing all configured network devices.
- o** or **--option** *<attribute>=<value>*
configures devices using the specified sysfs option.
- d** or **--driver** *<driver name>*
configures devices using the specified device driver. Valid values are qeth, lcs, ctc, or ctcn.
- n** or **--non-interactive**
answers all confirmation questions with "Yes".
- r** or **--remove**
removes the network device with the specified device bus-ID. You can enter a list of device bus-IDs separated by a comma. You can only remove configured devices as listed by **znetconf -c**.
- R** or **--remove-all**
removes all configured network devices. After successfully running this command, all devices listed by **znetconf -c** become potential devices listed by **znetconf -u**.
- u** or **--unconfigured**
lists all network devices that are not yet configured.
- c** or **--configured**
lists all configured network devices.
- h** or **--help**
displays short information about command usage. To view the man page, enter **man znetconf**.
- v** or **--version**
displays version information.

If the command completes successfully, **znetconf** returns 0. Otherwise, 1 is returned.

Examples

- To list all potential network devices:

```
# znetconf -u
Device IDs           Type   Card Type  CHPID Drv.
-----
0.0.f500,0.0.f501,0.0.f502 1731/01 OSA (QDIO) 00   qeth
0.0.f503,0.0.f504,0.0.f505 1731/01 OSA (QDIO) 01   qeth
```

- To configure device 0.0.f503:

```
znetconf -a 0.0.f503
```

or

```
znetconf -a f503
```

znetconf

- To configure the potential network device 0.0.f500 with the layer2 option with the value 0 and the portname option with the value myname:

```
znetconf -a f500 -o layer2=0 -o portname=myname
```

- To list configured network devices:

```
znetconf -c
Device IDs          Type      Card Type      CHPID Drv. Name State
-----
0.0.f500,0.0.f501,0.0.f502 1731/01 GuestLAN QDIO 00    qeth eth2 online
0.0.f503,0.0.f504,0.0.f505 1731/01 GuestLAN QDIO 01    qeth eth1 online
0.0.f5f0,0.0.f5f1,0.0.f5f2 1731/01 OSD_1000 76    qeth eth0 online
```

- To remove network device 0.0.f503:

```
znetconf -r 0.0.f503
```

or

```
znetconf -r f503
```

- To remove all configured network devices except the devices with bus IDs 0.0.f500 and 0.0.f5f0:

```
znetconf -R -e 0.0.f500 -e 0.0.f5f0
```

- To configure all potential network devices except the device with bus ID 0.0.f503:

```
znetconf -A -e 0.0.f503
```

Chapter 45. Selected kernel parameters

There are two different ways of passing parameters to Linux:

- Passing parameters to your kernel at startup time (the parameter line)
- Configuring your boot loader to always pass those parameters

The kernel can only handle a parameter line file that is no larger than 896 bytes.

Device driver-specific kernel parameters are described in the setting up section of the respective device driver chapter. The following parameters affect Linux on System z in particular and are beyond the scope of an individual device driver:

additional_cpus - Specify the number of CPUs Linux can add

Usage

Note: The `additional_cpus` parameter is available with Linux kernel versions prior to kernel 2.6.24. In later kernel versions new CPUs can be added to the system without specifying any kernel parameters. To limit the number of CPUs that can be added use the `possible_cpus` parameter.

Specifies the number of CPUs that Linux can add to the system. For example, if there were two CPUs present at IPL, then specifying `additional_cpus=1` will set the number of possible CPUs to three.

If the `possible_cpus` parameter is set, `additional_cpus` is ignored. See also “`maxcpus` - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can use at IPL” on page 522 and “`possible_cpus` - Limit the number of CPUs Linux can use” on page 525.

Format

additional_cpus syntax

►►—`additional_cpus=<number>`—◀◀

Examples

```
additional_cpus=1
```


Examples

- This example specifies that all devices in the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff, and the device 0.0.a100 are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,0.0.a100
```

- This example specifies that all devices are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=all
```

- This example specifies that all devices but the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff, and the device 0.0.a100 are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=all,!0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,!0.0.a100
```

- This example specifies that all devices in the range 0.0.1000 through 0.0.1500 are to be ignored, except for those in the range 0.0.1100 through 0.0.1120.

```
cio_ignore=0.0.1000-0.0.1500,!0.0.1100-0.0.1120
```

This is equivalent to the following specification:

```
cio_ignore=0.0.1000-0.0.10ff,0.0.1121-0.0.1500
```

- This example specifies that all devices in range 0.0.1000 through 0.0.1100 as well as all devices in range 0.1.7000 through 0.1.7010, plus device 0.0.1234 and device 0.1.4321 are to be ignored.

```
cio_ignore=0.0.1000-0.0.1100, 0.1.7000-0.1.7010, 0.0.1234, 0.1.4321
```

Changing the exclusion list

When a Linux on System z instance boots, it senses and analyzes all available I/O devices. You can use the `cio_ignore` kernel parameter to list specifications for devices that are to be ignored.

On a running Linux instance, you can view and change the exclusion list through a `procfs` interface or with the **`cio_ignore`** command (see “`cio_ignore` - Manage the I/O exclusion list” on page 412). This section describes the `procfs` interface.

After booting Linux you can display the exclusion list by issuing:

```
# cat /proc/cio_ignore
```

To add device specifications to the exclusion list issue a command of this form:

```
# echo add <device_list> > /proc/cio_ignore
```

When you add specifications for a device that has already been sensed and analyzed, there is no immediate effect of adding it to the exclusion list. For example, the device still appears in the output of the **`lscss`** command and can be set online. However, if the device subsequently becomes unavailable, it is ignored when it reappears. For example, if the device is detached in z/VM it is ignored when it is attached again.

To make all devices that are in the exclusion list and that are currently offline unavailable to Linux issue a command of this form:

```
# echo purge > /proc/cio_ignore
```

This command does not make devices unavailable if they are online.

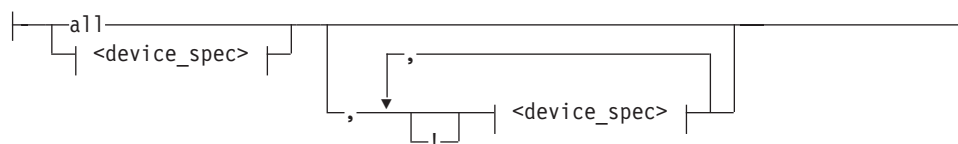
To remove device specifications from the exclusion list issue a command of this form:

```
# echo free <device_list> > /proc/cio_ignore
```

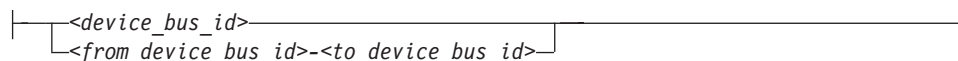
When you remove device specifications from the exclusion list, the corresponding devices are sensed and analyzed if they exist. Where possible, the respective device driver is informed, and the devices become available to Linux.

In these commands, *<device_list>* follows this syntax:

<device_list>:



<device_spec>:



Where the keywords and variables have the same meaning as in “Format” on page 517.

Note: The dynamically changed exclusion list is only taken into account when a device in this list is newly made available to the system, for example after it has been defined to the system. It does not have any effect on setting devices online or offline within Linux.

Examples:

- This command removes all devices from the exclusion list.

```
# echo free all > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command adds all devices in the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff and device 0.0.a100 to the exclusion list.

```
# echo add 0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,0.0.a100 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command lists the ranges of devices that are ignored by common I/O.

```
# cat /proc/cio_ignore
0.0.0000-0.0.a0ff
0.0.a101-0.0.b0ff
0.0.b200-0.0.ffff
```

- This command removes all devices in the range 0.0.b100 through 0.0.b1ff and device 0.0.a100 from the exclusion list.

cio_ignore

```
# echo free 0.0.b100-0.0.b1ff,0.0.a100 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command removes the device with bus ID 0.0.c104 from the exclusion list.

```
# echo free 0.0.c104 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command adds the device with bus ID 0.0.c104 to the exclusion list.

```
# echo add 0.0.c104 > /proc/cio_ignore
```

- This command makes all devices that are in the exclusion list and that are currently offline unavailable to Linux.

```
# echo purge > /proc/cio_ignore
```

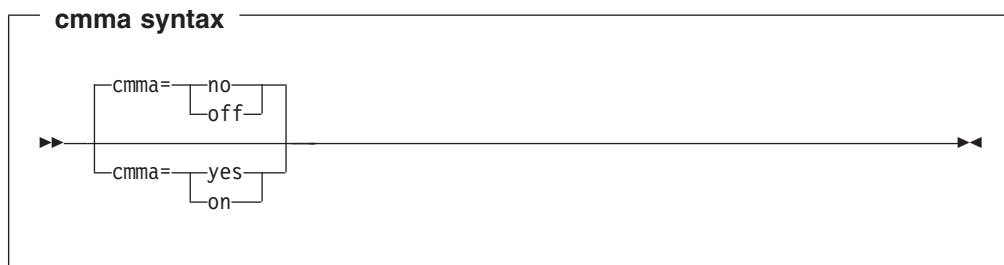

cmma - Reduce hypervisor paging I/O overhead

Usage

Reduces hypervisor paging I/O overhead.

Using z/VM V5.3 or later, you can use Collaborative Memory Management Assist (CMMA, or "cmm2") on the z9 and later IBM processors. This support allows the CP and its guests to communicate attributes for specific 4K-byte blocks of guest memory. This exchange of information can allow both the z/VM host and its guests to optimize their use and management of memory.

Format



Examples

This example switches the CMMA support on:

```
cmma=on
```

This is equivalent to:

```
cmma=yes
```

maxcpus - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can use at IPL

Usage

Restricts the number of CPUs that Linux can use at IPL. For example, if there are four CPUs then specifying maxcpus=2 will cause the kernel to use only two CPUs. See also “additional_cpus - Specify the number of CPUs Linux can add” on page 516 and “possible_cpus - Limit the number of CPUs Linux can use” on page 525.

Format

maxcpus syntax

►►—maxcpus=<number>—◄◄

Examples

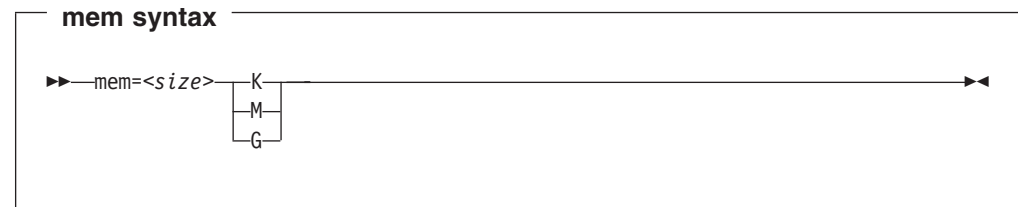
maxcpus=2

mem - Restricts memory usage

Usage

Restricts memory usage to the size specified. You can use the K, M, or G suffix to specify the value in kilobyte, megabyte, or gigabyte.

Format



Examples

```
mem=64M
```

Restricts the memory Linux can use to 64 MB.

```
mem=123456K
```

Restricts the memory Linux can use to 123456 KB.

noinitrd - Bypass the initial ramdisk

Usage

The noinitrd statement is required when the kernel was compiled with initial RAM disk support enabled. This command bypasses using the initial ramdisk.

This can be useful if the kernel was used with a RAM disk for the initial startup, but the RAM disk is not required when booted from a DASD.

Format

noinitrd syntax

►►noinitrd◄◄

possible_cpus - Limit the number of CPUs Linux can use

Usage

Specifies the number of maximum possible and usable CPUs that Linux can add to the system. If the possible_cpus parameter is set, the additional_cpus parameter is ignored. See also “additional_cpus - Specify the number of CPUs Linux can add” on page 516 and “maxcpus - Restrict the number of CPUs Linux can use at IPL” on page 522.

Format

possible_cpus syntax

▶▶—possible_cpus=<number>————▶▶

Examples

```
possible_cpus=8
```

ramdisk_size - Specify the ramdisk size

Usage

Specifies the size of the ramdisk in kilobytes.

Format

ramdisk_size syntax

►►—ramdisk_size=<size>—◀◀

Examples

```
ramdisk_size=32000
```

ro - Mount the root file system read-only

Usage

Mounts the root file system read-only.

Format

ro syntax

►► ro ◀◀

root - Specify the root device

Usage

Tells Linux what to use as the root device when mounting the root file system.

Format

root syntax

►►—root=<*rootdevice*>—◄◄

Examples

This example makes Linux use /dev/dasda1 when mounting the root file system:

```
root=/dev/dasda1
```

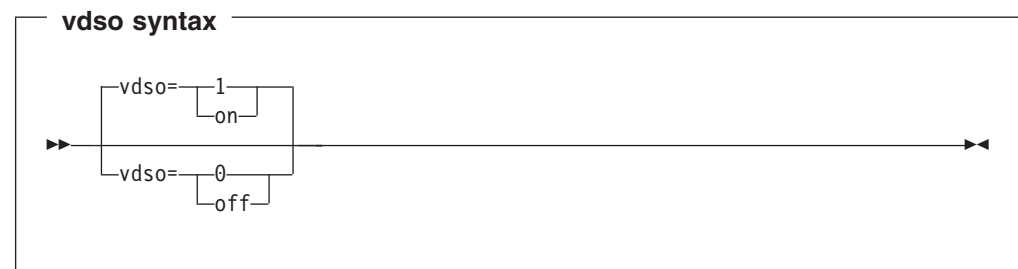
vdso - Optimize system call performance

Usage

The kernel virtual dynamic shared object (vdso) support optimizes performance of the `gettimeofday`, `clock_gettime` and `clock_getres` system calls. The vdso support is a shared library that the kernel maps to all dynamically linked programs. The glibc detects the presence of the vdso and uses the functions provided in the library.

The vdso support is included in the Linux on System z kernel.

Format



As the vdso library is mapped to all user-space processes, this change is visible in user space. In the unlikely event that a user-space program does not work with the vdso support, you can switch the support off.

Examples

This example switches the vdso support off:

```
vdso=0
```

vmhalt - Specify CP command to run after a system halt

Usage

Specifies a command to be issued to CP after a system halt. This command is only applicable if the system runs as a VM guest.

Format

vmhalt syntax

►►—vmhalt=<COMMAND>—◀◀

Examples

This example specifies that an initial program load of CMS should follow the Linux "halt" command:

```
vmhalt="I CMS"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmpanic - Specify CP command to run after a kernel panic

Usage

Specifies a command to be issued to CP after a kernel panic. This command is only applicable if the system runs as a VM guest.

Format

vmpanic syntax

►►—vmpanic=<COMMAND>—————◄◄

Examples

This example specifies that a VMDUMP should follow a kernel panic:

```
vmpanic="VMDUMP"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmpoff - Specify CP command to run after a power off

Usage

Specifies a command to be issued to CP after a system power off. This command is only applicable if the system runs as a VM guest.

Format

vmpoff syntax

►► vmpoff=<COMMAND> ◀◀

Examples

This example specifies that CP should clear the guest machine after the Linux "power off" or "halt -p" command:

```
vmpoff="SYSTEM CLEAR"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmreboot - Specify CP command to run on reboot

Usage

Specifies a command to be issued to CP on reboot. This command is only applicable if the system runs as a VM guest.

Format

vmreboot syntax



```
▶▶—vmreboot=<COMMAND>—◀◀
```

Examples

This example specifies that a message to guest MASTER should be sent in case of a reboot:

```
vmreboot="MSG MASTER Reboot system"
```

Note: The command must be entered in uppercase.

vmreboot

Chapter 46. Linux diagnose code use

Linux on System z issues several diagnose instructions to the hypervisor (LPAR or z/VM). Table 55 lists all diagnoses which are used by the Linux kernel or a kernel module.

Linux can fail if you change the privilege class of the diagnoses marked as **required** using the MODIFY diag command in z/VM.

Table 55. Linux diagnoses

Number	Description	Linux use	Required/ Optional
0x008	VM/CP command console interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The vmcp command• The 3215 and 3270 console drivers• The z/VM recording device driver (vmlogrdr)• smsgiucv	Required
0x010	Release pages	CMM	Required
0x014	Input spool file manipulation	The vmur device driver	Required
0x044	Voluntary time-slice end	In the kernel for spinlock and udelay	Required
0x064	Allows Linux to attach a DCSS	The DCSS block device driver (dcssblk), xip, and the MONITOR record device driver (monreader).	Required
0x09c	Voluntary time slice yield	Spinlock.	Optional
0x0dc	Monitor stream	The APPLDATA monitor record and the MONITOR stream application support (monwriter).	Required
0x204	LPAR Hypervisor data	The hypervisor file system (hypfs).	Required
0x210	Retrieve device information	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The common I/O layer• The DASD driver DIAG access method• The vmur device driver	Required
0x224	CPU type name table	The hypervisor file system (hypfs).	Required
0x250	Block I/O	The DASD driver DIAG access method.	Required
0x258	Page-reference services	In the kernel, for pfault.	Optional
0x288	Virtual machine time bomb	The watchdog device driver.	Required
0x2fc	Hypervisor cpu and memory accounting data	The hypervisor file system (hypfs).	Required
0x308	Re-ipl	Re-ipl and dump code.	Required

Required means that a function is not available without the diagnose; optional means that the function is available but there might be a performance impact.

Chapter 47. Kernel configuration menu options



This section is intended for those who want to build their own kernel. It summarizes the System z-specific kernel configuration options, including those options that do not correspond to a particular device driver or feature.

The options described in this section are sorted into two groups:

- “General architecture-specific options” on page 538
- “Device driver-related options” on page 547

For each group there is an overview of the options in the order in which you find them in the kernel configuration menu (see Figure 101 on page 538 and Figure 103 on page 547). Each overview is followed by an alphabetically sorted list of the options with a description.

Dependencies between options

Simple dependencies, where an option depends on another option that directly precedes it in the configuration menu, are shown in the overviews (Figure 101 on page 538 and Figure 103 on page 547). The dependent option is shown indented and graphically joined (└─) to the option it depends on. Options that have more complex dependencies are marked with an asterisk (*).

The option descriptions that follow the overviews include more detailed information on the dependencies. This more detailed information is provided in boolean format as it appears in the Kconfig files in the Linux source tree, with the CONFIG_ prefix omitted.

Common code options are not included in this summary. Refer to the Linux source tree for descriptions of common code options. To locate the description of an option in the Linux source tree, open a command prompt and change the working current directory at the root of the Linux source tree. Issue a command of this form:

```
# grep -rl --include='Kconfig' '^config <OPTION>' *
```

where *<option>* is the option you are looking for.

Note: In the Kconfig files, the options do not have a the CONFIG_ prefix. Be sure to omit the CONFIG_ when searching for the option.

Example: To locate the Kconfig file with the description of the common code kernel configuration option CONFIG_EXPERIMENTAL issue:

```
# grep -rl --include='Kconfig' '^config EXPERIMENTAL' *  
init/Kconfig
```

General architecture-specific options

Figure 101 provides an overview of the general architecture-specific options in the order in which you find them in the kernel configuration menu. The following pages provide explanations for each option in alphabetical order. For device driver-specific options see “Device driver-related options” on page 547.

```
General setup --->
...
Profiling support (EXPERIMENTAL)                (CONFIG_PROFILING)
OProfile system profiling (EXPERIMENTAL)         (CONFIG_OPROFILE)*
...
Base setup --->
--- Processor type and features ---
...
64 bit kernel                                   (CONFIG_64BIT)
Symmetric multi-processing support              (CONFIG_SMP)
└─ Maximum number of CPUs (2-64)                (CONFIG_NR_CPUS)
└─ Support for hot-pluggable CPUs               (CONFIG_HOTPLUG_CPU)
Kernel support for 31 bit emulation             (CONFIG_COMPAT)*
Switch kernel/user addressing modes             (CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE)
Data execute protection                        (CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT)
--- Code generation options ---
Processor type (choice)
  • S/390 model G5 and G6                      (CONFIG_MARCH_G5)*
  • IBM eServer zSeries model z800 and z900     (CONFIG_MARCH_Z900)
  • IBM eServer zSeries model z890 and z990     (CONFIG_MARCH_Z990)
  • IBM System z9                              (CONFIG_MARCH_Z9_109)
  • IBM System z10                             (CONFIG_MARCH_Z10)
Pack kernel stack                             (CONFIG_PACK_STACK)
└─ Use 8kb for kernel stack instead of 16kb     (CONFIG_SMALL_STACK)*
Detect kernel stack overflow                   (CONFIG_CHECK_STACK)
└─ Size of the guard area (128-1024)             (CONFIG_STACK_GUARD)
Emit compiler warnings for function with broken stack usage (CONFIG_WARN_STACK)
└─ Maximum frame size considered safe (128-2048) (CONFIG_WARN_STACK_SIZE)
...
--- I/O subsystem configuration ---
QDIO support                                 (CONFIG_QDIO)
Support for CHSC subchannels                 (CONFIG_CHSC_SCH)
--- Misc ---
Builtin IPL record support                   (CONFIG_IPL)
IPL method generated into head.S (choice - depends on IPL)
  • tape                                     (CONFIG_IPL_TAPE)
  • vm_reader                             (CONFIG_IPL_VM)
...
Show crashed user process info               (CONFIG_PROCESS_DEBUG)
Pseudo page fault support                   (CONFIG_PFAULT)
VM shared kernel support                   (CONFIG_SHARED_KERNEL)
Cooperative memory management               (CONFIG_CMM)
└─ /proc interface to cooperative memory management (CONFIG_CMM_PROC)
└─ IUCV special message interface to cooperative memory management (CONFIG_CMM_IUCV)*
```

Figure 101. General architecture-specific kernel configuration menu options. The └ symbols indicate dependencies on preceding options. Options with more complex dependencies are marked with an asterisk ().*

Linux - VM Monitor Stream, base infrastructure	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_BASE)*
└ Monitor memory management statistics	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_MEM)*
└ Monitor OS statistics	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_OS)
└ Monitor overall network statistics	(CONFIG_APPLDATA_NET_SUM)
...	
s390 hypervisor file system support	(CONFIG_S390_HYPFS_FS)
kexec system call	(CONFIG_KEXEC)
zfcpdump support	(CONFIG_ZFCPDUMP)
Kernel message numbers	(CONFIG_KMSG_IDS)
Enable seccomp to safely compute untrusted bytecode	(CONFIG_SECCOMP)*
...	
Networking support --->	(common code option CONFIG_NET)
Networking options --->	
...	
IUCV support (S390 - z/VM only)	(CONFIG_IUCV)
└ AF_IUCV support (S390 - z/VM only)	(CONFIG_AFIUCV)
...	
Cryptographic API --->	(common code option CONFIG_CRYPT0)
...	
Hardware crypto devices --->	(common code option CONFIG_CRYPT0_HW)
Support for PCI-attached cryptographic adapters	(CONFIG_ZCRYPT)
└ Monolithic zcrypt module	(CONFIG_ZCRYPT_MONOLITHIC)*
SHA1 digest algorithm	(CONFIG_CRYPT0_SHA1_S390)
SHA256 digest algorithm	(CONFIG_CRYPT0_SHA256_S390)
SHA384 and SHA512 digest algorithm	(CONFIG_CRYPT0_SHA512_S390)
DES and Triple DES cipher algorithms	(CONFIG_CRYPT0_DES_S390)
AES cipher algorithms	(CONFIG_CRYPT0_AES_S390)
Pseudo random number generator device driver	(CONFIG_S390_PRNG)
...	

Figure 102. General architecture-specific kernel configuration menu options 2 of 2. The └ symbols indicate dependencies on preceding options. Options with more complex dependencies are marked with an asterisk (*).

The following is an alphabetically sorted list with details on the general architecture-specific options summarized in Figure 101 on page 538. For device driver specific options see “Device driver-related options” on page 547.

CONFIG_64BIT

Select this option if you have a 64 bit IBM zSeries machine and want to use the 64 bit addressing mode.

CONFIG_AFIUCV

Select this option if you want to use inter-user communication under VM or VIF sockets. If you run on z/VM, say “Y” to enable a fast communication link between VM guests.

Depends on IUCV.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_BASE

This provides a kernel interface for creating and updating z/VM APPLDATA monitor records. The monitor records are updated at certain time intervals, once the timer is started. Writing 1 or 0 to `/proc/appldata/timer` starts(1) or stops(0) the timer, i.e. enables or disables monitoring on the Linux side. A custom interval value (in seconds) can be written to `/proc/appldata/interval`.

Defaults are 60 seconds interval and timer off. The `/proc` entries can also be read from, showing the current settings.

Depends on the common code option `PROC_FS`.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_MEM

This provides memory management related data to the Linux - VM Monitor Stream, like paging/swapping rate, memory utilisation, etc. Writing 1 or 0 to `/proc/appldata/memory` creates(1) or removes(0) a z/VM APPLDATA monitor record, i.e. enables or disables monitoring this record on the z/VM side.

Default is disabled. The `/proc` entry can also be read from, showing the current settings.

This can also be compiled as a module, which will be called `appldata_mem.o`.

Depends on `APPLDATA_BASE` && `VM_EVENT_COUNTERS`.

`VM_EVENT_COUNTERS` is a common code option.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_NET_SUM

This provides network related data to the Linux - VM Monitor Stream, currently there is only a total sum of network I/O statistics, no per-interface data. Writing 1 or 0 to `/proc/appldata/net_sum` creates(1) or removes(0) a z/VM APPLDATA monitor record, i.e. enables or disables monitoring this record on the z/VM side.

Default is disabled. This can also be compiled as a module, which will be called `appldata_net_sum.o`.

Depends on `APPLDATA_BASE` && `NET`.

CONFIG_APPLDATA_OS

This provides OS related data to the Linux - VM Monitor Stream, like CPU utilisation, etc. Writing 1 or 0 to `/proc/appldata/os` creates(1) or removes(0) a z/VM APPLDATA monitor record, i.e. enables or disables monitoring this record on the z/VM side.

Default is disabled. This can also be compiled as a module, which will be called `appldata_os.o`.

Depends on `APPLDATA_BASE`.

CONFIG_CHECK_STACK

This option enables the compiler option `-mstack-guard` and `-mstack-size` if they are available. If the compiler supports them it will emit additional code to each function prolog to trigger an illegal operation if the kernel stack is about to overflow.

Say N if you are unsure.

CONFIG_CHSC_SCH

This driver allows usage of CHSC subchannels. A CHSC subchannel is usually present on LPAR only. The driver creates a device `/dev/chsc`, which may be used to obtain I/O configuration information about the machine and to issue asynchronous chsc commands (DANGEROUS). You will usually only want to use this interface on a special LPAR designated for system management.

To compile this driver as a module, choose M here: the module will be called `chsc_sch`.

If unsure, say N.

CONFIG_CMM

Select this option, if you want to enable the kernel interface to reduce the memory size of the system. This is accomplished by allocating pages of memory and put them "on hold". This only makes sense for a system running under VM where the unused pages will be reused by VM for other guest systems. The interface allows an external monitor to balance memory of many systems. Everybody who wants to run Linux under VM should select this option.

CONFIG_CMM_IUCV

Select this option to enable the special message interface to the cooperative memory management.

Depends on CMM && (SMSGIUCV=y || CMM=SMSGIUCV).

CONFIG_CMM_PROC

Select this option to enable the /proc interface to the cooperative memory management.

Depends on CMM.

CONFIG_COMPAT

Select this option if you want to enable your system kernel to handle system-calls from ELF binaries for 31 bit ESA. This option (and some other stuff like libraries and such) is needed for executing 31 bit applications. It is safe to say "Y".

Depends on 64BIT.

CONFIG_CRYPTOAES_S390

This is the s390 hardware accelerated implementation of the AES cipher algorithms (FIPS-197). AES uses the Rijndael algorithm.

Rijndael appears to be consistently a very good performer in both hardware and software across a wide range of computing environments regardless of its use in feedback or non-feedback modes. Its key setup time is excellent, and its key agility is good. Rijndael's very low memory requirements make it very well suited for restricted-space environments, in which it also demonstrates excellent performance. Rijndael's operations are among the easiest to defend against power and timing attacks.

On s390 the System z9-109 currently only supports the key size of 128 bit.

CONFIG_CRYPTODES_S390

This is the s390 hardware accelerated implementation of the DES cipher algorithm (FIPS 46-2), and Triple DES EDE (FIPS 46-3).

CONFIG_CRYPTOSHA1_S390

This is the s390 hardware accelerated implementation of the SHA-1 secure hash standard (FIPS 180-1/DFIPS 180-2).

CONFIG_CRYPTOSHA256_S390

This is the s390 hardware accelerated implementation of the SHA256 secure hash standard (DFIPS 180-2).

This version of SHA implements a 256 bit hash with 128 bits of security against collision attacks.

CONFIG_CRYPTOSHA512_S390

This is the s390 hardware accelerated implementation of the SHA512 secure hash standard.

This version of SHA implements a 512 bit hash with 256 bits of security against collision attacks. The code also includes SHA-384, a 384 bit hash with 192 bits of security against collision attacks.

CONFIG_HOTPLUG_CPU

Say Y here to be able to turn CPUs off and on. CPUs can be controlled through /sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu#. Say N if you want to disable CPU hotplug.

Depends on SMP.

CONFIG_IPL

If you want to use the produced kernel to IPL directly from a device, you have to merge a bootsector specific to the device into the first bytes of the kernel. You will have to select the IPL device.

CONFIG_IPL_TAPE

This option is part of a choice section (IPL_TAPE | IPL_VM).

Select "tape" if you want to IPL the image from a Tape.

Select "vm_reader" if you are running under VM/ESA® and want to IPL the image from the emulated card reader.

Depends on IPL.

CONFIG_IPL_VM

This option is part of a choice section (IPL_TAPE | IPL_VM).

Select "tape" if you want to IPL the image from a Tape.

Select "vm_reader" if you are running under VM/ESA and want to IPL the image from the emulated card reader.

Depends on IPL.

CONFIG_IUCV

Select this option if you want to use inter-user communication under VM or VIF. If you run on z/VM, say "Y" to enable a fast communication link between VM guests.

CONFIG_KEXEC

kexec is a system call that implements the ability to shutdown your current kernel, and to start another kernel. It is like a reboot but is independent of hardware/microcode support.

CONFIG_KMSG_IDS

Select this option if you want to include a message number to the prefix for kernel messages issued by the s390 architecture and driver code. See "Documentation/s390/kmsg.txt" for more details.

CONFIG_MARCH_G5

This option is part of a choice section (MARCH_G5 | MARCH_Z900 | MARCH_Z990 | MARCH_Z9_109 | MARCH_Z10).

Select this to build a 31 bit kernel that works on all S/390 and zSeries machines.

Depends on !64BIT.

CONFIG_MARCH_Z10

This option is part of a choice section (MARCH_G5 | MARCH_Z900 | MARCH_Z990 | MARCH_Z9_109 | MARCH_Z10).

Select this to enable optimizations for IBM System z10. The kernel will be slightly faster but will not work on older machines such as the z990, z890, z900, z800, z9-109, z9-ec and z9-bc.

CONFIG_MARCH_Z900

This option is part of a choice section (MARCH_G5 | MARCH_Z900 | MARCH_Z990 | MARCH_Z9_109 | MARCH_Z10).

Select this to optimize for zSeries machines. This will enable some optimizations that are not available on older 31 bit only CPUs.

CONFIG_MARCH_Z990

This option is part of a choice section (MARCH_G5 | MARCH_Z900 | MARCH_Z990 | MARCH_Z9_109 | MARCH_Z10).

Select this enable optimizations for model z890/z990. This will be slightly faster but does not work on older machines such as the z900.

CONFIG_MARCH_Z9_109

This option is part of a choice section (MARCH_G5 | MARCH_Z900 | MARCH_Z990 | MARCH_Z9_109 | MARCH_Z10).

Select this to enable optimizations for IBM System z9-109, IBM System z9 Enterprise Class (z9 EC), and IBM System z9 Business Class (z9 BC). The kernel will be slightly faster but will not work on older machines such as the z990, z890, z900, and z800.

CONFIG_NR_CPUS

This allows you to specify the maximum number of CPUs which this kernel will support. The maximum supported value is 64 and the minimum value which makes sense is 2.

This is purely to save memory - each supported CPU adds approximately sixteen kilobytes to the kernel image.

Default is 64.

Depends on SMP.

CONFIG_OPROFILE

OProfile is a profiling system capable of profiling the whole system, include the kernel, kernel modules, libraries, and applications.

If unsure, say N.

Depends on PROFILING and the common code options HAVE_OPROFILE and TRACING_SUPPORT.

CONFIG_PACK_STACK

This option enables the compiler option -mkernel-backchain if it is available. If the option is available the compiler supports the new stack layout which dramatically reduces the minimum stack frame size. With an old compiler a

non-leaf function needs a minimum of 96 bytes on 31 bit and 160 bytes on 64 bit. With -mkernel-backchain the minimum size drops to 16 byte on 31 bit and 24 byte on 64 bit.

Say Y if you are unsure.

CONFIG_PFAULT

Select this option, if you want to use PFAULT pseudo page fault handling under VM. If running native or in LPAR, this option has no effect. If your VM does not support PFAULT, PAGEEX pseudo page fault handling will be used. Note that VM 4.2 supports PFAULT but has a bug in its implementation that causes some problems. Everybody who wants to run Linux under VM != VM4.2 should select this option.

CONFIG_PROCESS_DEBUG

Say Y to print all process fault locations to the console. This is a debugging option; you probably do not want to set it unless you are an S390 port maintainer.

CONFIG_PROFILING

Say Y here to enable the extended profiling support mechanisms used by profilers such as OProfile.

CONFIG_QDIO

This driver provides the Queued Direct I/O base support for IBM System z.

To compile this driver as a module, choose M here: the module will be called qdio.

If unsure, say Y.

CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT

This option allows to enable a buffer overflow protection for user space programs and it also selects the addressing mode option above. The kernel parameter noexec=on will enable this feature and also switch the addressing modes, default is disabled. Enabling this (via kernel parameter) on machines earlier than IBM System z9-109 EC/BC will reduce system performance.

CONFIG_S390_HYPFS_FS

This is a virtual file system intended to provide accounting information in an s390 hypervisor environment.

CONFIG_S390_PRNG

Select this option if you want to use the s390 pseudo random number generator. The PRNG is part of the cryptographic processor functions and uses triple-DES to generate secure random numbers like the ANSI X9.17 standard. The PRNG is usable via the char device /dev/prandom.

CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE

This option allows to switch the addressing modes of kernel and user space. The kernel parameter switch_amode=on will enable this feature, default is disabled. Enabling this (via kernel parameter) on machines earlier than IBM System z9-109 EC/BC will reduce system performance.

Note that this option will also be selected by selecting the execute protection option below. Enabling the execute protection via the `noexec` kernel parameter will also switch the addressing modes, independent of the `switch_amode` kernel parameter.

CONFIG_SECCOMP

This kernel feature is useful for number crunching applications that may need to compute untrusted bytecode during their execution. By using pipes or other transports made available to the process as file descriptors supporting the read/write syscalls, it's possible to isolate those applications in their own address space using seccomp. Once seccomp is enabled via `/proc/<pid>/seccomp`, it cannot be disabled and the task is only allowed to execute a few safe syscalls defined by each seccomp mode.

If unsure, say Y.

Depends on the common code option `PROC_FS`.

CONFIG_SHARED_KERNEL

Select this option, if you want to share the text segment of the Linux kernel between different VM guests. This reduces memory usage with lots of guests but greatly increases kernel size. Also if a kernel was IPL'ed from a shared segment the `kexec` system call will not work. You should only select this option if you know what you are doing and want to exploit this feature.

CONFIG_SMALL_STACK

If you say Y here and the compiler supports the `-mkernel-backchain` option the kernel will use a smaller kernel stack size. The reduced size is 8kb instead of 16kb. This allows to run more threads on a system and reduces the pressure on the memory management for higher order page allocations.

Say N if you are unsure.

Depends on `PACK_STACK` && `64BIT` && `!LOCKDEP`.

`LOCKDEP` is a common code option.

CONFIG_SMP

This enables support for systems with more than one CPU. If you have a system with only one CPU, like most personal computers, say N. If you have a system with more than one CPU, say Y.

If you say N here, the kernel will run on single and multiprocessor machines, but will use only one CPU of a multiprocessor machine. If you say Y here, the kernel will run on many, but not all, singleprocessor machines. On a singleprocessor machine, the kernel will run faster if you say N here.

See also the SMP-HOWTO available at <http://www.tldp.org/docs.html#howto>.

Even if you don't know what to do here, say Y.

CONFIG_STACK_GUARD

This allows you to specify the size of the guard area at the lower end of the kernel stack. If the kernel stack points into the guard area on function entry an illegal operation is triggered. The size needs to be a power of 2. Please keep in mind that the size of an interrupt frame is 184 bytes for 31 bit and 328 bytes on 64 bit. The minimum size for the stack guard should be 256 for 31 bit and 512 for 64 bit.

Depends on CHECK_STACK.

CONFIG_WARN_STACK

This option enables the compiler options -mwarn-framesize and -mwarn-dynamicstack. If the compiler supports these options it will generate warnings for function which either use alloca or create a stack frame bigger than CONFIG_WARN_STACK_SIZE.

Say N if you are unsure.

CONFIG_WARN_STACK_SIZE

This allows you to specify the maximum frame size a function may have without the compiler complaining about it.

Depends on WARN_STACK.

CONFIG_ZCRYPT

Select this option if you want to use a PCI-attached cryptographic adapter like: + PCI Cryptographic Accelerator (PCICA) + PCI Cryptographic Coprocessor (PCICC) + PCI-X Cryptographic Coprocessor (PCIXCC) + Crypto Express2 Coprocessor (CEX2C) + Crypto Express2 Accelerator (CEX2A)

CONFIG_ZCRYPT_MONOLITHIC

Select this option if you want to have a single module z90crypt, that contains all parts of the crypto device driver (ap bus, request router and all the card drivers).

Depends on ZCRYPT="m".

CONFIG_ZFCPDUMP

Select this option if you want to build an zfcpdump enabled kernel. Refer to <file:Documentation/s390/zfcpdump.txt> for more details on this.

Device driver-related options

Figure 103 provides an overview of the device driver-related options in the order in which you find them in the kernel configuration menu. The following pages provide explanations for each option in alphabetical order. For architecture-specific options see “General architecture-specific options” on page 538.

```
Device Drivers --->
...
Block devices --->                                (common code option CONFIG_BLK_DEV)
...
--- S/390 block device drivers (depends on S390 && BLOCK) ---
XPRAM disk support                                (CONFIG_BLK_DEV_XPRAM)
DCSSBLK support                                  (CONFIG_DCSSBLK)
Support for DASD devices                          (CONFIG_DASD)
├─ Profiling support for dasd devices              (CONFIG_DASD_PROFILE)
├─ Support for ECKD Disks                         (CONFIG_DASD_ECKD)
├─ Support for FBA Disks                         (CONFIG_DASD_FBA)
├─ Support for DIAG access to Disks              (CONFIG_DASD_DIAG)
└─ Extended error reporting (EER)                (CONFIG_DASD_EER)
...
SCSI device support --->
...
SCSI low-level drivers --->                        (common code option CONFIG_SCSI_LOWLEVEL)
...
FCP host bus adapter driver for IBM eServer zSeries (CONFIG_ZFCP)*
...
Network device support --->                       (common code option CONFIG_NETDEVICES)
...
S/390 network device drivers (depends on NETDEVICES && S390) --->
Lan Channel Station Interface                    (CONFIG_LCS)*
CTC and MPC SNA device support                   (CONFIG_CTCM)
IUCV network device support (VM only)            (CONFIG_NETIUCV)*
IUCV special message support (VM only)          (CONFIG_MSGIUCV)*
CLAW device support                             (CONFIG_CLAW)
Gigabit Ethernet device support                 (CONFIG_QETH)*
├─ qeth layer 2 device support                   (CONFIG_QETH_L2)
└─ qeth layer 3 device support                   (CONFIG_QETH_L3)
```

Figure 103. Device driver-specific kernel configuration menu options 1 of 2. The └ symbols indicate dependencies on preceding options. Options with more complex dependencies are marked with an asterisk (*).

```

...
Character devices --->
...
--- S/390 character device drivers (depends on S390) ---
Support for locally attached 3270 terminals                (CONFIG_TN3270)
├─ Support for tty input/output on 3270 terminals          (CONFIG_TN3270_TTY)
├─ Support for fullscreen applications on 3270 terminals   (CONFIG_TN3270_FS)
├─ Support for console on 3270 terminal                    (CONFIG_TN3270_CONSOLE)*
Support for 3215 line mode terminal                        (CONFIG_TN3215)
├─ Support for console on 3215 line mode terminal          (CONFIG_TN3215_CONSOLE)
Support for SCLP line mode terminal                        (CONFIG_SCLP_TTY)
├─ Support for console on SCLP line mode terminal          (CONFIG_SCLP_CONSOLE)
Support for SCLP VT220-compatible terminal                 (CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_TTY)
├─ Support for console on SCLP VT220-compatible terminal   (CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_CONSOLE)
Control-Program Identification                            (CONFIG_SCLP_CPI)
Support for Call Home via Asynchronous SCLP Records       (CONFIG_SCLP_ASYNC)
S/390 tape device support                                (CONFIG_S390_TAPE)
  --- S/390 tape interface support (depends on S390_TAPE) ---
  Support for tape block devices                          (CONFIG_S390_TAPE_BLOCK)*
  --- S/390 tape hardware support (depends on S390_TAPE) ---
  Support for 3480/3490 tape hardware                     (CONFIG_S390_TAPE_34XX)*
  Support for 3590 tape hardware                         (CONFIG_S390_TAPE_3590)*
Support for the z/VM recording system services (VM only)  (CONFIG_VMLOGRDR)*
Support for the z/VM CP interface (VM only)               (CONFIG_VMCP)
API for reading z/VM monitor service records              (CONFIG_MONREADER)*
API for writing z/VM monitor service records               (CONFIG_MONWRITER)
z/VM unit record device driver                            (CONFIG_S390_VMUR)
...
Watchdog Timer Support --->                                (CONFIG_WATCHDOG)
...
z/VM Watchdog Timer                                       (CONFIG_ZVM_WATCHDOG)
...

```

Figure 104. Device driver-specific kernel configuration menu options 2 of 2. The └ symbols indicate dependencies on preceding options. Options with more complex dependencies are marked with an asterisk (*).

The following is an alphabetically sorted list with details on the device driver-related options summarized in Figure 103 on page 547. For architecture-specific options see “General architecture-specific options” on page 538.

CONFIG_BLK_DEV_XPRAM

Select this option if you want to use your expanded storage on S/390 or zSeries as a disk. This is useful as a `_fast_` swap device if you want to access more than 2G of memory when running in 31 bit mode. This option is also available as a module which will be called `xpram`. If unsure, say “N”.

Depends on S390 && BLOCK.

S390 is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_CLAW

This driver supports channel attached CLAW devices. CLAW is Common Link Access for Workstation. Common devices that use CLAW are RS/6000s, Cisco Routers (CIP) and 3172 devices. To compile as a module, choose M. The module name is `claw`. To compile into the kernel, choose Y.

Depends on CCW && NETDEVICES.

CCW is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_CTCM

Select this option if you want to use channel-to-channel point-to-point networking on IBM System z. This device driver supports real CTC coupling using ESCON. It also supports virtual CTCs when running under VM. This driver also supports channel-to-channel MPC SNA devices. MPC is an SNA protocol device used by Communication Server for Linux. To compile as a module, choose M. The module name is ctcml. To compile into the kernel, choose Y. If you do not need any channel-to-channel connection, choose N.

Depends on CCW && NETDEVICES.

CCW is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_DASD

Enable this option if you want to access DASDs directly utilizing S/390s channel subsystem commands. This is necessary for running natively on a single image or an LPAR.

Depends on CCW && BLOCK.

CCW is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_DASD_DIAG

Select this option if you want to use Diagnose250 command to access Disks under VM. If you are not running under VM or unsure what it is, say "N".

Depends on DASD.

CONFIG_DASD_ECKD

ECKD devices are the most commonly used devices. You should enable this option unless you are very sure to have no ECKD device.

Depends on DASD.

CONFIG_DASD_EER

This driver provides a character device interface to the DASD extended error reporting. This is only needed if you want to use applications written for the EER facility.

Depends on DASD.

CONFIG_DASD_FBA

Select this option to be able to access FBA devices. It is safe to say "Y".

Depends on DASD.

CONFIG_DASD_PROFILE

Enable this option if you want to see profiling information in /proc/dasd/statistics.

Depends on DASD.

CONFIG_DCSSBLK

Support for dcsl block device

Depends on S390 && BLOCK.

S390 is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_LCS

Select this option if you want to use LCS networking on IBM System z. This device driver supports Token Ring (IEEE 802.5), FDDI (IEEE 802.7) and Ethernet. To compile as a module, choose M. The module name is lcs. If you do not know what it is, it's safe to choose Y.

Depends on CCW && NETDEVICES && (NET_ETHERNET || TR || FDDI).

NET_ETHERNET, TR, and FDDI are common code options. CCW is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_MONREADER

Character device driver for reading z/VM monitor service records

Depends on IUCV.

CONFIG_MONWRITER

Character device driver for writing z/VM monitor service records

CONFIG_NETIUCV

Select this option if you want to use inter-user communication vehicle networking under VM or VIF. It enables a fast communication link between VM guests. Using ifconfig a point-to-point connection can be established to the Linux on IBM System z running on the other VM guest. To compile as a module, choose M. The module name is netiucv. If unsure, choose Y.

Depends on IUCV && NETDEVICES.

CONFIG_QETH

This driver supports the IBM System z OSA Express adapters in QDIO mode (all media types), HiperSockets interfaces and VM GuestLAN interfaces in QDIO and HIPER mode.

For details please refer to the documentation provided by IBM at <http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390>

To compile this driver as a module, choose M. The module name is qeth.

Depends on CCW && NETDEVICES && IP_MULTICAST && QDIO.

IP_MULTICAST is a common code option. CCW is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_QETH_L2

Select this option to be able to run qeth devices in layer 2 mode. To compile as a module, choose M. The module name is qeth_l2. If unsure, choose y.

Depends on QETH.

CONFIG_QETH_L3

Select this option to be able to run qeth devices in layer 3 mode. To compile as a module choose M. The module name is qeth_l3. If unsure, choose Y.

Depends on QETH.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE

Select this option if you want to access channel-attached tape devices on IBM S/390 or zSeries. If you select this option you will also want to select at least one of the tape interface options and one of the tape hardware

options in order to access a tape device. This option is also available as a module. The module will be called tape390 and include all selected interfaces and hardware drivers.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE_34XX

Select this option if you want to access IBM 3480/3490 magnetic tape subsystems and 100% compatibles. It is safe to say "Y" here.

Depends on S390_TAPE.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE_3590

Select this option if you want to access IBM 3590 magnetic tape subsystems and 100% compatibles. It is safe to say "Y" here.

Depends on S390_TAPE.

CONFIG_S390_TAPE_BLOCK

Select this option if you want to access your channel-attached tape devices using the block device interface. This interface is similar to CD-ROM devices on other platforms. The tapes can only be accessed read-only when using this interface. Have a look at <file:Documentation/s390/TAPE> for further information about creating volumes for and using this interface. It is safe to say "Y" here.

Depends on S390_TAPE && BLOCK.

CONFIG_S390_VMUR

Character device driver for z/VM reader, puncher and printer.

CONFIG_SCLP_ASYNC

This option enables the call home function, which is able to inform the service element and connected organisations about a kernel panic. You should only select this option if you know what you are doing, want to inform other people about your kernel panics, need this feature and intend to run your kernel in LPAR.

CONFIG_SCLP_CONSOLE

Include support for using an IBM HWC line-mode terminal as the Linux system console.

Depends on SCLP_TTY.

CONFIG_SCLP_CPI

This option enables the hardware console interface for system identification. This is commonly used for workload management and gives you a nice name for the system on the service element. Please select this option as a module since built-in operation is completely untested. You should only select this option if you know what you are doing, need this feature and intend to run your kernel in LPAR.

CONFIG_SCLP_TTY

Include support for IBM SCLP line-mode terminals.

CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_CONSOLE

Include support for using an IBM SCLP VT220-compatible terminal as a Linux system console.

Depends on SCLP_VT220_TTY.

CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_TTY

Include support for an IBM SCLP VT220-compatible terminal.

CONFIG_SMSGIUCV

Select this option if you want to be able to receive SMSG messages from other VM guest systems.

Depends on IUCV.

CONFIG_TN3215

Include support for IBM 3215 line-mode terminals.

CONFIG_TN3215_CONSOLE

Include support for using an IBM 3215 line-mode terminal as a Linux system console.

Depends on TN3215.

CONFIG_TN3270

Include support for IBM 3270 terminals.

CONFIG_TN3270_CONSOLE

Include support for using an IBM 3270 terminal as a Linux system console. Available only if 3270 support is compiled in statically.

Depends on TN3270=y && TN3270_TTY=y.

CONFIG_TN3270_FS

Include support for fullscreen applications on an IBM 3270 terminal.

Depends on TN3270.

CONFIG_TN3270_TTY

Include support for using an IBM 3270 terminal as a Linux tty.

Depends on TN3270.

CONFIG_VMCP

Select this option if you want to be able to interact with the control program on z/VM

CONFIG_VMLOGRDR

Select this option if you want to be able to receive records collected by the z/VM recording system services, eg. from *LOGREC, *ACCOUNT or *SYMPTOM. This driver depends on the IUCV support driver.

Depends on IUCV.

CONFIG_WATCHDOG

If you say Y here (and to one of the following options) and create a character special file /dev/watchdog with major number 10 and minor number 130 using mknod ("man mknod"), you will get a watchdog, i.e.: subsequently opening the file and then failing to write to it for longer than 1 minute will result in rebooting the machine. This could be useful for a networked machine that needs to come back on-line as fast as possible after a lock-up. There's both a watchdog implementation entirely in software (which can sometimes fail to reboot the machine) and a driver for hardware watchdog boards, which are more robust and can also keep track of the

temperature inside your computer. For details, read <file:Documentation/watchdog/watchdog-api.txt> in the kernel source.

The watchdog is usually used together with the watchdog daemon which is available from <ftp://ibiblio.org/pub/Linux/system/daemons/watchdog/>. This daemon can also monitor NFS connections and can reboot the machine when the process table is full.

If unsure, say N.

if WATCHDOG

CONFIG_ZFCP

If you want to access SCSI devices attached to your IBM eServer zSeries by means of Fibre Channel interfaces say Y. For details please refer to the documentation provided by IBM at <<http://oss.software.ibm.com/developerworks/opensource/linux390>>

This driver is also available as a module. This module will be called zfc. If you want to compile it as a module, say M here and read <file:Documentation/kbuild/modules.txt>.

Depends on S390 && QDIO && SCSI.

SCSI is a common code option. S390 is an implicitly selected option.

CONFIG_ZVM_WATCHDOG

IBM s/390 and zSeries machines running under z/VM 5.1 or later provide a virtual watchdog timer to their guest that cause a user define Control Program command to be executed after a timeout.

To compile this driver as a module, choose M here. The module will be called vmwatchdog.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information about the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the

names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and `ibm.com` are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both. If these and other IBM trademarked terms are marked on their first occurrence in this information with a trademark symbol ([®] or [™]), these symbols indicate U.S. registered or common law trademarks owned by IBM at the time this information was published. Such trademarks may also be registered or common law trademarks in other countries. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "Copyright and trademark information" at

www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml

Intel is a trademark or registered trademark of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Glossary

This glossary includes IBM product terminology as well as selected other terms and definitions.

Additional information can be obtained in:

- The American National Standard Dictionary for Information Systems, ANSI X3.172-1990, copyright 1990 by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). Copies may be purchased from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd Street, New York, New York 10036.
- The ANSI/EIA Standard-440-A, Fiber Optic Terminology. Copies may be purchased from the Electronic Industries Association, 2001 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20006.
- The Information Technology Vocabulary developed by Subcommittee 1, Joint Technical Committee 1, of the International Organization for Standardization and the International Electrotechnical Commission (ISO/IEC JTC1/SC1).
- The IBM Dictionary of Computing , New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994.
- Internet Request for Comments: 1208, Glossary of Networking Terms
- Internet Request for Comments: 1392, Internet Users' Glossary
- The Object-Oriented Interface Design: IBM Common User Access Guidelines , Carmel, Indiana: Que, 1992.

Numerics

10 Gigabit Ethernet. An Ethernet network with a bandwidth of 10000-Mbps.

3215. IBM console printer-keyboard.

3270. IBM information display system.

3370, 3380 or 3390. IBM direct access storage device (disk).

3480, 3490, 3590. IBM magnetic tape subsystem.

9336 or 9345. IBM direct access storage device (disk).

A

address space. The range of addresses available to a computer program or process. Address space can refer to physical storage, virtual storage, or both.

asynchronous transfer mode (ATM). A transfer mode in which the information is organized into cells; it is asynchronous in the sense that the recurrence of cells containing information from an individual user is not necessarily periodic. ATM is specified in international standards such as ATM Forum UNI 3.1.

auto-detection. Listing the addresses of devices attached to a card by issuing a query command to the card.

C

CCL.

The Communication Controller for Linux on zSeries (CCL) replaces the 3745/6 Communication Controller so that the Network Control Program (NCP) software can continue to provide business critical functions like SNI, XRF, BNN, INN, and SSCP takeover. This allows you to leverage your existing NCP functions on a "virtualized" communication controller within the Linux zSeries environment.

cdl. compatible disk layout. A disk structure for Linux on System z which allows access from other System z operating systems. This replaces the older **ldl**.

CEC. (Central Electronics Complex). A synonym for **CPC**.

channel subsystem. The programmable input/output processors of the System z, which operate in parallel with the CPU.

checksum. An error detection method using a check byte appended to message data

Glossary

CHPID. channel path identifier. In a channel subsystem, a value assigned to each installed channel path of the system that uniquely identifies that path to the system.

Console. (1) In Linux, an output device for kernel messages. (2) In the context of IBM mainframes, a device that gives a system programmer control over the hardware resources, for example the LPARs.

CPC. (Central Processor Complex). A physical collection of hardware that includes main storage, one or more central processors, timers, and channels. Also referred to as a *CEC*.

CRC. cyclic redundancy check. A system of error checking performed at both the sending and receiving station after a block-check character has been accumulated.

CSMA/CD. carrier sense multiple access with collision detection

CTC. channel to channel. A method of connecting two computing devices.

CUU. control unit and unit address. A form of addressing for System z devices using device numbers.

D

DASD. direct access storage device. A mass storage medium on which a computer stores data.

device driver. (1) A file that contains the code needed to use an attached device. (2) A program that enables a computer to communicate with a specific peripheral device; for example, a printer, a videodisc player, or a CD-ROM drive. (3) A collection of subroutines that control the interface between I/O device adapters and the processor.

DIAGNOSE. (1) In z/VM, a set of instructions that programs running on z/VM guest virtual machines can call to request CP services. (2) In an LPAR, a set of instructions that programs running in the LPAR can call to request hypervisor services.

E

ECKD. extended count-key-data device. A disk storage device that has a data transfer rate faster than some processors can utilize and that is connected to the processor through use of a speed matching buffer. A specialized channel program is needed to communicate with such a device.

ESCON. enterprise systems connection. A set of IBM products and services that provide a dynamically connected environment within an enterprise.

Ethernet. A 10-Mbps baseband local area network that allows multiple stations to access the transmission medium at will without prior coordination, avoids contention by using carrier sense and deference, and resolves contention by using collision detection and delayed retransmission. Ethernet uses CSMA/CD.

F

Fast Ethernet (FENET). Ethernet network with a bandwidth of 100 Mbps

FBA. fixed block architecture. A type of DASD on Multiprise 3000 or P/390 or emulated by VM.

FDDI. fiber distributed data interface. An American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard for a 100-Mbps LAN using optical fiber cables.

fibre channel. A technology for transmitting data between computer devices. It is especially suited for attaching computer servers to shared storage devices and for interconnecting storage controllers and drives.

FTP. file transfer protocol. In the Internet suite of protocols, an application layer protocol that uses TCP and Telnet services to transfer bulk-data files between machines or hosts.

G

Gigabit Ethernet (GbE). An Ethernet network with a bandwidth of 1000-Mbps

G3, G4, G5 and G6. The generation names of the S/390 CMOS based product family.

H

hardware console. A service-call logical processor that is the communication feature between the main processor and the service processor.

Host Bus Adapter (HBA). An I/O controller that connects an external bus, such as a Fibre Channel, to the internal bus (channel subsystem).

HMC. hardware management console. A console used to monitor and control hardware such as the System z microprocessors.

HFS. hierarchical file system. A system of arranging files into a tree structure of directories.

I

ioctl system call. Performs low-level input- and output-control operations and retrieves device status information. Typical operations include buffer manipulation and query of device mode or status.

IOCS. input / output channel subsystem. See channel subsystem.

IP. internet protocol. In the Internet suite of protocols, a connectionless protocol that routes data through a network or interconnected networks and acts as an intermediary between the higher protocol layers and the physical network.

IP address. The unique 32-bit address that specifies the location of each device or workstation on the Internet. For example, 9.67.97.103 is an IP address.

IPIP. IPv4 in IPv4 tunnel, used to transport IPv4 packets in other IPv4 packets.

IPL. initial program load (or boot). (1) The initialization procedure that causes an operating system to commence operation. (2) The process by which a configuration image is loaded into storage at the beginning of a work day or after a system malfunction. (3) The process of loading system programs and preparing a system to run jobs.

IPv6. IP version 6. The next generation of the Internet Protocol.

IPX. Internetwork Packet Exchange. (1) The network protocol used to connect Novell servers, or any workstation or router that implements IPX, with other workstations. Although similar to the Internet Protocol (IP), IPX uses different packet formats and terminology.

IPX address. The 10-byte address, consisting of a 4-byte network number and a 6-byte node address, that is used to identify nodes in the IPX network. The node address is usually identical to the medium access control (MAC) address of the associated LAN adapter.

IUCV. inter-user communication vehicle. A VM facility for passing data between virtual machines and VM components.

K

kernel. The part of an operating system that performs basic functions such as allocating hardware resources.

kernel module. A dynamically loadable part of the kernel, such as a device driver or a file system.

kernel image. The kernel when loaded into memory.

L

LCS. LAN channel station. A protocol used by OSA.

ldl. Linux disk layout. A basic disk structure for Linux on System z. Now replaced by cd1.

LDP. Linux Documentation Project. An attempt to provide a centralized location containing the source

material for all open source Linux documentation. Includes user and reference guides, HOW TOs, and FAQs. The homepage of the Linux Documentation Project is

www.linuxdoc.org

Linux. a variant of UNIX which runs on a wide range of machines from wristwatches through personal and small business machines to enterprise systems.

Linux on System z. the port of Linux to the IBM System z architecture.

LPAR. logical partition of a System z.

LVS (Linux virtual server). Network sprayer software used to dispatch, for example, http requests to a set of Web servers to balance system load.

M

MAC. medium access control. In a LAN this is the sub-layer of the data link control layer that supports medium-dependent functions and uses the services of the physical layer to provide services to the logical link control (LLC) sub-layer. The MAC sub-layer includes the method of determining when a device has access to the transmission medium.

Mbps. million bits per second.

MIB (Management Information Base). (1) A collection of objects that can be accessed by means of a network management protocol. (2) A definition for management information that specifies the information available from a host or gateway and the operations allowed.

MTU. maximum transmission unit. The largest block which may be transmitted as a single unit.

Multicast. A protocol for the simultaneous distribution of data to a number of recipients, for example live video transmissions.

Multiprise. An enterprise server of the S/390 family.

N

NIC. network interface card. The physical interface between the IBM mainframe and the network.

O

OSA-2. Open Systems Adapter-2. A common System z network interface feature

OSA-Express. Abbreviation for Open Systems Adapter-Express networking features. These include 10 Gigabit Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, Fast Ethernet, Token Ring, and ATM.

Glossary

OSPF. open shortest path first. A function used in route optimization in networks.

P

POR. power-on reset

POSIX. Portable Operating System Interface for Computer Environments. An IEEE operating system standard closely related to the UNIX system.

R

router. A device or process which allows messages to pass between different networks.

S

S/390. The predecessor of System z.

SA/SE. stand alone support element. See SE.

SE. support element. (1) An internal control element of a processor that assists in many of the processor operational functions. (2) A hardware unit that provides communications, monitoring, and diagnostic functions to a central processor complex.

SNA. systems network architecture. The IBM architecture that defines the logical structure, formats, protocols, and operational sequences for transmitting information units through, and controlling the configuration and operation of, networks. The layered structure of SNA allows the ultimate origins and destinations of information (the users) to be independent of and unaffected by the specific SNA network services and facilities that are used for information exchange.

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol). In the Internet suite of protocols, a network management protocol that is used to monitor routers and attached networks. SNMP is an application layer protocol. Information on devices managed is defined and stored in the application's Management Information Base (MIB).

Sysctl. system control programming manual control (frame). A means of dynamically changing certain Linux kernel parameters during operation.

T

Telnet. A member of the Internet suite of protocols which provides a remote terminal connection service. It allows users of one host to log on to a remote host and interact as if they were using a terminal directly attached to that host.

Terminal. A physical or emulated device, associated with a keyboard and display device, capable of sending and receiving information.

U

UNIX. An operating system developed by Bell Laboratories that features multiprogramming in a multiuser environment. The UNIX operating system was originally developed for use on minicomputers but has been adapted for mainframes and microcomputers.

V

V=R. In VM, a guest whose real memory (virtual from a VM perspective) corresponds to the real memory of VM.

V=V. In VM, a guest whose real memory (virtual from a VM perspective) corresponds to virtual memory of VM.

Virtual LAN (VLAN). A group of devices on one or more LANs that are configured (using management software) so that they can communicate as if they were attached to the same wire, when in fact they are located on a number of different LAN segments. Because VLANs are based on logical rather than physical connections, they are extremely flexible.

volume. A data carrier that is usually mounted and demounted as a unit, for example a tape cartridge or a disk pack. If a storage unit has no demountable packs the volume is the portion available to a single read/write mechanism.

Z

zSeries. The family of IBM enterprise servers that demonstrate outstanding reliability, availability, scalability, security, and capacity in today's network computing environments.

Bibliography

The publications listed in this chapter are considered useful for a more detailed study of the topics contained in this book.

Linux on System z publications

Current versions of all Linux on System z publications can be found at:

www.ibm.com/developerworks/linux/linux390/documentation_dev.html

- *Device Drivers, Features, and Commands*, SC33-8411
- *Using the Dump Tools*, SC33-8412
- *How to use FC-attached SCSI devices with Linux on System z*, SC33-8413
- *How to Improve Performance with PAV*, SC33-8414
- *How to use Execute-in-Place Technology with Linux on z/VM*, SC34-2594
- *How to Set up a Terminal Server Environment on z/VM*, SC34-2596
- *Kernel Messages*
- *libica Programmer's Reference*, SC34-2602

z/VM publications

The publication numbers listed are for z/VM Version 5. For the complete library including other versions, see

www.ibm.com/vm/library/

- *z/VM Connectivity*, SC24-6080
- *z/VM CP Commands and Utilities Reference*, SC24-6081
- *z/VM CP Planning and Administration*, SC24-6083
- *z/VM CP Programming Services*, SC24-6084
- *z/VM Getting Started with Linux on System z*, SC24-6096
- *z/VM Performance*, SC24-6109
- *z/VM Saved Segments Planning and Administration*, SC24-6116
- *z/VM Systems Management Application Programming*, SC24-6122
- *z/VM TCP/IP Planning and Customization*, SC24-6125
- *z/VM Virtual Machine Operation*, SC24-6128

IBM Redbooks publications

You can search for, view, or download Redbooks publications, Redpapers, Hints and Tips, draft publications and additional materials, as well as order hardcopy Redbooks or CD-ROMs, at

www.ibm.com/redbooks

- *Building Linux Systems under IBM VM*, REDP-0120
- *FICON CTC Implementation*, REDP-0158
- *Networking Overview for Linux on zSeries*, REDP-3901
- *Security on z/VM*, SG24-7471
- *IBM Communication Controller Migration Guide*, SG24-6298
- *Linux on IBM eServer zSeries and S/390: TCP/IP Broadcast on z/VM Guest LAN*, REDP-3596
- *Linux on IBM eServer zSeries and S/390: VSWITCH and VLAN Features of z/VM 4.4*, REDP-3719
- *Fibre Channel Protocol for Linux and z/VM on IBM System z*, SG24-7266

Other System z publications

- *zSeries Application Programming Interfaces*, SB10-7030
- *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server System/390 Command Reference 2105 Models E10, E20, F10, and F20*, SC26-7295
- *Processor Resource/Systems Manager Planning Guide*, SB10-7041
- *z/Architecture Principles of Operation*, SA22-7832

Networking publications

- *HiperSockets Implementation Guide*, SG24-6816
- *OSA-Express Customer's Guide and Reference*, SA22-7935
- *OSA-Express Implementation Guide*, SG25-5848

Security related publications

- *zSeries Crypto Guide Update*, SG24-6870
- *Secure Key Solution with the Common Cryptographic Architecture Application Programmer's Guide*, SC33-8294

ibm.com® resources

- For CMS and CP Data Areas and Control Block information, see:
www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/ctlblk.html
- For layout of the z/VM monitor records, see
www.ibm.com/vm/pubs/mon540/index.html
- For I/O connectivity on System z information, see:
www.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity/
- For Communications server for Linux information, see:
www.ibm.com/software/network/commserver/linux/
- For information about performance monitoring on z/VM, see:
www.ibm.com/vm/perf
- For cryptographic coprocessor information, see:
www.ibm.com/security/cryptocards/
- For NSS and the CP command information, see:
www.ibm.com/vm/linux/linuxnss.html
- (Requires registration.) For information for planning, installing, and maintaining IBM Systems, see
www.ibm.com/servers/resourceink/
- For information about STP, see:
www.ibm.com/systems/z/advantages/pso/stp.html

Finding IBM books

For the referenced IBM books, links have been omitted to avoid pointing to a particular edition of a book. You can locate the latest versions of the referenced IBM books through the IBM Publications Center at:
www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order

Index

Special characters

/sys, mount point x
*ACCOUNT, VM record 211
*LOGREC, VM record 211
*SYMPTOM, VM record 211

Numerics

10 Gigabit Ethernet 97
 SNMP 147
1000Base-T Ethernet
 LAN channel station 157
 SNMP 147
1000Base-T, Ethernet 97
1750, control unit 21
2105, control unit 21
2107, control unit 21
3088, control unit 157, 163, 181
31-bit ix
 values for monitor records 196
 zcrypt 284
3270 emulation 316
3370, DASD 21
3380, DASD 21
3390, DASD 21
3480 tape drive 75
3490 tape drive 75
3590 tape drive 75
3592 tape drive 75
3880, control unit 21
3990, control unit 21
6310, control unit 21
64-bit ix
9336, DASD 21
9343, control unit 21
9345, DASD 21

A

access control
 FCP LUN 52
access_denied
 zfcp attribute (port) 63
 zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 67
access_shared
 zfcp attribute 67
ACCOUNT, VM record 211
actions, shutdown 379
activating standby CPU 255
adapter_name, CLAW attribute 183
add, DCSS attribute 226
adding and removing cryptographic adapters 292
additional_cpus=, kernel parameter 516
address
 CPU sysfs attribute 255
Address Resolution Protocol
 See ARP

AF_IUCV address family 245
af_iucv, kernel module 246
AgentX protocol 147
alias
 DASD attribute 44
alias device 44
all_rings, value for qeth broadcast_mode attribute 125
AP
 devices 9
ap_interrupts
 cryptographic adapter attribute 291
API
 FC-HBA 51
api_type
 CLAW attribute 184
appldata_mem, kernel module 193
appldata_net_sum, kernel module 193
appldata_os, kernel module 193
APPLDATA, monitor stream 193
ARP 104
 proxy ARP 128
 query/purge OSA-Express ARP cache 477
ATM 97
attributes
 device 11
 for CCW devices 11
 for subchannels 14
 qeth 107, 108
auto-detection
 DASD 32
 LCS 157
autoconfiguration, IPv6 102
autopurge, z/VM recording attribute 215
autorecording, z/VM recording attribute 214
availability
 common CCW attribute 11
 DASD attribute 39
avg_*, cmf attributes 385
avg_control_unit_queuing_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_device_active_only_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_device_busy_time 385
avg_device_busy_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_device_connect_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_device_disconnect_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_function_pending_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_initial_command_response_time, cmf attribute 385
avg_sample_interval, cmf attribute 385
avg_utilization, cmf attribute 385

B

base device 44
base name
 network interfaces 5
block device
 tape 75

- block_size_bytes
 - memory sysfs attribute 261
- blocksize, tape attribute 83
- boot devices 354
 - preparing 327
- boot loader code 355
- booting Linux 353
- broadcast_mode, qeth attribute 125
- buffer_count, qeth attribute 114
- buffer, CTCM attribute 168
- buffer, IUCV attribute 176
- bus ID 11

C

- Call Home
 - callhome attribute 391
 - kernel configuration menu option 391
- callhome
 - Call Home attribute 391
- canonical_macaddr, qeth attribute 125
- capability
 - CPU sysfs attribute 255
- capped
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 267
- card_type, qeth attribute 115
- card_version, zfcpx attribute 58
- case conversion 323
- CCA 289
- CCW
 - channel measurement facility 383
 - common attributes 11
 - devices 9
 - group devices 9
 - hotplug events 17
 - setting devices online/offline 402, 440
- CD-ROM, loading Linux 366
- CEX2A (Crypto Express2) 281
- CEX2C (Crypto Express2) 281
- CEX3A (Crypto Express3) 281
- CEX3C (Crypto Express3) 281
- change, CPU capability 255
- channel measurement facility 383
 - cmb_enable attribute 384
 - read-only attributes 384
- channel path
 - changing status 404
 - ensuring correct status 393
 - list 441
 - planned change in availability 393
 - unplanned change in availability 393
- character device, tape 75
- chccwdev, Linux command 402
- chchp, Linux command 404
- checksumming, qeth attribute 124
- Chinese-Remainder Theorem 281
- CHPID
 - in sysfs 16
 - online attribute 16, 17
- chpids, subchannel attribute 15

- chreipl, Linux command 406
- chsc
 - device driver 271
 - kernel configuration menu options 272
- CHSC
 - device names 271
 - device nodes 271
- chsc_sch, kernel module 272
- chshut, Linux command 408
- chzcrypt, Linux command 410
- cio_ignore
 - disabled wait 394
- cio_ignore, Linux command 412
- cio_ignore, procfs interface 518
- cio_ignore=, kernel parameter 517
- CLAW
 - adapter_name attribute 183
 - device driver 181
 - group attribute 183
 - host_name attribute 183
 - kernel configuration menu options 182
 - online attribute 185
 - subchannels 181
- CLAW, api_type attribute 184
- claw, kernel module 182
- CLAW, read_buffer attribute 184
- CLAW, write_buffer attribute 184
- clock synchronization 275
- cmb_enable
 - cmf attribute 384
 - common CCW attribute 11
 - tape attribute 83
- cmd=, module parameters 240
- cmf.format=, kernel parameter 383
- cmf.maxchannels=, kernel parameter 383
- cmm
 - avoid swapping with 191
 - background information 191
- CMM
 - kernel configuration menu options 249
- cmm.sender=, kernel parameters 250
- CMMA 521
- cmma=, kernel parameter 521
- CMS disk layout 26
- CMS1 labeled disk 26
- code page
 - for x3270 316
- Collaborative Memory Management Assist 521
- commands, Linux
 - chccwdev 402
 - chchp 404
 - chreipl 406
 - chshut 408
 - chzcrypt 410
 - cio_ignore 412
 - cpuplugd 415
 - dasdfmt 418
 - dasdview 422
 - dmesg 6
 - fdasd 432
 - icastats 440

commands, Linux *(continued)*

- ifconfig 5
- lschp 441
- lscss 443
- lsdasd 447
- lsqeth 451
- lsreipl 453
- lsshut 454
- lstape 455
- lszcrypt 458
- lszfcv 460
- mknod 3
- mon_fsstatd 462
- mon_procd 467
- osasnmpd 475
- qetharp 477
- qethconf 479
- readlink 6
- scsi_logging_level 482
- snipl 485
- tape390_crypt 494
- tape390_display 498
- tunedasd 500
- vmcp 503
- vmur 505
- zipl 327
- znetconf 512

commands, VM

- sending from Linux 503

Common Link Access to Workstation

See CLAW

- compatibility mode, zcrypt 284
- compatible disk layout 23
- compression, tape 84
- conceal=, module parameters 240
- condev=, kernel parameter 316
- CONFIG_64BIT 539
- CONFIG_AFIUCV 246, 539
- CONFIG_APPLDATA_BASE 193, 539
- CONFIG_APPLDATA_MEM 193, 539
- CONFIG_APPLDATA_NET_SUM 193, 540
- CONFIG_APPLDATA_OS 193, 540
- CONFIG_BLK_DEV_XPRAM 88, 548
- CONFIG_CCW 31
- CONFIG_CHECK_STACK 540
- CONFIG_CHSC_SCH 272, 540
- CONFIG_CLAW 182, 548
- CONFIG_CMM 540
- CONFIG_CMM_IUCV 541
- CONFIG_CMM_PROC 541
- CONFIG_COMPAT 541
- CONFIG_CRYPT_AES_S390 541
- CONFIG_CRYPT_DES_S390 541
- CONFIG_CRYPT_SHA1_S390 541
- CONFIG_CRYPT_SHA256_S390 541
- CONFIG_CRYPT_SHA512_S390 541
- CONFIG_CTCM 164, 548
- CONFIG_DASD 31, 549
- CONFIG_DASD_DIAG 31, 549
- CONFIG_DASD_ECKD 31, 549
- CONFIG_DASD_EER 32, 549

- CONFIG_DASD_FBA 31, 549
- CONFIG_DASD_PROFILE 31, 549
- CONFIG_DCSSBLK 223, 549
- CONFIG_HIBERNATION 375
- CONFIG_HOTPLUG_CPU 542
- CONFIG_HUGETLBFS 263
- CONFIG_HVC_IUCV 310
- CONFIG_IP_MULTICAST 105, 158
- CONFIG_IPL 542
- CONFIG_IPL_TAPE 542
- CONFIG_IPL_VM 542
- CONFIG_IUCV 174, 245, 542
- CONFIG_KEXEC 542
- CONFIG_KMSG_IDS 397, 542
- CONFIG_LCS 158, 549
- CONFIG_MAGIC_SYSRQ 321
- CONFIG_MARCH_G5 542
- CONFIG_MARCH_Z10 543
- CONFIG_MARCH_Z9_109 543
- CONFIG_MARCH_Z900 543
- CONFIG_MARCH_Z990 543
- CONFIG_MEMORY_HOTPLUG 260
- CONFIG_MEMORY_HOTREMOVE 260
- CONFIG_MIGRATION 260
- CONFIG_MONREADER 206, 550
- CONFIG_MONWRITER 201, 550
- CONFIG_NET_ETHERNET 158
- CONFIG_NETIUCV 174, 550
- CONFIG_NR_CPUS 543
- CONFIG_OPROFILE 543
- CONFIG_PACK_STACK 543
- CONFIG_PFAULT 544
- CONFIG_PM 375
- CONFIG_PROCESS_DEBUG 544
- CONFIG_PROFILING 544
- CONFIG_QDIO 53, 105, 544
- CONFIG_QETH 105, 106, 550
- CONFIG_QETH_L2 105, 550
- CONFIG_QETH_L3 106, 550
- CONFIG_S390_EXEC_PROTECT 297, 544
- CONFIG_S390_HYPFS_FS 265, 544
- CONFIG_S390_PRNG 295, 544
- CONFIG_S390_SWITCH_AMODE 297, 544
- CONFIG_S390_TAPE 80, 550
- CONFIG_S390_TAPE_34XX 80, 551
- CONFIG_S390_TAPE_3590 80, 551
- CONFIG_S390_TAPE_BLOCK 80, 551
- CONFIG_S390_VMUR 219, 551
- CONFIG_SCLP_ASYNC 391, 551
- CONFIG_SCLP_CONSOLE 310, 551
- CONFIG_SCLP_CPI 387, 551
- CONFIG_SCLP_TTY 310, 551
- CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_CONSOLE 311, 551
- CONFIG_SCLP_VT220_TTY 311, 552
- CONFIG_SCSI 53
- CONFIG_SECCOMP 545
- CONFIG_SHARED_KERNEL 233, 545
- CONFIG_SMALL_STACK 545
- CONFIG_SMP 545
- CONFIG_SMSGIUCV 552
- CONFIG_STACK_GUARD 545

- CONFIG_TN3215 310, 552
- CONFIG_TN3215_CONSOLE 310, 552
- CONFIG_TN3270 310, 552
- CONFIG_TN3270_CONSOLE 310, 552
- CONFIG_TN3270_FS 310, 552
- CONFIG_TN3270_TTY 310, 552
- CONFIG_TR 158
- CONFIG_VIRT_TIMER 193
- CONFIG_VMCP 244, 552
- CONFIG_VMLOGRDR 213, 552
- CONFIG_WARN_STACK 546
- CONFIG_WARN_STACK_SIZE 546
- CONFIG_WATCHDOG 552
- CONFIG_WATCHDOG_NOWAYOUT 239
- CONFIG_ZCRYPT 285, 546
- CONFIG_ZCRYPT_MONOLITHIC 546
- CONFIG_ZFCP 53, 553
- CONFIG_ZFCPDUMP 546
- CONFIG_ZVM_WATCHDOG 238, 553
- configuration options
 - See kernel configuration menu options
- configure
 - CPU sysfs attribute 255
- conmode=, kernel parameter 311
- connection, IUCV attribute 175
- console
 - device names 305
 - device nodes 313, 314
 - mainframe versus Linux 305
- console device driver
 - defining to P/390 316
 - kernel configuration menu options 310
 - kernel parameter 312
 - overriding default driver 311
 - restricting access to HVC terminal devices 313
 - specifying preferred console 312
 - specifying the number of HVC terminal devices 313
- console=, kernel parameter 312
- control characters 320
- control program identification 387
 - kernel configuration menu options 387
- control unit
 - 1750 21
 - 2105 21
 - 2107 21
 - 3880 21
 - 3990 21
 - 6310 21
 - 9343 21
- cooperative memory management 249
- core_siblings
 - CPU sysfs attribute 256
- count
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 267
- CP Assist for Cryptographic Function 282, 295
- CP commands
 - send to VM hypervisor 503
- CP Error Logging System Service 211
- CPACF 282
- CPI
 - set attribute 389
 - sysplex_name attribute 388
 - system_level attribute 389
 - system_name attribute 388
 - system_type attribute 388
- CPI (control program identification) 387
 - kernel configuration menu options 387
- CPU
 - managing 255
- CPU capability change 255
- CPU configuration 415
- CPU sysfs attribute
 - address 255
 - capability 255
 - configure 255
 - core_siblings 256
 - dispatching 257
 - online 255
 - polarization 257
 - rescan 255
- CPU sysfs attributes
 - location of 255
- cpu_delay
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268
- cpu_using
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268
- CPU, activating standby 255
- CPU, deactivating operating 256
- cpuplugd, Linux command 415
- cputime
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, LPAR 267
- cputime_us
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 267
- CRT 281
- Crypto Express2 281
- Crypto Express3 281
- cryptographic adapter
 - attributes 293
- cryptographic adapters
 - adding and removing dynamically 292
- cryptographic device driver
 - See zcrypt
- CTC
 - activating an interface 168
- CTC interface
 - recovery 169
- CTCM
 - buffer attribute 168
 - device driver 163
 - group attribute 165
 - kernel configuration menu options 165
 - online attribute 167
 - protocol attribute 166
 - subchannels 163
 - type attribute 166
 - ungroup attribute 166
- ctcm, kernel module 165

- cutype
 - common CCW attribute 11
 - tape attribute 83

D

DASD

- access by bus-ID 29
- access by VOLSER 30
- alias attribute 44
- availability attribute 39
- booting from 358, 363
- boxed 39
- control unit attached devices 21
- device driver 21
- device names 27
- device nodes 28
- discipline attribute 44
- displaying information 422
- displaying overview 447
- eer_enabled attribute 42
- erplug attribute 43
- extended error reporting 22
- failfast attribute 43
- features 21
- forcing online 39
- formatting ECKD 418
- kernel configuration menu options 31
- module parameter 34
- online attribute 42
- partitioning 432
- partitions on 22
- performance tuning 500
- readonly attribute 44
- status attribute 45
- uid attribute 45
- use_diag attribute 40, 45
- vendor attribute 45
- virtual 21
- dasd_diag_mod, kernel module 32
- dasd_eckd_mod, kernel module 31
- dasd_eer, kernel module 32
- dasd_fba_mod, kernel module 31
- dasd_mod, kernel module 31
- dasd=
 - kernel parameter 32
 - module parameter 34
- dasdfmt, Linux command 418
- dasdview, Linux command 422
- data execution protection
 - kernel configuration menu options 297
- dbfsz=, kernel parameters 54
- dbfsz=, module parameters 55

DCSS

- access mode 228
- add attribute 226
- device driver 221
- device names 221
- device nodes 221
- kernel configuration menu options 223
- loader 341

DCSS (*continued*)

- minor number 227
- remove attribute 230
- save attribute 229
- shared attribute 228
- dcssblk, kernel module 223
- dcssblk.segments=, kernel parameter 223
- dcssblk.segments=, module parameter 224
- deactivating operating CPU 256
- decryption 281
- dedicated
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 267
- delete
 - zfc attribute (SCSI device) 68
- delete, zfc attribute 72
- depth
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 293
- developerWorks ix, 19, 93, 187, 253, 279, 301, 381, 399
- device bus-ID 11
 - of a qeth interface 117
- device driver
 - chsc 271
 - CLAW 181
 - crypto 281
 - CTCM 163
 - DASD 21
 - DCSS 221
 - HiperSockets 95
 - in sysfs 12
 - LCS 157
 - monitor stream application 201
 - NETIUCV 173
 - network 94
 - OSA-Express (QDIO) 95
 - overview 10
 - pseudo-random number 295
 - qeth 95
 - SCSI-over-Fibre Channel 47
 - tape 75
 - vmcp 243
 - vmur 219
 - watchdog 237
 - XPRAM 87
 - z/VM *MONITOR record reader 205
 - z/VM recording 211
 - zcrypt 281
 - zfc 47
- device names 3
 - CHSC 271
 - console 305
 - DASD 27
 - DCSS 221
 - random number 295
 - tape 76
 - vmcp 243
 - vmur 219
 - XPRAM 87
 - z/VM *MONITOR record 208
 - z/VM recording 211

- device nodes 3
 - CHSC 271
 - console 313, 314
 - DASD 28
 - DCSS 221
 - extended error reporting 35
 - random number 295
 - SCSI 49
 - tape 78
 - udev 4
 - vmcp 243
 - vmur 219
 - watchdog 240
 - XPRAM 88
 - z/VM *MONITOR record 208
 - z/VM recording 211
 - zcrypt 289
 - zfcf 49
- device numbers 3
- device special file
 - See device nodes
- device_blocked
 - zfcf attribute (SCSI device) 67
- devices
 - alias 44
 - attributes 11
 - base 44
 - corresponding interfaces 6
 - ignoring 517
 - in sysfs 11
- devs=, module parameter 90
- devtype
 - common CCW attribute 11
 - tape attribute 83
- DHCP 144
 - required options 144
- Direct Access Storage Device
 - See DASD
- Direct SNMP 147
- disabled wait
 - cio_ignore 394
- discipline
 - DASD attribute 44
- discontiguous saved segments
 - See DCSS
- dispatching
 - CPU sysfs attribute 257
- dmesg 6
- domain=
 - kernel parameter 286
 - module parameter 287, 288
- drivers
 - See device driver
- dump device
 - DASD and tape 336
 - ECKD DASD 337
 - SCSI 339
- dumped_frames, zfcf attribute 59
- Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
 - See DHCP
- dynamic routing, and VIPA 131

E

- EBCDIC
 - kernel parameters 355
- ECKD 21
 - devices 21
- edit characters, z/VM console 325
- EEDK 494
- eer_enabled
 - DASD attribute 42
- EKM 494
- enable, qeth IP takeover attribute 127
- encryption 281
- encryption key manager 494
- Enterprise Storage Server 21
- environment variables
 - TERM 314
 - ZIPLCONF 346
- erplug, DASD attribute 43
- Error Logging System Service 211
- error_frames, zfcf attribute 59
- ESS 21
- Ethernet 97
 - interface name 101, 157
 - LAN channel station 157
- etr
 - online attribute 276
- ETR 275
- etr=, kernel parameter 275
- execution protection feature 297
- expanded memory 87
- ext2 221
- extended error reporting
 - device node 35
- extended error reporting, DASD 22
- extended remote copy 275
- external encrypted data key 494
- external time reference 275

F

- failed
 - zfcf attribute (channel) 61
 - zfcf attribute (port) 63, 64
 - zfcf attribute (SCSI device) 67, 71
- failed, zfcf attribute 58
- failfast, DASD attribute 43
- fake_broadcast, qeth attribute 126
- Fast Ethernet
 - LAN channel station 157
- FBA devices 21
- FC-HBA 51
- FCP 47
 - debugging 53, 57
 - traces 53, 57
- FCP LUN access control 52
- fcf_control_requests zfcf attribute 59
- fcf_input_megabytes zfcf attribute 59
- fcf_input_requests zfcf attribute 59
- fcf_lun
 - zfcf attribute (SCSI device) 67

- fcplun, zfcpl attribute 66
- fcpl_output_megabytes zfcpl attribute 59
- fcpl_output_requests zfcpl attribute 59
- fdasd, Linux command 432
- feature
 - execution protection 297
- Fibre Channel 47
- file system
 - hugetlbfs 263
- file systems
 - ext2 221
 - ISO9660 76
 - sysfs 9
 - tape 76
 - xip option 221
- FTP server, loading Linux 366
- full-screen mode terminal 314

G

- generating random numbers 292
- Gigabit Ethernet 97
 - SNMP 147
- group
 - CLAW attribute 183
 - CTCM attribute 165
 - LCS attribute 159
 - qeth attribute 109
- group devices
 - CLAW 181
 - CTCM 163
 - LCS 157
 - qeth 100
- guest LAN sniffer 145

H

- Hardware Management Console
 - See HMC
- hardware status, zcrypt 290
- hardware_version, zfcpl attribute 58
- HBA API 51
- hba_id
 - zfcpl attribute (SCSI device) 67
- hba_id, zfcpl attribute 66
- high availability project 493
- High Performance FICON, suppressing 33
- high resolution polling timer 410
- HiperSockets
 - device driver 95
 - interface name 101
- HiperSockets Network Concentrator 138
- HMC 303
 - as terminal 317
 - for booting Linux 354
- host_name, CLAW attribute 183
- hotplug
 - CCW devices 17
 - memory 259
- hotplug memory
 - kernel configuration menu options 260

- hugepages=, kernel parameters 263
- hugetlbfs
 - virtual file system 263
- hvc_iucv_allow=, kernel parameter 313
- hvc_iucv=, kernel parameter 313
- hw_checksumming, value for qeth checksumming
 - attribute 124
- hwtype
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 293

I

- IBM compatible disk layout 23
- IBM label partitioning scheme 22
- IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server 21
- icastats, Linux command 440
- idle
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 268
- IDRC compression 84
- if_name, qeth attribute 117
- ifconfig 5
- Improved Data Recording Capability compression 84
- in_recovery
 - zfcpl attribute (channel) 61
 - zfcpl attribute (port) 63, 64
 - zfcpl attribute (SCSI device) 67, 71
- in_recovery, zfcpl attribute 58
- Initial Program Load
 - See IPL
- initial RAM disk 357
- inittab
 - user login to terminal 315
- Inter-User Communication Vehicle
 - See IUCV
- interface
 - MTIO 79
 - network 5
- interface names
 - CHSC 271
 - claw 181
 - ctc 164
 - IUCV 175
 - lcs 157
 - mpc 164
 - overview 5
 - qeth 101, 117
 - versus devices 6
 - vmcp 243
 - vmur 219
- interfaces
 - FC-HBA 51
- invalid_crc_count zfcpl attribute 59
- invalid_tx_word_count zfcpl attribute 59
- iocounterbits
 - zfcpl attribute 67
- ioctl
 - CHSC 273
- iodone_cnt
 - zfcpl attribute (SCSI device) 67

- ioerr_cnt
 - zfc attribute (SCSI device) 67
- iorequest_cnt
 - zfc attribute (SCSI device) 67
- IP address
 - confirming 118
 - duplicate 119
 - takeover 126
 - virtual 130
- IP, service types 114
- ipa_takeover, qeth attributes 126
- IPL 353
 - displaying current settings 453
 - NSS 234
- IPL devices
 - for booting 354
 - preparing 327
- IPv6
 - stateless autoconfiguration 102
 - support for 101
- ISO9660 file systems 76
- IUCV
 - activating an interface 177
 - buffer attribute 176
 - connection attribute 175
 - devices 174
 - enablement 246
 - kernel configuration menu option 174, 245
 - MTU 176
 - remove attribute 178
 - user attribute 176
 - VM enablement 175
- iucv, kernel module 174, 245
- iucvconn 304
- iucvty 314

J

- journaling file systems
 - write barrier 38

K

- KEK 494
- kernel configuration menu options
 - Call Home 391
 - channel measurement facility 383
 - chsc 272
 - CLAW 182
 - CMM 249
 - console 310
 - CPI 387
 - CTCM 165
 - DASD 31
 - data execution protection 297
 - DCSS 223
 - hotplug memory 260
 - IUCV 174, 245
 - large page support 263
 - LCS 158
 - messages 397

- kernel configuration menu options *(continued)*
 - monitor stream 193
 - MONWRITER 201
 - NSS 233
 - qeth 105
 - rnd 295
 - S/390 hypervisor file system 265
 - tape 80
 - watchdog 238
 - XPRAM 89
 - z/VM *MONITOR record device driver 206
 - z/VM CP interface 244
 - z/VM recording 213
 - z/VM unit record 219
 - zcrypt 285
 - zfc 53
- kernel image 355
- kernel messages 397
- kernel module
 - af_iucv 246
 - apldata_mem 193
 - apldata_net_sum 193
 - apldata_os 193
 - chsc_sch 272
 - claw 182
 - ctcm 165
 - dasd_diag_mod 32
 - dasd_eckd_mod 31
 - dasd_eer 32
 - dasd_fba_mod 31
 - dasd_mod 31
 - dcssblk 223
 - iucv 174, 245
 - lcs 158
 - monreader 206
 - MONWRITER 201
 - netiucv 174
 - prng 295
 - qdio 105
 - qeth 105
 - qeth_l2 106
 - qeth_l3 106
 - sclp_async 391
 - sclp_cpi 387
 - tape 80
 - tape_34xx 80
 - tape_3590 80
 - vmcp 244
 - vmlogrdr 213
 - vmur 219
 - vmwatchdog 238
 - xpram 89
 - zcrypt 285
 - zfc 53
- kernel monolithic configuration menu options
 - zcrypt 285
- kernel panic 372
- kernel parameters 355
 - additional_cpus= 516
 - and ziplt 333
 - channel measurement facility 383

- kernel parameters (*continued*)
 - cio_ignore= 517
 - cmf.format= 383
 - cmf.maxchannels= 383
 - cmm.sender= 250
 - cmma= 521
 - condev= 316
 - conmode= 311
 - console= 312
 - DASD 32
 - dasd= 32
 - dbfsz= 54
 - dcssblk.segments= 223
 - domain= 286
 - etr= 275
 - general 515
 - hugepages= 263
 - hvc_iucv_allow= 313
 - hvc_iucv= 313
 - kernelcore= 260
 - maxcpus= 522
 - mem= 523
 - mondcss= 202, 207
 - no_console_suspend 376
 - noinitrd 524
 - noresume 376
 - possible_cpus= 525
 - queue_depth= 54
 - ramdisk_size= 526
 - resume= 376
 - root= 528
 - savesys= 233
 - stp= 276
 - vdso= 529
 - vmhalt= 530
 - vmpanic= 531
 - vmpoff= 532
 - vmreboot= 533
 - vmwatchdog.cmd= 238
 - vmwatchdog.conceal= 238
 - vmwatchdog.nowayout= 238
 - xpram.parts= 89
 - zcrypt 286
 - zfcplib.device= 54
- kernel sharing 233
- kernel source tree ix
- kernelcore=, kernel parameters 260
- key encrypting key 494

L

- LAN
 - z/VM guest LAN sniffer 145
- LAN channel station
 - See LCS
- LAN, virtual 135
- lanccmd_timeout, LCS attribute 160
- large page support 263
 - kernel configuration menu options 263
- large page support attribute
 - nr_hugepages 264

- large_send, qeth attribute 112
- layer2, qeth attribute 102
- lcs
 - recover attribute 161
- LCS
 - activating an interface 161
 - device driver 157
 - group attribute 159
 - kernel configuration menu option 158
 - lanccmd_timeout attribute 160
 - online attribute 160
 - subchannels 157
 - ungroup attribute 159
- lcs, kernel module 158
- libica library 289
- lic_version, zfcplib attribute 58
- line edit characters, z/VM console 325
- line-mode terminal 314
 - control characters 320
 - special characters 320
- link_failure_count, zfcplib attribute 59
- Linux device special file
 - See device nodes
- Linux disk layout 25
- Linux guest
 - reducing memory of 191
- Linux guest, booting 357
- Linux in LPAR mode, booting 363
- lip_count, zfcplib attribute 59
- LNK1 labeled disk 25
- LOADDEV 359
- local, value for qeth broadcast_mode attribute 125
- login at terminals 315
- LOGREC, VM record 211
- long random numbers 292
- loss_of_signal_count, zfcplib attribute 59
- loss_of_sync_count, zfcplib attribute 59
- LPAR Linux, booting 363
- lschp, Linux command 441
- lscss, Linux command 443
- lsdasd, Linux command 447
- lsqeth
 - command 117
- lsqeth, Linux command 451
- lsreipl, Linux command 453
- lsshut, Linux command 454
- lstape, Linux command 455
- lszencrypt, Linux command 458
- lszfcp, Linux command 460

M

- MAC addresses 102
 - format for qeth device 125
- MAC header
 - layer2 for qeth 102
- magic sysrequest 321
- major number 3
 - CHSC 271
 - console devices 305
 - DASD devices 27

major number *(continued)*

- DCSS devices 221
- pseudo-random number 295
- SCSI 69
- tape devices 76
- vmcp 243
- vmur 219
- XPRAM 87
- z/VM *MONITOR record 208
- z/VM recording 211
- zcrypt with udev 289
- zfc 69

man pages, messages 397

management information base 147

max_KiB

- S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268

maxcpus=, kernel parameter 522

maxframe_size

- zfc attribute 58

Media Access Control (MAC) addresses 102

Medium Access Control (MAC) header 103

medium_state, tape attribute 83

mem_dela

- S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268

mem=, kernel parameter 523

memory

- block_size_bytes attribute 261
- guest, reducing 191
- hotplug 259
- kernel configuration menu options for hotplug 260

memory sysfs attribute

- block_size_bytes 261

memory, expanded 87

memory, state attribute

- state sysfs attribute 261

menu configuration 348

- VM example 359

messages 397

mgmtime

- S/390 hypervisor file system attribute 266
- S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, LPAR 267

MIB (management information base) 147

min_KiB

- S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268

minor number 3

- CHSC 271
- console devices 305
- DASD devices 27
- DCSS devices 227
- pseudo-random number 295
- SCSI 69
- tape devices 76
- vmcp 243
- vmur 219
- XPRAM 87
- z/VM *MONITOR record 208
- z/VM recording 211
- z90crypt with udev 289

minor number *(continued)*

- zfc 69

mknod, Linux command 3

modalias

- cryptographic adapter attribute 293

model

- zfc attribute (SCSI device) 67

module

- See kernel module

module parameters

- cmd= 240
- conceal= 240
- CPI 388
- dasd= 34
- dbfsize= 55
- dcssblk.segments= 224
- devs= 90
- domain= 287, 288
- mondcss= 202, 207
- nowayout= 240
- poll_thread= 287, 288
- queue_depth= 55
- sizes= 90
- system_name= 388
- XPRAM 90
- z90crypt 287
- zcrypt 288

modulus-exponent 281

mon_fsstatd, command 462

mon_procd, command 467

mondcss=, kernel parameters 202, 207

mondcss=, module parameters 202, 207

monitor stream 193

- kernel configuration menu options 193

module activation 195

- on/off 194
- sampling interval 195

monitor stream application

- device driver 201

monreader, kernel module 206

MONWRITER

- kernel configuration menu options 201

MONWRITER, kernel module 201

mount point, sysfs x

MTIO interface 79

MTU

- IUCV 176
- qeth 117

multicast_router, value for qeth router attribute 122

multiple subchannel set 12

Multiprise 21

N

name

- devices
 - See device names
- network interface
 - See base name

named saved system 233

- See NSS

- net-snmp 147
- NETIUCV
 - device driver 173
- netiucv, kernel module 174
- network
 - device drivers 94
 - interface names 5
- Network Concentrator 138
- network interfaces 5
- no_checksumming, value for qeth checksumming attribute 124
- no_console_suspend, kernel parameters 376
- no_prio_queueing, value for qeth priority_queueing attribute 113
- no_router, value for qeth router attribute 122
- no, value for qeth large_send attribute 112
- node_name
 - zfc attribute 58
 - zfc attribute (port) 63
- node, device
 - See device nodes
- noinitrd, kernel parameter 524
- non-priority commands 322
- non-rewinding tape device 75
- noresume, kernel parameters 376
- nos_count, zfc attribute 59
- notices 555
- nowayout=, module parameters 240
- NPIV
 - example 60
 - FCP channel mode 60
 - for FCP channels 53
- nr_hugepages
 - large page support attribute 264
- NSS 361
 - kernel configuration menu option 233
- NSS (named saved system) 233
- numbers, random 292

O

- object ID 148
- offline
 - CHPID 16, 17
 - devices 11
- OID (object ID) 148
- online
 - CHPID 16, 17
 - CLAW attribute 185
 - common CCW attribute 11
 - CPU sysfs attribute 255
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 290
 - CTCM attribute 167
 - DASD attribute 42
 - etr attribute 276
 - LCS attribute 160
 - qeth attribute 116
 - stp attribute 276
 - tape attribute 81, 83
 - TTY attribute 320
 - zcrypt sysfs attribute 290

- online (*continued*)
 - zfc attribute 57
- online, zfc attribute 58
- onlinetime
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, LPAR 267
- Open Source Development Network, Inc. 147
- openCryptoki 289
- operating CPU, deactivating 256
- operation, tape attribute 83
- OSA-2
 - LAN channel station 157
- OSA-Express
 - device driver 95
 - LAN channel station 157
 - SNMP subagent support 147
- osasnmpd, command 475
- osasnmpd, OSA-Express SNMP subagent 147
- OSDN (Open Source Development Network, Inc.) 147
- other
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268

P

- P/390 523
- padding, zcrypt 284
- page pool
 - static 191
 - timed 191
- parallel access volume (PAV) 44
- PARM
 - IPL parameter 234
- partition
 - on DASD 22
 - schemes for DASD 22
 - table 24
 - XPRAM 87
- PAV (parallel access volume) 44
- PAV enablement, suppression 33
- PCI Cryptographic Accelerator 281
- PCI Cryptographic Coprocessor 281
- PCI-X Cryptographic Coprocessor 281
- peer_d_id, zfc attribute 58
- peer_wwnn, zfc attribute 58
- peer_wwpn, zfc attribute 58
- permanent_port_name, zfc attribute 58, 60
- physical_s_id, zfc attribute 60
- pimpampom, subchannel attribute 15
- PKCS #11 API 282, 289
- planned changes in channel path availability 393
- polarization
 - CPU sysfs attribute 257
 - values 257
- poll thread
 - disable using chcrypt 410
 - enable using chcrypt 410
- poll_thread
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 290
- poll_thread=
 - module parameter 287, 288

- poll_timeout
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 291
 - set using chcrypt 410
- port_id
 - zfcip attribute (port) 63
- port_id, zfcip attribute 58
- port_name
 - zfcip attribute (port) 63
- port_name, zfcip attribute 58
- port_remove, zfcip attribute 58, 62
- port_rescan, zfcip attribute 58, 62
- port_state
 - zfcip attribute (port) 63
- port_type, zfcip attribute 58
- portname, qeth attribute 112
- portno, qeth attribute 115
- possible_cpus=, kernel parameter 525
- power/state attribute 377
- preferred console 312
- prerequisites 19, 93, 187, 253, 279, 301, 381, 399
- pri=, fstab parameter 376
- prim_seq_protocol_err_count, zfcip attribute 59
- primary_connector, value for qeth router attribute 122
- primary_router, value for qeth router attribute 122
- prio_queueing, value for qeth priority_queueing attribute 114
- priority command 322
- priority_queueing, qeth attribute 113
- prng, kernel module 295
- processors
 - cryptographic 9
- procfcs
 - appldata 194
 - cio_ignore 518
 - magic sysrequest function 322
 - VLAN 137
- protocol, CTCM attribute 166
- proxy ARP 128
- proxy ARP attributes 108
- pseudo-random number
 - device driver 295
 - device names 295
 - device nodes 295
- purge, z/VM recording attribute 215
- PVMSG 322

Q

- QDIO 100
- qdio, kernel module 105
- qeth
 - activating an interface 117
 - auto-detection 100
 - broadcast_mode attribute 125
 - buffer_count attribute 114
 - canonical_macaddr attribute 125
 - card_type attribute 115
 - checksumming attribute 124
 - configuration tool 479
 - device driver 95
 - displaying device overview 451

- qeth (*continued*)
 - enable attribute for IP takeover 127
 - fake_broadcast attribute 126
 - group attribute 109
 - if_name attribute 117
 - ipa_takeover attributes 126
 - kernel configuration menu options 105
 - large_send attribute 112
 - layer2 attribute 102
 - MTU 117
 - online attribute 116
 - portname attribute 112
 - portno attribute 115
 - priority_queueing attribute 113
 - proxy ARP attributes 108
 - recover attribute 119
 - route4 attribute 121
 - route6 attribute 121
 - subchannels 100
 - summary of attributes 107, 108
 - TCP segmentation offload 112
 - ungroup attribute 110
 - VIPA attributes 108
- qeth interfaces, mapping 6
- qeth_l2, kernel module 106
- qeth_l3, kernel module 106
- qeth, kernel module 105
- qetharp, Linux command 477
- qethconf, Linux command 479
- queue_depth
 - zfcip attribute (SCSI device) 67
- queue_depth=, kernel parameters 54
- queue_depth=, module parameters 55
- queue_type
 - zfcip attribute (SCSI device) 67
- queueing, priority 113

R

- RAM disk, initial 357
- RAMAC 21
- ramdisk_size=, kernel parameter 526
- random number
 - device driver 295
 - device names 295
 - device nodes 295
- random number device driver
 - kernel configuration menu options 295
- read_buffer
 - CLAW attribute 184
- readlink, Linux command 6
- readonly
 - DASD attribute 44
- recording, z/VM recording attribute 214
- recover, lcs attribute 161
- recover, qeth attribute 119
- recovery, CTC interfaces 169
- relative port number
 - qeth 115
- Remote Spooling Communications Subsystem 508
- remove, DCSS attribute 230

- remove, IUCV attribute 178
- request_count
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 293
- rescan
 - CPU sysfs attribute 255
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 68
- reset_statistics
 - zfcp attribute 58
- restrictions 19, 93, 187, 253, 279, 301, 381, 399
- resume 373
- resume=, kernel parameters 376
- rev
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 67
- rewinding tape device 75
- Rivest-Shamir-Adleman 281
- ro, kernel parameter 527
- roles
 - zfcp attribute (port) 63
- root=, kernel parameter 528
- route4, qeth attribute 121
- route6, qeth attribute 121
- router
 - IPv4 router settings 121
 - IPv6 router settings 121
- RSA 281
- RSA exponentiation 281
- RSCS 508
- RVA 21
- rx_frames, zfcp attribute 58
- rx_words, zfcp attribute 58

S

- s_id, zfcp attribute 60
- S/390 Application Programming Interfaces 493
- S/390 hypervisor file system 265
 - defining access rights 269
 - kernel configuration menu options 265
- sample_count, cmf attribute 385
- save, DCSS attribute 229
- savesys=, kernel parameters 233
- sclp_async, kernel module 391
- sclp_cpi, kernel module 387
- SCSI devices, in sysfs 66
- SCSI system dumper 339
- scsi_host_no, zfcp attribute 65
- scsi_id, zfcp attribute 65
- scsi_level
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 67
- scsi_logging_level, Linux command 482
- scsi_lun, zfcp attribute 65
- scsi_target_id
 - zfcp attribute (port) 63
- SCSI-over-Fibre Channel
 - See also* zfcp
 - kernel configuration menu options 53
- SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver 47
- SCSI, booting from 359, 363
- SE (Support Element) 354
- secondary_connector, value for qeth router attribute 122
- secondary_router, value for qeth router attribute 122
- seconds_since_last_reset
 - zfcp attribute 58
- segmentation offload, TCP 112
- serial_number, zfcp attribute 58
- service types, IP 114
- set, CPI attribute 389
- setsockopt 114
- share_KiB
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268
- shared kernel 233
- shared, DCSS attribute 228
- Shoot The Other Node In The Head 492
- shutdown actions 379
- simple network IPL 485
- Simple Network Management Protocol 147
- sizes=, module parameter 90
- sniffer, guest LAN 145
- snipl, Linux command 485
- SNMP 147, 492
- special characters
 - line-mode terminals 320
 - z/VM console 325
- special file
 - See* device nodes
- speed, zfcp attribute 58
- ssch_rsch_count, cmf attribute 385
- standby CPU, activating 255
- state
 - memory sysfs attribute 261
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 68
- state attribute, power management 377
- state, tape attribute 83
- stateless autoconfiguration, IPv6 102
- static page pool 191
- static routing, and VIPA 131
- status
 - DASD attribute 45
- status, CHPID attribute 16, 17
- STONITH 492
- storage
 - memory hotplug 259
- stp
 - online attribute 276
- STP 275
- stp=, kernel parameter 276
- subchannel
 - multiple set 12
- subchannel set ID 12
- subchannels
 - CCW and CCW group devices 9
 - CLAW 181
 - CTCM 163
 - displaying overview 443
 - in sysfs 13
 - LCS 157
 - qeth 100
- support
 - AF_IUCV address family 245
- Support Element 354

- supported_classes
 - zfcp attribute (port) 63
- supported_classes, zfcpx attribute 58
- supported_speeds, zfcpx attribute 58
- suspend 373
- sw_checksumming, value for qeth checksumming attribute 124
- swap partition
 - for suspend resume 376
 - priority 376
- swapping
 - avoiding 191
- SYMPTOM, VM record 211
- syntax diagrams xi
- sysfs 9
- sysfs attribute
 - block_size_bytes 261
 - state 261
- sysplex name 387
- sysplex_name, CPI attribute 388
- sysrequest 321
- system name 387
- system states
 - displaying current settings 454
- system time 275
- system time protocol 275
- system_level, CPI attribute 389
- system_name, CPI attribute 388
- system_name=, module parameter 388
- system_type, CPI attribute 388

T

- tape
 - access by bus-ID 79
 - block device 75
 - blocksize attribute 83
 - booting from 357, 363
 - character device 75
 - cmb_enable attribute 83
 - cutype attribute 83
 - device names 76
 - device nodes 78
 - devtype attribute 83
 - display support 498
 - displaying overview 455
 - encryption support 494
 - file systems 76
 - IDRC compression 84
 - kernel configuration menu options 80
 - loading and unloading 85
 - medium_state attribute 83
 - MTIO interface 79
 - online attribute 81, 83
 - operation attribute 83
 - state attribute 83
- tape device driver 75
- tape_34xx, kernel module 80
- tape_3590, kernel module 80
- tape, kernel module 80
- tape390_crypt, Linux command 494

- tape390_display, Linux command 498
- TCP segmentation offload 112
- TCP/IP
 - ARP 104
 - checksumming 124
 - DHCP 144
 - IUCV 173
 - kernel configuration option 105
 - point-to-point 163
 - service machine 164, 178
- TERM, environment variable 314
- terminal
 - enabling user logins with inittab 315
 - enabling user logins with Upstart 315
 - mainframe versus Linux 305
- tgid_bind_type, zfcpx attribute 58
- time-of-day clock 275
- timed page pool 191
- timeout
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 68
- timeout for LCS LAN commands 160
- TOD clock 275
- Token Ring 97, 157
 - interface name 101, 158
- total
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM guest 268
- trademarks 556
- TSO, value for qeth large_send attribute 112
- TTY
 - console devices 305
 - kernel configuration menu options 310
 - online attribute 320
 - routines 306
- tunedasd, Linux command 500
- tx_frames, zfcpx attribute 58
- tx_words, zfcpx attribute 58
- type
 - cryptographic adapter attribute 293
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute 266
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, LPAR 266
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 67
- type, CTCM attribute 166

U

- ucd-snmpp 147
- udev 4
- uid
 - DASD attribute 45
- ungroup
 - CTCM attribute 166
 - LCS attribute 159
 - qeth attribute 110
- unit_add, zfcpx attribute 64
- unit_remove, zfcpx attribute 71
- unloading the zcrypt device driver 288
- unplanned changes in channel path availability 393
- update
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute 266
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM 267

- Upstart
 - User login to terminal 315
- use_diag
 - DASD attribute 45
- use_diag, DASD attribute 40
- used_KiB
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 268
- user, IUCV attribute 176

V

- VACM (View-Based Access Control Mechanism) 149
- vdso=, kernel parameter 529
- vendor
 - DASD attribute 45
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 67
- View-Based Access Control Mechanism (VACM) 149
- VINPUT 322
- VIPA (virtual IP address)
 - attributes 108
 - description 130
 - example 131
 - static routing 131
 - usage 131
- virtual
 - DASD 21
 - IP address 130
 - LAN 135
- virtual dynamic shared object 529
- VLAN (virtual LAN) 135
- VM reader
 - booting from 362
- VM spool file queues 505
- vmcp
 - device driver 243
 - device names 243
 - device nodes 243
- vmcp, kernel module 244
- vmcp, Linux command 503
- vmhalt=, kernel parameter 530
- vmlogdr, kernel module 213
- vmpanic=, kernel parameter 531
- vmppoff=, kernel parameter 532
- vmreboot=, kernel parameter 533
- VMRM 192
- VMSG 322
- vmur
 - device driver 219
 - device names 219
 - device nodes 219
- vmur, kernel module 219
- vmur, Linux command 505
- vmwatchdog, kernel module 238
- vmwatchdog.cmd=, kernel parameters 238
- vmwatchdog.conceal=, kernel parameters 238
- vmwatchdog.nowayout=, kernel parameters 238
- VOL1 labeled disk 23
- VOLSER, DASD device access by 30
- volume label 23
- Volume Table Of Contents 24

VTOC 24

W

- watchdog
 - device driver 237
 - device node 240
 - kernel configuration menu options 238
- weight_cur
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 267
- weight_max
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 268
- weight_min
 - S/390 hypervisor file system attribute, z/VM
 - guest 268
- write barrier 38
- write_buffer
 - CLAW attribute 184
- wwpn
 - zfcp attribute (SCSI device) 67
- wwpn, zfcp attribute 60, 66

X

- x3270 code page 316
- XPRAM
 - device driver 87
 - device nodes 88
 - features 87
 - kernel configuration menu options 89
 - kernel parameter 89
 - module parameter 90
 - partitions 87
- xpram, kernel module 89
- xpram.parts=, kernel parameter 89
- XRC, extended remote copy 275

Z

- z/VM
 - guest LAN sniffer 145
 - monitor stream 193
- z/VM *MONITOR record
 - device name 208
 - device node 208
- z/VM *MONITOR record device driver
 - kernel configuration menu option 206
- z/VM *MONITOR record reader
 - device driver 205
- z/VM console, line edit characters 325
- z/VM CP interface
 - kernel configuration menu options 244
- z/VM discontinuous saved segments
 - See DCSS
- z/VM recording
 - device names 211
 - device nodes 211
- z/VM recording device driver 211
 - autopurge attribute 215

- z/VM recording device driver (*continued*)
 - autorecording attribute 214
 - kernel configuration menu options 213
 - purge attribute 215
 - recording attribute 214
- z/VM unit record
 - kernel configuration menu options 219
- z90crypt
 - module parameter 287
- zcrypt
 - device driver 281
 - device nodes 289
 - hardware status 290
 - kernel configuration menu option 285
 - kernel module 285
 - kernel monolithic configuration menu option 285
 - kernel parameter 286
 - module parameter 288
- zcrypt configuration 410, 458
- zcrypt device driver
 - unloading 288
- zcrypt sysfs attribute
 - ap_interrupts 291
 - depth 293
 - hwtype 293
 - modalias 293
 - online 290
 - poll_thread 290
 - poll_timeout 291
 - request_count 293
 - type 293
- zfcp
 - access_denied attribute (port) 63
 - access_denied attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - access_shared attribute 67
 - card_version attribute 58
 - delete attribute 72
 - delete attribute (SCSI device) 68
 - device driver 47
 - device nodes 49
 - device_blocked attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - dumped_frames attribute 59
 - error_frames attribute 59
 - failed attribute 58
 - failed attribute (channel) 61
 - failed attribute (port) 63, 64
 - failed attribute (SCSI device) 67, 71
 - fcpl_control_requests attribute 59
 - fcpl_input_megabytes attribute 59
 - fcpl_input_requests attribute 59
 - fcpl_lun attribute 66
 - fcpl_lun attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - fcpl_output_megabytes attribute 59
 - fcpl_output_requests attribute 59
 - hardware_version attribute 58
 - hba_id attribute 66
 - hba_id attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - in_recovery attribute 58
 - in_recovery attribute (channel) 61
 - in_recovery attribute (port) 63, 64
 - in_recovery attribute (SCSI device) 67, 71
- zfcp (*continued*)
 - invalid_crc_count attribute 59
 - invalid_tx_word_count attribute 59
 - iocounterbits attribute 67
 - iodone_cnt attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - ioerr_cnt attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - iorequest_cnt attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - kernel configuration menu options 53
 - kernel module 53
 - lic_version attribute 58
 - link_failure_count attribute 59
 - lip_count attribute 59
 - loss_of_signal_count attribute 59
 - loss_of_sync_count attribute 59
 - major/minor 69
 - maxframe_siz attribute 58
 - model attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - node_name attribute 58
 - node_name attribute (port) 63
 - nos_count attribute 59
 - online attribute 57, 58
 - peer_d_id attribute 58
 - peer_wwnn attribute 58
 - peer_wwpn attribute 58
 - permanent_port_name attribute 58, 60
 - physical_s_id attribute 60
 - port_id attribute 58
 - port_id attribute (port) 63
 - port_name attribute 58
 - port_name attribute (port) 63
 - port_remove attribute 58, 62
 - port_rescan attribute 58, 62
 - port_state attribute (port) 63
 - port_type attribute 58
 - prim_seq_protocol_err_count attribute 59
 - queue_depth attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - queue_type attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - rescan attribute (SCSI device) 68
 - reset_statistics attribute 58
 - rev attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - roles attribute (port) 63
 - rx_frames attribute 58
 - rx_words attribute 58
 - s_id attribute 60
 - scsi_host_no attribute 65
 - scsi_id attribute 65
 - scsi_level attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - scsi_lun attribute 65
 - scsi_target_id attribute (port) 63
 - seconds_since_last_reset attribute 58
 - serial_number attribute 58
 - speed attribute 58
 - state attribute (SCSI device) 68
 - supported_classes attribute 58
 - supported_classes attribute (port) 63
 - supported_speeds attribute 58
 - tgid_bind_type attribute 58
 - timeout attribute (SCSI device) 68
 - tx_frames attribute 58
 - tx_words attribute 58
 - type attribute (SCSI device) 67

- zfcpx (continued)
 - unit_add attribute 64
 - unit_remove attribute 71
 - vendor attribute (SCSI device) 67
 - wwpn attribute 60, 66
 - wwpn attribute (SCSI device) 67
- zfcpx HBA API 51
- zfcpx traces 53, 57
- zfcpx.device=, kernel parameter 54
- zipl
 - and kernel parameters 333
 - base functions 327
 - configuration file 346
 - Linux command 327
 - menu configurations 348
 - parameters 343
- ZIPLCONF, environment variable 346
- znetconf, Linux command 512
- zSeries Application Programming Interfaces 493

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

Linux on System z
Device Drivers, Features, and Commands
Development stream (Kernel 2.6.32)

Publication No. SC33-8411-04

We appreciate your comments about this publication. Please comment on specific errors or omissions, accuracy, organization, subject matter, or completeness of this book. The comments you send should pertain to only the information in this manual or product and the way in which the information is presented.

For technical questions and information about products and prices, please contact your IBM branch office, your IBM business partner, or your authorized remarketer.

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you. IBM or any other organizations will only use the personal information that you supply to contact you about the issues that you state on this form.

Comments:

Thank you for your support.

Submit your comments using one of these channels:

- Send your comments to the address on the reverse side of this form.
- Send your comments via e-mail to: eservdoc@de.ibm.com

If you would like a response from IBM, please fill in the following information:

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.

E-mail address



Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

PLACE
POSTAGE
STAMP
HERE

IBM Deutschland Research & Development GmbH
Information Development
Department 3248
Schoenaicher Strasse 220
71032 Boeblingen
Germany

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line



SC33-8411-04

